
**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

FORM 8-K

**CURRENT REPORT
Pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d)
of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

Date of Report (Date of earliest event reported): November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital, Inc.
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Maryland
(State or other jurisdiction
of incorporation)

814-00702
(Commission
File No.)

74-3113410
(I.R.S. Employer
Identification No.)

400 Hamilton Ave., Suite 310
Palo Alto, CA
(Address of principal executive offices)

94301
(Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (650) 289-3060

Not Applicable
(Former name or address, if changed since last report)

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K filing is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions (see General Instruction A.2. below):

- Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)
- Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)
- Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b))
- Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c))

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (§230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (§240.12b-2 of this chapter)

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Item 1.01 Entry into a Material Definitive Agreement.**Securitization Transaction**

On November 1, 2018, Hercules Capital, Inc. (the “Company”) completed a term debt securitization in connection with which an affiliate of the Company made an offering of \$200,000,000 in aggregate principal amount of fixed-rate asset-backed notes (the “Notes”), which Notes were rated A(sf) by Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc. The Notes were issued by Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 pursuant to a note purchase agreement, dated as of October 25, 2018, by and among the Company, Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor (the “Trust Depositor”), Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as Issuer (the “Issuer”), and Guggenheim Securities, LLC, as Initial Purchaser, and are backed by a pool of senior loans made to certain portfolio companies of the Company and secured by certain assets of those portfolio companies and are to be serviced by the Company. The outstanding principal balance of the pool of loans as of September 30, 2018 was approximately \$284,761,977. Interest on the Notes will be paid, to the extent of funds available, at a fixed rate of 4.605% per annum. The Notes have a stated maturity of November 22, 2027.

As part of this transaction, the Company entered into a sale and contribution agreement with the Trust Depositor under which the Company has agreed to sell or has contributed to the Trust Depositor certain senior loans made to certain portfolio companies of the Company (the “Loans”). The Company has made customary representations, warranties and covenants in the sale and contribution agreement with respect to the Loans as of the date of their transfer to the Trust Depositor. The Company also obtained consents that were necessary under its credit agreements with Wells Fargo Capital Finance, LLC and MUFG Union Bank, N.A. in order to transfer certain loans as part of the securitization.

In connection with the issuance and sale of the Notes, the Company has made customary representations, warranties and covenants in the note purchase agreement. The Notes are secured obligations of the Issuer and are non-recourse to the Company. The Issuer also entered into an indenture governing the Notes, which indenture includes customary representations, warranties and covenants. The Notes were sold without being registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), (a) in the United States, to “qualified institutional buyers” in compliance with the exemption from registration provided by Rule 144A under the Securities Act who are “qualified purchasers” for purposes of Section 3(c)(7) under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended and (b) outside the United States, to entities which are not “U.S. Persons” (as defined under Regulation S under the Securities Act, “Regulation S”) in compliance with Regulation S. In addition, the Trust Depositor entered into an amended and restated trust agreement, which includes customary representation, warranties and covenants.

The Loans will be serviced by the Company pursuant to a sale and servicing agreement, which contains customary representations, warranties and covenants. The Company will perform certain servicing and administrative functions with respect to the Loans. The Company will be entitled to receive a monthly fee from the Issuer for servicing the Loans. This servicing fee will equal the product of one-twelfth (or in the case of the first payment date, a fraction equal to the number of days from and including September 30, 2018 through and including November 19, 2018 over 360) of 2.00% and the aggregate outstanding principal balance of the Loans, excluding all defaulted Loans and all purchased Loans, as of the first day of the related collection period (the period from the 5th day of the immediately preceding calendar month through the 4th day of the calendar month in which a payment date occurs, and for the first payment date, the period from and including September 30, 2018, to the close of business on November 4, 2018).

The Company will also serve as administrator to the Issuer under an administration agreement, which includes customary representations, warranties and covenants.

The foregoing descriptions of the sale and servicing agreement, the sale and contribution agreement, the note purchase agreement, the administration agreement, the indenture and the amended and restated trust agreement do not purport to be complete and are qualified in their entirety by reference to the full text of the sale and servicing agreement, the sale and contribution agreement, the note purchase agreement, the administration agreement, the indenture and the amended and restated trust agreement filed with this report as Exhibits 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, 10.4, 4.1, and 4.2, respectively, and which are incorporated herein by reference.

Item 2.03 Creation of a Direct Financial Obligation or an Obligation under an Off-Balance Sheet Arrangement of a Registrant

The information set forth in Item 1.01 of this Form 8-K is incorporated by reference.

Item 9.01 Financial Statements and Exhibits

(d) Exhibits

Exhibit No.	Document
4.1	<u>Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018, between Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1, as Issuer, and U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee.</u>
4.2	<u>Amended and Restated Trust Agreement, dated as of November 1, 2018, between Hercules Capital Funding2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor, and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as Owner Trustee.</u>
10.1	<u>Sale and Servicing Agreement, dated as of November 1, 2018, by and among Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1, as Issuer, Hercules Capital, Inc., as Seller and Servicer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor, and U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee, Backup Servicer, Custodian and Securities Intermediary.</u>
10.2	<u>Sale and Contribution Agreement, dated as of November 1, 2018, between Hercules Capital, Inc., as Seller, and Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor.</u>
10.3	<u>Note Purchase Agreement, dated as of October 25, 2018, by and among Hercules Capital, Inc., as Originator and Servicer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor, Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1, as Issuer, and Guggenheim Securities, LLC, as Initial Purchaser.</u>
10.4	<u>Administration Agreement, dated November 1, 2018, by and among Hercules Capital, Inc., as Administrator, Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as Issuer, Wilmington Trust National Association, as Owner Trustee, and U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee.</u>

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

November 2, 2018

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Melanie Grace
General Counsel and Secretary

INDENTURE

by and between

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1,
as the Issuer,

and

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
as the Trustee

Dated as of November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Notes

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS	2
Section 1.01 Definitions	2
Section 1.02 Rules of Construction	10
ARTICLE II THE NOTES	11
Section 2.01 Form	11
Section 2.02 Execution, Authentication and Delivery	11
Section 2.03 Opinions of Counsel	12
ARTICLE III COVENANTS	12
Section 3.01 Transaction Accounts	12
Section 3.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency	12
Section 3.03 Money for Payments To Be Held in Trust; Paying Agent	13
Section 3.04 Existence; Separate Legal Existence	14
Section 3.05 Payment of Principal and Interest	15
Section 3.06 Protection of Indenture Collateral	16
Section 3.07 Opinions as to Indenture Collateral	17
Section 3.08 Furnishing of Rule 144A Information	17
Section 3.09 Performance of Obligations; Sale and Servicing Agreement	18
Section 3.10 Negative Covenants	18
Section 3.11 Annual Statement as to Compliance	19
Section 3.12 [Reserved]	20
Section 3.13 Representations and Warranties Concerning the Loans	20
Section 3.14 Trustee's Review of Loan Files	20
Section 3.15 Sale and Servicing Agreement	20
Section 3.16 Amendments to Sale and Servicing Agreement	20
Section 3.17 Servicer as Agent and Bailee of Trustee	20
Section 3.18 Investment Company Act of 1940	21
Section 3.19 Issuer May Consolidate, etc., Only on Certain Terms	21
Section 3.20 Successor or Transferee	23
Section 3.21 No Other Business	23
Section 3.22 No Borrowing; Use of Proceeds	23
Section 3.23 Guarantees, Loans, Advances and Other Liabilities	23

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page
Section 3.24 Capital Expenditures	24
Section 3.25 Representations and Warranties of the Issuer	24
Section 3.26 Restricted Payments	26
Section 3.27 Notice of Events of Default, Amendments and Waivers	26
Section 3.28 Further Instruments and Acts	27
Section 3.29 Statements to Noteholders	27
Section 3.30 Grant of Substitute Loans and Additional Loans	28
ARTICLE IV THE NOTES; SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	28
Section 4.01 The Notes	28
Section 4.02 Registration of Transfer and Exchange of Notes	28
Section 4.03 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Notes	38
Section 4.04 Payment of Principal and Interest; Defaulted Interest	38
Section 4.05 Tax Treatment	39
Section 4.06 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	40
Section 4.07 Application of Trust Money	42
Section 4.08 Repayment of Moneys Held by Paying Agent	42
ARTICLE V REMEDIES	42
Section 5.01 Events of Default	42
Section 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	44
Section 5.03 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	45
Section 5.04 Remedies; Priorities	47
Section 5.05 [Reserved]	48
Section 5.06 Limitation of Suits	48
Section 5.07 Unconditional Rights of Noteholders To Receive Principal and Interest	49
Section 5.08 Restoration of Rights and Remedies	49
Section 5.09 Rights and Remedies Cumulative	49
Section 5.10 Delay or Omission Not a Waiver	49
Section 5.11 Control by Noteholders	49
Section 5.12 Waiver of Past Defaults	50

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(continued)

	Page
Section 5.13 Undertaking for Costs	50
Section 5.14 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws	51
Section 5.15 Sale of Indenture Collateral	51
Section 5.16 Action on Notes	52
Section 5.17 Performance and Enforcement of Certain Obligations	52
ARTICLE VI THE TRUSTEE	53
Section 6.01 Duties of Trustee	53
Section 6.02 Rights of Trustee	54
Section 6.03 Individual Rights of Trustee	56
Section 6.04 Trustee's Disclaimer	56
Section 6.05 Notice of Event of Default	57
Section 6.06 Reports by Trustee to Holders	57
Section 6.07 Compensation and Indemnity	57
Section 6.08 Replacement of Trustee	59
Section 6.09 Successor Trustee by Merger	60
Section 6.10 Appointment of Co-Trustee or Separate Trustee	60
Section 6.11 Eligibility; Disqualification	61
Section 6.12 Representations, Warranties and Covenants of the Trustee	61
Section 6.13 Directions to Trustee	62
Section 6.14 Conflicts	63
ARTICLE VII NOTEHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS	63
Section 7.01 Issuer To Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Noteholders	63
Section 7.02 Preservation of Information; Communications to Noteholders	63
Section 7.03 Fiscal Year	63
ARTICLE VIII TRANSACTION ACCOUNTS, DISBURSEMENTS AND RELEASES	64
Section 8.01 Collection of Money	64
Section 8.02 Transaction Accounts	64
Section 8.03 Officer's Certificate	65
Section 8.04 Termination Upon Distribution to Noteholders	65
Section 8.05 Release of Indenture Collateral	65

TABLE OF CONTENTS
(continued)

	Page
ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	66
Section 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Noteholders	66
Section 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Noteholders	68
Section 9.03 Execution of Supplemental Indentures	70
Section 9.04 Effect of Supplemental Indenture	70
Section 9.05 Reference in Notes to Supplemental Indentures	70
Section 9.06 Consent of the Servicer and Owner Trustee	70
ARTICLE X OPTIONAL REDEMPTION	70
Section 10.01 Optional Redemption	70
Section 10.02 Form of Redemption Notice by Trustee	71
ARTICLE XI MISCELLANEOUS	72
Section 11.01 Confidentiality	72
Section 11.02 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	73
Section 11.03 Acts of Noteholders	73
Section 11.04 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Others	74
Section 11.05 Notices to Noteholders; Waiver	75
Section 11.06 Alternate Payment and Notice Provisions	76
Section 11.07 Effect of Headings	76
Section 11.08 Successors and Assigns	76
Section 11.09 Severability	76
Section 11.10 Benefits of Indenture	77
Section 11.11 Legal Holidays	77
Section 11.12 GOVERNING LAW	77
Section 11.13 Counterparts	77
Section 11.14 Issuer Obligation	77
Section 11.15 No Petition; Limited Recourse	78
Section 11.16 Inspection; Confidentiality	78
Section 11.17 Limitation of Liability	79
Section 11.18 Disclaimer	79

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

Page

EXHIBITS

Exhibit A	—	Form of Note	
Exhibit B	—	List of Loans	
Exhibit C	—	Form of Wiring Instructions	
Exhibit D-1	—	Form of Transferee Letter Non-Rule 144A	
Exhibit D-2	—	Form of Rule 144A Certification	
Exhibit E	—	Form of Transfer Certificate for Rule 144A Global Note to Regulation S Global Note during Distribution Compliance Period	
Exhibit F	—	Form of Transfer Certificate for Rule 144A Global Note to Regulation S Global Note after Distribution Compliance Period	
Exhibit G	—	Form of Transfer Certificate for Regulation S Global Note to Rule 144A Global Note during Distribution Compliance Period	
Exhibit H	—	Form of Transfer Certificate for Regulation S Global Note during Distribution Compliance Period	

INDENTURE

THIS INDENTURE, dated as of November 1, 2018 (as amended, modified, restated, supplemented or waived from time to time, this "Indenture"), is by and between HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1, a Delaware statutory trust, as the issuer (together with its successors and assigns, in such capacity, the "Issuer"), and U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association ("U.S. Bank") not in its individual capacity, but solely in its capacity as the trustee (together with its successors and assigns, in such capacity, the "Trustee").

Each party hereto agrees as follows for the benefit of the other party and for the equal and ratable benefit of the Holders of the Issuer's Notes.

GRANTING CLAUSE

The Issuer hereby Grants to the Trustee, on behalf of and for the benefit of the Holders of the Notes, without recourse, subject to the terms of this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents, a continuing security interest in and lien on all of its right, title and interest in and to all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to (i) the Loans and all Related Property included or to be included from time to time in the Loan Assets, whether now existing or hereafter arising or acquired; (ii) Collections on the Loans received after the Cutoff Date (with respect to the Loans acquired by the Issuer on the Closing Date) or the applicable Transfer Date (with respect to each Additional Loan and Substitute Loan); (iii) the security interests in Related Property securing the Loans; (iv) the Loan Files relating to the Loans; (v) an assignment of all rights to Proceeds from liquidating the Loans; (vi) an assignment of the Trust Depositor's rights against Obligors under agreements between the Seller and the Obligors under the Loans; (vii) the Collection Account, the Reserve Account, the Lockbox Account, the Reinvestment Account and the Distribution Account, all amounts deposited therein or credited thereto, the Permitted Investments purchased with funds therefrom or deposited therein and all income from the investment of funds therein; (viii) other rights under the Transaction Documents; (ix) all proceeds from the items described above; and (x) all present and future claims, demands, causes and choses in action in respect of any or all of the foregoing and all payments on or under and all proceeds of every kind and nature whatsoever in respect of any or all of the foregoing, including all proceeds of the conversion, voluntary or involuntary, into cash or other liquid property, all cash proceeds, accounts, accounts receivable, notes, drafts, acceptances, chattel paper, checks, deposit accounts, insurance proceeds, condemnation awards, rights to payment of any and every kind and other forms of obligations and receivables, instruments and other property which at any time constitute all or part of or are included in the proceeds of any of the foregoing; *provided* that all right, title and interest of the Issuer in and to each Excluded Amount, the Certificate Account and any and all proceeds of any Excluded Amount or the Certificate Account (collectively, the "Excluded Property") shall be excluded from the foregoing Grant by the Issuer (collectively, the "Indenture Collateral").

The foregoing Grant is made in trust to secure (x) the payment of principal of and interest on, and any other amounts owing in respect of, the Notes and all other sums owing by the Issuer hereunder or under any other Transaction Document, and (y) to secure compliance with the covenants and agreement in this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents.

The Trustee, on behalf of the Noteholders (1) acknowledges such Grant, and (2) accepts the trusts under this Indenture in accordance with this Indenture and agrees to perform its duties required in this Indenture to the best of its ability to the end that the interests of the Noteholders may be adequately and effectively protected.

ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01 Definitions.

Certain defined terms used throughout this Indenture are defined above or in this Section 1.01. In addition, except as otherwise expressly provided herein or unless the context otherwise requires, capitalized terms used but not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Sale and Servicing Agreement (as defined below), which are incorporated by reference herein.

“Applicable Procedures” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(1)(i).

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper of general circulation in the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, printed in the English language and customarily published on each Business Day, whether or not published on Saturdays, Sundays or holidays.

“Beneficial Owner” means, with respect to a Global Note, the Person who is the beneficial owner of such Note, as reflected on the books of DTC or on the books of a Person maintaining an account with such Depository (directly or as an indirect participant, in accordance with the rules of such Depository), as the case may be.

“Certificate Registrar” means initially, the Trustee, and thereafter, any successor appointed pursuant to the Trust Agreement.

“Clearstream” means Clearstream Banking, a société anonyme, a limited liability company organized under the laws of Luxembourg.

“Confidential Information” means any and all information concerning any Disclosing Party disclosed by, or at the request or on behalf of, any Disclosing Party to any Receiving Party or its representatives pursuant to this Indenture, excluding, however, any information that at the time of disclosure: (a) was generally available to the public, other than as a result of a disclosure by any Receiving Party or its representatives in violation of this Indenture; (b) was available to any Receiving Party on a non-confidential basis from a source other than the Disclosing Party or its representatives; (c) was already known to the Receiving Party and not subject to restrictions on use or disclosure; or (d) was independently developed by or on behalf of the Receiving Party (other than at the request of or for the benefit of the Disclosing Party) by individuals who did not directly or indirectly receive Confidential Information.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee currently located at (a) for Note transfer purposes and presentment of the Notes for final payment thereon, the corporate office of the Trustee located at 111 Fillmore Avenue East, Attention: Bondholder Services-EP-MNWS2N, St. Paul, MN 55107, Reference: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 and (b) for all other purposes, the corporate office of the Trustee located at One Federal Street, 3rd Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02110, Attention: Jack Lindsay, Reference: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, telephone number (617) 603-6789, facsimile number (855) 869-2187, email: jack.lindsay@usbank.com or at such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Issuer, or the principal corporate trust officer of any successor Trustee at the address designated by such successor by notice to the Issuer.

“Default” means any occurrence that is, or with notice or the lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default.

“Direct Participant” means any broker-dealer, bank or other financial institution for whom the nominee of DTC holds an interest in any Note.

“Disclosing Party” means each of the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Seller and “Disclosing Parties” means collectively all such parties.

“Distribution Compliance Period” means the 40 day period prescribed by Regulation S commencing on the later of (a) the date upon which Notes are first offered to Persons other than the Initial Purchaser and any other distributor (as such term is defined in Regulation S) of the Notes and (b) the Closing Date.

“DTC” or the “Depository” means The Depository Trust Company, and its successors.

“DTC Custodian” means the Trustee as a custodian for DTC.

“DTC Participant” means a Person for whom, from time to time, DTC effects book-entry transfers and pledges of securities deposited with DTC.

“ERISA” means the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended from time to time, or any successor legislation thereto and the regulations promulgated and the rulings issued thereunder.

“Euroclear” means the Euroclear System, operated by Morgan Guaranty Trust Company of New York, Brussels office.

“Excluded Property” has the meaning provided in the Granting Clause.

“Event of Default” has the meaning provided in Section 5.01.

“FATCA” means Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code, as of the date of this Agreement (or any amended or successor version that is substantively comparable) and any current or future regulations or official interpretations thereof.

“Global Note” means any Note registered in the name of DTC or its nominee, beneficial interests in which are reflected on the books of DTC or on the books of a Person maintaining any account with such Depository (directly or as an indirect participant in accordance with the rules of such Depository). The definition of “Global Note” shall include the Rule 144A Global Notes and the Regulation S Global Notes.

“Grant” means to mortgage, pledge, sell, bargain, warrant, alienate, remise, release, convey, assign, transfer, create, and grant a lien upon and a security interest in and right of set-off against, deposit, set over and confirm pursuant to this Indenture. A Grant of Indenture Collateral or of any other agreement or instrument shall include all rights, powers and options (but none of the obligations) of the granting party thereunder, including the immediate and continuing right to claim for, collect, receive and give receipt for principal and interest payments in respect of such collateral or other agreement or instrument and all other moneys payable thereunder, to give and receive notices and other communications, to make waivers or other agreements, to exercise all rights and options, to bring proceedings in the name of the granting party or otherwise, and generally to do and receive anything that the granting party is or may be entitled to do or receive thereunder or with respect thereto.

“Indenture Collateral” has the meaning provided in the Granting Clause.

“Indirect Participant” means any financial institution for whom any Direct Participant holds an interest in any Note.

“Initial Purchaser” means Guggenheim Securities, LLC.

“Institutional Accredited Investor” means any Person meeting the requirements of Rule 501 (a) (1), (2), (3) or (7) of Regulation D under the Securities Act.

“Issuer Documents” has the meaning provided in Section 3.25(a).

“Issuer Order” means a written order or request signed in the name of the Issuer by any one of its Responsible Officers or by the Servicer or the Administrator on behalf of the Issuer and delivered to the Trustee. An Issuer Order or request provided in an email by a Responsible Officer of the Issuer or the Administrator on behalf of the Issuer shall constitute an Issuer Order in each case except to the extent the Trustee requests otherwise.

“Legal Final Payment Date” means November 22, 2027.

“Letter of Representations” means the Letter of Representations, dated as of November 1, 2018 by the Issuer.

“Minimum Denomination” of any Note shall mean, (x) in respect of Notes purchased by the Initial Purchaser and subsequently retransferred to the first transferee thereof (provided that such initial transferee provides to the Initial Purchaser and the Issuer a written certification that such transferee is both a Qualified Purchaser and a Qualified Institutional Buyer), a minimum denomination of \$10,000 initial principal amount and integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess thereof and (y) with respect to all subsequent transfers of Notes, a minimum denomination of \$10,000 initial principal amount and integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess thereof; *provided* that one Note may be in a smaller multiple in excess of the minimum denomination.

“Non-Permitted Holder” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(s)(ii).

“Note Register” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(a).

“Note Registrar” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(a).

“Outstanding” means, as of any date of determination, all Notes theretofore executed, authenticated and delivered under this Indenture except: (i) Notes in exchange for or in lieu of which other Notes have been executed, authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture unless proof satisfactory to the Trustee is presented that any such Notes are held by a holder in due course; (ii) Notes to be redeemed in connection with an Optional Redemption and in respect of which money in the necessary amount to pay the Redemption Price, has been theretofore deposited with the Trustee in trust for the Noteholders; and (iii) Notes otherwise cancelled by the Note Registrar in accordance with the express terms of this Indenture; *provided* that, in determining whether the Holders of the requisite amount of any Notes have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or under the Sale and Servicing Agreement, (1) Notes beneficially owned by the Issuer shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding and (2) Notes beneficially owned by the Servicer, Seller, any Affiliate of the Seller or the Servicer or any account managed on a discretionary basis by the Servicer or an Affiliate of the Servicer shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding with respect to any assignment by the Servicer or termination of the Servicer under the Sale and Servicing Agreement or this Indenture (including the exercise of any rights to remove the Servicer or approve or object to a Successor Servicer); *except* that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Notes that the Trustee knows to be beneficially owned in the manner indicated above shall be so disregarded; *provided* that the Trustee shall be entitled to rely on a certificate of the Servicer attesting to the ownership of Notes by the Seller, the Servicer, any of their respective Affiliates or any account managed on a discretionary basis by the Servicer or an Affiliate of the Servicer, if any.

“Owner” means each Holder of a Note.

“Owner Trustee” means Wilmington Trust, National Association, not in its individual capacity but solely as owner trustee under the Trust Agreement, and any successor Owner Trustee thereunder.

“Participant” means a Person that has an account with DTC.

“Physical Note” means any Note in certificated form registered in the name of a holder other than DTC or its nominee.

“Plan” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(t).

“Proceeding” means any suit in equity, action at law or other judicial or administrative proceeding.

“PTCE” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(t).

“Qualified Institutional Buyer” has the meaning provided in Rule 144A under the Securities Act.

“Qualified Purchaser” has the meaning provided in Section 2(a)(51) under the 1940 Act.

“Rating Agency Confirmation” means, with respect to any action, that (i) the Rating Agency shall have been notified and has not confirmed in writing within ten (10) Business Days of receipt of such notice that such action will result in a reduction, withdrawal or qualification of the then current rating of the Notes with respect to which it is a rating agency, unless otherwise specified and (ii) the Trustee has received an Officer’s Certificate from the Issuer that such notice has been provided to the Rating Agency and such confirmation has not been received within such ten (10) Business Day period.

“Receiving Party” means each Holder of a Note, the Trustee and the Owner Trustee.

“Regulation S” means Regulation S under the Securities Act.

“Regulation S Global Notes” means the Notes sold in offshore transactions in reliance on Regulation S and represented by one or more Global Notes deposited with the Trustee as custodian for DTC.

“Replacement Notes” has the meaning provided in Section 10.02.

“Rule 144A Certification” means a letter substantially in the form attached to this Indenture as Exhibit D-2.

“Rule 144A Global Notes” means the Notes initially sold to Qualified Institutional Buyers who are Qualified Purchasers represented by one or more Global Notes in fully registered form without interest coupons, deposited with the Trustee as custodian for DTC and registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC.

“Sale” has the meaning provided in Section 5.15.

“Sale and Contribution Agreement” means the Sale and Contribution Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, by and between Hercules Capital, Inc., as Seller, and Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor.

“Sale and Servicing Agreement” means the Sale and Servicing Agreement, dated as of date hereof, by and among Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the Issuer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor, Hercules Capital, Inc., as the Seller and as the Servicer, and U.S. Bank National Association, as the Trustee, Backup Servicer, Custodian and Paying Agent.

“Securities Legend” means a legend that reads as follows: “THIS NOTE HAS NOT BEEN AND WILL NOT BE REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE “SECURITIES ACT”), OR THE APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAWS OF ANY STATE. ACCORDINGLY, TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IS SUBJECT TO CERTAIN RESTRICTIONS SET FORTH IN SECTION 4.02 OF THE INDENTURE. BY ITS ACCEPTANCE OF THIS NOTE, THE HOLDER OF THIS NOTE IS DEEMED TO

REPRESENT TO THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE THAT IT IS (I) IF LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES A “QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER” AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT THAT IS A “QUALIFIED PURCHASER” AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 (EACH SUCH PERSON, A “QUALIFIED PURCHASER”) AND IS ACQUIRING SUCH NOTE FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT (AND NOT FOR THE ACCOUNT OF OTHERS) OR AS A FIDUCIARY OR AGENT FOR OTHERS, PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT; OR (II) A NON-U.S. PERSON ACQUIRING INTEREST IN THIS NOTE OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATIONS OF THE SECURITIES ACT (“REGULATIONS”) THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER.

NO SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE SHALL BE MADE UNLESS SUCH SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER IS (A) PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, (B) FOR SO LONG AS THE NOTES ARE ELIGIBLE FOR RESALE PURSUANT TO RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, TO A PERSON THE TRANSFEROR REASONABLY BELIEVES AFTER DUE INQUIRY IS A “QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER” AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A WHO IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND THAT PURCHASES FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT OR FOR THE ACCOUNT OF A “QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER” TO WHOM NOTICE IS GIVEN THAT THE TRANSFER IS BEING MADE IN RELIANCE ON RULE 144A, OR (C) TO A NON-U.S. PERSON THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER ACQUIRING AN INTEREST IN THIS NOTE IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE 903 OR 904 (AS APPLICABLE) OF REGULATIONS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT. THE TRUSTEE MAY REQUIRE AN OPINION OF COUNSEL TO BE DELIVERED TO IT IN CONNECTION WITH ANY SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE PURSUANT TO CLAUSES (A), (B) OR (C) ABOVE. ALL OPINIONS OF COUNSEL REQUIRED IN CONNECTION WITH ANY TRANSFER SHALL BE IN A FORM REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRUSTEE. IN CONNECTION WITH A TRANSFER UNDER CLAUSES (B) OR (C) ABOVE, THE TRUSTEE SHALL REQUIRE THAT THE PROSPECTIVE TRANSFEREE CERTIFY TO THE TRUSTEE AND THE SELLER, IN WRITING THE FACTS SURROUNDING SUCH TRANSFER, WHICH CERTIFICATION SHALL BE IN FORM AND SUBSTANCE DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE. ANY ATTEMPTED TRANSFER IN CONTRAVENTION OF THE IMMEDIATELY PRECEDING RESTRICTION WILL BE VOID AB INITIO AND THE PURPORTED TRANSFEROR WILL CONTINUE TO BE TREATED AS THE OWNER OF THE NOTES FOR ALL PURPOSES.”

In addition, the Notes will include the following:

“EACH INVESTOR IN THIS NOTE OR ANY INTEREST HEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND WARRANTED THAT EITHER (I) IT IS NOT, AND IS NOT DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ACQUIRING THIS NOTE FOR, ON BEHALF OF OR WITH ANY ASSETS OF, AN EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO PART 4, SUBTITLE B, TITLE I OF THE EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT OF 1974, AS AMENDED (“ERISA”), A PLAN, ACCOUNT OR ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO SECTION 4975 OF THE INTERNAL

REVENUE CODE OF 1986, AS AMENDED (THE "CODE"), OR AN ENTITY WHOSE UNDERLYING ASSETS INCLUDE PLAN ASSETS OF ANY SUCH PLANS (COLLECTIVELY, A "BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR") OR A PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO ANY PROVISIONS UNDER ANY FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, NON-U.S. OR OTHER LAWS OR REGULATIONS THAT ARE SUBSTANTIVELY SIMILAR TO SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE ("SIMILAR LAW") OR (II) ITS ACQUISITION, HOLDING AND DISPOSITION OF SUCH NOTE OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN DOES NOT AND WILL NOT CONSTITUTE OR RESULT IN A NON-EXEMPT PROHIBITED TRANSACTION UNDER SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE, OR A NON-EXEMPT VIOLATION OF SIMILAR LAW.

EACH PURCHASER OR TRANSFEREE OF ANY NOTE OR BENEFICIAL INTEREST THEREIN THAT IS A BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR WILL BE REQUIRED OR DEEMED TO REPRESENT, WARRANT AND AGREE THAT (I) NONE OF THE ISSUER, THE DEPOSITOR, THE SERVICER, THE TRUSTEE, THE OWNER TRUSTEE, THE TRUST DEPOSITOR, THE SELLER OR THE INITIAL PURCHASER (THE "TRANSACTION PARTIES") NOR ANY OF THEIR AFFILIATES, HAS PROVIDED ANY INVESTMENT ADVICE WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 3(21) OF ERISA TO THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR, OR TO ANY FIDUCIARY OR OTHER PERSON INVESTING THE ASSETS OF THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR ("FIDUCIARY"), IN CONNECTION WITH THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR'S ACQUISITION OF NOTES, AND (II) THE FIDUCIARY IS EXERCISING ITS OWN INDEPENDENT JUDGMENT IN EVALUATING THE TRANSACTION.

THE ISSUER HAS THE RIGHT, UNDER THE INDENTURE, TO COMPEL ANY BENEFICIAL OWNER OF AN INTEREST IN THIS NOTE THAT IS NOT BOTH (A) A QUALIFIED PURCHASER OR A CORPORATION, PARTNERSHIP, LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY OR OTHER ENTITY (OTHER THAN A TRUST) EACH SHAREHOLDER, PARTNER, MEMBER OR OTHER EQUITY OWNER OF WHICH IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND (B)(1) A QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER OR (2) A NON-U.S. PERSON IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN RELIANCE ON REGULATION S UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, TO SELL ITS INTEREST IN THIS NOTE, OR MAY SELL SUCH INTEREST ON BEHALF OF SUCH OWNER.

THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH THE PROPERLY COMPLETED AND SIGNED TAX CERTIFICATIONS (GENERALLY, IN THE CASE OF U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX, AN INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-9 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM) IN THE CASE OF A PERSON THAT IS A "UNITED STATES PERSON" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE OR THE APPROPRIATE INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-8 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM) IN THE CASE OF A PERSON THAT IS NOT A "UNITED STATES PERSON" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE) MAY RESULT IN WITHHOLDING FROM PAYMENTS IN RESPECT OF SUCH NOTE, INCLUDING U.S. FEDERAL WITHHOLDING OR BACK-UP WITHHOLDING.

EACH HOLDER OF THIS NOTE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND AGREED TO TREAT SUCH NOTE AS INDEBTEDNESS FOR U.S. FEDERAL, STATE AND LOCAL INCOME AND FRANCHISE TAX PURPOSES, EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY LAW.

THIS NOTE MAY BE ISSUED WITH ORIGINAL ISSUE DISCOUNT (“OID”) FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES. THE ISSUE PRICE, AMOUNT OF OID, ISSUE DATE AND YIELD TO MATURITY OF THIS NOTE MAY BE OBTAINED BY WRITING TO THE SERVICER.”

In addition, each Regulation S Global Note will include the following:

“THIS REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE IS A GLOBAL NOTE WHICH IS EXCHANGEABLE FOR INTERESTS IN OTHER GLOBAL NOTES SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH HEREIN AND IN THE INDENTURE (AS DEFINED HEREIN). EACH HOLDER OF THIS REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE (OR A BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP INTEREST THEREIN) MUST PROVIDE A WRITTEN CERTIFICATION TO THE ISSUER THAT SUCH HOLDER (OR BENEFICIAL OWNER) IS A “QUALIFIED PURCHASER” AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 AND MAY NOT TRANSFER ITS INTEREST IN SUCH NOTE UNLESS IT REASONABLY BELIEVES THAT THE TRANSFEREE IS ALSO A “QUALIFIED PURCHASER” AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940.

IN CONNECTION WITH THE OFFERING OF THE NOTES IN THE UNITED STATES FROM OUTSIDE OF THE UNITED STATES, UNTIL 40 DAYS AFTER THE ORIGINAL ISSUE DATE OF THE NOTES (THE “RESTRICTED PERIOD”), THE SALE, PLEDGE OR TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IS SUBJECT TO CERTAIN CONDITIONS AND RESTRICTIONS. THE HOLDER HEREOF, BY PURCHASING OR OTHERWISE ACQUIRING THIS NOTE, ACKNOWLEDGES THAT SUCH HOLDER IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER OR AN AFFILIATE OF THE ISSUER, AND THAT THIS NOTE HAS NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND AGREES FOR THE BENEFIT OF THE ISSUER THAT THIS NOTE MAY BE TRANSFERRED, RESOLD, PLEDGED OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED ONLY TO A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS OF THE STATES, TERRITORIES AND POSSESSIONS OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNING THE OFFER AND SALE OF SECURITIES, AND PRIOR TO THE EXPIRATION OF THE RESTRICTED PERIOD, ONLY (I) IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATION S UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR (II) PURSUANT TO AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT.”

In addition, each Global Note will include the following:

“THIS NOTE IS A GLOBAL NOTE WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY (“DTC”), A NEW YORK CORPORATION, 55 WATER STREET, NEW YORK, NEW YORK 10004, OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS NOTE MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN DTC OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN

THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE. UNLESS THIS NOTE IS PRESENTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC TO THE ISSUER OR THE REGISTRAR, AND ANY NOTE ISSUED IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF CEDE & CO. OR IN SUCH OTHER NAME AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC, AND ANY PAYMENT IS MADE TO CEDE & CO. OR TO SUCH OTHER ENTITY AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC, ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL BECAUSE THE REGISTERED OWNER, CEDE & CO., HAS AN INTEREST HEREIN.”

“Series” means 2018-1.

“Similar Law” has the meaning provided in Section 4.02(t).

“Super-Majority Noteholders” means the Noteholders evidencing more than 66 2/3% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of Notes.

“Transferee Letter” means the letter set forth in Exhibit D-1 to this Indenture.

“Trust Certificate” means a certificate evidencing ownership of the beneficial interest of a Certificateholder in the Issuer, substantially in the form of Exhibit A attached to the Trust Agreement.

“Trust Company” means Wilmington Trust, National Association (and any successor thereto or assign thereof), in its individual capacity, and any other Person who shall act as Owner Trustee under the Trust Agreement, in its individual capacity.

“Trust Indenture Act” or “TIA” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended from time to time, as in effect on any relevant date.

“Trustee” has the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“USA PATRIOT Act” means, collectively, the United States Uniting and Strengthening America By Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001, signed into law on and effective as of October 26, 2001, which, among other things, requires that financial institutions, a term that includes banks, broker-dealers and investment companies, establish and maintain compliance programs to guard against money laundering activities, and the laws, rules, regulations and executive orders in effect from time to time applicable to banking institutions and money laundering.

Section 1.02 Rules of Construction.

Unless the context otherwise requires:

- (i) a term has the meaning given to it;
- (ii) an accounting term not otherwise defined has the meaning given to it in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

- (iii) "or" is not exclusive;
- (iv) "including" means including without limitation;
- (v) words in the singular include the plural and words in the plural include the singular;
- (vi) any pronouns shall be deemed to cover all genders; and
- (vii) any agreement, instrument or statute defined or referred to herein or in any instrument or certificate delivered in connection herewith means such agreement, instrument or statute as from time to time amended, modified, waived or supplemented and includes (in the case of agreements or instruments) references to all attachments thereto and instruments incorporated therein; references to a Person are also to its permitted successors and assigns.

ARTICLE II THE NOTES

Section 2.01 Form.

The Notes, together with the Trustee's certificate of authentication, shall be in substantially the forms set forth as Exhibits A-1 and A-2 to this Indenture with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the appropriate Responsible Officers executing such Notes, as evidenced by their execution of the Notes. Any portion of the text of any Note may be set forth on the reverse thereof, with an appropriate reference thereto on the face of the Note.

The Notes shall be typewritten, printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods (with or without steel engraved borders), all as determined by the Responsible Officers executing such Notes, as evidenced by their execution of such Notes.

The terms of the Notes set forth in Exhibits A-1 and A-2 are part of the terms of this Indenture.

Section 2.02 Execution, Authentication and Delivery.

The Notes shall be executed on behalf of the Issuer by any of its Responsible Officers. The signature of any such Responsible Officer on the Notes may be manual or facsimile.

Notes bearing the manual or facsimile signature of individuals who were at any time Responsible Officers of the Issuer shall bind the Issuer, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Notes or did not hold such offices at the date of such Notes.

The Trustee shall upon receipt of an Issuer Order authenticate and deliver the Notes for original issue in an aggregate amount equal to the Initial Note Principal Balance.

Each Note shall be dated the date of its authentication. The Notes shall be issued in fully registered form in minimum initial denominations equal to the applicable Minimum Denomination and in integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess thereof; *provided* that one Note may be issued in a smaller multiple in excess of the minimum denomination.

No Note shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose, unless there appears on such Note a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein executed by the Trustee by the manual signature of one of its authorized signatories, and such certificate upon any Note shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Note has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 2.03 Opinions of Counsel.

On the Closing Date, the Trustee shall have received: (i) an Opinion of Counsel, with respect to securities law matters; (ii) an Opinion of Counsel, with respect to the tax status of the arrangement created by this Indenture and the tax treatment of the Notes; (iii) an Opinion of Counsel to the Issuer, with respect to the due authorization, valid execution and delivery of this Indenture and with respect to its binding effect on the Issuer; (iv) an Opinion of Counsel with respect to certain “true sale” and “non-consolidation” issues relating to Seller and Trust Depositor; and (v) an Opinion of Counsel with respect to certain trust and limited liability matters and with respect to certain “perfection and priority” issues.

**ARTICLE III
COVENANTS**

Section 3.01 Transaction Accounts.

The Trustee shall establish and maintain as required therein or herein, as applicable, the Lockbox Account, Collection Account, the Reserve Account, the Reinvestment Account and the Distribution Account specified in Sections 7.01, 7.02, 7.03, and 7.04 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. On the Closing Date, the Issuer will deposit, or cause to be deposited, an initial deposit of \$500,000 from proceeds of the issuance and sale of the Notes into the Reserve Account. Subject to the Priority of Payments, the Trustee shall make all payments of principal of and interest on the Notes, subject to Section 3.03 and as provided in Section 3.05, from moneys on deposit in the Distribution Account in accordance with the instructions of the Servicer pursuant to Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 3.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency.

The Issuer will maintain with the Trustee an office or agency where, subject to satisfaction of conditions set forth herein, Notes may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, and where notices and demands to or upon the Issuer in respect of the Notes and this Indenture may be served. The Issuer hereby initially appoints the Trustee to serve as its agent for the foregoing purposes. The Issuer will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and of any change in the location, of any such office or agency. If at any time the Issuer shall fail to maintain any such office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof (if such office or agency is no longer maintained with the Trustee), such surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Issuer hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such surrenders, notices and demands.

Section 3.03 Money for Payments To Be Held in Trust; Paying Agent.

The Issuer hereby appoints the Trustee to act as agent for the payment (the "Paying Agent") of principal and interest on the Notes and all other amounts payable pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement (including without limitation the Priority of Payments) and this Indenture. As provided in Section 3.01, all payments of amounts due and payable with respect to any Notes that are to be made from amounts withdrawn from the Distribution Account shall be made on behalf of the Issuer by the Paying Agent, and no amounts so withdrawn from the Distribution Account for payments of Notes shall be paid over to the Issuer except as provided in this Section 3.03 and in Section 3.05.

The Issuer may at any time and from time to time vary or terminate the appointment of any such agent or appoint any additional agents for any or all of such purposes; *provided* that no Paying Agent shall be appointed in a jurisdiction that subjects payments on the Notes to withholding tax *provided* that unless such agent has short-term debt rated "P-1" or the equivalent thereof by the Rating Agency it may not hold funds pursuant to this Indenture overnight. The Issuer shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee, the Rating Agency and the Noteholders of the appointment or termination of any such agent and of the location and any change in the location of any such office or agency.

By no later than 10:00 a.m. (New York, New York time) on the Business Day prior to each Payment Date, and by no later than 12:00 noon (New York, New York time) on any Redemption Date, as applicable, the Paying Agent (provided that sufficient funds therefor are available) shall deposit or cause to be deposited in the Distribution Account from amounts on deposit in the Collection Account an aggregate sum sufficient to pay the amounts then becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto and (unless the Trustee is the Paying Agent) shall promptly notify the Issuer in writing of its action or failure so to act.

The Issuer will cause each party other than the Trustee that it appoints as Paying Agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee (and if the Trustee acts as Paying Agent, it hereby so agrees), subject to the provisions of this Section 3.03, that such Paying Agent will:

- (i) hold all sums held by it for the payment of amounts due with respect to the Notes in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and pay such sums to such Persons as herein provided;
- (ii) at any time during the continuance of any Event of Default, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent;

(iii) immediately resign as Paying Agent and forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums held by it in trust for the payment of Notes if at any time it ceases to meet the standards required to be met by a Paying Agent at the time of its appointment; and

(iv) to the extent such Paying Agent is located in, or makes payments within, the United States, comply with all requirements of the Code with respect to the withholding from any payments made by it on any Notes of any applicable withholding taxes imposed thereon and with respect to any applicable reporting requirements in connection therewith.

The Issuer may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, by Issuer Order direct any Paying Agent to pay to the Trustee all sums held in trust by such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same trusts as those upon which the sums were held by such Paying Agent; and upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

Subject to applicable laws with respect to escheat of funds, any money held by the Paying Agent in trust for the payment of any amount due with respect to any Note and remaining unclaimed for two years after such amount has become due and payable shall be discharged from such trust and be paid to the Issuer on an Issuer Order; and the Holder of such Note shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Issuer for payment thereof (but only to the extent of the amounts so paid to the Issuer), and all liability of the Paying Agent with respect to such trust money shall thereupon cease; *provided* that the Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, shall at the expense and direction of the Issuer cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Issuer. The Trustee shall also adopt and employ, at the expense and direction of the Issuer, any other reasonable means of notification of such repayment (including, but not limited to, mailing notice of such repayment to Holders whose Notes have been called but have not been surrendered for redemption or whose right to or interest in moneys due and payable but not claimed is determinable from the records of the Trustee or of any other party acting as Paying Agent, at the last address of record for each such Holder).

Section 3.04 Existence; Separate Legal Existence.

(a) The Issuer will keep in full effect its existence, rights and franchises as a statutory trust under the laws of the State of Delaware (unless it becomes, or any successor Issuer hereunder is or becomes, organized under the laws of any other state or of the United States, in which case the Issuer will keep in full effect its existence, rights and franchises under the laws of such other jurisdiction) and will obtain and preserve its qualification to do business in each jurisdiction in which such qualification is or shall be necessary to protect the validity and enforceability of this Indenture, the Notes, the other Transaction Documents, the Indenture Collateral and each other instrument or agreement included in the Indenture Collateral.

(b) The Issuer shall:

(i) Maintain its own deposit account or accounts, separate from those of any Affiliate, with commercial banking institutions and in accordance with the terms of this Indenture. The funds of the Issuer will not be diverted to any other Person or for other than authorized uses of the Issuer.

(ii) Ensure that it is at all times in compliance with Section 4.01 of the Trust Agreement.

(iii) Ensure that, to the extent that it jointly contracts with any of its beneficial owners or Affiliates to do business with vendors or service providers or to share overhead expenses, the costs incurred in so doing shall be allocated fairly among such entities, and each such entity shall bear its fair share of such costs. To the extent that the Issuer contracts or does business with vendors or service providers when the goods and services provided are partially for the benefit of any other Person, the costs incurred in so doing shall be fairly allocated to or among such entities for whose benefit the goods and services are provided, and each such entity shall bear its fair share of such costs. All material transactions between Issuer and any of its Affiliates shall be only at fair market value on an arm's length basis and, as applicable thereto, in accordance with the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(iv) Conduct its affairs strictly in accordance with its organizational documents and observe all necessary, appropriate and customary statutory trust formalities, including, but not limited to, holding all regular and special board of trustees meetings, if any, as required under the terms of the Trust Agreement appropriate to authorize all statutory trust action, keeping separate and accurate minutes of its meetings, passing all resolutions or consents necessary to authorize actions taken or to be taken, and maintaining accurate and separate books, records and accounts, including, but not limited to, payroll and intercompany transaction accounts.

(v) Conduct its affairs in its own name, duly correct any known misunderstandings regarding its separate identity and shall not take any action or conduct its affairs in a manner that is likely to result in its separate existence being ignored or its assets and liabilities being substantively consolidated with any other Person in a bankruptcy, reorganization or other insolvency proceeding.

Section 3.05 Payment of Principal and Interest.

The Issuer will duly and punctually pay the principal of and interest on the Notes, in accordance with the terms of such Notes, this Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement (including the Priority of Payments therein). The Issuer will cause to be distributed all amounts on deposit in the Distribution Account on a Payment Date, or such other date selected by the Trustee pursuant to Section 5.04(b), deposited therein pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement for the benefit of the Notes, to the applicable Noteholders. Amounts properly withheld under the Code or any applicable state law by any Person from a payment to any Noteholder of interest and/or principal shall be considered as having been paid by the Issuer to such Noteholder for all purposes of this Indenture.

Section 3.06 Protection of Indenture Collateral.

(a) The Issuer intends the security interest Granted pursuant to this Indenture in favor of the Trustee on behalf of the Noteholders to be prior to all other liens in respect of the Indenture Collateral other than Permitted Liens, and the Issuer shall take or shall cause the Servicer to take all actions necessary to obtain and maintain, for the benefit of the Trustee on behalf of the Noteholders, a first lien on and a first priority, perfected security interest in the Indenture Collateral, subject to any Permitted Liens with respect thereto. In connection therewith, pursuant to Section 2.09 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Issuer shall cause to be delivered into the possession of the Trustee (or to the Custodian on behalf of the Trustee) as pledgee hereunder, indorsed in blank, any "instruments" (within the meaning of the UCC), not constituting part of chattel paper, evidencing any Loan which is part of the Indenture Collateral and all other portions of the Loan Files. The Trustee acknowledges and agrees that (i) it holds the Loan Assets delivered to it (or to the Custodian) (i) under the Sale and Contribution Agreement for the benefit of the Trust Depositor, and (ii) under the Sale and Servicing Agreement for the benefit of the Issuer, and that it holds the Indenture Collateral delivered to it (or the Custodian) pursuant to this Indenture for the benefit of the Noteholders. The Trustee (through the Custodian) agrees to maintain continuous possession of such delivered instruments and the Loan Files as pledgee hereunder until this Indenture shall have terminated in accordance with its terms or until, pursuant to the terms hereof or of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trustee is otherwise authorized to release such instrument from the Indenture Collateral. The Issuer will or will cause the Servicer from time to time to prepare (or shall cause to be prepared), execute and deliver all such supplements and amendments hereto and all such financing statements, continuation statements, instruments of further assurance and other instruments, and will take such other action necessary or advisable to:

- (i) maintain or preserve the lien and security interest (and the priority thereof) of this Indenture or carry out more effectively the purposes hereof;
- (ii) perfect, publish notice of or protect the validity of any Grant made or to be made by this Indenture;
- (iii) enforce any of the Loans transferred to the Issuer as and to the extent commercially reasonable and in accordance with the Sale and Servicing Agreement; or
- (iv) preserve and defend title to the Indenture Collateral and the rights of the Trustee and the Noteholders in such Indenture Collateral against the claims of all persons and parties.

Except as otherwise provided in or permitted by the Sale and Servicing Agreement or this Indenture, the Trustee shall not remove any portion of the Indenture Collateral held by it that consists of money or is evidenced by an instrument, certificate or other writing from the jurisdiction in which it was held at the date of the most recent Opinion of Counsel delivered pursuant to Section 3.07 (or from the jurisdiction in which it was held as described in the Opinion of Counsel delivered at the Closing Date pursuant to Section 3.07(a), if no Opinion of Counsel has yet been delivered pursuant to Section 3.07(b)) unless the Trustee shall have first received an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the lien and security interest created by this Indenture with respect to such property will continue to be maintained after giving effect to such action or actions.

The Issuer hereby designates the Trustee its agent and attorney-in-fact to execute any financing statement, continuation statement or other instrument required to be executed pursuant to this Section 3.06; *provided* that such designation shall not impose upon the Trustee any of the Issuer's or Servicer's obligations under this Indenture or the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 3.07 Opinions as to Indenture Collateral.

(a) On or before the Closing Date, the Issuer shall furnish to the Trustee an Opinion of Counsel either stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, such action has been taken with respect to the delivery of the Underlying Notes and any other requisite documents, and with respect to the execution and filing of any financing statements and continuation statements, as is necessary to perfect and make effective the lien and security interest of this Indenture and reciting the details of such action, or stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, no such action is necessary to make such lien and security interest effective.

(b) On or before June 30 in each calendar year, beginning in 2019, the Servicer on behalf of the Issuer will furnish to the Trustee and the Rating Agency an Opinion of Counsel at the expense of the Issuer either stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, such action has been taken with respect to any other requisite documents and with respect to the execution and filing of any financing statements and continuation statements as is necessary to maintain the perfection of the lien and security interest created by this Indenture and reciting the details of such action or stating that in the opinion of such counsel no such action is necessary to maintain the perfection of such lien and security interest. Such Opinion of Counsel shall also describe any other requisite documents and the execution and filing of any financing statements and continuation statements that will, in the opinion of such counsel, be required to maintain the lien and security interest of this Indenture until June 30 in the following calendar year.

Section 3.08 Furnishing of Rule 144A Information.

The Issuer will furnish, upon the written request of any Noteholder or of any owner of a beneficial interest therein, such information as is specified in paragraph (d)(4) of Rule 144A under the Securities Act (i) to such Noteholder or beneficial owner, (ii) to a prospective purchaser of such Note or interest therein who is a Qualified Institutional Buyer and a Qualified Purchaser designated by such Noteholder or beneficial owner, or (iii) to the Trustee for delivery to such Noteholder, beneficial owner or prospective purchaser, in order to permit compliance by such Noteholder or beneficial owner with Rule 144A in connection with the resale of such Note or beneficial interest therein by such Noteholder or beneficial owner in reliance on Rule 144A unless, at the time of such request, the Issuer is subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, or exempt from reporting pursuant to Rule 12g3-2(b) under the Exchange Act.

Section 3.09 Performance of Obligations; Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(a) The Issuer will punctually perform and observe all of its obligations and agreements contained in this Indenture, the other Transaction Documents and in the instruments and agreements included in the Indenture Collateral.

(b) The Issuer may contract with other Persons to assist it in performing its duties under this Indenture, the other Transaction Documents and the instruments and agreements included in the Indenture Collateral, and any performance of such duties by a Person identified to the Trustee in an Officer's Certificate of the Issuer shall be deemed to be action taken by the Issuer. Initially, the Issuer has contracted with the Servicer and the Administrator to assist the Issuer in performing its duties under this Indenture, the other Transaction Documents and the instruments and agreements included in the Indenture Collateral.

(c) The Issuer will not take any action or permit any action to be taken by others which would release any Person from any of such Person's covenants or obligations under any of the documents relating to the Loans or under any instrument included in the Indenture Collateral, or which would result in the amendment, hypothecation, subordination, termination or discharge of, or impair the validity or effectiveness of, any of the documents relating to the Loans or any such instrument, except such actions as the Servicer is expressly permitted to take in the Transaction Documents.

(d) If a Responsible Officer of the Issuer shall have knowledge of the occurrence of a Servicer Default, the Issuer shall promptly notify in writing the Trustee, the Backup Servicer and the Rating Agency thereof, and shall specify in such notice the action, if any, the Issuer is taking in respect of such Servicer Default. If such Servicer Default arises from the failure of the Servicer to perform any of its duties or obligations under the Sale and Servicing Agreement with respect to the Indenture Collateral, the Issuer may, and shall pursuant to direction of the Majority Noteholders, remedy such failure. So long as any such Servicer Default shall be continuing, the Trustee may, and shall pursuant to direction of the Super-Majority Noteholders, exercise its remedies set forth in Section 8.02 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. Unless granted or permitted by the Holders of the Notes to the extent provided in Article VIII of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Issuer may not waive any such Servicer Default or terminate the rights and powers of the Servicer under the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 3.10 Negative Covenants.

So long as any Notes are Outstanding, the Issuer shall not:

(i) except as expressly permitted by this Indenture or any other Transaction Document, sell, transfer, exchange or otherwise dispose of any portion the Indenture Collateral, unless directed to do so by the Trustee;

(ii) claim any credit on, or make any deduction from the principal or interest payable in respect of, the Notes (other than amounts properly withheld from such payments under the Code or applicable state law), or assert any claim against any present or former Noteholder by reason of the payment of the taxes levied or assessed upon the Issuer;

(iii) permit the validity or effectiveness of this Indenture to be impaired, or permit the lien of this Indenture to be amended, hypothecated, subordinated, terminated or discharged, or permit any Person to be released from any covenants or obligations with respect to the Notes under this Indenture except as may be expressly permitted hereby, permit any lien, charge, excise, claim, security interest, mortgage or other encumbrance (other than the lien of this Indenture or any other Transaction Document) to be created on or extend to or otherwise arise upon or burden the Indenture Collateral or any part thereof or any interest therein or the proceeds thereof (except for Permitted Liens) or permit the lien of this Indenture not to constitute a valid first priority security interest in the Indenture Collateral (subject to Permitted Liens);

(iv) except as contemplated in the Transaction Documents, dissolve or liquidate in whole or in part;

(v) engage in any activities other than financing, acquiring, owning, pledging and managing the Loans as contemplated by the Transaction Documents and activities incidental to those activities;

(vi) incur, assume or guarantee any indebtedness other than indebtedness evidenced by the Notes or indebtedness otherwise permitted by the Transaction Documents;

(vii) have any employees, it being understood that the Issuer's officers shall not be considered employees; or

(viii) establish, maintain, contribute to, or incur any liability in respect of any Plan or any similar such plan subject to Similar Law.

Section 3.11 Annual Statement as to Compliance.

The Issuer will deliver to the Trustee and the Rating Agency, within 90 days after the end of each calendar year (commencing with the calendar year ending December 31, 2019), an Officer's Certificate stating, as to the Person signing such Officer's Certificate, that:

(i) a review of the activities of the Issuer during such year and of its performance under this Indenture has been made under such Person's supervision or direction; and

(ii) to the best of such Person's knowledge, based on such review, the Issuer has complied with all conditions and covenants under this Indenture throughout such year, or, if there has been such a default in its compliance with any such condition or covenant, specifying each such default known to such Person and the nature and status thereof.

Section 3.12 [Reserved].

Section 3.13 Representations and Warranties Concerning the Loans.

The Issuer has pledged to the Trustee for the benefit of the Noteholders all of its rights under the Sale and Contribution Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement (except for the Excluded Property) and the Trustee has the benefit of the representations and warranties made by the Seller and the Trust Depositor in such documents concerning the Loans transferred into the Loan Assets and the right to enforce any remedy against the Seller and the Trust Depositor provided in the Sale and Contribution Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement, to the same extent as though such representations and warranties were made directly to the Trustee.

Section 3.14 Trustee's Review of Loan Files.

The Custodian, on behalf of the Trustee, agrees, for the benefit of the Noteholders, to review the Required Loan Documents that are part of the Loan Files as provided in Section 2.11 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 3.15 Sale and Servicing Agreement.

In order to facilitate the servicing of the Loans, the Trustee and the Issuer authorize the Servicer, in the name and on behalf of the Trustee and the Issuer, to perform its respective duties and obligations under the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the rights of the Trustee pursuant to the third sentence of Section 8.01 hereof. The Trustee agrees to perform its express obligations under the Sale and Servicing Agreement in accordance with the terms thereof subject to Section 6.01 hereof.

Section 3.16 Amendments to Sale and Servicing Agreement.

The Trustee may enter into any amendment or supplement to the Sale and Servicing Agreement only in accordance with Section 13.01 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The Trustee may, in its reasonable discretion, decline to enter into or consent to any such supplement or amendment if its own rights, duties or immunities shall be adversely affected in any material respect.

Section 3.17 Servicer as Agent and Bailee of Trustee.

(a) Solely for purposes of perfection under Section 9-313 of the UCC or other similar applicable law, rule or regulation of the state in which such property is held by the Servicer, the Trustee hereby acknowledges that the Servicer is acting as agent and bailee of the Trustee in holding any documents released to the Servicer pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement as well as any other items constituting a part of the Indenture Collateral which from time to time come into the possession of the Servicer. It is intended that, by the Servicer's execution and delivery of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trustee, as a secured party, will be deemed to have possession of such documents, such moneys and such other items for purposes of Section 9-313 of the UCC of the state in which such property is held by the Servicer.

(b) Solely for purposes of perfection under Section 9-313 of the UCC or other similar applicable law, rule or regulation of the state in which such property is held by the Trustee, if the transfer of the Loans and the other assets in the Indenture Collateral by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer is deemed to be a loan, the Custodian hereby acknowledges it is acting as agent and bailee of the Issuer in holding items constituting a part of the Indenture Collateral which from time to time come into the possession of the Trustee.

Section 3.18 Investment Company Act of 1940.

The Issuer shall not and the Trustee shall not knowingly take any action that would cause the Issuer or the pool of Indenture Collateral to be required to register as an "investment company" under the 1940 Act (or any successor or amendatory statute).

Section 3.19 Issuer May Consolidate, etc., Only on Certain Terms.

(a) The Issuer shall not consolidate or merge with or into any other Person, unless:

(i) the Person (if other than the Issuer) formed by or surviving such consolidation or merger shall be a Person organized and existing under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia and shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and interest on all Notes, and the performance or observance of every agreement and covenant of this Indenture, the Notes, the Trust Certificate and each other Transaction Document on the part of the Issuer to be performed or observed, all as provided herein and therein;

(ii) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing;

(iii) each Holder of a Note has consented in writing to such transaction (and notice thereof has been provided to the Rating Agency);

(iv) the Issuer shall have received written advice from Dechert LLP or an opinion of tax counsel of nationally recognized standing in the United States experiences in such matters (and shall have delivered copies thereof to the Trustee on which the Trustee may conclusively rely) to the effect that such transaction will not (1) cause the Issuer to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool, in each case, taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (2) cause the Notes to be deemed to have been sold or exchanged under Section 1001 of the Code or (3) cause any Notes that were characterized as indebtedness at the time of issuance to be characterized as other than indebtedness;

(v) any action that is necessary to maintain the lien and security interest created by this Indenture shall have been taken; and

(vi) the Issuer shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate and Opinion of Counsel (which may conclusively rely on the Officer's Certificate with respect to clauses (ii) and (iii) above and as to the taking of any action required by such Opinion of Counsel as it relates to clause (v) above) each stating that such consolidation or merger complies with this Section 3.19 and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

(b) Except as otherwise permitted hereunder or under the Transaction Documents, the Issuer shall not convey or transfer all or substantially all of its properties or assets, including those included in the Indenture Collateral, to any Person, unless:

(i) the Person that acquires by conveyance or transfer the properties and assets of the Issuer the conveyance or transfer of which is hereby restricted shall be a United States citizen or a Person organized and existing under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia, expressly assumes, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustee, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of and interest on all Notes, and the performance of each other Transaction Document, and the performance or observance of every agreement and covenant of this Indenture, the Notes, the Trust Certificate and each other Transaction Document on the part of the Issuer to be performed or observed, all as provided herein, expressly agrees by means of such supplemental indenture that all right, title and interest so conveyed or transferred shall be subject and subordinate to the rights of the Holders of the Notes as provided in the Transaction Documents, and unless otherwise provided in such supplemental indenture, expressly agrees to indemnify, defend and hold harmless the Issuer against and from any loss, liability or expense arising under or related to this Indenture and the Notes arising from such transfer;

(ii) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing;

(iii) each Holder of a Note has consented in writing to such transaction (and notice thereof has been provided to Rating Agency);

(iv) the Issuer shall have received written advice from Dechert LLP or an opinion of tax counsel of nationally recognized standing in the United States experienced in such matters (and shall have delivered copies thereof to the Trustee on which the Trustee shall be entitled to rely) to the effect that such transaction will not (1) cause the Issuer to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool, in each case, taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (2) cause the Notes to be deemed to have been sold or exchanged under Section 1001 of the Code or (3) cause any Notes that were characterized as indebtedness at the time of issuance to be characterized as other than indebtedness;

(v) any action that is necessary to maintain the lien and security interest created by this Indenture shall have been taken; and

(vi) the Issuer shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate and Opinion of Counsel (which may conclusively rely on a certificate of the transferee as to the transferee's citizenship, if applicable, and on the Officer's Certificate with respect to clauses (ii) and (iii) above and to the taking of any action required by such Opinion of Counsel as it relates to clause (v) above) each stating that such conveyance or transfer, and such supplemental indenture, comply with this Section 3.19 and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

Section 3.20 Successor or Transferee.

(a) Upon any consolidation or merger of the Issuer in accordance with Section 3.19(a), the Person formed by or surviving such consolidation or merger (if other than the Issuer) shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Issuer under this Indenture with the same effect as if such Person had been named as the Issuer herein.

(b) Upon a conveyance or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets and properties of the Issuer pursuant to Section 3.19(b), the Issuer will be released from every covenant and agreement of this Indenture to be observed or performed on the part of the Issuer with respect to the Notes immediately upon the delivery of written notice to the Trustee stating that the Issuer is to be so released.

Section 3.21 No Other Business.

The Issuer shall not engage in any business other than financing, purchasing, owning, selling, managing and enforcing the Loans and Related Property, including through any subsidiaries permitted pursuant to Section 5.10 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, in the manner contemplated by this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents and all activities incidental thereto, issuing the Notes and the Trust Certificate and as otherwise expressly permitted in the Trust Agreement or the other Transaction Documents.

Section 3.22 No Borrowing; Use of Proceeds.

The Issuer shall not issue, incur, assume, guarantee or otherwise become liable, directly or indirectly, for any indebtedness except for the Notes and any other indebtedness permitted by the Transaction Documents. In consideration of the Trust Depositor's transfer of the Initial Loans to the Issuer, the Issuer will transfer the net cash proceeds from the sale of the Notes to the Trust Depositor, together with the Trust Certificate. The Trust Depositor will use a portion of the net proceeds to acquire the Initial Loans from the Seller on the Closing Date.

Section 3.23 Guarantees, Loans, Advances and Other Liabilities.

Except as contemplated by this Indenture or the other Transaction Documents, the Issuer shall not make any loan or advance or credit to, or guarantee (directly or indirectly or by an instrument having the effect of assuring another's payment or performance on any obligation or capability of so doing or otherwise), endorse or otherwise become contingently liable, directly or indirectly, in connection with the obligations, stocks or dividends of, or own, purchase, repurchase or acquire (or agree contingently to do so) any stock, obligations, assets or securities of, or any other interest in, or make any capital contribution to, any other Person, other than any subsidiary established by the Issuer pursuant to Section 5.10 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 3.24 Capital Expenditures.

The Issuer shall not make any expenditure (by long-term or operating lease or otherwise) for capital assets (either realty or personalty).

Section 3.25 Representations and Warranties of the Issuer.

The Issuer represents and warrants as of the date hereof and as of the date of any subsequent acquisition of a Substitute Loan, as applicable, as follows:

(a) Power and Authority. It has full power, authority and legal right to execute, deliver and perform its obligations as Issuer under this Indenture and the Notes (the foregoing documents, the “Issuer Documents”) and under each of the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party.

(b) Due Authorization and Binding Obligation. The execution and delivery of the Issuer Documents and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party, and the consummation of the transactions provided for therein have been duly authorized by all necessary action on its part. Each of the Issuer Documents and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Issuer and is enforceable in accordance with its terms, except as enforcement of such terms may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors’ rights generally and by the availability of equitable remedies.

(c) No Conflict. The execution and delivery of the Issuer Documents and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party, the performance of the transactions contemplated thereby and the fulfillment of the terms thereof will not conflict with, result in any material breach of any of the terms and provisions of, or constitute (with or without notice or lapse of time or both) a default under, any indenture, contract, agreement, mortgage, deed of trust, or other instrument to which the Issuer is a party or by which it or any of its property is bound.

(d) No Violation. The execution and delivery of the Issuer Documents and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party, the performance of the transactions contemplated thereby and the fulfillment of the terms thereof will not conflict with or violate, in any material respect, any Applicable Law.

(e) All Consents Required. All approvals, authorizations, consents, orders or other actions of any Person or any Governmental Authority required in connection with the execution and delivery of the Issuer Documents and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party, the performance of the transactions contemplated thereby and the fulfillment of the terms thereof have been obtained.

(f) No Proceedings. No litigation or administrative proceeding of or before any court, tribunal or governmental body is currently pending, or to the knowledge of the Issuer, threatened, against the Issuer or any of its respective properties or with respect to the Issuer Documents or any other Transaction Document to which the Issuer is a party that, if adversely determined, would have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Issuer or the transactions contemplated by the Issuer Documents or any of the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party.

(g) Organization and Good Standing. The Issuer is a statutory trust duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and has the requisite power to own its assets and to transact the business in which it is currently engaged, and had at all relevant times, and now has, all necessary power, authority and legal right under its organizational documents and under Applicable Law to acquire, own and pledge the Indenture Collateral.

(h) 1940 Act. The Issuer is not an “investment company” within the meaning of the 1940 Act. The Issuer will rely on an exclusion or exemption from the definition of “investment company” under the 1940 Act contained in Section 3(c)7 thereof and Rule 3a-7 thereof, and will qualify for the “loan securitization” exemption set forth in the implementing regulations of the Volcker Rule. The Issuer is not a “covered fund” for purposes of the regulations adopted to implement Section 619 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (such statutory provision together with such implementing regulations, the “Volcker Rule”).

(i) Location. The Issuer is located (within the meaning of Article 9 of the UCC) in the State of Delaware. The Issuer agrees that it will not change its location (within the meaning of Article 9 of the UCC) without at least 30 days prior written notice to the Seller, the Servicer, the Trustee and the Rating Agency.

(j) Security Interest in Collateral.

(i) This Indenture creates a valid, continuing and enforceable security interest (as defined in the applicable UCC) in the Indenture Collateral in favor of the Trustee, which security interest is prior to all other Liens (except for Permitted Liens), and is enforceable as such against creditors of and purchasers from the Issuer;

(ii) the Indenture Collateral constitutes “general intangibles,” “instruments,” “accounts,” “investment property,” or “chattel paper,” within the meaning of the applicable UCC;

(iii) the Issuer owns and has good and marketable title to the Indenture Collateral free and clear of any Lien (other than Permitted Liens), claim or encumbrance of any Person;

(iv) the Issuer has received all consents and approvals required by the terms of the Indenture Collateral to the pledge of the Indenture Collateral hereunder to the Trustee;

(v) the Issuer has caused the filing of all appropriate financing statements in the proper filing office in the appropriate jurisdictions under Applicable Law in order to perfect the security interest in the Indenture Collateral granted to the Trustee under this Indenture;

(vi) other than the security interest granted by the Issuer pursuant to this Indenture and any Permitted Liens, the Issuer has not pledged, assigned, sold, granted a security interest in or otherwise conveyed any of the Indenture Collateral. The Issuer has not authorized the filing of and is not aware of any financing statements against the Issuer that include a description of collateral covering the Indenture Collateral other than any financing statement (A) relating to the security interest granted by the Issuer under this Indenture, or (B) that has been terminated or for which a release or partial release has been filed. The Issuer is not aware of the filing of any judgment or tax Lien filings against the Issuer;

(vii) all original executed copies of each Underlying Note that constitute or evidence the Indenture Collateral have been delivered to and are in the possession of the Trustee;

(viii) the Issuer has received a written acknowledgment from the Trustee that the Trustee or its bailee is holding the Underlying Notes that constitute or evidence the Indenture Collateral solely on behalf of and for the benefit of the Securityholders; and

none of the Underlying Notes that constitute or evidence the Indenture Collateral has any marks or notations indicating that they have been pledged, assigned or otherwise conveyed to any Person other than the Issuer and the Trustee.

The representations and warranties in Section 3.25(j) shall survive the termination of this Indenture.

Section 3.26 Restricted Payments.

The Issuer shall not, directly or indirectly, (i) pay any dividend or make any distribution (by reduction of capital or otherwise), whether in cash, property, securities or a combination thereof, to the Owner Trustee or any owner of a beneficial interest in the Issuer or otherwise with respect to any ownership or equity interest or security in or of the Issuer, (ii) redeem, purchase, retire or otherwise acquire for value any such ownership or equity interest or security or (iii) set aside or otherwise segregate any amounts for any such purpose; *provided* that the Issuer may make, or cause to be made, (w) distributions to the Owner Trustee, the Trust Depositor and the Certificateholder as contemplated by, and to the extent funds are available for such purpose under, the Trust Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement, (x) payments to the Servicer and/or Trust Depositor pursuant to the terms of the Sale and Servicing Agreement or the other Transaction Documents and (y) payments to the Trustee and other Persons entitled thereto pursuant to terms of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The Issuer will not, directly or indirectly, make payments to or distributions from the Distribution Account except in accordance with this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents.

Section 3.27 Notice of Events of Default, Amendments and Waivers.

Promptly, but in any case no later than within two (2) Business Days of discovery by a Responsible Officer of the Issuer (or receipt of notice thereof by the Issuer), the Issuer shall furnish to the Trustee (with a copy to the Backup Servicer), (i) in the case of any proposed or pending litigation or investigation relating to it by any governmental authority or any legal

proceeding which involve or may involve the possibility of materially and adversely affecting the Issuer, a written notice specifying the nature of such litigation, investigation or proceeding or the action the Issuer is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto, (ii) written notice of the occurrence of any Event of Default or Servicer Default or of any situation which the Issuer reasonably expects to develop into an Event of Default or Servicer Default, or (iii) written notice of any event or occurrence (including changes in applicable law) of which the Servicer or Issuer (as applicable) has knowledge that may reasonably affect, materially and adversely, the ability of the Servicer to service the Loans or to otherwise perform and carry out its duties, responsibilities and obligations under the Transaction Documents, provided, that in the case of any notice required pursuant to (ii) or (iii) above, the Servicer or the Issuer, as applicable, shall provide a copy of such notice to the Rating Agency. The Trustee shall make available to Holders any notice delivered to it pursuant to (i), (ii) or (iii) above (including posting to its website), but shall not be under any obligation to review or evaluate any such notice, or to investigate or inquire further into any matter described therein.

Section 3.28 Further Instruments and Acts.

Upon request of the Trustee, the Issuer will execute and deliver such further instruments and do such further acts as may be reasonably necessary or proper to carry out more effectively the purpose of this Indenture (provided nothing herein shall be deemed to impose an obligation on the Trustee to so request).

Section 3.29 Statements to Noteholders.

The Trustee shall make available on its secure internet website to each Noteholder and the Rating Agency, the Monthly Reports prepared by the Servicer pursuant to Article IX of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The Trustee shall make available to the Noteholders, the parties to the Transaction Documents and the Rating Agency, via the Trustee's internet website, a copy of the Transaction Documents, each Monthly Report and, with the consent or at the direction of the Trust Depositor, such other information regarding the Notes and/or the Loans as the Trustee may have in its possession or as may be provided to the Trustee by the Servicer or the Trust Depositor, but only with the use of its secured internet website; *provided* the Trustee shall have no obligation to provide such information described in this Section 3.29 until it has received the requisite information from the Trust Depositor or the Servicer. The Trustee will make no representation or warranties as to the accuracy or completeness of such documents posted to its website and will assume no responsibility therefor.

The Trustee's secure internet website shall be initially located at <http://pivot.usbank.com> or at such other address as shall be specified by the Trustee from time to time in writing to the Noteholders, the parties to the Transaction Documents and the Issuer (who shall promptly forward the same to the Rating Agency). In connection with providing access to the Trustee's internet website, the Trustee shall (other than with respect to the parties to the Transaction Documents and the Rating Agency) require registration and the acceptance of a disclaimer. The Trustee shall be permitted to change the method by which the Monthly Reports are distributed in order to make such distributions more convenient and/or more accessible to the Holders. The Trustee shall not be liable for the dissemination of information in accordance with this Indenture.

Section 3.30 Grant of Substitute Loans and Additional Loans

In consideration of the delivery or acquisition of Loans transferred on each Substitute Loan Cutoff Date or each Additional Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable, pursuant to and in accordance with the terms of [Section 2.04](#), [Section 2.06](#) or [Section 2.07](#), as applicable, of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Issuer grants to the Trustee a security interest in all of its right, title and interest in the Loans transferred on such Substitute Loan Cutoff Date or such Additional Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable, and simultaneously with the transfer of the Substitute Loans and Additional Loans, as applicable, the Issuer will cause the related Loan File to be delivered to the Trustee or the Custodian on its behalf.

ARTICLE IV
THE NOTES; SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE

Section 4.01 The Notes.

The Notes shall be registered initially in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC. Beneficial Owners will hold interests in such Notes through the book-entry facilities of DTC in minimum denominations equal to the applicable Minimum Denomination for such Notes.

The Notes shall, on original issue, be executed on behalf of the Issuer by the Owner Trustee, not in its individual capacity but solely as Owner Trustee, authenticated and delivered by the Trustee upon receipt of an Issuer Order.

Section 4.02 Registration of Transfer and Exchange of Notes.

(a) The Trustee shall cause to be kept a Note Register (the "[Note Register](#)") in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Issuer shall provide for the registration of Notes and the registration of transfers and exchanges of Notes as herein provided. The Trustee shall be "[Note Registrar](#)" for the purpose of registering Notes and transfers of Notes as herein provided. The Note Register shall contain the name, remittance instructions, as well as the Series and the number in the Series.

(b) Each Note shall be issued in minimum denominations of not less than the Minimum Denomination, so that on the Closing Date the sum of the denominations of all outstanding Notes shall equal the applicable Initial Note Principal Balance. On the Closing Date and pursuant to an Issuer Order, the Trustee will execute and authenticate (i) one or more Global Notes and/or (ii) Physical Notes all in an aggregate principal amount that shall equal the Initial Note Principal Balance.

(c) The Global Notes (i) shall be delivered by the Issuer to DTC or, pursuant to DTC's instructions, shall be delivered by the Issuer on behalf of DTC to and deposited with the DTC Custodian, and in each case shall be registered in the name of Cede & Co. and (ii) with respect to the Rule 144A Global Notes, shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect:

"Unless this Note is presented by an authorized representative of The Depository Trust Company, a New York corporation ("[DTC](#)"), to the Note Registrar or its agent for registration of

transfer, exchange or payment, and any Note issued is registered in the name of Cede & Co. or in such other name as is requested by an authorized representative of DTC (and any payment is made to Cede & Co. or to such other entity as is requested by an authorized representative of DTC), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL inasmuch as the registered owner hereof, Cede & Co., has an interest herein.”

The Global Notes may be deposited with such other depository as the Issuer may from time to time designate, and shall bear such legend as may be appropriate; *provided* that such successor depository maintains a book-entry system that qualifies to be treated as “registered form” under Section 163(f) (3) of the Code.

The Issuer is hereby authorized to execute and deliver a Letter of Representations with DTC relating to the Notes.

(d) With respect to Notes registered in the Note Register in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, the Issuer, the Servicer, the Owner Trustee (as such and in its individual capacity) and the Trustee shall have no responsibility or obligation to Direct or Indirect Participants or Beneficial Owners for which DTC holds Notes from time to time as a Depository. Without limiting the immediately preceding sentence, the Issuer, the Servicer, the Owner Trustee (as such and in its individual capacity), and the Trustee shall have no responsibility or obligation with respect to (i) the accuracy of the records of DTC, Cede & Co., or any Direct or Indirect Participant with respect to the ownership interest in the Notes, (ii) the delivery to any Direct or Indirect Participant or any other Person, other than a registered Holder, of a Note, (iii) the payment to any Direct or Indirect Participant or any other Person, other than a registered Holder of a Note as shown in the Note Register, of any amount with respect to any distribution of principal or interest on the Notes or (iv) the making of book-entry transfers among Participants of DTC with respect to Notes registered in the Note Register in the name of the nominee of DTC. No Person other than a registered Holder of a Note as shown in the Note Register shall receive a physical Note evidencing such Note.

(e) Upon delivery by DTC to the Trustee of written notice to the effect that DTC has determined to substitute a new nominee in place of Cede & Co., and subject to the provisions hereof with respect to the payment of distributions by the mailing of checks or drafts to the registered Holders of Notes appearing as registered Owners in the Note Register on a Record Date, the name “Cede & Co.” in this Indenture shall refer to such new nominee of DTC.

(f) In the event that (i) DTC or the Servicer advises the Trustee in writing that DTC is no longer willing or able to discharge properly its responsibilities as nominee and depository with respect to the Global Notes and the Servicer is unable to locate a qualified successor or (ii) the Servicer at its sole option elects to terminate the book-entry system through DTC, the Global Notes shall no longer be restricted to being registered in the Note Register in the name of Cede & Co. (or a successor nominee) as nominee of DTC. At that time, the Servicer may determine that the Global Notes shall be registered in the name of and deposited with a successor depository operating a global book-entry system, as may be acceptable to the Servicer, or such depository’s agent or designee but, if the Servicer does not select such alternative global book-entry system,

then upon surrender to the Note Registrar of the Global Notes by DTC, accompanied by the registration instructions from DTC for registration, the Trustee shall at the Servicer's expense authenticate Physical Notes. Neither the Servicer nor the Trustee shall be liable for any delay in DTC's delivery of such instructions and may conclusively rely on, and shall be protected in relying on, such instructions. Upon the issuance of Physical Notes, the Trustee, the Note Registrar, the Servicer, the Paying Agent and the Issuer shall recognize the Holders of the Physical Notes as Noteholders hereunder.

(g) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture to the contrary, so long as any Global Notes are registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, all distributions of principal and interest on such Global Notes and all notices with respect to such Global Notes shall be made and given, respectively, in the manner provided in the Letter of Representations.

(h) Subject to the preceding paragraphs, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Note at the office of the Note Registrar and, upon satisfaction of the conditions set forth below, the Issuer shall execute, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, a new Note and of the same aggregate Percentage Interest and dated the date of authentication by the Trustee. The Note Registrar shall maintain a record of any such transfer and deliver it to the Issuer, Servicer or Trustee upon request.

(i) At the option of the Noteholders, Notes may be exchanged for other Notes in authorized denominations, upon surrender of the Notes to be exchanged at the Corporate Trust Office. Whenever any Notes are so surrendered for exchange, the Issuer shall execute the Notes which the Noteholder making the exchange is entitled to receive. Every Note presented or surrendered for transfer or exchange shall be accompanied by wiring instructions, if applicable, in the form of Exhibit C. The preceding provisions of this section notwithstanding, the Issuer shall not be required to make and the Note Registrar shall not register transfers or exchanges of Notes called for redemption.

(j) No service charge shall be made for any transfer or exchange of Notes, but prior to transfer the Note Registrar may require payment by the transferor of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any transfer or exchange of Notes.

All Notes surrendered for payment, transfer and exchange or redemption shall be marked canceled by the Note Registrar and retained and destroyed in accordance with its policies and procedures.

(k) By acceptance of a Physical Note, whether upon original issuance or subsequent transfer, each Holder of such a Note acknowledges the restrictions on the transfer of such Note set forth in the Securities Legend and agrees that it will transfer such Note only as provided herein. In addition to the provisions of Sections 4.02(m) and (n), the following restrictions shall apply with respect to the transfer and registration of transfer of a Physical Note to a transferee that takes delivery in the form of a Physical Note:

(i) The Note Registrar shall register the transfer of a Physical Note if the requested transfer is being made to a transferee who has provided the Note Registrar with a Rule 144A Certification or to a transferee who is an Affiliate of the Seller in a transfer which otherwise complies with Section 4.02(s); or

(ii) The Note Registrar shall register the transfer of any Physical Note if (x) the transferor has advised the Note Registrar in writing that the Note is being transferred to a Person that is both an Institutional Accredited Investor and a Qualified Purchaser; (y) prior to the transfer the transferee furnishes to the Note Registrar a Transferee Letter; and (z) such transfer otherwise complies with Section 4.02(s).

(l) Subject to Section 4.02(n), so long as a Global Note remains outstanding and is held by or on behalf of DTC, transfers of beneficial interests in the Global Note, or transfers by Holders of Physical Notes to transferees that take delivery in the form of beneficial interests in the Global Note, may be made only in accordance with this Section 4.02(l) and in accordance with the rules of DTC.

(i) Rule 144A Global Note to Regulation S Global Note During the Distribution Compliance Period If, during the Distribution Compliance Period, a Beneficial Owner of an interest in a Rule 144A Global Note wishes at any time to transfer its beneficial interest in such Rule 144A Global Note to a Person who wishes to take delivery thereof in the form of a beneficial interest in a Regulation S Global Note, such Beneficial Owner may, in addition to complying with all applicable rules and procedures of DTC and Clearstream or Euroclear applicable to transfers by their respective participants (the "Applicable Procedures"), transfer or cause the transfer of such beneficial interest for an equivalent beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note only upon compliance with the provisions of this Section 4.02(l)(i). Upon receipt by the Note Registrar at its Corporate Trust Office of (1) written instructions given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures from a Depository Participant directing the Note Registrar to credit or cause to be credited to another specified Depository Participant's account a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note in an amount equal to the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note to be transferred, (2) a written order given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures containing information regarding the account of the DTC Participant (and the Euroclear or Clearstream account, as the case may be) to be credited with, and the account of the DTC Participant to be debited for, such beneficial interest, and (3) a certificate in the form of Exhibit E hereto given by the Beneficial Owner that is transferring such interest, the Note Registrar shall instruct DTC to reduce the denomination of the Rule 144A Global Note by the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note to be so transferred and, concurrently with such reduction, to increase the denomination of the Regulation S Global Note by the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note to be so transferred, and to credit or cause to be credited to the account of the Person specified in such instructions (who shall be a Depository Participant acting for or on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, or both, as the case may be) a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note having a Note balance equal to the amount by which the denomination of the Rule 144A Global Note was reduced upon such transfer.

(ii) Rule 144A Global Note to Regulation S Global Note After the Distribution Compliance Period If, after the Distribution Compliance Period, a Beneficial Owner of an interest in a Rule 144A Global Note wishes at any time to transfer its beneficial interest in such Rule 144A Global Note to a Person who wishes to take delivery thereof in the form of a beneficial interest in a Regulation S Global Note, such Holder may, in addition to complying with all Applicable Procedures, transfer or cause the transfer of such beneficial interest for an equivalent beneficial interest in a Regulation S Global Note only upon compliance with the provisions of this Section 4.02(l)(ii). Upon receipt by the Note Registrar at its Corporate Trust Office of (1) written instructions given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures from a Depository Participant directing the Note Registrar to credit or cause to be credited to another specified Depository Participant's account a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note in an amount equal to the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note to be transferred, (2) a written order given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures containing information regarding the account of the DTC Participant (and, in the case of a transfer pursuant to and in accordance with Regulation S, the Euroclear or Clearstream account, as the case may be) to be credited with, and the account of the DTC Participant to be debited for, such beneficial interest, and (3) a certificate in the form of Exhibit F hereto given by the Beneficial Owner that is transferring such interest, the Note Registrar shall instruct DTC to reduce the denomination of the Rule 144A Global Note by the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note to be so transferred and, concurrently with such reduction, to increase the denomination of the Regulation S Global Note by the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note to be so transferred, and to credit or cause to be credited to the account of the Person specified in such instructions (who shall be a Depository Participant acting for or on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, or both, as the case may be) a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note having a Note balance equal to the amount by which the denomination of the Rule 144A Global Note was reduced upon such transfer.

(iii) Regulation S Global Note to Rule 144A Global Note If the Beneficial Owner of an interest in a Regulation S Global Note wishes at any time to transfer its beneficial interest in such Regulation S Global Note to a Person who wishes to take delivery thereof in the form of a beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note, such Holder may, in addition to complying with all Applicable Procedures, transfer or cause the transfer of such beneficial interest for an equivalent beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note only upon compliance with the provisions of this Section 4.02(l)(iii). Upon receipt by the Note Registrar at its Corporate Trust Office of (1) written instructions given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures from a Depository Participant directing the Note Registrar to credit or cause to be credited to another specified Depository Participant's account a beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note in an amount equal to the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note to be transferred, (2) a written order given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures containing information regarding the account of the DTC Participant to be credited with, and the account of the DTC Participant (or, if such account is held for Euroclear or Clearstream, the Euroclear or Clearstream account, as the case may be) to be debited for such beneficial interest, and (3) with respect to a transfer of a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note for a beneficial interest in the related Rule 144A Global Note (i) during the Distribution Compliance Period, a certificate in the form of Exhibit G hereto given by the Beneficial Owner, or (ii) after the Distribution Compliance Period, a Rule 144A Certification from the transferee of such interest to the effect that

such transferee is a Qualified Institutional Buyer and a Qualified Purchaser, the Note Registrar shall instruct DTC to reduce the denomination of the Regulation S Global Note by the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note to be transferred and, concurrently with such reduction, to increase the denomination of the Rule 144A Global Note by the Note balance of the beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note to be so transferred, and to credit or cause to be credited to the account of the Person specified in such instructions (who shall be a Depository Participant acting for or on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, or both, as the case may be) a beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note having a Note balance equal to the amount by which the denomination of the Regulation S Global Note was reduced upon such transfer.

(iv) Transfers Within Regulation S Global Notes During Distribution Compliance Period If, during the Distribution Compliance Period, the Beneficial Owner of an interest in a Regulation S Global Note wishes at any time to transfer its beneficial interest in such Regulation S Global Note to a Person who wishes to take delivery thereof in the form of a Regulation S Global Note, such Beneficial Owner may transfer or cause the transfer of such beneficial interest for an equivalent beneficial interest in such Regulation S Global Note only upon compliance with the provisions of this Section 4.02(1)(iv) and all Applicable Procedures. Upon receipt by the Note Registrar at its Corporate Trust Office of (1) written instructions given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures from a Depository Participant directing the Note Registrar to credit or cause to be credited to another specified Depository Participant's account a beneficial interest in such Regulation S Global Note in an amount equal to the Note balance of the beneficial interest to be transferred, (2) a written order given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures containing information regarding the account of the DTC Participant to be credited with (or, if such account is held for Euroclear or Clearstream, the Euroclear or Clearstream account, as the case may be), and the account of the DTC Participant (or, if such account is held for Euroclear or Clearstream, the Euroclear or Clearstream account, as the case may be) to be debited for, such beneficial interest and (3) a certificate in the form of Exhibit H hereto given by the transferor, the Note Registrar shall instruct DTC to credit or cause to be credited to the account of the Person specified in such instructions (who shall be a Depository Participant acting for or on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, or both, as the case may be) a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note having a Note balance equal to the amount specified in such instructions by which the account to be debited was reduced upon such transfer. The Note Registrar shall not be required to monitor compliance by Beneficial Owners with the provisions of this Section 4.02(1)(iv).

(m) Transfers of Interests in Global Notes to Physical Notes Any and all transfers from a Global Note to a transferee wishing to take delivery in the form of a Physical Note will require the transferee to take delivery subject to the restrictions on the transfer of such Physical Note described on the face of such Note, and such transferee agrees that it will transfer such Physical Note only as provided therein and herein. No such transfer shall be made and the Note Registrar shall not register any such transfer unless such transfer is made in accordance with this Section 4.02(m) or is made to an Affiliate of the Seller in a transfer which otherwise complies with Section 4.02(s).

(i) Transfers of a beneficial interest in a Global Note to a Person who is both an Institutional Accredited Investor and a Qualified Purchaser will require delivery of such Note to the transferee in the form of a Physical Note and the Note Registrar shall register such transfer only if prior to the transfer such transferee furnishes to the Note Registrar (1) a Transferee Letter to the effect that the transfer is being made to an Institutional Accredited Investor and a Qualified Purchaser in accordance with an applicable exemption under the Securities Act, and (2) an Opinion of Counsel acceptable to the Trustee that such transfer is in compliance with the Securities Act.

(ii) Upon acceptance for exchange or transfer of a beneficial interest in a Global Note for a Physical Note, as provided herein, the Note Registrar shall endorse on the schedule affixed to the related Global Note Registrar (or on a continuation of such schedule affixed to such Global Note Registrar and made a part thereof) an appropriate notation evidencing the date of such exchange or transfer and a decrease in the denomination of such Global Note equal to the Note balance of such Physical Note issued in exchange therefor or upon transfer thereof. Unless determined otherwise by the Servicer and the Issuer in accordance with applicable law, a Physical Note issued upon transfer of or exchange for a beneficial interest in the Global Note shall bear the Securities Legend.

(n) Transfers of Physical Notes to the Global Notes If a Holder of a Physical Note wishes at any time to transfer such Note to a Person who wishes to take delivery thereof in the form of a beneficial interest in the related Regulation S Global Note or the related Rule 144A Global Note, such transfer may be effected only in accordance with the Applicable Procedures and this Section 4.02(n). Upon receipt by the Note Registrar at the Corporate Trust Office of (1) the Physical Note to be transferred with an instrument of assignment and transfer, (2) written instructions given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures from the Holder of such Physical Note directing the Note Registrar to credit or cause to be credited to the applicable Participant's account a beneficial interest in such Regulation S Global Note or such Rule 144A Global Note, as the case may be, in an amount equal to the Note balance of the Physical Note to be so transferred, (3) a written order given in accordance with the Applicable Procedures containing information regarding the account of the DTC Participant (and, in the case of any transfer pursuant to Regulation S, the Euroclear or Clearstream account, as the case may be) to be credited with such beneficial interest, and (4) (x) a certificate in the form of Exhibit E or Exhibit H, as applicable, hereto, given by the Holder of such Physical Note, if delivery is to be taken in the form of a beneficial interest in the Regulation S Global Note or (y) a Rule 144A Certification from the transferee to the effect that such transferee is a Qualified Institutional Buyer who is a Qualified Purchaser, if delivery is to be taken in the form of a beneficial interest in the Rule 144A Global Note, the Note Registrar shall cancel such Physical Note, execute and deliver a new Physical Note for that portion, if any, of the Note balance of the Physical Note not so transferred, registered in the name of the Holder, and the Note Registrar shall instruct DTC to increase the denomination of the Regulation S Global Note or the Rule 144A Global Note, as the case may be, by the Note balance of the Physical Note to be so transferred, and to credit or cause to be credited to the account of the Person specified in such instructions (who, in the case of any increase in the Regulation S Global Note during the Distribution Compliance Period, shall be a Depository Participant acting for or on behalf of Euroclear or Clearstream, or both, as the case may be) a corresponding Note balance of the Rule 144A Global Note or the Regulation S Global Note, as the case may be.

Under no circumstances may an Institutional Accredited Investor that is not a Qualified Institutional Buyer take delivery in the form of a beneficial interest in a Global Note.

(o) An exchange of a beneficial interest in a Global Note for a Physical Note or Notes, an exchange of a Physical Note or Notes for a beneficial interest in a Global Note and an exchange of a Physical Note or Notes for another Physical Note or Notes (in each case, whether or not such exchange is made in anticipation of subsequent transfer, and in the case of the Global Notes, so long as the Global Notes remain outstanding and are held by or on behalf of DTC), may be made only in accordance with this Section 4.02 and in accordance with the rules of DTC and Applicable Procedures (to the extent applicable).

(p) (i) Upon acceptance for exchange or transfer of a Physical Note for a beneficial interest in a Global Note as provided herein, the Note Registrar shall cancel such Physical Note and shall (or shall request DTC to) endorse on the schedule affixed to such Global Note (or on a continuation of such schedule affixed to such Global Note and made a part thereof) an appropriate notation evidencing the date of such exchange or transfer and an increase in the denomination of such Global Note equal to the Note balance of such Physical Note exchanged or transferred therefor.

(ii) Upon acceptance for exchange or transfer of a beneficial interest in a Global Note for a Physical Note as provided herein, the Note Registrar shall (or shall request DTC to) endorse on the schedule affixed to such Global Note (or on a continuation of such schedule affixed to such Global Note and made a part thereof) an appropriate notation evidencing the date of such exchange or transfer and a decrease in the denomination of such Global Note equal to the Note balance of such Physical Note issued in exchange therefor or upon transfer thereof.

(q) Unless determined otherwise by the Servicer and the Issuer in accordance with applicable law, the Securities Legend shall be placed on any Physical Note issued in exchange for or upon transfer of another Physical Note or of a beneficial interest in a Global Note.

(r) Subject to the restrictions on transfer and exchange set forth in this Section 4.02, the Holder of any Physical Note may transfer or exchange the same in whole or in part (in a Note balance amount or amounts not less than the applicable Minimum Denomination) by surrendering such Note at the Corporate Trust Office, or at the office of any transfer agent, together with an executed instrument of assignment and transfer reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Note Registrar in the case of transfer and a written request for exchange in the case of exchange. The Holder of a beneficial interest in a Global Note may, subject to the rules and procedures of DTC, cause DTC (or its nominee) to notify the Note Registrar in writing of a request for transfer or exchange of such beneficial interest for a Physical Note or Notes. Following a proper request for transfer or exchange, the Note Registrar shall, within five Business Days of such request made at such Corporate Trust Office, cause the Trustee to authenticate and the Note Registrar to deliver at such Corporate Trust Office, to the transferee (in the case of transfer) or Holder (in the case of exchange) or send by first-class mail or by overnight delivery service at the risk of the transferee (in the case of transfer) or Holder (in the

case of exchange) to such address as the transferee or Holder, as applicable, may request, a Physical Note or Notes, as the case may require, for a like aggregate Percentage Interest and in such Note balance amount or amounts and authorized denomination or denominations as may be requested. The presentation for transfer or exchange of any Physical Note shall not be valid unless made at the Corporate Trust Office by the registered Holder in person, or by a duly authorized attorney-in-fact.

(s) (i) No transfer of any Note shall be made unless such transfer is exempt from the registration requirements of the Securities Act and any applicable state securities laws or is made in accordance with the Securities Act and such laws. No transfer of any Note shall be made if such transfer would require the Issuer to register as an “investment company” under the 1940 Act. In the event of any such transfer, unless such transfer is made in reliance upon Rule 144A under the Securities Act or Regulation S under the Securities Act or is a transfer of a Physical Note to an Affiliate of the Seller, (i) the Trustee may require a written Opinion of Counsel acceptable to and in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee that such transfer may be made pursuant to an exemption, describing the applicable exemption and the basis therefor, from said Act and laws or is being made pursuant to said Act and laws, which Opinion of Counsel shall not be an expense of the Trustee, the Issuer, or the Servicer and (ii) the Trustee shall require the transferee to execute a Transferee Letter certifying to the Issuer and the Trustee the facts surrounding such transfer, which Transferee Letter or certification shall not be an expense of the Trustee, the Issuer or the Servicer. The Holder of a Note desiring to effect such transfer shall, and by accepting a Note and the benefits of this Indenture does hereby agree to, indemnify the Trustee, the Issuer, the Servicer and the Initial Purchaser against any liability that may result if the transfer is not so exempt or is not made in accordance with such federal and state laws. None of the Issuer, the Trustee, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor or the Initial Purchaser is obligated to register or qualify any Note under the Securities Act or any state or international securities laws.

(ii) If, at any time, any Holder of any Note is not both a Qualified Purchaser and either (1) a Qualified Institutional Buyer, (2) an Institutional Accredited Investor or (3) a non-U.S. Person that acquired such Note outside of the United States in compliance with Regulation S (any such person, a “Non-Permitted Holder”), the Issuer shall, promptly after obtaining actual knowledge that such person is a Non-Permitted Holder, send notice to such Non-Permitted Holder demanding that such Non-Permitted Holder transfer its interest to a Person that is not a Non-Permitted Holder within thirty (30) days of the date of such notice. If such Non-Permitted Holder fails to transfer such Notes, the Issuer shall have the right, without further notice to the Non-Permitted Holder, to sell such Notes or interests in such Notes to a purchaser selected by the Issuer that is not a Non-Permitted Holder on such terms and by such means as the Issuer may choose in its sole discretion. The Holder of each Note, the Non-Permitted Holder and each other Person in the chain of title from the Holder to the Non-Permitted Holder, by its acceptance of an interest in the Notes, agrees to cooperate with the Issuer and the Trustee to effect such transfers. The proceeds of such sale, net of any commissions, expenses and taxes due in connection with such sale, shall be remitted to the Non-Permitted Holder.

(t) No Note, or any interest therein, may be acquired directly or indirectly by, for, on behalf of or with any assets of an employee benefit plan as defined in Section 3(3) of ERISA that is subject to Part 4, Subtitle B of Title I of ERISA, any plan, account or arrangement described in and subject to Section 4975 of the Code, or an entity whose underlying assets include “plan assets” (as defined in 29 CFR Section 2510.3-101, as modified by Section 3(42) of ERISA) of any plan, account or arrangement covered by ERISA or the Code (collectively, a “Plan”) or governmental, non-U.S. or church plan or arrangement subject to any federal, state, local or non-U.S. law or regulation substantively similar or of similar effect to Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code (“Similar Law”) unless it represents or is deemed to represent that its acquisition, holding and disposition of the Note will not constitute or result in a non-exempt prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code by reason of any of Section 408(b) (17) of ERISA or Section 4975(d)(20) of the Code, Prohibited Transaction Class Exemption (“PTCE”) 96-23, PTCE 95-60, PTCE 91-38, PTCE 90-1, PTCE 84-14, each as amended, or otherwise or, in the case of a governmental, non-U.S. or church plan or arrangement subject to Similar Law, will not constitute or result in a non-exempt violation of Similar Law. In the case of a Physical Note, such representation shall be made in a certification from the transferee to the Trustee; in the case of a Note other than a Physical Note, the transferee shall be deemed to have made such representation.

(u) The Trustee, Note Registrar and Certificate Registrar shall not be responsible for ascertaining whether any transfer complies with, or otherwise monitoring or determining compliance with, the requirements or terms of the Securities Act, applicable state or international securities laws, ERISA, the Code or the 1940 Act; except that if a transfer certificate or opinion is specifically required by the terms of this Section (or, with respect to the Certificates, by the terms of the Trust Agreement, as applicable) to be provided to the Trustee, Note Registrar or Certificate Registrar by a prospective transferee or transferor, the Trustee, Note Registrar or Certificate Registrar, as applicable, shall be under a duty to receive and examine the same to determine whether it conforms substantially on its face to the applicable requirements of this Section (or the Trust Agreement, as applicable).

(v) Any Note may be cancelled by the Note Registrar without any notice to or approval of any Noteholder in accordance with Section 4.03 or once such Note has been properly surrendered for (i) final payment, (ii) transfer and exchange or (iii) redemption. Any Note acquired by the Issuer or otherwise surrendered for cancellation or marked as abandoned by Holder thereof will be cancelled by the Note Registrar only upon receipt of written consent thereto from both the Servicer and the Super-Majority Noteholders.

(w) Each Noteholder and each beneficial owner of a Note shall be deemed to acknowledge that (i) none of the Issuer, the Servicer, the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Custodian, or any of their respective affiliates is acting as a fiduciary or financial or investment adviser for such beneficial owner; and (ii) such beneficial owner has consulted with its own legal, regulatory, tax, business, investment, financial and accounting advisors to the extent it has deemed necessary and has made its own investment decisions (including decisions regarding the suitability of any transaction pursuant to the Indenture) based upon its own judgment and upon any advice from such advisors as it has deemed necessary and not upon any view expressed by the Issuer, the Servicer, the Backup Servicer, the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Custodian or any of their respective affiliates.

(x) Each Noteholder and each beneficial owner of a Note shall be deemed to acknowledge that (i) such beneficial owner was not formed for the purpose of investing in the Global Notes; and (ii) such beneficial owner understands that the Issuer may receive a list of participants holding interests in the Global Notes from one or more book-entry depositories.

Section 4.03 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Notes.

If (i) any mutilated Note is surrendered to the Trustee, or the Trustee receives evidence to its satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Note, and (ii) there is delivered to the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by it to hold the Issuer and the Trustee harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Issuer, the Note Registrar or the Trustee that such Note has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Issuer shall execute, and upon its request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Note, a replacement Note; *provided* that if any such destroyed, lost or stolen Note, but not a mutilated Note, shall have become or within seven days shall be due and payable, or shall have been called for redemption, instead of issuing a replacement Note, the Issuer may pay such destroyed, lost or stolen Note when so due without surrender thereof. If, after the delivery of such replacement Note or payment of a destroyed, lost or stolen Note pursuant to the proviso to the preceding sentence, a protected purchaser of the original Note in lieu of which such replacement Note was issued presents for payment such original Note, the Issuer and the Trustee shall be entitled to recover such replacement Note (or such payment) from the Person to whom it was delivered or any Person taking such replacement Note from such Person to whom such replacement Note was delivered or any assignee of such Person, except a protected purchaser, and shall be entitled to recover upon the security or indemnity provided therefor to the extent of any loss, damage, cost or expense incurred by the Issuer or the Trustee in connection therewith.

Upon the issuance of any replacement Note under this Section 4.03, the Issuer may require the payment by the Holder of such Note of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other reasonable expenses (including the fees and reasonable expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every replacement Note issued pursuant to this Section 4.03 in replacement of any mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Note shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Issuer, whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Note shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Notes duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section 4.03 are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Notes.

Section 4.04 Payment of Principal and Interest; Defaulted Interest.

(a) The Notes shall accrue interest during each Interest Period on the basis of a 360 day year consisting of twelve 30-day months (or in the case of the first Payment Date, an accrual period of thirty (30) days). Any installment of interest or principal, if any, payable on any Note which is punctually paid or duly provided for by the Issuer on the applicable Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name such Note is registered on the Record Date, by check mailed first-class, postage prepaid, to such Person's address as it appears on the Note Register on

such Record Date, except that (i) with respect to Notes registered on the Record Date in the name of the nominee of DTC (initially, such nominee to be Cede & Co.), such payment will be made by wire transfer in immediately available funds to the account designated by such Person and except for the final installment of principal payable with respect to such Note on a Payment Date or on the Legal Final Payment Date and (ii) the Redemption Price for any Note called for redemption pursuant to Article X hereof shall be payable as provided in Section 4.04(b) or Article X hereof, as applicable. The funds represented by any such checks returned undelivered shall be held in accordance with Section 3.03.

(b) The principal of each Note shall be payable on each Payment Date to the extent of funds available therefor in accordance with the Priority of Payments as provided in the Sale and Servicing Agreement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the entire unpaid principal amount of the Notes shall be due and payable, if not previously paid, on the date on which an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing, if the Trustee with the consent or at the direction of the Majority Noteholders has declared the Notes to be immediately due and payable in the manner provided in Section 5.02. All principal payments among the Notes shall be made in the order and priorities set forth herein and in the Sale and Servicing Agreement and all principal payments on the Notes shall be made *pro rata* to the Noteholders. The Trustee shall notify the Person in whose name a Note is registered at the close of business on the Record Date preceding the Payment Date on which the Issuer expects that the final installment of principal of and interest on such Note will be paid; *provided* that the Issuer or Servicer shall have provided the Trustee with timely notice of such expectation. Such notice shall be mailed or transmitted by facsimile or other electronic mail prior to such final Payment Date and shall specify that such final installment will be payable only upon presentation and surrender of such Note and shall specify the place where such Note may be presented and surrendered for payment of such installment. Notices in connection with a redemption shall be given to Noteholders as provided in Article X.

Section 4.05 Tax Treatment.

(a) The Issuer has entered into this Indenture, and the Notes will be issued, with the intention that, for federal, state and local income and franchise tax purposes, (i) the Notes will be treated as indebtedness secured by the Indenture Collateral and (ii) the Issuer shall not be treated as an association, taxable mortgage pool or publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation. The Issuer, by entering into this Indenture, and each Noteholder, by the acceptance of any such Note (and each beneficial owner of a Note, by its acceptance of an interest in the applicable Note), agree to treat such Notes for federal, state and local income and franchise tax purposes as indebtedness. Each Holder of any such Note agrees that it will cause any beneficial owner of such Note acquiring an interest in a Note through it to comply with this Indenture as to treatment of indebtedness under applicable tax law, as described in this Section 4.05. The parties hereto agree that they shall not cause or permit the making, as applicable, of any election under Treasury Regulation Section 301.7701-3 whereby the Issuer or any portion thereof would be treated as a corporation for federal income tax purposes and, except as required by the terms of this Indenture or applicable law, shall not file tax returns for the Issuer, but shall treat the Issuer as a disregarded entity for federal income tax purposes (unless, pursuant to Section 4.05(b)(ii), the Issuer is treated as a partnership). The provisions of this Indenture shall be construed in furtherance of the foregoing intended tax treatment.

(b) It is the intent of the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Certificateholder that, for federal income tax purposes, (i) in the event that the Trust Certificate is owned by a single beneficial owner, for federal income tax purposes, the Issuer will be disregarded as an entity separate from such beneficial owner, and the Certificateholder (and the beneficial owner of the Trust Certificate), by acceptance of the Trust Certificate (or a beneficial interest therein), agrees to take no action inconsistent with such treatment and (ii) in the event that the Trust Certificate is owned by more than one beneficial owner for federal income tax purposes, the Issuer will be treated as a partnership, the partners of which are the beneficial owners of the Trust Certificate, and each Certificateholder (and beneficial owner of the Trust Certificate), by acceptance of a Trust Certificate (or beneficial interest therein), agrees to treat the Trust Certificate as equity and to take no action inconsistent with such treatment.

(c) All payments made by the Issuer under the Notes will be made without any deduction or withholding for or on account of any tax unless such deduction or withholding is required by applicable law, as modified by the practice of any relevant governmental revenue authority, then in effect. If the Issuer is so required to deduct or withhold it will provide notice to the Trustee of such requirement promptly after a Responsible Officer becomes aware thereof and the Issuer will not be obligated to pay to the holder of any such Note any additional amounts in respect of such withholding or deduction.

(d) Each Holder and each beneficial owner of a Note, by acceptance of such Note or its interest in such Note, shall be deemed to understand and acknowledge that failure to provide the Issuer, the Trustee or any other party acting as Paying Agent with the applicable U.S. federal income tax certifications (generally, an Internal Revenue Service Form W-9 (or successor applicable form) in the case of a person that is a "United States person" within the meaning of Section 7701(a)(30) of the Code or an appropriate Internal Revenue Service Form W-8 (or successor applicable form) in the case of a person that is not a "United States person" within the meaning of Section 7701(a)(30) of the Code) or any other form prescribed by Applicable Law as a basis for claiming exemption from or a reduction in U.S. withholding tax (including, but not limited to, any withholding tax imposed under FATCA), duly completed together with such supplementary documentation as may be prescribed by Applicable Law to permit the Issuer to determine the withholding or deduction required to be made, may result in amounts being withheld from payments in respect of such Note.

Section 4.06 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

(a) The following shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture: (i) rights of registration of transfer and exchange, (ii) substitution of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Notes pursuant to Section 4.03, (iii) rights of Noteholders to receive payments of principal thereof and interest thereon, (iv) Sections 3.03, 3.04, 3.06, 3.10, 3.19, 3.21, 3.22, 4.05, 6.07, 11.15 and the second sentence of 11.16, (v) the rights, obligations and immunities of the Trustee hereunder (including the rights of the Trustee under Section 6.07 and the obligations of the Trustee under Section 4.07) and (vi) the rights of Noteholders as beneficiaries hereof with respect to the property so deposited with the Trustee payable to all or any of them. This Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to the Notes (and the Trustee, on written demand of and at the expense of the Issuer, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Notes) when:

(A) either

(1) all Notes theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Notes that have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 4.03 and (ii) Notes for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Issuer and thereafter repaid to the Issuer or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 3.03) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (two Business Days prior to the final Payment Date) pursuant to Section 4.02(v); or

(2) all Notes not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation:

(i) have become due and payable; or

(ii) mature within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Issuer;

and the Issuer, in the case of (2)(i) or (ii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be irrevocably deposited with the Trustee cash or direct obligations of or obligations guaranteed by the United States of America (which will mature prior to the date such amounts are payable), in trust for such purpose, in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Notes not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation when due to the Stated Maturity therefor, Redemption Date (if Notes shall have been called for redemption pursuant to Article X), as the case may be and, unless each Holder of each Note has consented to such deposit and satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an opinion of U.S. tax counsel of nationally recognized standing in the United States experienced in such matters to the effect that the Holders of the Notes would recognized no gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes solely as a result of such deposit and satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture; and

(B) the Issuer has delivered to the Trustee an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, which may be internal counsel to the Issuer or the Servicer and if requested by the Trustee, a certificate from a firm of acceptable public accountants, meeting the applicable requirements of Section 11.02 and, subject to Section 11.02, stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Notes have been complied with;

(C) [reserved]; and

(D) the Issuer has made payment of all other sums due under this Indenture, the Trust Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(b) By acceptance of any Note, the Holder thereof agrees to surrender such Note to the Trustee promptly upon such Noteholder's receipt of the final payment thereon or as otherwise provided in the Transaction Documents.

Section 4.07 Application of Trust Money.

All moneys deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 4.06 hereof shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Notes and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent, as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of Notes for the payment or redemption for which such moneys have been deposited with the Trustee, of all sums due and to become due thereon for principal and interest; but such moneys need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required herein or in the Sale and Servicing Agreement or required by law.

Section 4.08 Repayment of Moneys Held by Paying Agent.

In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to the Notes, all moneys then held by any Paying Agent other than the Trustee under the provisions of this Indenture with respect to such Notes shall, upon demand of the Issuer, be paid to the Trustee to be held and applied according to Section 3.05 and thereupon such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys.

**ARTICLE V
REMEDIES**

Section 5.01 Events of Default.

Any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body) shall constitute an “Event of Default”:

- (i) failure to pay all accrued interest on the Notes on any Payment Date and such failure continues unremedied for two (2) Business Days;
- (ii) failure to pay the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes by the Legal Final Payment Date;
- (iii) a default in the observance or performance of any covenant or agreement of the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer made in this Indenture or any other Transaction Document, and such default has a material adverse effect on the Noteholders, which default continues unremedied for a period of 30 days after the first to occur of (i) actual knowledge thereof by a Responsible Officer of the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer, as applicable, or (ii) there shall have been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Issuer by the Trustee (upon receipt of actual knowledge by a Responsible Officer thereof), a written notice specifying such default and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a notice of default hereunder;
- (iv) any representation, warranty, certification or written statement of the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer in this Indenture or any other Transaction Document or in any certificate delivered under this Indenture shall prove to have been incorrect in any material respect when made, and such incorrect representation or

warranty has a material adverse effect on the Noteholders, and which default continues unremedied for a period of 30 days after the first to occur of (i) actual knowledge thereof by a Responsible Officer of the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer, as applicable, or (ii) the delivery to the Issuer by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, of written notice specifying such incorrect representation or warranty and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a notice of default hereunder;

(v) there occurs the filing of a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises in respect of the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or any substantial part of the Indenture Collateral in an involuntary case under any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect, or appointing a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee, sequestrator or similar official of the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or for any substantial part of the Indenture Collateral, or ordering the winding-up or liquidation of the Trust Depositor's or the Issuer's affairs, and such decree or order shall remain unstayed and in effect for a period of 30 consecutive days;

(vi) there occurs the commencement by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer of a voluntary case under any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect, or the consent by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer to the entry of an order for relief in an involuntary case under any such law, or the consent by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer to the appointment or taking possession by a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee, sequestrator or similar official of the Trust Depositor or the Issuer or for any substantial part of the Indenture Collateral, or the making by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer of any general assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the failure by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer generally to pay its debts as such debts become due, or the taking of any action by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer in furtherance of any of the foregoing;

(vii) the Trustee, on behalf of the Noteholders, shall fail to have a valid and perfected first priority security interest in the Indenture Collateral except as otherwise expressly permitted to be released in accordance with the applicable Transaction Document, and such failure to have a perfected first priority security interest shall have a material adverse effect on the Noteholders;

(viii) one or more final, non-appealable judgment(s) against the Issuer in excess of \$1,000,000 individually or in the aggregate and the continuance of such judgment(s) unsatisfied and in effect for any period of more than 60 consecutive days without a stay of execution;

(ix) the Issuer becomes subject to registration as an "investment company" under the 1940 Act for any period of more than 45 consecutive days;

(x) any of this Indenture, the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Sale and Contribution Agreement or the Note Purchase Agreement is terminated (other than in accordance with its terms) or fails to be in full force and effect which has a material adverse effect on the Issuer or its ability to make payments on the Notes; or

(xi) the Seller or the Trust Depositor shall fail to cure, repurchase or replace a Defective Loan in accordance with the Transaction Documents and such failure shall continue unremedied for 30 days after the earliest to occur of (i) written notice of such failure is given to the Issuer by the Trustee (upon receipt by a Responsible Officer of the Trustee of actual knowledge or written notice of such failure) or (ii) knowledge of a Responsible Officer of the Trust Depositor or Seller of such failure.

The Issuer shall deliver to the Trustee, the Backup Servicer and the Rating Agency, within two (2) Business Days after the occurrence of an Event of Default, written notice in the form of an Officer's Certificate, including a description of its nature and period of existence and what action the Issuer is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto.

Section 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.

If an Event of Default should occur and be continuing, (other than an Event of Default specified in Sections 5.01(v) or (vi)), then and in every such case the Trustee may, and shall at the direction of the Super-Majority Noteholders, declare the Notes to be immediately due and payable by a notice in writing to the Issuer (who shall promptly forward the same to the Rating Agency) and the Owner Trustee (and to the Trustee if given by Noteholders), and upon any such declaration the unpaid principal amount of the Notes, together with accrued and unpaid interest thereon, through the date of acceleration, shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in Sections 5.01(v) or (vi) occurs, the unpaid principal amount of the Notes, together with accrued and unpaid interest thereon, through the date of acceleration, shall automatically, and without any notice to the Issuer, become immediately due and payable.

At any time after such declaration or automatic occurrence of acceleration of maturity and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as hereinafter in this Article V provided, the Super-Majority Noteholders, by written notice to the Issuer and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

(A) the Issuer has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay:

(i) all payments of principal of and interest on the Notes, and all other amounts that would then be due hereunder, upon the Notes if the Event of Default giving rise to such acceleration had not occurred; and

(ii) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee and its agents and counsel; and

(B) all Events of Default, other than the nonpayment of the principal of the Notes that has become due solely by such acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.12.

No such rescission or annulment shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereto.

If the Notes are accelerated following an Event of Default, then on each Payment Date on or after such Event of Default, payments will be made by the Trustee from all funds available to it in the same order of priority as that provided for in Section 7.06(c) of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 5.03 Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

(a) The Issuer covenants that if (i) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Note, or (ii) default is made in the payment of the principal of or any installment of the principal of any Note, when the same becomes due and payable, and in each case such default continues for a period of two (2) Business Days, the Issuer will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to it, for the benefit of the Noteholders, the whole amount then due and payable on the Notes for principal and interest, with interest upon the overdue principal, and in addition thereto such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee and its agents and counsel.

(b) In case the Issuer shall fail forthwith to pay such amounts upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, with the consent of the Majority Noteholders and subject to the provisions of Section 11.15 hereof may institute a Proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such Proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Issuer or other obligor upon the Notes and collect in the manner provided by law out of the Indenture Collateral, wherever situated, the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable.

(c) If an Event of Default occurs and is continuing, and the Notes have been declared due and payable and such declaration and its consequences have not been rescinded and annulled, the Trustee subject to the provisions of Section 5.04 and Section 11.15 hereof may, as more particularly provided in Section 5.04, in its discretion, proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Noteholders by such appropriate Proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effective to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy or legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

(d) In case there shall be pending, relative to the Issuer or any Person having or claiming an ownership interest in the Indenture Collateral, Proceedings under Title 11 of the United States Code or any other applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law, or in case a receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization, liquidator, sequestrator or similar official shall have been appointed for or taken possession of the Issuer or its property or such other Person, or in case of any other comparable judicial Proceedings relative to the Issuer, or to the creditors or property of the Issuer, the Trustee, irrespective of whether the principal of any Notes shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand pursuant to the provisions of this Section 5.03, shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such Proceedings or otherwise:

(i) to file and prove a claim or claims for the whole amount of principal and interest, as applicable, owing and unpaid in respect of the Notes and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for reasonable compensation to the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, and their respective agents, attorneys and counsel, and for reimbursement of all reasonable expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee, except as a result of negligence or bad faith) and of the Noteholders allowed in such Proceedings;

(ii) unless prohibited by applicable law and regulations, to vote on behalf of the Holders of Notes in any election of a trustee, a standby trustee or Person performing similar functions in any such Proceedings;

(iii) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute all amounts received with respect to the claims of the Noteholders and of the Trustee on their behalf;

(iv) to file such proofs of claim and other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee or the Noteholders allowed in any judicial proceedings relative to the Issuer, its creditors and its property; and

(v) to participate as a member, voting or otherwise, of any official committee of creditors appointed in such matter;

and any trustee, receiver, liquidator, custodian or other similar official in any such Proceeding is hereby authorized by each of such Noteholders to make payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of payments directly to such Noteholders, to pay to the Trustee such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover reasonable compensation to the Trustee, each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents, attorneys and counsel, and all other reasonable expenses and liabilities incurred, and all advances made, by the Trustee and each predecessor Trustee except as a result of negligence or bad faith.

(e) Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or vote for or accept or adopt on behalf of any Noteholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Notes or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Noteholder in any such proceeding except, as aforesaid, to vote for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar Person.

(f) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the Notes, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Notes or the production thereof in any trial or other Proceedings relative thereto, and any such action or proceedings instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment, subject to the payment of the expenses, disbursements and compensation of the Trustee, each predecessor Trustee and their respective agents and attorneys, shall be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Notes.

(g) In any Proceedings brought by the Trustee (and also any Proceedings involving the interpretation of any provision of this Indenture to which the Trustee shall be a party), the Trustee shall be held to represent all the Holders of the Notes, and it shall not be necessary to make any Noteholder a party to any such Proceedings.

Section 5.04 Remedies; Priorities.

(a) If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, and the Notes have been declared due and payable and such declaration and its consequences have not been rescinded and annulled, subject to the provisions of Section 11.15 hereof, the Trustee may do one or more of the following (subject to the provisions of this Section 5.04 and Section 5.15):

- (i) institute Proceedings in its own name and as trustee of an express trust for the collection of all amounts then payable on the Notes or under this Indenture with respect thereto, whether by declaration or otherwise, enforce any judgment obtained, and collect from the Issuer and any other obligor upon such Notes moneys adjudged due;
- (ii) institute Proceedings from time to time for the complete or partial foreclosure of this Indenture with respect to the Indenture Collateral;
- (iii) exercise any remedies of a secured party under the UCC and take any other appropriate action to protect and enforce the rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders of the Notes; and
- (iv) sell the Indenture Collateral or any portion thereof or rights or interest therein at one or more public or private sales called and conducted in any matter permitted by law;

provided, however, that the Trustee may not sell or otherwise liquidate the Indenture Collateral following and during the continuance of an Event of Default unless (A) the Notes have been declared or otherwise become immediately due and payable in accordance with Section 5.02 and such declaration or acceleration and its consequences have not been rescinded and annulled and (B) either (1) the proceeds of such Sale or liquidation are sufficient to discharge in full all amounts then due and unpaid upon the Notes for principal and interest (including any interest payable pursuant to Section 7.05(a)(6) or 7.05(c)(4)), (2) the Trustee determines that the Indenture Collateral would not be sufficient on an ongoing basis to make all payments on the Notes as those payments would have become due had the Notes not been declared due and payable and the Super-Majority Noteholders (excluding Notes held by the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Servicer or any of their respective affiliates) consent to such Sale or (3) 100% of the holders of the outstanding Notes (excluding Notes held by the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Servicer or any of their respective affiliates) consent to such Sale. In determining whether the proceeds of such Sale or liquidation distributable to the Noteholders and the other parties entitled thereto are sufficient to discharge in full the amounts referenced in clause (B)(1) above, the Trustee may, but need not, obtain, at the Issuer's expense, and rely upon an opinion of an independent accountant or an investment banking firm of national reputation as to the feasibility of such proposed action and as to the sufficiency of the expected sales proceeds of the Indenture Collateral for such purpose.

(b) If the Trustee collects any money pursuant to this Article V, it shall distribute such money in accordance with Section 7.06(c) of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The Trustee may fix a record date and distribution date (which may be a date other than a Payment Date) for any payment to Noteholders pursuant to this Section 5.04. At least five days before such record date, the Issuer shall mail to each Noteholder and the Trustee a notice that states the record date, the distribution date and the amount to be paid.

Section 5.05 [Reserved].

Section 5.06 Limitation of Suits.

No Holder of any Note shall have any right to institute any Proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless and subject to the provisions of Section 11.15 hereof:

- (i) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default;
- (ii) prior to the payment in full of Notes, the Noteholders evidencing not less than 25% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes have made written request to the Trustee to institute such Proceeding in respect of such Event of Default in its capacity as Trustee hereunder;
- (iii) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee reasonable indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in complying with such request;
- (iv) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity has failed to institute such Proceedings; and
- (v) prior to the payment in full of the Notes, no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60 day period by the Holders of a majority of the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes.

It is understood and intended that no one or more of the Holders of Notes shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other Holders of Notes or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided.

In the event the Trustee shall receive conflicting or inconsistent requests and indemnity from two or more groups of Holders of Notes, each representing less than a majority of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes then entitled to make such request, the Trustee in its sole discretion may determine what action, if any, shall be taken, notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture.

Section 5.07 Unconditional Rights of Noteholders To Receive Principal and Interest.

Notwithstanding any other provisions in this Indenture, but subject to Section 11.15 hereof, the Holder of any Note shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and interest, if any, on such Note on or after the respective due dates thereof expressed in such Note or in this Indenture and such right shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 5.08 Restoration of Rights and Remedies.

If the Trustee or any Noteholder has instituted any Proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such Proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Noteholder, then and in every such case the Issuer, the Trustee and the Noteholders shall, subject to any determination in such Proceeding, be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder, and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Noteholders shall continue as though no such Proceeding had been instituted.

Section 5.09 Rights and Remedies Cumulative.

No right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Noteholders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 5.10 Delay or Omission Not a Waiver.

No delay or omission of the Trustee or any Holder of any Note in the exercise of any right or remedy accruing upon any Default or Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Default or Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article V or by law to the Trustee or to the Noteholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Noteholders, as the case may be.

Section 5.11 Control by Noteholders.

The Majority Noteholders shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any Proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee with respect to the Notes or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee; *provided* that:

- (i) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture;

(ii) the Super-Majority Noteholders or 100% of the Noteholders (as applicable) may provide any direction to the Trustee to sell or liquidate the Indenture Collateral pursuant to the express terms of Section 5.04; and

(iii) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee that is not inconsistent with such direction.

Notwithstanding the rights of Noteholders set forth in this Section 5.11, subject to Section 6.01(g), the Trustee need not take any action that it determines might involve it in liability.

Section 5.12 Waiver of Past Defaults.

Prior to the declaration of the acceleration of the maturity of the Notes as provided in Section 5.02, the Majority Noteholders may waive any past Event of Default and its consequences except an Event of Default with respect to payment of principal or interest, as applicable, on any of the Notes or in respect of a covenant or provision hereof which cannot be modified or amended without the waiver or consent of each of the Holders of the Outstanding Notes affected thereby. In the case of any such waiver, the Issuer, the Trustee and the Noteholders shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereto.

Upon any such waiver, any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured and not to have occurred, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereto.

Section 5.13 Undertaking for Costs.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Note by such Holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section 5.13 shall not apply to (i) any suit instituted by the Trustee, (ii) any suit instituted by any Noteholder, or group of Noteholders, in each case holding in the aggregate more than 25% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance or (iii) any suit instituted by any Noteholder for the enforcement of the payment of principal or interest, as applicable, on any Note on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Note and in this Indenture.

Section 5.14 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws.

The Issuer covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead or in any manner whatsoever, claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, that may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Issuer (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law, and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

Section 5.15 Sale of Indenture Collateral.

(a) The power to effect any sale or other disposition (a "Sale") of any portion of the Indenture Collateral pursuant to Section 5.04 is expressly subject to the provisions of Section 5.11 and this Section 5.15. The power to effect any such Sale shall not be exhausted by any one or more Sales as to any portion of the Indenture Collateral remaining unsold, but shall continue unimpaired until the entire Indenture Collateral shall have been sold or all amounts payable on the Notes and under this Indenture shall have been paid. The Trustee hereby expressly waives its right to any amount fixed by law as compensation for any Sale.

(b) The Trustee shall not in any private Sale sell the Indenture Collateral, or any portion thereof, unless the Majority Noteholders consent to or such Noteholders as required by Section 5.11 direct the Trustee to make such Sale and:

(i) the proceeds of such Sale or liquidation are sufficient to discharge in full all amounts then due and unpaid upon the Notes for principal and interest, as applicable, to pay all amounts then due and payable to the Trustee and to reimburse the Servicer for any outstanding unreimbursed Servicing Advances and Scheduled Payment Advances; or

(ii) the Trustee determines, at the direction of Noteholders representing at least 25% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes, that the conditions for liquidation of the Indenture Collateral set forth in Section 5.04 are satisfied (in making any such determination, the Trustee may rely upon an opinion of an Independent investment banking firm obtained and delivered as provided in Section 5.04).

(c) In connection with a Sale of all or any portion of the Indenture Collateral:

(i) other than in the case of a Sale of any Loan as contemplated by the Sale and Servicing Agreement, any Holder or Holders of Notes (other than the Trust Depositor) may bid for and purchase the property offered for Sale, and upon compliance with the terms of Sale may hold, retain and possess and dispose of such property, without further accountability, and may, in paying the purchase money therefor, deliver any Notes or claims for interest thereon in lieu of cash up to the amount which shall, upon distribution of the net proceeds of such Sale, be payable thereon, and such Notes, in case the amounts so payable thereon shall be less than the amount due thereon, shall be returned to the Holders thereof after being appropriately stamped to show such partial payment;

(ii) other than in the case of a Sale of any Loan as contemplated by the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trustee may bid for and acquire the property offered for Sale in connection with any Sale thereof, and, subject to any requirements of, and to the extent permitted by, Requirements of Law in connection therewith, may purchase all or any portion of the Indenture Collateral in a private sale, and, in lieu of paying cash therefor, may make settlement for the purchase price by crediting the gross Sale price against the sum of (A) the amount which would be distributable to the Holders of the Notes as a result of such Sale in accordance with Section 5.04(b) on the Payment Date next succeeding the date of such Sale and (B) the expenses of the Sale and of any Proceedings in connection therewith which are reimbursable to it, without being required to produce the Notes in order to complete any such Sale or in order for the net Sale price to be credited against such Notes, and any property so acquired by the Trustee shall be held and dealt with by it in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture;

(iii) the Trustee shall execute and deliver an appropriate instrument of conveyance transferring its interest in any portion of the Indenture Collateral in connection with a Sale thereof;

(iv) the Trustee is hereby irrevocably appointed the agent and attorney-in-fact of the Issuer to transfer and convey its interest in any portion of the Indenture Collateral in connection with a Sale thereof, and to take all action necessary to effect such Sale;

(v) the Trustee shall use commercially reasonable efforts to maximize the proceeds of any such Sale of the Indenture Collateral;

(vi) no purchaser or transferee at such a Sale shall be bound to ascertain the Trustee's authority, inquire into the satisfaction of any conditions precedent or see to the application of any moneys; and

(vii) all proceeds received by the Trustee in connection with the liquidation or sale of the Indenture Collateral shall be deposited into the Collection Account no later than two (2) Business Days following receipt thereof.

Section 5.16 Action on Notes.

The Trustee's right to seek and recover judgment on the Notes or under this Indenture shall not be affected by the seeking, obtaining or application of any other relief under or with respect to this Indenture. Neither the lien of this Indenture nor any rights or remedies of the Trustee or the Noteholders shall be impaired by the recovery of any judgment by the Trustee against the Issuer or by the levy of any execution under such judgment upon any portion of the Indenture Collateral or upon any of the assets of the Issuer. Any money or property collected by the Trustee shall be applied in accordance with Section 5.04(b).

Section 5.17 Performance and Enforcement of Certain Obligations.

(a) Promptly following a request from the Trustee to do so, the Issuer shall take all such lawful action as the Trustee at the direction of the Majority Noteholders may request to compel or secure the performance and observance by the Seller, the Trust Depositor and the Servicer, as applicable, of each of their obligations to the Issuer under or in connection with the Transaction Documents, and to exercise any and all rights, remedies, powers and privileges lawfully available to the Issuer under or in connection with the Transaction Documents to the

extent and in the manner directed by the Trustee, including the transmission of notices of default to the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Servicer thereunder and the institution of legal or administrative actions or proceedings to compel or secure performance by the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Servicer of each of their obligations under the Transaction Documents.

(b) If a Servicer Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee, at the direction of the Majority Noteholders, shall exercise all rights, remedies, powers, privileges and claims of the Issuer against the Servicer under or in connection with the Sale and Servicing Agreement, including the right or power to take any action to compel or secure performance or observance by the Servicer, of its obligations to the Issuer thereunder and to give any consent, request, notice, direction, approval, extension or waiver under the Sale and Servicing Agreement, and any right of the Issuer to take such action shall not be suspended.

ARTICLE VI THE TRUSTEE

Section 6.01 Duties of Trustee.

(a) If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee shall exercise the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs with respect to the Indenture Collateral.

(b) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default:

(i) the Trustee undertakes to perform such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(ii) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; however, the Trustee shall examine the certificates and opinions to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture.

(c) The Trustee may not be relieved from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act or its own willful misconduct, except that:

(i) this paragraph does not limit the effect of paragraph (b) of this Section 6.01;

(ii) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer unless it is proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts; and

(iii) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in accordance with a direction received by it pursuant to Section 5.11.

(d) Every provision of this Indenture that in any way relates to the Trustee is subject to paragraphs (a), (b), (c), (g) and (i) of this Section 6.01.

(e) The Trustee shall not be liable for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee may agree in writing with the Issuer.

(f) Money held in trust by the Trustee need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law or the terms of this Indenture or the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(g) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture, to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur financial liability in the performance of any of its duties hereunder or to honor the request or direction of any of the Noteholders pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Noteholder or Noteholders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity reasonably acceptable to the Trustee against the costs, expenses, and liabilities (including the fees and expenses of its attorneys and agents) that might be incurred by it in compliance with the request or direction. Anything in this Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, in no event shall the Trustee be liable for special, indirect, punitive or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including but not limited to lost profits).

(h) Every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or affecting the liability of or affording protection to the Trustee shall be subject to the provisions of this Section 6.01.

(i) The Trustee shall not be deemed to have notice of any Event of Default or Servicer Default or any other matter under a Transaction Document unless a Responsible Officer assigned to and working in the Trustee's Corporate Trust Office has actual knowledge thereof or has received written notice thereof in accordance with this Indenture.

Section 6.02 Rights of Trustee.

(a) The Trustee may rely on any document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper person. The Trustee need not investigate any fact or matter stated in the document.

(b) Before the Trustee acts or refrains from acting, it may require an Officer's Certificate. The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in reliance on an Officer's Certificate.

(c) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys or a custodian or nominee, and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of, or for the supervision of, any such agent, attorney, custodian or nominee appointed with due care by it hereunder.

(d) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith which it believes to be authorized or within its rights or powers; *provided* that the Trustee's conduct does not constitute willful misconduct, negligence or bad faith.

(e) The Trustee may consult with counsel, and the advice of counsel or an Opinion of Counsel with respect to legal matters relating to this Indenture and the Notes shall be full and complete authorization and protection from liability in respect to any action taken, omitted or suffered by it hereunder in good faith and in accordance with such advice of counsel or such Opinion of Counsel.

(f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the performance of the Seller, Trust Depositor, Issuer or the Servicer under this Indenture or any other Transaction Document or into the matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, note or other document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make any further inquiry or investigation into those matters that it deems appropriate, and if the Trustee determines to inquire further, it shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Issuer and the Servicer, personally or by agent or attorney; *provided* that any such examination shall be upon reasonable prior notice and at a time acceptable to the Issuer or the Servicer in their reasonable judgment during normal business hours; *provided, further*, that the Trustee shall, and shall cause its agents, to hold in confidence any and all such information, except (i) to the extent disclosure may be required by law by any regulatory authority and (ii) to the extent that the Trustee, in its reasonable judgment, may determine that such disclosure is consistent with its obligations hereunder; *provided* that all such persons agree in writing with the Issuer to hold such information as confidential. A Noteholder may only disclose such information obtained from the Trustee to any prospective transferee and to such Noteholder's and transferee's accountants, consultants, attorneys and similar agents; *provided* that all such persons agree in writing with the Issuer and the Trustee to hold such information as confidential.

(g) The Trustee shall not be required to give any bond or surety in respect of the performance of its powers and duties hereunder.

(h) Except as expressly provided herein or in any other Transaction Document, nothing herein shall be construed to impose an obligation on the part of the Trustee to recalculate, evaluate or verify any report, certificate or information received by it from the Issuer or Servicer or to otherwise monitor the activities of the Issuer, Servicer or any other Party.

(i) In the event that the Trustee is also acting in the capacity of Custodian, Backup Servicer, Paying Agent, Note Registrar or Certificate Registrar hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents, the rights, protections, immunities and indemnities afforded the Trustee pursuant to this Article VI shall also be afforded to the Trustee in such capacities.

(j) Whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall (i) deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officer's Certificate or (ii) be required to determine the value of any Indenture Collateral or funds hereunder or the cash flows projected to be received therefrom, the Trustee may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely on reports of nationally recognized accountants (which may or may not be the Independent Accountants appointed by the Issuer pursuant to Section 9.05 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement), investment bankers or other persons qualified to provide the information required to make such determination, including nationally recognized dealers in securities of the type being valued and securities quotation services.

(k) Nothing herein shall be construed to impose an obligation on the part of the Trustee to recalculate, evaluate or verify or independently determine the accuracy of any report, certificate or information received from the Issuer or Servicer (unless and except to the extent otherwise expressly set forth herein).

(l) Any permissive right of the Trustee to take or refrain from taking actions enumerated in this Indenture or other Transaction Document shall not be construed as a duty.

(m) The Trustee shall not be responsible for delays or failures in performance resulting from acts beyond its control.

(n) The Trustee and Custodian shall be without liability for any damage or loss resulting from or caused by events or circumstances beyond its reasonable control including nationalization, expropriation, currency restrictions, the interruption, disruption or suspension of the normal procedures and practices of any securities market, power, mechanical, communications or other technological failures or interruptions, computer viruses or the like, fires, floods, earthquakes or other natural disasters, civil and military disturbance, acts of war or terrorism, riots, revolution, acts of God, work stoppages, strikes, national disasters of any kind, or other similar events or acts; errors by the Issuer or Servicer (including any Responsible Officer) in its instructions to the Trustee or Custodian; or changes in applicable law, regulation or orders.

In order to comply with the USA PATRIOT Act, including Section 326 thereof, the Trustee (including in its capacity as Certificate Registrar) is required to obtain, verify, record and update certain information relating to individuals and entities which maintain a business relationship with the Trustee. Accordingly, the Issuer and each of the parties to the other Transaction Documents agrees to provide to the Trustee upon its request from time to time such identifying information and documentation as may be available for such party in order to enable the Trustee to comply with the USA PATRIOT Act.

Section 6.03 Individual Rights of Trustee.

The Trustee in its individual or any other capacity may become the owner or pledgee of Notes and may otherwise deal with the Issuer or its Affiliates with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee. Any Note Registrar, co-registrar, Paying Agent or co-paying agent may do the same with like rights. However, the Trustee must comply with Section 6.11.

Section 6.04 Trustee's Disclaimer.

The Trustee shall not be responsible for and makes no representation as to the validity or adequacy of this Indenture, the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trust Agreement, the Notes or any other Transaction Document, the validity or sufficiency of any security interest intended to be created or the characterization of the Notes for tax purposes, it shall not be accountable for the Issuer's use of the proceeds from the Notes, and it shall not be responsible for any statement of the Issuer in this Indenture or in any document issued in connection with the sale of the Notes or in the Notes other than the Trustee's certificate of authentication.

Section 6.05 Notice of Event of Default.

The Trustee shall mail to each Noteholder, the Servicer (who shall promptly forward the same to the Rating Agency, for so long as any of the Notes are Outstanding) and the Owner Trustee notice of an Event of Default within 30 days after the Trustee has actual knowledge thereof in accordance with Section 6.01.

Section 6.06 Reports by Trustee to Holders.

The Trustee shall deliver to each Noteholder such information in its possession as may be required to enable such holder to prepare its federal and state income tax returns. In addition, upon the Issuer's or a Noteholder's written request, the Trustee shall promptly furnish information reasonably requested by the Issuer or such Noteholder that is reasonably available to the Trustee to enable the Issuer or such Noteholder to perform its federal and state income tax reporting obligations.

The Trustee shall not be responsible for any tax reporting, disclosure, record keeping or list maintenance requirements of the Issuer under Internal Revenue Code sections 6011(a), 6111 or 6112, including, but not limited to, the preparation of IRS Form 8886 pursuant to Treasury Regulations Section 1.6011-4(d) or any successor provision and any required list maintenance under Treasury Regulations Section 301.6112-1 or any successor provision.

Section 6.07 Compensation and Indemnity.

The Issuer shall pay to the Trustee on each Payment Date reasonable compensation for its services under this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents in accordance with the Priority of Payments and pursuant to the separate fee agreement between the Trustee and the Issuer. The Trustee's compensation shall not be limited by any law on compensation of a trustee of an express trust. The Issuer shall reimburse the Trustee for all reasonable out-of-pocket expenses incurred or made by it, including costs of collection, in addition to the compensation for its services. Such expenses shall include the reasonable compensation and expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee's agents, counsel, accountants and experts. The Issuer shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless the Trustee and its officers, directors, employees and agents for and against any and all loss, liability or expense (including attorneys' fees) incurred by it in connection with the administration of this Indenture and the performance of its duties hereunder and under the other Transaction Documents. The Trustee shall notify the Issuer and the Trust Depositor promptly of any claim for which it may seek indemnity. Failure by the Trustee to so notify the Issuer and the Trust Depositor shall not relieve the Issuer of its obligations hereunder or under the Trust Agreement. The Issuer need not reimburse any expense or indemnify against any loss, liability or expense incurred by the Trustee through the Trustee's own willful misconduct, negligence or bad faith, except that the Trustee shall not be liable (i) for any error of judgment made by it in good faith unless it is proved that the Trustee was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts, (ii) for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in accordance with directions received by it from the Holders of the Notes in accordance with the terms hereunder, or (iii) for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee and the

Issuer may agree in writing. The Issuer shall assume (with the consent of the Trustee, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld) the defense of claim for indemnification hereunder and any settlement of any such claim and pay all expenses in connection therewith, including reasonable counsel fees. If the consent of the Trustee required in the immediately preceding sentence is unreasonably withheld, the Issuer is relieved of its indemnification obligations hereunder with respect thereto. The obligations of the Issuer set forth in this Section 6.07 are subject in all respects to Section 11.15(b).

The Trustee hereby agrees not to cause the filing of a petition in bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, receivership, conservatorship or other similar laws now or hereafter in effect against the Issuer for the non-payment to the Trustee of any amounts provided by this Section 6.07 until at least one year and one day, or, if longer, the applicable preference period then in effect, after the payment in full of all Notes issued under this Indenture.

The amounts payable to the Trustee pursuant to this Section 6.07 shall not, except as provided by Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, exceed on any Payment Date the limitation on the amount thereof described in the Priority of Payments for such Payment Date and in the definition of Administrative Expenses in the Sale and Servicing Agreement; *provided* that (i) the Trustee shall not institute any proceeding for payment of any amount payable hereunder except in connection with an action pursuant to Section 5.03 or 5.04 for the enforcement of the lien of this Indenture for the benefit of the Noteholders and (ii) the Trustee may only seek to enforce payment of such amounts in conjunction with the enforcement of the rights of the Noteholders in the manner set forth in Section 5.04.

The Trustee shall, subject to the Priority of Payments, receive amounts pursuant to this Section 6.07 and Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, and only to the extent that the payment thereof would not result in an Event of Default and the failure to pay such amounts to the Trustee will not, by itself, constitute an Event of Default. Subject to Section 6.08, the Trustee shall continue to serve as Trustee under this Indenture notwithstanding the fact that the Trustee shall not have received amounts due it hereunder and hereby agrees not to cause the filing of a petition in bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, receivership, conservatorship or other similar laws now or hereafter in effect against the Issuer for the nonpayment to the Trustee of any amounts provided by this Section 6.07 until at least one year and one day, or, if longer, the applicable preference period then in effect, after the payment in full of all Notes issued under this Indenture.

The Issuer's payment obligations and indemnity to the Trustee pursuant to this Section 6.07 shall survive the discharge of this Indenture and resignation or removal of the Trustee. When the Trustee incurs expenses after the occurrence of an Event of Default specified in clauses (vi) or (vii) of the definition of "Event of Default" with respect to the Issuer, the expenses are intended to constitute expenses of administration under Title 11 of the United States Code or any other applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency or similar law.

Section 6.08 Replacement of Trustee.

No resignation or removal of the Trustee shall become effective until the appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Section 6.08 and that meets the criteria set forth in Section 6.11 has become effective. The Trustee may resign at any time with thirty (30) days prior written notice to the Issuer, the Noteholders, the Trust Depositor and the Servicer. The Majority Noteholders or the Issuer, with the written consent of the Majority Noteholders, may remove the Trustee with thirty (30) days prior written notice to the Trustee (a copy of which notice shall promptly be provided by the Issuer to the Rating Agency). The Issuer shall remove the Trustee if:

- (i) the Trustee fails to comply with Section 6.11;
- (ii) the Trustee is adjudged bankrupt or insolvent;
- (iii) a receiver or other public officer takes charge of the Trustee or its property;
- (iv) the Trustee otherwise becomes incapable of acting; or
- (v) the Trustee defaults in any of its obligations under the Transaction Documents and such default is not cured within 30 days after a Responsible Officer of the Trustee receives written notice of such default.

If the Trustee resigns or is removed or if a vacancy exists in the office of Trustee for any reason (the Trustee in such event being referred to herein as the retiring Trustee), the Issuer shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee.

A successor Trustee shall deliver a written acceptance of its appointment to the retiring Trustee and to the Issuer. Upon the appointment becoming effective, the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective, and the successor Trustee shall have all the rights, powers and duties of the Trustee under this Indenture. No successor Trustee shall accept appointment as provided in this Section 6.08 unless at the time of such appointment becoming effective such Person shall be eligible under the provisions of Section 6.11. The retiring Trustee shall promptly transfer all property (including all Indenture Collateral) held by it as Trustee to the successor Trustee and shall execute and deliver such instruments and such other documents as may reasonably be required to more fully and certainly vest and confirm in the successor Trustee all such rights, powers, duties and obligations.

If a successor Trustee does not take office within 60 days after the retiring Trustee resigns or is removed, the retiring Trustee, the Issuer or the Majority Noteholders may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee.

Notwithstanding the replacement of the Trustee pursuant to this Section 6.08, the Issuer's obligations under Section 6.07 shall continue for the benefit of the retiring Trustee.

Upon the appointment of a successor Trustee as provided in this Section 6.08, the successor Trustee shall mail notice of such succession hereunder at the expense of the Issuer to all Holders of Notes at their addresses as shown in the Note Register.

Section 6.09 Successor Trustee by Merger.

If the Trustee consolidates with, merges or converts into, or transfers all or substantially all its corporate trust business or assets to, another corporation or banking association, the resulting, surviving or transferee corporation without any further act shall be the successor Trustee; *provided* that such corporation or banking association shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under Section 6.11.

In case at the time such successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation to the Trustee shall succeed to the trusts created by this Indenture any of the Notes shall have been authenticated but not delivered, any such successor to the Trustee may adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor trustee, and deliver such Notes so authenticated; and in case at that time any of the Notes shall not have been authenticated, any successor to the Trustee may authenticate such Notes either in the name of any predecessor hereunder or in the name of the successor to the Trustee; and in all such cases such certificates shall have the full force which it is anywhere provided for in the Notes or in this Indenture.

Section 6.10 Appointment of Co-Trustee or Separate Trustee.

(a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, at any time, for the purpose of meeting any legal requirement of any jurisdiction in which any part of the Indenture Collateral may at the time be located, the Trustee shall have the power and may execute and deliver all instruments to appoint one or more Persons to act as a co-trustee or co-trustees, or separate trustee or separate trustees, of all or any part of the Indenture Collateral, and to vest in such Person or Persons, in such capacity and for the benefit of the Noteholders, such interest to the Indenture Collateral, or any part hereof, and, subject to the other provisions of this Section 6.10, such powers, duties, obligations, rights and trusts as the Trustee may consider necessary or desirable. No co-trustee or separate trustee hereunder shall be required to meet the terms of eligibility as a successor Trustee under Section 6.11 and no notice to the Noteholders of the appointment of any co-trustee or separate trustee shall be required under Section 6.08 hereof. No appointment of a co-trustee or a separate trustee shall relieve the Trustee of its duties and obligations hereunder.

(b) Every separate trustee and co-trustee shall, to the extent permitted by law, be appointed and act subject to the following provisions and conditions:

(i) all rights, powers, duties and obligations conferred or imposed upon the Trustee shall be conferred or imposed upon and exercised or performed by the Trustee and such separate trustee or co-trustee jointly (it being understood that such separate trustee or co-trustee is not authorized to act separately without the Trustee joining in such act), except to the extent that under any law of any jurisdiction in which any particular act or acts are to be performed the Trustee shall be incompetent or unqualified to perform such act or acts, in which event such rights, powers, duties and obligations (including the holding of title to the Indenture Collateral or any portion thereof in any such jurisdiction) shall be exercised and performed singly by such separate trustee or co-trustee, but solely at the direction of the Trustee;

(ii) no trustee hereunder shall be personally liable by reason of any act or omission of any other trustee hereunder; and

(iii) the Trustee may at any time accept the resignation of or remove any separate trustee or co-trustee.

(c) Any notice, request or other writing given to the Trustee shall be deemed to have been given to each of the then separate trustees and co-trustees, as effectively as if given to each of them. Every instrument appointing any separate trustee or co-trustee shall refer to this Indenture and the conditions of this Article VI. Each separate trustee and co-trustee, upon its acceptance of the trusts conferred, shall be vested with the estates or property specified in its instrument of appointment, either jointly with the Trustee or separately, as may be provided therein, subject to all the provisions of this Indenture, specifically including every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct of, affecting the liability of, or affording protection to, the Trustee. Every such instrument shall be filed with the Trustee.

(d) Any separate trustee or co-trustee may at any time constitute the Trustee, its agent or attorney-in-fact with full power and authority, to the extent not prohibited by law, to do any lawful act under or in respect of this Indenture on its behalf and in its name. If any separate trustee or co-trustee shall die, become incapable of acting, resign or be removed, all of its estates, properties, rights, remedies and trusts shall vest in and be exercised by the Trustee, to the extent permitted by law, without the appointment of a new or successor trustee.

Section 6.11 Eligibility: Disqualification.

The Trustee hereunder shall at all times (i) be a national banking association or banking corporation or trust company organized and doing business under the laws of any state or the United States, (ii) be authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, (iii) have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000, (iv) have unsecured and unguaranteed long-term debt obligations rating of at least investment grade or better by the Rating Agency or another nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or otherwise does not result in a withdrawal or reduction in rating by the Rating Agency on the Notes, and (v) be subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority. If such banking association publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to Applicable Law or the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section 6.11 its combined capital and surplus shall be deemed to be as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 6.11, the Trustee shall give prompt notice to the Issuer (who shall promptly forward the same to the Rating Agency), the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Noteholders that it has so ceased to be eligible to be the Trustee.

Section 6.12 Representations, Warranties and Covenants of the Trustee.

The Trustee hereby makes the following representations, warranties and covenants on which the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Noteholders shall rely:

(a) The Trustee is a national banking association and trust company duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the United States.

(b) The Trustee satisfies the criteria specified in Section 6.11.

(c) The Trustee has full power, authority and legal right to execute, deliver and perform this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and has taken all necessary action to authorize the execution, deliver and performance by it of this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

(d) The execution, delivery and performance by the Trustee of this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party shall not (i) violate any provision of any law or any order, writ, judgment or decree of any court, arbitrator or governmental authority applicable to it or any of its assets, (ii) violate any provision of the corporate charter or by-laws of the Trustee or (iii) violate any provision of, or constitute, with or without notice or lapse of time, a default under, or result in the creation or imposition of any lien on any properties included in the Indenture Collateral pursuant to the provisions of, any mortgage, indenture, contract, agreement or other undertaking to which it is a party, which violation, default or lien could reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the Trustee's performance or ability to perform its duties as Trustee under this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party or the transactions contemplated in this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

(e) The execution, delivery and performance by the Trustee of this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party shall not require the authorization, consent or approval of, the giving of notice to, the filing or registration with or the taking of any other action in respect of any governmental authority or agency regulating the banking and corporate trust activities of the Trustee.

(f) This Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party have been duly executed and delivered by the Trustee and constitute the legal, valid and binding agreements of the Trustee enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, subject to the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally or the application of equitable principles in any proceeding, whether at law or in equity. U.S. Bank hereby agrees and covenants that it will not, at any time in the future, deny that this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party constitute its legal, valid and binding agreements.

(g) The Trustee is not affiliated, as that term is defined in Rule 405 under the Securities Act, with the Issuer.

Section 6.13 Directions to Trustee.

The Trustee is hereby directed and authorized:

- (i) to accept a collateral assignment of the Loans, and hold the assets of the Indenture Collateral as security for the Noteholders;
- (ii) to authenticate and deliver the Notes substantially in the forms prescribed by Exhibits A-1 through A-2 in accordance with the terms of this Indenture;
- (iii) to execute and deliver the Transaction Documents to which it is a party; and

(iv) to take all other actions as shall be required to be taken by it by the terms of this Indenture and the other Transaction Documents to which it is party.

For avoidance of doubt, in entering into and performing under the Transaction Documents to which it is a party, the Trustee (in all its capacities) shall be subject to the protections, rights, indemnities and immunities afforded it under Article VI of this Indenture.

Section 6.14 Conflicts.

If a Default occurs and is continuing and the Trustee is deemed to have a “conflicting interest” (as defined in the TIA) as a result of acting as trustee for the Notes, the Issuer, at its expense, shall appoint a successor Trustee for the affected Notes so that there will be a separate Trustee for such affected Notes. No such event shall alter the voting rights of the Noteholders under this Indenture or under any of the other Transaction Documents.

**ARTICLE VII
NOTEHOLDERS’ LISTS AND REPORTS**

Section 7.01 Issuer To Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Noteholders.

The Issuer will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee (a) within five (5) days after each Record Date, a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Holders of Notes as of such Record Date and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may reasonably request in writing, within 30 days after receipt by the Issuer of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 10 days prior to the time such list is furnished; *provided* that so long as the Trustee is the Note Registrar, no such list shall be required to be furnished.

Section 7.02 Preservation of Information; Communications to Noteholders.

(a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, the names and addresses of the Holders of Notes contained in the most recent list furnished to the Trustee as provided in Section 7.01 and the names and addresses of Holders of Notes received by the Trustee in its capacity as Note Registrar. The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in such Section 7.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

(b) The Trustee shall furnish to the Noteholders promptly upon receipt of a written request therefor, duplicates or copies of all reports, notices, requests, demands, certificates and financial statements of the Issuer or of the Servicer furnished to the Trustee under the Transaction Documents.

(c) With respect to the Notes issued in book-entry form, at the request of the Issuer or the Servicer, the Trustee will request and upon receipt make available to the Issuer and the Servicer a list of DTC participants holding interests in the Notes.

Section 7.03 Fiscal Year.

Unless the Issuer otherwise determines, the fiscal year of the Issuer shall end on December 31 of each year. The Issuer shall notify the Trustee of any change in its fiscal year.

ARTICLE VIII
TRANSACTION ACCOUNTS, DISBURSEMENTS AND RELEASES

Section 8.01 Collection of Money.

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein or in the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trustee may demand payment or delivery of, and shall receive and collect, directly and without intervention or assistance of any fiscal agent or other intermediary, all money and other property payable to or receivable by the Trustee pursuant to this Indenture. The Trustee shall apply all such money received by it as provided in this Indenture. Except as otherwise expressly provided in this Indenture or in the Sale and Servicing Agreement, if any event of default occurs in the making of any payment or performance under any agreement or instrument that is part of the Indenture Collateral, the Trustee (at the direction of the Servicer pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement) may take such action as may be appropriate to enforce such payment or performance, including the institution and prosecution of appropriate Proceedings. Any such action shall be without prejudice to any right to claim a Default or Event of Default under this Indenture and any right to proceed thereafter as provided in Article V.

Section 8.02 Transaction Accounts.

(a) On or prior to the Closing Date, the Trustee on behalf of the Issuer shall establish and maintain, in the name of the Issuer, for the benefit of the Trustee and the Noteholders, the Lockbox Account, the Distribution Account, the Reinvestment Account, the Reserve Account and the Collection Account, in each case, as provided in Sections 7.01, 7.02, 7.03 and 7.04 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(b) All funds required to be deposited in the Collection Account with respect to the preceding Collection Period will be deposited in the Collection Account as provided in Section 7.03 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. On or before the last day of each Collection Period or such other date as determined by the Trustee pursuant to Section 7.06(c) of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Collections with respect to the preceding Collection Period on deposit in the Collection Account will be transferred from the Collection Account to the Distribution Account as provided in Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. On or before the Business Day immediately preceding each Payment Date, all other amounts then on deposit in the Collection Account (including, without limitation, any amounts deposited into the Collection Account from the Reserve Account pursuant to Section 7.02 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement) will be deposited into the Distribution Account and will remain uninvested while deposited in the Distribution Account. The Trustee shall invest any funds in the Reserve Account as provided in the Sale and Servicing Agreement. Funds will be deposited into the Reserve Account as provided in Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(c) On each Payment Date or such other date as determined by the Trustee pursuant to Section 5.04(b), the Trustee, as Paying Agent, shall distribute all amounts on deposit in the Distribution Account to Noteholders in respect of Notes and any other parties specified in the Priority of Payments, and to the Trustee, as Paying Agent under the Trust Agreement, for distribution to the Holders of the Trust Certificates in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

(d) All moneys deposited from time to time in the Distribution Account and the Reserve Account pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement and all deposits therein pursuant to this Indenture are for the benefit of the Securityholders and all investments made with such moneys including all income or other gain from such investments are for the benefit of the Securityholders as provided by the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(e) The Redemption Price described in Section 10.01 hereof shall be deposited in the Distribution Account.

Section 8.03 Officer's Certificate.

Except for releases or conveyances required or permitted by the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the other Transaction Documents, the Trustee shall receive at least two Business Days' notice when requested by the Issuer to take any action pursuant to Section 8.05(a), accompanied by copies of any instruments to be executed, and the Trustee shall also require, as a condition to such action, an Officer's Certificate, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, stating the effect of any such action, outlining the steps required to complete the same, and concluding that all conditions precedent to the taking of such action have been complied with and such action will not materially and adversely impair the security for the Notes or the rights of the Noteholders in contravention of the provisions of this Indenture.

Section 8.04 Termination Upon Distribution to Noteholders.

Subject to Section 4.06, this Indenture and the respective obligations and responsibilities of the Issuer and the Trustee created hereby shall terminate upon the distribution to the Noteholders and the Trustee of all amounts required to be distributed to such parties pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 8.05 Release of Indenture Collateral.

(a) Subject to the payment of its fees and reasonable expenses, the Trustee may, and when required by the provisions of this Indenture shall, execute instruments to release property from the lien of this Indenture, or convey the Trustee's interest in the same, in a manner and under circumstances that are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the other Transaction Documents. No party relying upon an instrument executed by the Trustee as provided in Article IV hereunder shall be bound to ascertain the Trustee's authority, inquire into the satisfaction of any conditions precedent, or see to the application of any moneys. The Trustee shall not release any Loan from the lien of this Indenture in connection with a sale of such Loan to an Affiliate of the Servicer or the Issuer without first receiving an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer in the form of Exhibit F and a Request for Release in the form of Exhibit M to the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The Trustee shall make copies of any such Officer's Certificate available to any Noteholder upon written request of such Noteholder, subject to Section 11.01.

(b) The Trustee shall, at such time as (i) there are no Notes Outstanding and (ii) all sums due the Trustee pursuant to this Indenture have been paid, release any remaining portion of the Indenture Collateral that secured the Notes from the lien of this Indenture. The Trustee shall release property from the lien of this Indenture pursuant to this Section 8.05(b) only upon receipt of a request from the Issuer accompanied by an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel stating that all conditions precedent to such release have been satisfied.

ARTICLE IX
SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Noteholders.

(a) Without the consent of the Holders of any Notes but with prior written notice to all Noteholders, the Rating Agency and the Servicer, the Issuer and the Trustee, when authorized by an Issuer Order, at any time and from time to time, may enter into a supplemental indenture, in form reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes; *provided* that the Issuer shall only enter into a supplemental indenture in compliance with Section 4.01(c) and (d) of the Trust Agreement and Section 9.06 hereof:

(i) to correct or amplify the description of any property at any time subject to the lien of this Indenture, or better to assure, convey and confirm unto the Trustee any property subject or required to be subjected to the lien of this Indenture, or to subject to the lien of this Indenture additional property;

(ii) to evidence the succession, in compliance with the applicable provisions hereof, of another Person to the Issuer, and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Issuer herein and in the Notes;

(iii) to add to the covenants of the Issuer, for the benefit of the Holders of the Notes, or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Issuer;

(iv) to convey, transfer, assign, mortgage or pledge any property to or with the Trustee;

(v) to cure any ambiguity or manifest error, to correct or supplement any provision in this Indenture or in any supplemental indenture that may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision herein or in any supplemental indenture or to make any modification that is of a formal, minor or technical nature;

(vi) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of the appointment hereunder by a successor trustee with respect to the Notes and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Article VI;

(vii) to add to the conditions, limitations and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms and purposes of the issuance, authentication and delivery of Notes, as herein set forth, additional conditions, limitations and restrictions thereafter to be observed;

(viii) to modify the restrictions on and procedures for resales and other transfers of the Notes to reflect any changes in Applicable Law or regulations (or the interpretation thereof);

(ix) to enable the Issuer or the Trustee to rely upon any exemption from registration under the Securities Act or the 1940 Act or to remove restrictions on resale or transfer to the extent required under Applicable Law or otherwise make any changes necessary to comply with changes to U.S. securities laws or the regulations implementing such laws;

(x) to evidence or implement any change to this Indenture required by regulations or guidelines enacted to support the USA PATRIOT Act;

(xi) to comply with any changes to the Code or the regulations implementing the Code;

(xii) to reflect any written change to the guidelines, methodology or standards established by any Rating Agency that are applicable to this Indenture;

(xiii) to conform this Indenture to the Offering Memorandum;

(xiv) to amend, modify or otherwise accommodate changes to this Indenture relating to compliance with Rule 17g-5 under the Exchange Act or to permit compliance with the Dodd-Frank Act (including, without limitation, the Volcker Rule), as applicable to the Issuer, the Trustee, the Servicer or the Notes, or to comply with any rule or regulation enacted by regulatory agencies of the United States federal government after the Closing Date that are applicable to the Notes or the transactions contemplated by this Indenture; and

(xv) to add any new provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture or in any supplemental indenture that will not be inconsistent with any existing provisions of this Indenture or such supplemental indenture; *provided* that such action shall not, as evidenced by an Officer's Certificate delivered to the Trustee, adversely affect in any material respect the interests of the Noteholders.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join in the execution of any such supplemental indenture and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained.

(b) The Issuer and the Trustee, when authorized by an Issuer Order, may also, without the consent of any of the Holders of the Notes but with Rating Agency Confirmation, enter into a supplemental indenture for the purpose of adding any provisions to, or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of, this Indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Noteholders under this Indenture (other than as included in clauses (i) through (xv) of Section 9.01(a) above); *provided* that such action (A) shall not, as evidenced by an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer, materially adversely affect the interest of any Noteholder, and (B) shall be in compliance with Section 4.01(c) and (d) of the Trust Agreement and Sections 9.02(a) and 9.06 hereof.

(c) The Issuer and the Trustee may only enter into one or more supplemental indentures pursuant to this Section 9.01, with or without the consent of the Noteholders, to the extent that an Opinion of Counsel is delivered to the Issuer (with a copy to the Trustee) to the effect that such supplemental indenture will not (i) cause the Issuer to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool, in each case, taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (ii) cause the Notes to be deemed to have been sold or exchanged under Section 1001 of the Code or (iii) cause any Notes that were characterized as indebtedness at the time of issuance to be characterized as other than indebtedness (which Opinion of Counsel may rely upon an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer with respect to the effect of any such amendment on the economic interests of any Noteholder).

(d) In the event that any proposed supplemental indenture pursuant to this Section 9.01, in the reasonable judgment of the Servicer (on behalf of the Issuer) does not satisfy the proviso in Section 9.01(b), such amendment may become effective with the consent of each Holder of a Note. It shall not be necessary for the Noteholders to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

Section 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Noteholders.

(a) No supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Note adversely affected thereby:

(i) change the Legal Final Payment Date or the due date of any payment of principal of or interest, as applicable, on any Note, reduce the principal amount of any Note or any rate of interest or the portion of the Redemption Price payable to the Holders of the Notes, change the earliest date on which any Note may be redeemed, change the provisions of this Indenture relating to the application of proceeds of any Loan Assets to the payment of principal, interest or of distributions pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement, change any place where, or the coin or currency in which, any Note or the principal thereof, or interest thereon, is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any provisions of the Indenture regarding payment on the Notes;

(ii) reduce the percentage of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes, the consent of the Holders of which is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of the Holders of which is required for any waiver of compliance with any provision of this Indenture or defaults hereunder and their consequences provided for in this Indenture;

(iii) modify or alter the provisions of the proviso to the definition of the term "Outstanding" or modify or alter the provisions of the proviso to the definition of the term "Holder";

(iv) modify or alter the provisions hereunder regarding the voting of Notes held by the Issuer, the Seller, the Servicer, an affiliate of any of them or any obligor on the Notes;

(v) modify any provisions hereunder in such a manner as to affect the calculation of the amount of any payment of interest or principal due on any Note on any Payment Date or to affect the rights of the Noteholders to the benefit of any provisions for the mandatory redemption of the Notes contained in the Indenture; or

(vi) reduce the percentage of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes, the consent of the Holders of which is required to direct the Trustee to sell or liquidate the Indenture Collateral pursuant to Section 5.04;

(vii) modify any provision of this Section 9.02 except to increase any percentage specified herein or to provide that certain additional provisions of this Indenture or the other Transaction Documents cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Note affected thereby; or

(viii) permit the creation of any lien ranking prior to or on a parity with the lien of this Indenture with respect to any part of the Indenture Collateral or, except as otherwise permitted or contemplated herein or by any other Transaction Document, terminate the lien of this Indenture on any property at any time subject hereto or deprive any Noteholder of the security provided by the lien of this Indenture.

(b) The Issuer shall only enter into a supplemental indenture in compliance with Section 4.01(c) of the Trust Agreement and Section 9.06 hereof; *provided* that such action shall not, as evidenced by an Opinion of Counsel, (i) cause the Issuer to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool, in each case, taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (ii) cause the Notes to be deemed to have been sold or exchanged under Section 1001 of the Code or (iii) cause any Notes that were characterized as indebtedness at the time of issuance to be characterized as other than indebtedness (which Opinion of Counsel may rely upon an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer with respect to the effect of any such amendment on the economic interests of any Noteholder).

(c) Promptly after the execution by the Issuer and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Section 9.02, the Trustee shall mail to the Servicer (who shall promptly forward the same to the Rating Agency) and the Holders of the Notes to which such amendment or supplemental indenture relates a copy of such supplemental indenture or a notice setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture. Any failure of the Trustee to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

(d) The Issuer and the Trustee may only enter into one or more supplemental indentures pursuant to this Section 9.02 to the extent that written advice from Dechert LLP or an opinion of tax counsel of nationally recognized standing in the United States experienced in such matters is delivered to the Issuer (with a copy to the Trustee) to the effect that such supplemental indenture will not (i) cause the Issuer to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool, in each case, taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (ii) cause the Notes to be deemed to have been sold or exchanged under Section 1001 of the Code or (iii) cause any Notes that were characterized as indebtedness at the time of issuance to be characterized as other than indebtedness.

Section 9.03 Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

In executing, or permitting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article IX or the modification thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and subject to Sections 6.01 and 6.02, shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture, which Opinion of Counsel may rely upon an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer with respect to the effect of any such supplemental indenture on the economic interests of the Holders of the Notes. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties, liabilities or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise. The Issuer shall provide copies of each supplemental indenture to the Rating Agency.

Section 9.04 Effect of Supplemental Indenture.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions hereof, this Indenture shall be and shall be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith with respect to the Notes affected thereby, and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties, liabilities and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Noteholders shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

Section 9.05 Reference in Notes to Supplemental Indentures.

Notes authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article IX may, and if required by the Trustee shall, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Issuer or the Trustee shall so determine, new Notes so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Issuer, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Issuer and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Notes.

Section 9.06 Consent of the Servicer and Owner Trustee.

The Issuer agrees that it will not permit to become effective any supplemental indenture that adversely affects the obligations or rights of the Servicer or the Owner Trustee or the amount or priority or payment of any fees or other amounts payable to the Servicer or the Owner Trustee unless, in each such case, the Servicer or the Owner Trustee has been given prior written notice of such supplemental indenture and has consented thereto in writing.

**ARTICLE X
OPTIONAL REDEMPTION**

Section 10.01 Optional Redemption.

(a) The Issuer may, where the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance as of the last day of any Collection Period shall be less than or equal to 10% of the Cutoff Date Pool Balance, effect an Optional Redemption, in whole but not in part, on any Redemption Date (such Redemption Date shall be a Payment Date to be specified in a notice to be delivered to the Issuer and the Trustee at least 15 Business Days prior to such Redemption Date) by deposit in full of the Redemption Price in the Distribution Account for distribution to the Holders of the Notes and other persons entitled thereto by 10:00 a.m. (New York City time) on the business day preceding

the applicable Payment Date whereupon all such Notes shall be due and payable on the applicable Payment Date, in connection with which the Issuer shall comply with the provisions of this [Section 10.01](#) and [Section 10.02](#). The Servicer or the Issuer will furnish notice of such election to the Trustee, the Owner Trustee and the Rating Agency no later than 10 Business Days prior to the proposed Redemption Date and, provided that sufficient funds are received by the Servicer, the Servicer on behalf of the Issuer shall deposit in the Distribution Account an amount equal to the Redemption Price of the Notes to be redeemed on the Redemption Date.

(b) The Notes to be redeemed shall, following delivery of a notice of an Optional Redemption complying with [Section 10.02](#), on the Redemption Date become due and payable at the Redemption Price with respect thereto and (unless such Redemption Price is not paid) no interest shall accrue on such Redemption Price for any period after the date to which accrued interest is calculated for purposes of calculating the Redemption Price. On the Redemption Date, upon deposit in full by the Servicer in the Distribution Account of an amount equal to the Redemption Price, the Indenture Collateral (other than the Transaction Accounts) shall cease to constitute assets of the Issuer and the Noteholders shall have no interest therein nor any claim to any distributions in respect of the Indenture Collateral (other than the Transaction Accounts).

(c) The portion of the Redemption Price constituting payment of principal of the Notes shall be distributed to Noteholders in accordance with [Section 7.06\(b\)](#) of the Sale and Servicing Agreement and all other amounts included in the Redemption Price shall be distributed in accordance with [Section 7.06\(a\)](#) of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(d) The Issuer or the Servicer may withdraw any notice of Optional Redemption or specify a new Redemption Date at any time prior to the proposed Redemption Date set forth in any prior notice of Optional Redemption by providing written notice to the Trustee, the Owner Trustee and the Rating Agency by no later than the second Business Day preceding such Redemption Date. A withdrawal of such notice of Optional Redemption or the inability of the Issuer to complete an Optional Redemption of the Notes will not constitute an Event of Default.

Section 10.02 Form of Redemption Notice by Trustee.

(a) Notice of redemption under [Section 10.01](#) shall be given by the Trustee by facsimile, electronic mail, overnight courier or by first-class mail, postage prepaid, transmitted or mailed prior to the applicable Redemption Date, to each Holder of Notes, as of the close of business on the Record Date preceding the applicable Redemption Date at such Holder's address appearing in the Note Register.

(b) All notices of redemption shall state:

(i) the Redemption Date;

(ii) the Redemption Price;

(iii) that the Record Date otherwise applicable to such Redemption Date, is not applicable and that, unless waived by the Issuer, payments shall be made only upon presentation and surrender of such Notes and the place where such Notes are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price with respect thereto (which shall be the office or agency of the Issuer to be maintained as provided in [Section 3.02](#)); and

(iv) that interest on the Notes shall cease to accrue on the Redemption Date, as applicable; *provided* that the Redemption, as applicable, occurs on such date.

(c) Notice of redemption of the Notes shall be given by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Issuer. Failure to give notice of redemption, or any defect therein, to any Holder of any Note shall not impair or affect the validity of the redemption of any other Note.

ARTICLE XI MISCELLANEOUS

Section 11.01 Confidentiality.

(a) No Receiving Party shall use any Confidential Information except to the extent necessary to evaluate and monitor the transaction represented by the Transaction Documents. Each Receiving Party agrees (and each Holder of a Note is deemed to agree) that it will make available Confidential Information only to (i) its officers, employees, directors, affiliates, advisors, agents, shareholders, members, partners and managers who have a need to know such Confidential Information for the purpose of evaluating or monitoring the transaction, (ii) its accounting firms and legal counsel (and their respective officers, employees, directors, agents, affiliates and advisors) and (iii) any prospective purchasers of a Note, in each case who have need to know such Confidential Information for the purposes of evaluating or monitoring the transaction (collectively, "representatives"), and that all persons to whom such Confidential Information is made available will be made aware of the confidential nature of such Confidential Information and agree to be bound by the restrictions imposed by this Indenture on the use of Confidential Information. This Section 11.01 shall constitute a confidentiality agreement for purposes of Regulation FD under the Exchange Act.

(b) No Receiving Party or any of its representatives will disclose any Confidential Information to any third party, except as may be required by law or expressly permitted pursuant to this Section 11.01.

(c) Each Receiving Party acknowledges and agrees that the breach or threatened breach of this Section 11.01 by it may result in irreparable and continuing damage to the Disclosing Parties, for which there will be no adequate remedy at law. Accordingly, each Receiving Party agrees that the Disclosing Parties shall be entitled, without prejudice, to all the rights and remedies available to each of them, including an injunction or specific performance to prevent breaches or threatened breaches of any of the provisions of this Indenture by an action instituted in a court having proper jurisdiction.

(d) The confidentiality provisions of this Section 11.01 shall remain in effect for a period commencing on the date hereof and end two years after the Legal Final Payment Date.

(e) If any Receiving Party or any of its affiliates or representatives is required by legal process to disclose any of the Confidential Information, such Receiving Party shall provide the Disclosing Parties with notice of such requirement so that the Disclosing Parties may seek a

protective order or other appropriate remedy or waive compliance with the provisions of this Indenture. If a protective order or other remedy is not obtained, such Receiving Party, its affiliates and representatives may, without violating this Indenture, disclose that portion of the Confidential Information that such party is legally required to disclose.

Section 11.02 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of a Responsible Officer of the Issuer may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which the certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate of a Responsible Officer or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Servicer, the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, or any other appropriate Person, stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Servicer, the Issuer, the Trust Depositor or such other Person, unless such counsel knows that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Whenever in this Indenture, in connection with any application or certificate or report to the Trustee, it is provided that the Issuer shall deliver any document as a condition of the granting of such application, or as evidence of the Issuer's compliance with any term hereof, it is intended that the truth and accuracy in all material respects, at the time of the granting of such application or at the effective date of such certificate or report (as the case may be), of the facts and opinions stated in such document shall in such case be conditions precedent to the right of the Issuer to have such application granted or to the sufficiency of such certificate or report. The foregoing shall not, however, be construed to affect the Trustee's right to rely upon the truth and accuracy of any statement or opinion contained in any such document as provided in Article VI.

Section 11.03 Acts of Noteholders.

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Noteholders may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Noteholders in person or by agents duly appointed in writing; and except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments are delivered to the Trustee, and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Issuer. Such instrument or instruments (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes

referred to as the “Act” of the Noteholders signing such instrument or instruments. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 6.01) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Issuer, if made in the manner provided in this Section 11.03.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any person of any such instrument or writing may be proved in any manner that the Trustee deems sufficient.

(c) The ownership of Notes shall be proved by the Note Register; *provided* that in all cases except where otherwise required by law or regulation, any act by a Holder of a Note may be taken by the Beneficial Owner of such Note.

(d) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action by the Holder of any Notes shall bind the Holder of every Note issued upon the registration thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof, in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustee or the Issuer in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Note.

Section 11.04 Notices, etc., to Trustee and Others.

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Noteholders or other documents provided or permitted by this Indenture shall be in writing and if such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Noteholders is to be made upon, given or furnished to or filed with:

(i) the Trustee by any Noteholder or by the Issuer, shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to and mailed, by certified mail, return receipt requested, hand delivered, sent by overnight courier service guaranteeing next day delivery or by telecopy in legible form, to the Trustee addressed to it at U.S. Bank National Association, Global Corporate Trust, One Federal Street 3rd Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02110, Attention: Jack Lindsay, Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, Tel: (617) 603-6789, Fax: (855) 869-2187; Email: jack.lindsay@usbank.com or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Issuer, the Noteholder, or the Servicer by the Trustee;

(ii) the Issuer by the Trustee or by any Noteholder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, hand delivered, sent by overnight courier service or by telecopy in legible form, to the Issuer addressed to it at c/o Wilmington Trust, National Association, Rodney Square North, 1100 North Market Street, Wilmington, Delaware 19890, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration, Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140, or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Issuer;

(iii) the Servicer by the Issuer or the Trustee shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, hand delivered, sent by overnight courier service or by telecopy in legible form, to the Servicer addressed to Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1,

Telephone: (650) 289-3060, Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194; with a copy to Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, Attention: General Counsel, Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, Telephone: (650) 289-3060, Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194; or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Issuer or the Trustee by the Servicer; and

(iv) the Owner Trustee by the Issuer or the Trustee shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, hand delivered, sent by overnight courier service or by teletype in legible form, to the Owner Trustee addressed to Wilmington Trust, National Association, Rodney Square North, 1100 North Market Street, Wilmington, Delaware 19890; Attention: Corporate Trust Administration; Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140.

(b) Notices required to be given to the Rating Agency shall be in writing, personally delivered or mailed by certified mail, return receipt requested, to the Rating Agency, at the following address: Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc., 805 Third Avenue, 29th Floor, New York, New York 10022, Attn: ABS Surveillance; or as to each of the foregoing, at such other address as shall be designated by written notice to the other parties; *provided* that no notice shall be required to be given to the Rating Agency unless the Outstanding Notes are rated by the Rating Agency.

(c) Delivery of any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Noteholders or other documents made as provided above will be deemed effective: (i) if in writing and delivered in Person or by overnight courier service, on the date it is delivered; (ii) if sent by facsimile transmission, on the date that transmission is received by the recipient in legible form (it being agreed that the burden of proving receipt will be on the sender and will not be met by a transmission report generated by the sender's facsimile machine); (iii) if sent by mail, on the date that mail is delivered or its delivery is attempted; and (iv) if sent by email, on the date of transmission; in each case, unless the date of that delivery (or attempted delivery) or that receipt, as applicable, is not a Business Day or that communication is delivered (or attempted) or received, as applicable, after the close of business on a Business Day, in which case that communication shall be deemed given and effective on the first following day that is a Business Day.

Section 11.05 Notices to Noteholders; Waiver.

Where this Indenture provides for notice to Noteholders of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, by nationally recognized overnight courier or by first-class, postage prepaid to each Noteholder affected by such event, at his address as it appears on the Note Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, if any, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Noteholders is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice nor any defect in any notice so mailed to any particular Noteholder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Noteholders, and any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall conclusively be presumed to have been duly given. Whenever a notice or other communication to the Noteholders is required under this Indenture, unless and until definitive Notes shall have been issued to such Noteholders, the Trustee shall give all such notices and communications specified herein to be given to Noteholders of the book entry Notes to DTC, and shall have no obligation to such holders of the book entry Notes.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by any Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Noteholders shall be filed with the Trustee but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such a waiver.

In case, by reason of the suspension of regular mail service as a result of a strike, work stoppage or similar activity, it shall be impractical to mail notice of any event to Noteholders when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any manner of giving such notice as shall be satisfactory to the Trustee shall be deemed to be a sufficient giving of such notice.

Where this Indenture provides for notice to the Rating Agency, failure to give such notice shall not affect any other rights or obligations created hereunder, and shall not under any circumstance constitute an Event of Default.

Section 11.06 Alternate Payment and Notice Provisions.

Notwithstanding any provision of this Indenture or any of the Notes to the contrary, the Issuer may enter into any agreement with any Holder of a Note providing for a method of payment, or notice by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent to such Holder, that is different from the methods provided for in this Indenture for such payments or notices. The Issuer will furnish to the Trustee a copy of each such agreement and the Trustee, at the expense of the Issuer, will cause payments to be made and notices to be given in accordance with such agreements.

Section 11.07 Effect of Headings.

The Article and Section headings herein are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 11.08 Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture and the Notes by the Issuer shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not. All agreements of the Trustee in this Indenture shall bind its successors, co-trustees and agents.

Section 11.09 Severability.

In case any provision in this Indenture or in the Notes shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality, and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 11.10 Benefits of Indenture.

Except as otherwise specifically provided herein, nothing in this Indenture or in the Notes shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, the Owner Trustee and the Noteholders, and any other party secured hereunder, and any other Person with an ownership interest in any part of the Indenture Collateral, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 11.11 Legal Holidays.

In any case where the date on which any payment is due shall not be a Business Day, then (notwithstanding any other provision of the Notes or this Indenture) payment need not be made on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the date on which nominally due, and no interest shall accrue for the period from and after any such nominal date.

Section 11.12 GOVERNING LAW.

(a) THIS INDENTURE, EACH SUPPLEMENT AND THE NOTES SHALL BE CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT REFERENCE TO ITS CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS (OTHER THAN SECTIONS 5-1401 AND 5-1402 OF THE NEW YORK GENERAL OBLIGATIONS LAW), AND THE OBLIGATIONS, RIGHTS AND REMEDIES OF THE PARTIES HEREUNDER SHALL BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SUCH LAWS.

(b) EACH PARTY HERETO HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS INDENTURE. Each party hereto (i) certifies that no representative, agent or attorney of any other party has represented, expressly or otherwise, that such other party would not, in the event of litigation, seek to enforce the foregoing waiver and (ii) acknowledges that it and the other parties hereto have been induced to enter into this Indenture by, among other things, the mutual waivers and certifications in this Section 11.12(b).

Section 11.13 Counterparts.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts (including by facsimile), each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 11.14 Issuer Obligation.

No recourse may be taken, directly or indirectly, with respect to the obligations of the Issuer, the Owner Trustee or the Trustee on the Notes or under this Indenture or any of the other Transaction Documents or any certificate or other writing delivered in connection herewith or therewith, against (i) the Trustee or the Owner Trustee in its individual capacity, (ii) any of the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Servicer and any holder of a Trust Certificate or (iii) any partner, owner, beneficiary, stockholder, manager, member, officer, director, employee or agent of any of

the parties identified in clauses (i) and (ii) or of any successor or assign of any such Person. For all purposes of this Indenture, in the performance of any duties or obligations of the Issuer hereunder, the Owner Trustee and the Trust Company shall be subject to, and entitled to the benefits of, the terms and provisions of the Trust Agreement.

Section 11.15 No Petition; Limited Recourse.

(a) The Trustee, by entering into this Indenture, and each Noteholder, by accepting a Note, hereby covenant and agree that they will not prior to the date which is one year and one day or, if longer, the preference period then in effect after payment in full of the Notes rated by any Rating Agency, institute against the Trust Depositor or the Issuer, or join in any institution against the Trust Depositor or the Issuer of, any bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency or liquidation proceedings, or other proceedings under any United States federal or state bankruptcy or similar law in connection with any obligations relating to the Notes, this Indenture or any of the other Transaction Documents.

(b) Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Notes, this Indenture or any other Transaction Document, the obligations of the Issuer under the Notes and this Indenture and any other Transaction Document are limited recourse obligations of the Issuer payable solely from the Indenture Collateral in accordance with the Priority of Payments and, following realization of the Indenture Collateral and distribution in accordance with the Priority of Payments, any claims of the Noteholders, and any other parties to any Transaction Document shall be extinguished. No recourse shall be had against any officer, administrator, member, director, employee, security holder, holder of a beneficial interest in or incorporator of the Issuer or their respective successors or assigns for the payment of any amounts payable under the Notes, this Indenture or any other Transaction Document. It is understood that the foregoing provisions of this Section 11.15(b) shall not (i) prevent recourse to the Loan Assets or the Indenture Collateral for the sums due or to become due under any security, instrument or agreement which is part of the Loan Assets or the Indenture Collateral or (ii) constitute a waiver, release or discharge of any indebtedness or obligation evidenced by the Notes or secured by this Indenture or payable under any other Transaction Document until such Loan Assets and such Indenture Collateral have been realized and distributed in accordance with the Priority of Payments and the other applicable provisions of the Transaction Documents, whereupon any such outstanding indebtedness or obligation shall be extinguished. Except as otherwise provided hereunder or agreed in writing among the parties hereto, the Issuer shall retain the authority to institute, participate and join in any plan of reorganization, readjustment, merger or consolidation with respect to the issuer of any securities held hereunder, and, in general, to exercise each and every other power or right with respect to each such asset or investment as individuals generally have and enjoy with respect to their own assets and investment, including power to vote upon any securities.

Section 11.16 Inspection; Confidentiality.

The Issuer agrees that, on reasonable prior notice, it will permit any representative of the Trustee, upon reasonable notice and during the Issuer's normal business hours, and in a manner that does not unreasonably interfere with the Issuer's normal operations, to examine all the books of account, records, reports and other papers of the Issuer, to make copies and extracts therefrom, to cause such books to be audited by Independent certified public accountants, and to discuss the Issuer's affairs, finances and accounts with the Issuer's officers, employees, and Independent

certified public accountants, all at such reasonable times, in such reasonable manner, and as often as may be reasonably requested. The Trustee shall and shall cause its representatives, its legal counsel and its auditors to hold in confidence all such information except to the extent disclosure may be required by law (and all reasonable applications for confidential treatment are unavailing) and except to the extent that the Trustee may reasonably determine that such disclosure is consistent with its obligations hereunder and under Applicable Law.

Section 11.17 Limitation of Liability.

It is expressly understood and agreed by the parties hereto that (i) this Indenture is executed and delivered by Wilmington Trust, National Association, not individually or personally but solely as Owner Trustee on behalf of the Issuer under the Trust Agreement, in the exercise of the powers and authority conferred and vested in it, (ii) each of the representations, undertakings and agreements herein made on the part of the Issuer is made and intended not as personal representations, undertakings and agreements by Wilmington Trust, National Association but is made and intended for the purpose of binding only the Issuer, (iii) nothing herein contained shall be construed as creating any liability on Wilmington Trust, National Association individually or personally, to perform any covenant either expressed or implied contained herein, all such liability, if any, being expressly waived by the parties to this Indenture and by any person claiming by, through or under them and (iv) under no circumstances shall Wilmington Trust, National Association be personally liable for the payment of any indebtedness or expenses of the Issuer or be liable for the breach or failure of any obligation, representation, warranty or covenant made or undertaking by the Issuer under this Indenture or any related documents.

Section 11.18 Disclaimer.

Each Noteholder by accepting a Note and by accepting the benefits of this Indenture acknowledges and agrees that this Indenture and the Notes represent a debt obligation of the Issuer only and do not represent an interest in any assets (other than the Indenture Collateral) of the Trust Depositor or any holder of a Trust Certificate (including by virtue of any deficiency claim in respect of obligations not paid or otherwise satisfied from the Trust Assets and proceeds thereof).

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer and the Trustee have caused their names to be signed hereto by their respective officers thereunto duly authorized, all as of the day and year first above written.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

By: Wilmington Trust, National Association, not in its
Individual Capacity, but solely as Owner Trustee on
behalf of the Issuer

By: /s/ Roseline K. Maney
Name: Roseline K. Maney
Title: Administrative Vice President

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Indenture

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer and the Trustee have caused their names to be signed hereto by their respective officers thereunto duly authorized, all as of the day and year first above written.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity, except as expressly set forth
herein, but solely as the Trustee

By: /s/ Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Name: Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Title: Senior Vice President

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Indenture

FORM OF 144A NOTE

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1 4.605% ASSET-BACKED NOTE

THIS NOTE HAS NOT BEEN AND WILL NOT BE REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), OR THE APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAWS OF ANY STATE. ACCORDINGLY, TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IS SUBJECT TO CERTAIN RESTRICTIONS SET FORTH IN SECTION 4.02 OF THE INDENTURE. BY ITS ACCEPTANCE OF THIS NOTE, THE HOLDER OF THIS NOTE IS DEEMED TO REPRESENT TO THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE THAT IT IS (I) IF LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER" AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT THAT IS A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER" AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 (EACH SUCH PERSON, A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER") AND IS ACQUIRING SUCH NOTE FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT (AND NOT FOR THE ACCOUNT OF OTHERS) OR AS A FIDUCIARY OR AGENT FOR OTHERS, PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT; OR (II) A NON-U.S. PERSON ACQUIRING INTEREST IN THIS NOTE OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATIONS OF THE SECURITIES ACT ("REGULATIONS") THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER.

NO SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE SHALL BE MADE UNLESS SUCH SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER IS (A) PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, (B) FOR SO LONG AS THE NOTES ARE ELIGIBLE FOR RESALE PURSUANT TO RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, TO A PERSON THE TRANSFEROR REASONABLY BELIEVES AFTER DUE INQUIRY IS A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER" AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A WHO IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND THAT PURCHASES FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT OR FOR THE ACCOUNT OF A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER" TO WHOM NOTICE IS GIVEN THAT THE TRANSFER IS BEING MADE IN RELIANCE ON RULE 144A, OR (C) TO A NON-U.S. PERSON THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER ACQUIRING AN INTEREST IN THIS NOTE IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE 903 OR 904 (AS APPLICABLE) OF REGULATIONS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT. THE TRUSTEE MAY REQUIRE AN OPINION OF COUNSEL TO BE DELIVERED TO IT IN CONNECTION WITH ANY SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE PURSUANT TO CLAUSES (A), (B) OR (C) ABOVE. ALL OPINIONS OF COUNSEL REQUIRED IN CONNECTION WITH ANY TRANSFER SHALL BE IN A FORM REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRUSTEE. IN CONNECTION WITH A TRANSFER UNDER CLAUSES (B) OR (C) ABOVE, THE TRUSTEE SHALL REQUIRE THAT THE PROSPECTIVE TRANSFEREE CERTIFY TO THE TRUSTEE AND THE SELLER, IN WRITING THE FACTS SURROUNDING SUCH TRANSFER, WHICH CERTIFICATION SHALL BE IN FORM AND SUBSTANCE DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE. ANY ATTEMPTED TRANSFER IN CONTRAVENTION OF THE IMMEDIATELY PRECEDING RESTRICTION WILL BE VOID AB INITIO AND THE PURPORTED TRANSFEROR WILL CONTINUE TO BE TREATED AS THE OWNER OF THE NOTES FOR ALL PURPOSES.

EACH INVESTOR IN THIS NOTE OR ANY INTEREST HEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND WARRANTED THAT EITHER (I) IT IS NOT, AND IS NOT DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ACQUIRING THIS NOTE FOR, ON BEHALF OF OR WITH ANY ASSETS OF, AN EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO PART 4, SUBTITLE B, TITLE I OF THE EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT OF 1974, AS AMENDED (“ERISA”), A PLAN, ACCOUNT OR ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO SECTION 4975 OF THE INTERNAL REVENUE CODE OF 1986, AS AMENDED (THE “CODE”), OR AN ENTITY WHOSE UNDERLYING ASSETS INCLUDE PLAN ASSETS OF ANY SUCH PLANS (COLLECTIVELY, A “BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR”) OR A PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO ANY PROVISIONS UNDER ANY FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, NON-U.S. OR OTHER LAWS OR REGULATIONS THAT ARE SUBSTANTIVELY SIMILAR TO SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE (“SIMILAR LAW”) OR (II) ITS ACQUISITION, HOLDING AND DISPOSITION OF SUCH NOTE OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN DOES NOT AND WILL NOT CONSTITUTE OR RESULT IN A NON-EXEMPT PROHIBITED TRANSACTION UNDER SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE, OR A NON-EXEMPT VIOLATION OF SIMILAR LAW.

EACH PURCHASER OR TRANSFEREE OF ANY NOTE OR BENEFICIAL INTEREST THEREIN THAT IS A BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR WILL BE REQUIRED OR DEEMED TO REPRESENT, WARRANT AND AGREE THAT (I) NONE OF THE ISSUER, THE DEPOSITOR, THE SERVICER, THE TRUSTEE, THE OWNER TRUSTEE, THE TRUST DEPOSITOR, THE SELLER OR THE INITIAL PURCHASER (THE “TRANSACTION PARTIES”) NOR ANY OF THEIR AFFILIATES, HAS PROVIDED ANY INVESTMENT ADVICE WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 3(21) OF ERISA TO THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR, OR TO ANY FIDUCIARY OR OTHER PERSON INVESTING THE ASSETS OF THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR (“FIDUCIARY”), IN CONNECTION WITH THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR’S ACQUISITION OF NOTES, AND (II) THE FIDUCIARY IS EXERCISING ITS OWN INDEPENDENT JUDGMENT IN EVALUATING THE TRANSACTION.

THE ISSUER HAS THE RIGHT, UNDER THE INDENTURE, TO COMPEL ANY BENEFICIAL OWNER OF AN INTEREST IN THIS NOTE THAT IS NOT BOTH (A) A QUALIFIED PURCHASER OR A CORPORATION, PARTNERSHIP, LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY OR OTHER ENTITY (OTHER THAN A TRUST) EACH SHAREHOLDER, PARTNER, MEMBER OR OTHER EQUITY OWNER OF WHICH IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND (B)(1) A QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER OR (2) A NON-U.S. PERSON IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN RELIANCE ON REGULATION S UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, TO SELL ITS INTEREST IN THIS NOTE, OR MAY SELL SUCH INTEREST ON BEHALF OF SUCH OWNER.

THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH THE PROPERLY COMPLETED AND SIGNED TAX CERTIFICATIONS (GENERALLY, IN THE CASE OF U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX, AN INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-9 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM) IN

THE CASE OF A PERSON THAT IS A "UNITED STATES PERSON" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE OR THE APPROPRIATE INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-8 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM) IN THE CASE OF A PERSON THAT IS NOT A "UNITED STATES PERSON" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE) MAY RESULT IN WITHHOLDING FROM PAYMENTS IN RESPECT OF SUCH NOTE, INCLUDING U.S. FEDERAL WITHHOLDING OR BACK-UP WITHHOLDING.

EACH HOLDER OF THIS NOTE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND AGREED TO TREAT SUCH NOTE AS INDEBTEDNESS FOR U.S. FEDERAL, STATE AND LOCAL INCOME AND FRANCHISE TAX PURPOSES, EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY LAW.

THIS NOTE MAY BE ISSUED WITH ORIGINAL ISSUE DISCOUNT ("OID") FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES. THE ISSUE PRICE, AMOUNT OF OID, ISSUE DATE AND YIELD TO MATURITY OF THIS NOTE MAY BE OBTAINED BY WRITING TO THE SERVICER.

UNLESS THIS NOTE IS PRESENTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY, A NEW YORK CORPORATION ("DTC"), TO THE ISSUER OR ITS AGENT FOR REGISTRATION OF TRANSFER, EXCHANGE OR PAYMENT, AND ANY NOTE ISSUED IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF CEDE & CO. OR IN SUCH OTHER NAME AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC (AND ANY PAYMENT IS MADE TO CEDE & CO. OR TO SUCH OTHER ENTITY AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC), ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL INASMUCH AS THE REGISTERED OWNER HEREOF, CEDE & CO., HAS AN INTEREST HEREIN.

THE PRINCIPAL OF THIS NOTE IS PAYABLE IN INSTALLMENTS AS SET FORTH HEREIN. ACCORDINGLY, THE OUTSTANDING PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF THIS NOTE AT ANY TIME MAY BE LESS THAN THE AMOUNT SHOWN ON THE FACE HEREOF.

THIS NOTE (AND ANY INTEREST HEREIN) MAY NOT BE TRANSFERRED IN AN AMOUNT LESS THAN THE MINIMUM DENOMINATION APPLICABLE TO SUCH NOTE.

AS A CONDITION TO THE PAYMENT OF ANY AMOUNT HEREUNDER WITHOUT THE IMPOSITION OF WITHHOLDING TAX, THE TRUSTEE SHALL REQUIRE CERTIFICATION ACCEPTABLE TO IT TO ENABLE THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE TO DETERMINE THEIR DUTIES AND LIABILITIES WITH RESPECT TO ANY TAXES THAT THEY MAY BE REQUIRED TO PAY, DEDUCT OR WITHHOLD IN RESPECT OF THIS NOTE OR THE HOLDER HEREOF UNDER ANY PRESENT OR FUTURE LAW OR REGULATION OF THE UNITED STATES OR ANY PRESENT OR FUTURE LAW OR REGULATION OF ANY POLITICAL SUBDIVISION THEREOF OR TAXING AUTHORITY THEREIN OR TO COMPLY WITH ANY REPORTING OR OTHER REQUIREMENTS UNDER ANY SUCH LAW OR REGULATION.

SEE REVERSE FOR CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

Rule 144A CUSIP NO. 42710VAA2

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, a statutory trust organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (herein referred to as the "Issuer"), for value received, hereby promises to pay to CEDE & CO, or registered assigns, the principal sum of up to TWO HUNDRED MILLION DOLLARS payable in accordance with the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement on each Payment Date on which principal is required to be paid in an amount equal to the result obtained by multiplying (i) a fraction, the numerator of which is the initial principal balance of this Note and the denominator of which is the Initial Note Principal Balance by (ii) the aggregate amount, if any, payable from the Distribution Account in respect of principal on the Notes.

The principal of and interest on this Note are payable in such coin or currency of the United States as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts. All payments made by the Issuer with respect to this Note shall be applied first to interest due and payable on this Note as provided above and then to the unpaid principal of this Note.

Reference is made to the further provisions of this Note set forth on the reverse hereof, which shall have the same effect as though fully set forth on the face of this Note.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee whose name appears below by manual signature, this Note shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture referred to on the reverse hereof, or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this instrument to be signed, manually or in facsimile, by its Responsible Officer as of the date set forth above.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

By: **WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION**, not in its individual capacity but solely as Owner Trustee under the Trust Agreement

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Notes of Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 designated above and referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but solely as Trustee,

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

This Note is one of a duly authorized issue of Notes of the Issuer, designated as its Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes (herein called the “Notes”), all issued under an Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018 (such indenture, as supplemented or amended, is herein called the “Indenture”), between the Issuer and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “Trustee”, which term includes any successor Trustee under the Indenture), to which Indenture and all indentures supplemental thereto reference is hereby made for a statement of the respective rights and obligations thereunder of the Issuer, the Trustee and the Holders of the Notes. The Notes are subject to all terms of the Indenture. All terms used in this Note that are defined in the Indenture, as supplemented or amended, shall have the meanings assigned to them in or pursuant to the Indenture, as so supplemented or amended.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the entire unpaid principal amount of the Notes shall be due and payable on the date on which an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing and the Trustee or the Majority Noteholders have declared the Notes to be immediately due and payable (or such Notes have become automatically due and payable) in the manner provided in Section 5.02 of the Indenture. All principal payments on the Notes shall be made pro rata to the Noteholders entitled thereto.

Each Noteholder, by acceptance of a Note, covenants and agrees that no recourse may be taken, directly or indirectly, with respect to the obligations of the Issuer under the Indenture on the Notes or under any certificate or other writing delivered in connection therewith, against any holder of a Trust Certificate, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Trustee or the Owner Trustee in its individual capacity.

On each Payment Date, commencing on the Payment Date occurring on November 20, 2018, the Trustee or paying agent shall distribute to the Person in whose name this Note is registered on the close of business on the Record Date an amount equal to the product of the Percentage Interest of the Notes evidenced by this Note and the amount required to be distributed to Holders of Notes on such Payment Date pursuant to Section 3.05 of the Indenture.

During each Interest Period, this Note will bear interest at the Interest Rate.

Distributions on this Note will be made by the Trustee or paying agent by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such name and address shall appear on the Note Register or, upon written request to the Trustee, by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the account of the Person entitled thereto as shall appear on the Note Register without the presentation or surrender of this Note or the making of any notation thereon, at a bank or other entity having appropriate facilities therefor, and, in the case of wire transfers, at the expense of such Person unless such Person shall own of record Notes which have Initial Note Principal Balances aggregating at least \$10,000.

Notwithstanding the above, the final distribution on this Note will be made after due notice by the Trustee of the pendency of such distribution and only upon presentation and surrender of this Note at the office or agency maintained for that purpose by the Note Registrar.

As provided in the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement, deposits and withdrawals from the Distribution Account and the Collection Account may be made by the Servicer or the Trustee from time to time for purposes other than distributions to Noteholders, such purposes including reimbursement to the Servicer of advances made, or certain expenses incurred, by it, and to the extent applicable, investment in Permitted Investments.

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Note is registrable in the Note Register upon surrender of this Note for registration of transfer at the offices or agencies maintained by the Note Registrar, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Trustee duly executed by, the holder hereof or such holder's attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Notes in authorized denominations evidencing the same aggregate undivided Percentage Interest will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Note is issuable only as a registered Note. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the Note is exchangeable for a new Note evidencing the same aggregate principal amount, as requested by the holder surrendering the same.

No service charge will be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Note Registrar may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

The Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Owner Trustee, the Trustee and the Note Registrar, and any agent of any of the foregoing, may treat the person in whose name this Note is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, and none of the foregoing shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

The obligations and responsibilities created by the Indenture shall terminate upon the payment to Noteholders of all amounts required to be paid to them pursuant to the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the disposition of all property held as part of the Indenture Collateral.

SCHEDULE OF EXCHANGES OF INTERESTS IN THE GLOBAL NOTE

The following exchanges of a part of this Global Note for an interest in another Global Note or for an Individual Note, or exchanges of a part of another Global Note or Individual Note for an interest in this Global Note, have been made:

<u>Date of Exchange</u>	<u>Amount of decrease in Principal Amount of this Global Note</u>	<u>Amount of increase in Principal Amount of this Global Note</u>	<u>Principal Amount of this Global Note following such decrease (or increase)</u>	<u>Signature of Responsible Officer of Note Registrar</u>
-------------------------	---	---	---	---

ASSIGNMENT

Social Security or taxpayer I.D. or other identifying number of assignee

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

(name and address of assignee)

the within Note and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints _____, attorney, to transfer said Note on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____ 1

Signature Guaranteed:

¹ NOTE: The signature to this assignment must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears on the face of the within Note in every particular, without alteration, enlargement or any change whatsoever.

FORM OF REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1 4.605% ASSET-BACKED NOTE

THIS NOTE HAS NOT BEEN AND WILL NOT BE REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT"), OR THE APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAWS OF ANY STATE. ACCORDINGLY, TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IS SUBJECT TO CERTAIN RESTRICTIONS SET FORTH IN SECTION 4.02 OF THE INDENTURE. BY ITS ACCEPTANCE OF THIS NOTE, THE HOLDER OF THIS NOTE IS DEEMED TO REPRESENT TO THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE THAT IT IS (I) IF LOCATED IN THE UNITED STATES A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER" AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT THAT IS A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER" AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 (EACH SUCH PERSON, A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER") AND IS ACQUIRING SUCH NOTE FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT (AND NOT FOR THE ACCOUNT OF OTHERS) OR AS A FIDUCIARY OR AGENT FOR OTHERS, PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT; OR (II) A NON-U.S. PERSON ACQUIRING INTEREST IN THIS NOTE OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATION S OF THE SECURITIES ACT ("REGULATION S") THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER.

NO SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE SHALL BE MADE UNLESS SUCH SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER IS (A) PURSUANT TO AN EFFECTIVE REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, (B) FOR SO LONG AS THE NOTES ARE ELIGIBLE FOR RESALE PURSUANT TO RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, TO A PERSON THE TRANSFEROR REASONABLY BELIEVES AFTER DUE INQUIRY IS A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER" AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A WHO IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND THAT PURCHASES FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT OR FOR THE ACCOUNT OF A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER" TO WHOM NOTICE IS GIVEN THAT THE TRANSFER IS BEING MADE IN RELIANCE ON RULE 144A, OR (C) TO A NON-U.S. PERSON THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER ACQUIRING AN INTEREST IN THIS NOTE IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE 903 OR 904 (AS APPLICABLE) OF REGULATION S UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT. THE TRUSTEE MAY REQUIRE AN OPINION OF COUNSEL TO BE DELIVERED TO IT IN CONNECTION WITH ANY SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE PURSUANT TO CLAUSES (A), (B) OR (C) ABOVE. ALL OPINIONS OF COUNSEL REQUIRED IN CONNECTION WITH ANY TRANSFER SHALL BE IN A FORM REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRUSTEE. IN CONNECTION WITH A TRANSFER UNDER CLAUSES (B) OR (C) ABOVE, THE TRUSTEE SHALL REQUIRE THAT THE PROSPECTIVE TRANSFEREE CERTIFY TO THE TRUSTEE AND THE SELLER, IN WRITING THE FACTS SURROUNDING SUCH TRANSFER, WHICH CERTIFICATION SHALL BE IN FORM AND SUBSTANCE DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE. ANY ATTEMPTED TRANSFER IN CONTRAVENTION OF THE IMMEDIATELY PRECEDING RESTRICTION WILL BE VOID AB INITIO AND THE PURPORTED TRANSFEROR WILL CONTINUE TO BE TREATED AS THE OWNER OF THE NOTES FOR ALL PURPOSES."

EACH INVESTOR IN THIS NOTE OR ANY INTEREST HEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND WARRANTED THAT EITHER (I) IT IS NOT, AND IS NOT DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ACQUIRING THIS NOTE FOR, ON BEHALF OF OR WITH ANY ASSETS OF, AN EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO PART 4, SUBTITLE B, TITLE I OF THE EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT OF 1974, AS AMENDED (“ERISA”), A PLAN, ACCOUNT OR ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO SECTION 4975 OF THE INTERNAL REVENUE CODE OF 1986, AS AMENDED (THE “CODE”), OR AN ENTITY WHOSE UNDERLYING ASSETS INCLUDE PLAN ASSETS OF ANY SUCH PLANS (COLLECTIVELY, A “BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR”) OR A PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO ANY PROVISIONS UNDER ANY FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, NON-U.S. OR OTHER LAWS OR REGULATIONS THAT ARE SUBSTANTIVELY SIMILAR TO SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE (“SIMILAR LAW”) OR (II) ITS ACQUISITION, HOLDING AND DISPOSITION OF SUCH NOTE OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN DOES NOT AND WILL NOT CONSTITUTE OR RESULT IN A NON-EXEMPT PROHIBITED TRANSACTION UNDER SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE, OR A NON-EXEMPT VIOLATION OF SIMILAR LAW.

EACH PURCHASER OR TRANSFEREE OF ANY NOTE OR BENEFICIAL INTEREST THEREIN THAT IS A BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR WILL BE REQUIRED OR DEEMED TO REPRESENT, WARRANT AND AGREE THAT (I) NONE OF THE ISSUER, THE DEPOSITOR, THE SERVICER, THE TRUSTEE, THE OWNER TRUSTEE, THE TRUST DEPOSITOR, THE SELLER OR THE INITIAL PURCHASER (THE “TRANSACTION PARTIES”) NOR ANY OF THEIR AFFILIATES, HAS PROVIDED ANY INVESTMENT ADVICE WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 3(21) OF ERISA TO THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR, OR TO ANY FIDUCIARY OR OTHER PERSON INVESTING THE ASSETS OF THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR (“FIDUCIARY”), IN CONNECTION WITH THE BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR’S ACQUISITION OF NOTES, AND (II) THE FIDUCIARY IS EXERCISING ITS OWN INDEPENDENT JUDGMENT IN EVALUATING THE TRANSACTION.

THE ISSUER HAS THE RIGHT, UNDER THE INDENTURE, TO COMPEL ANY BENEFICIAL OWNER OF AN INTEREST IN THIS NOTE THAT IS NOT BOTH (A) A QUALIFIED PURCHASER OR A CORPORATION, PARTNERSHIP, LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY OR OTHER ENTITY (OTHER THAN A TRUST) EACH SHAREHOLDER, PARTNER, MEMBER OR OTHER EQUITY OWNER OF WHICH IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND (B)(1) A QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER OR (2) A NON-U.S. PERSON IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN RELIANCE ON REGULATION S UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT, TO SELL ITS INTEREST IN THIS NOTE, OR MAY SELL SUCH INTEREST ON BEHALF OF SUCH OWNER.

THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH THE PROPERLY COMPLETED AND SIGNED TAX CERTIFICATIONS (GENERALLY, IN THE CASE OF U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX, AN INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-9 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM) IN THE CASE OF A PERSON THAT IS A “UNITED STATES PERSON” WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE OR THE APPROPRIATE INTERNAL

REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-8 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM) IN THE CASE OF A PERSON THAT IS NOT A "UNITED STATES PERSON" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE) MAY RESULT IN WITHHOLDING FROM PAYMENTS IN RESPECT OF SUCH NOTE, INCLUDING U.S. FEDERAL WITHHOLDING OR BACK-UP WITHHOLDING.

EACH HOLDER OF THIS NOTE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND AGREED TO TREAT SUCH NOTE AS INDEBTEDNESS FOR U.S. FEDERAL, STATE AND LOCAL INCOME AND FRANCHISE TAX PURPOSES, EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY LAW.

THIS NOTE MAY BE ISSUED WITH ORIGINAL ISSUE DISCOUNT ("OID") FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES. THE ISSUE PRICE, AMOUNT OF OID, ISSUE DATE AND YIELD TO MATURITY OF THIS NOTE MAY BE OBTAINED BY WRITING TO THE SERVICER.

THIS NOTE IS A GLOBAL NOTE WITHIN THE MEANING OF THE INDENTURE HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO AND IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC"), A NEW YORK CORPORATION, 55 WATER STREET, NEW YORK, NEW YORK 10004, OR A NOMINEE THEREOF. THIS NOTE MAY NOT BE EXCHANGED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FOR A SECURITY REGISTERED, AND NO TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IN WHOLE OR IN PART MAY BE REGISTERED, IN THE NAME OF ANY PERSON OTHER THAN DTC OR A NOMINEE THEREOF, EXCEPT IN THE LIMITED CIRCUMSTANCES DESCRIBED IN THE INDENTURE. UNLESS THIS NOTE IS PRESENTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC TO THE ISSUER OR THE REGISTRAR, AND ANY NOTE ISSUED IS REGISTERED IN THE NAME OF CEDE & CO. OR IN SUCH OTHER NAME AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC, AND ANY PAYMENT IS MADE TO CEDE & CO. OR TO SUCH OTHER ENTITY AS IS REQUESTED BY AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF DTC, ANY TRANSFER, PLEDGE OR OTHER USE HEREOF FOR VALUE OR OTHERWISE BY OR TO ANY PERSON IS WRONGFUL BECAUSE THE REGISTERED OWNER, CEDE & CO., HAS AN INTEREST HEREIN.

THIS REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE IS A GLOBAL NOTE WHICH IS EXCHANGEABLE FOR INTERESTS IN OTHER GLOBAL NOTES SUBJECT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH HEREIN AND IN THE INDENTURE (AS DEFINED HEREIN). EACH HOLDER OF THIS REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE (OR A BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP INTEREST THEREIN) MUST PROVIDE A WRITTEN CERTIFICATION TO THE ISSUER THAT SUCH HOLDER (OR BENEFICIAL OWNER) IS A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER" AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 AND MAY NOT TRANSFER ITS INTEREST IN SUCH NOTE UNLESS IT REASONABLY BELIEVES THAT THE TRANSFEREE IS ALSO A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER" AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940.

IN CONNECTION WITH THE OFFERING OF THE NOTES IN THE UNITED STATES FROM OUTSIDE OF THE UNITED STATES, UNTIL 40 DAYS AFTER THE ORIGINAL ISSUE DATE OF THE NOTES (THE "RESTRICTED PERIOD"), THE SALE, PLEDGE OR TRANSFER OF THIS NOTE IS SUBJECT TO CERTAIN CONDITIONS AND RESTRICTIONS. THE HOLDER HEREOF, BY PURCHASING OR OTHERWISE ACQUIRING THIS NOTE, ACKNOWLEDGES THAT SUCH HOLDER IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER OR AN AFFILIATE OF THE ISSUER, AND THAT THIS NOTE HAS NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND AGREES FOR THE BENEFIT OF THE ISSUER THAT THIS NOTE MAY BE TRANSFERRED, RESOLD, PLEDGED OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED ONLY TO A QUALIFIED PURCHASER AND IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAWS OF THE STATES, TERRITORIES AND POSSESSIONS OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNING THE OFFER AND SALE OF SECURITIES, AND PRIOR TO THE EXPIRATION OF THE RESTRICTED PERIOD, ONLY (I) IN AN OFFSHORE TRANSACTION IN ACCORDANCE WITH REGULATIONS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OR (II) PURSUANT TO AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT.

THE PRINCIPAL OF THIS NOTE IS PAYABLE IN INSTALLMENTS AS SET FORTH HEREIN. ACCORDINGLY, THE OUTSTANDING PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF THIS NOTE AT ANY TIME MAY BE LESS THAN THE AMOUNT SHOWN ON THE FACE HEREOF.

THIS NOTE (AND ANY INTEREST HEREIN) MAY NOT BE TRANSFERRED IN AN AMOUNT LESS THAN THE MINIMUM DENOMINATION APPLICABLE TO SUCH NOTE.

AS A CONDITION TO THE PAYMENT OF ANY AMOUNT HEREUNDER WITHOUT THE IMPOSITION OF WITHHOLDING TAX, THE TRUSTEE SHALL REQUIRE CERTIFICATION ACCEPTABLE TO IT TO ENABLE THE ISSUER AND THE TRUSTEE TO DETERMINE THEIR DUTIES AND LIABILITIES WITH RESPECT TO ANY TAXES THAT THEY MAY BE REQUIRED TO PAY, DEDUCT OR WITHHOLD IN RESPECT OF THIS NOTE OR THE HOLDER HEREOF UNDER ANY PRESENT OR FUTURE LAW OR REGULATION OF THE UNITED STATES OR ANY PRESENT OR FUTURE LAW OR REGULATION OF ANY POLITICAL SUBDIVISION THEREOF OR TAXING AUTHORITY THEREIN OR TO COMPLY WITH ANY REPORTING OR OTHER REQUIREMENTS UNDER ANY SUCH LAW OR REGULATION.

SEE REVERSE FOR CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

Reg S CUSIP NO. U4261PAA5

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, a statutory trust organized and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (herein referred to as the "Issuer"), for value received, hereby promises to pay to CEDE & CO, or registered assigns, the principal sum of up to TWO HUNDRED MILLION DOLLARS payable in accordance with the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement on each Payment Date on which principal is required to be paid in an amount equal to the result obtained by multiplying (i) a fraction, the numerator of which is the initial principal balance of this Note and the denominator of which is the Initial Note Principal Balance by (ii) the aggregate amount, if any, payable from the Distribution Account in respect of principal on the Notes.

The principal of and interest on this Note are payable in such coin or currency of the United States as at the time of payment is legal tender for payment of public and private debts. All payments made by the Issuer with respect to this Note shall be applied first to interest due and payable on this Note as provided above and then to the unpaid principal of this Note.

Reference is made to the further provisions of this Note set forth on the reverse hereof, which shall have the same effect as though fully set forth on the face of this Note.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon has been executed by the Trustee whose name appears below by manual signature, this Note shall not be entitled to any benefit under the Indenture referred to on the reverse hereof, or be valid or obligatory for any purpose.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Issuer has caused this instrument to be signed, manually or in facsimile, by its Responsible Officer as of the date set forth above.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

By: **WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION**, not in its individual capacity but solely as Owner Trustee under the Trust Agreement

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Notes of Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 designated above and referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but solely as Trustee,

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

This Note is one of a duly authorized issue of Notes of the Issuer, designated as its Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes (herein called the “Notes”), all issued under an Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018 (such indenture, as supplemented or amended, is herein called the “Indenture”), between the Issuer and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “Trustee”, which term includes any successor Trustee under the Indenture), to which Indenture and all indentures supplemental thereto reference is hereby made for a statement of the respective rights and obligations thereunder of the Issuer, the Trustee and the Holders of the Notes. The Notes are subject to all terms of the Indenture. All terms used in this Note that are defined in the Indenture, as supplemented or amended, shall have the meanings assigned to them in or pursuant to the Indenture, as so supplemented or amended.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the entire unpaid principal amount of the Notes shall be due and payable on the date on which an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing and the Trustee or the Majority Noteholders have declared the Notes to be immediately due and payable (or such Notes have become automatically due and payable) in the manner provided in Section 5.02 of the Indenture. All principal payments on the Notes shall be made pro rata to the Noteholders entitled thereto.

Each Noteholder, by acceptance of a Note, covenants and agrees that no recourse may be taken, directly or indirectly, with respect to the obligations of the Issuer under the Indenture on the Notes or under any certificate or other writing delivered in connection therewith, against any holder of a Trust Certificate, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Trustee or the Owner Trustee in its individual capacity.

On each Payment Date, commencing on the Payment Date occurring on November 20, 2018, the Trustee or paying agent shall distribute to the Person in whose name this Note is registered on the close of business on the Record Date an amount equal to the product of the Percentage Interest of the Notes evidenced by this Note and the amount required to be distributed to Holders of Notes on such Payment Date pursuant to Section 3.05 of the Indenture.

During each Interest Period, this Note will bear interest at the Interest Rate.

Distributions on this Note will be made by the Trustee or paying agent by check mailed to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such name and address shall appear on the Note Register or, upon written request to the Trustee, by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the account of the Person entitled thereto as shall appear on the Note Register without the presentation or surrender of this Note or the making of any notation thereon, at a bank or other entity having appropriate facilities therefor, and, in the case of wire transfers, at the expense of such Person unless such Person shall own of record Notes which have Initial Note Principal Balances aggregating at least \$10,000.

Notwithstanding the above, the final distribution on this Note will be made after due notice by the Trustee of the pendency of such distribution and only upon presentation and surrender of this Note at the office or agency maintained for that purpose by the Note Registrar.

As provided in the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement, deposits and withdrawals from the Distribution Account and the Collection Account may be made by the Servicer or the Trustee from time to time for purposes other than distributions to Noteholders, such purposes including reimbursement to the Servicer of advances made, or certain expenses incurred, by it, and to the extent applicable, investment in Permitted Investments.

As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Note is registrable in the Note Register upon surrender of this Note for registration of transfer at the offices or agencies maintained by the Note Registrar, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Trustee duly executed by, the holder hereof or such holder's attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Notes in authorized denominations evidencing the same aggregate undivided Percentage Interest will be issued to the designated transferee or transferees.

The Note is issuable only as a registered Note. As provided in the Indenture and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the Note is exchangeable for a new Note evidencing the same aggregate principal amount, as requested by the holder surrendering the same.

No service charge will be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Note Registrar may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

The Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Owner Trustee, the Trustee and the Note Registrar, and any agent of any of the foregoing, may treat the person in whose name this Note is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, and none of the foregoing shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

The obligations and responsibilities created by the Indenture shall terminate upon the payment to Noteholders of all amounts required to be paid to them pursuant to the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the disposition of all property held as part of the Indenture Collateral.

SCHEDULE OF EXCHANGES OF INTERESTS IN THE GLOBAL NOTE

The following exchanges of a part of this Global Note for an interest in another Global Note or for an Individual Note, or exchanges of a part of another Global Note or Individual Note for an interest in this Global Note, have been made:

<u>Date of Exchange</u>	<u>Amount of decrease in Principal Amount of this Global Note</u>	<u>Amount of increase in Principal Amount of this Global Note</u>	<u>Principal Amount of this Global Note following such decrease (or increase)</u>	<u>Signature of Responsible Officer of Note Registrar</u>
-------------------------	---	---	---	---

ASSIGNMENT

Social Security or taxpayer I.D. or other identifying number of assignee

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

(name and address of assignee)

the within Note and all rights thereunder, and hereby irrevocably constitutes and appoints _____, attorney, to transfer said Note on the books kept for registration thereof, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated: _____

Signature Guaranteed:

² NOTE: The signature to this assignment must correspond with the name of the registered owner as it appears on the face of the within Note in every particular, without alteration, enlargement or any change whatsoever.

LIST OF LOANS

See Exhibit G of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

FORM OF WIRING INSTRUCTIONS

_____, 2018

[Paying Agent]
[Trustee]

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Dear Sir:

In connection with the sale of the above-captioned Note by _____ to _____, ("Transferee") you, as paying agent, are instructed to make all remittances to Transferee as Noteholder as of _____, ____ by wire transfer. For such wire transfer, the wiring instructions are as follows:

Transferee

Noteholder's mailing address:

Name:
Address:

FORM OF TRANSFEREE LETTER

- Hercules Capital, Inc.
as the Servicer
- 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
- Palo Alto, California 94301
- Attention: Chief Financial Officer
- Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services—EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

_____, 20__

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In connection with our acquisition of the above-captioned Notes, we certify that (a) we understand that the Notes are not being registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act"), or any state securities laws and are being transferred to us in a transaction that is exempt from the registration requirements of the Act and any such laws, (b) we are an Institutional Accredited Investor who is a Qualified Purchaser, as defined in the Indenture pursuant to which the Notes were issued (the "Indenture"), and have such knowledge and experience in financial and business matters that we are capable of evaluating the merits and risks of investments in the Notes, (c) we have had the opportunity to ask questions of and receive answers from the Seller and the Servicer concerning the purchase of the Notes and all matters relating thereto or any additional information deemed necessary to our decision to purchase the Notes, (d) we are acquiring the Notes for investment for our own account and not with a view to any distribution of such Notes (but without prejudice to our right at all times to sell or otherwise dispose of the Notes in accordance with clause (f) below), (e) we have not offered or sold any Notes to, or solicited offers to buy any Notes from, any person, or otherwise approached or negotiated with any person with respect thereto, or taken any other action which would result in a violation of Section 5 of the Act, (f) we will not sell, transfer or otherwise dispose of any Notes unless (1) such sale, transfer or other disposition is made pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Act or is exempt from such registration requirements, and if requested, we will at our expense provide an opinion of counsel satisfactory to the addressees of this certificate that such sale, transfer or other disposition may be made pursuant to an exemption from the Act, (2) the purchaser or transferee of such Note has executed and delivered to you a certificate to

substantially the same effect as this certificate if required by the Indenture, and (3) the purchaser or transferee has otherwise complied with any conditions for transfer set forth in the Indenture, and (g) the purchaser is not, and is not directly or indirectly acquiring or holding a Note or any interest therein on behalf of or with any assets of an employee benefit plan as defined in Section 3(3) of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“ERISA”), that is subject to Part 4, Subtitle B, Title I of ERISA, a “plan” described in and subject to Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”) or an entity whose underlying assets include “plan assets” (as defined in 29 CFR Section 2510.3-101, as modified by Section 3(42) of ERISA) of any plan, account or arrangement covered by ERISA or the Code (collectively, a “Plan”) or governmental, non-U.S. or church plan or arrangement subject to any federal, state, local or non-U.S. law or regulation substantively similar or of similar effect to Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code (collectively, “Similar Law”); or its acquisition, holding and disposition of such Note (1) will not constitute or result in a non-exempt prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code by reason of any of Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA or Section 4975(d)(20) of the Code, Prohibited Transaction Class Exemption (“PTCE”) 96-23, PTCE 95-60, PTCE 91-38, PTCE 90-1, PTCE 84-14, each as amended, or otherwise, or (2) in the case of a governmental, non-U.S. or church plan or arrangement subject to Similar Law, will not constitute or result in a non-exempt violation of Similar Law.

Very truly yours,

Print Name of Transferee

By: _____
Responsible Officer

FORM OF RULE 144A CERTIFICATION

- Hercules Capital, Inc.
as the Servicer
- 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
- Palo Alto, California 94301
- Attention: Chief Financial Officer
- Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services - EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

_____, 20____

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In connection with our acquisition any of the above Notes we certify that (a) we understand that the Notes are not being registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act"), or any state securities laws and are being transferred to us in a transaction that is exempt from the registration requirements of the Act and any such laws, (b) we have had the opportunity to ask questions of and receive answers from the Seller and the Servicer concerning the purchase of the Notes and all matters relating thereto or any additional information deemed necessary to our decision to purchase the Notes, (c) we have not, nor has anyone acting on our behalf offered, transferred, pledged, sold or otherwise disposed of the Notes, any interest in the Notes or any other similar security to, or solicited any offer to buy or accept a transfer, pledge or other disposition of the Notes, any interest in the Notes or any other similar security from, or otherwise approached or negotiated with respect to the Notes, any interest in the Notes or any other similar security with, any person in any manner, or made any general solicitation by means of general advertising or in any other manner, or taken any other action, that would constitute a distribution of the Notes under the Act or that would render the disposition of the Notes a violation of Section 5 of the Act or require registration pursuant thereto, nor will act, nor has authorized or will authorize any person to act, in such manner with respect to the Notes, (d) we are a "Qualified Institutional Buyer" as that term is defined in Rule 144A under the Act who is a "Qualified Purchaser" as that term is defined in Section 2(a)(51) of the 1940 Act and have completed the form of certification to that effect attached hereto as Annex 1, and (e) we are not directly or indirectly acquiring or holding a Note or any interest therein on behalf of or with any

D-2-1

assets of an employee benefit plan as defined in Section 3(3) of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“ERISA”), that is subject to Part 4, Subtitle B, Title I of ERISA, a “plan” described in and subject to Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”) or an entity whose underlying assets include “plan assets” (as define in 29 CFRSection 2510.3-101, as modified by Section 3(42) of ERISA) of any plan, account or arrangement covered by ERISA or the Code (collectively, a “Plan”) or governmental, non-U.S. or church plan or arrangement subject to any federal, state, local or non-U.S. law or regulation substantively similar or of similar effect to Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code (collectively, “Similar Law”); or its acquisition, holding and disposition of such Note (1) will not constitute or result in anon-exempt prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Code by reason of any of Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA or Section 4975(d)(20) of the Code, Prohibited Transaction Class Exemption (“PTCE”) 96-23, PTCE 95-60, PTCE 91-38, PTCE 90-1, PTCE 84-14, each as amended, or otherwise, or (2) in the case of a governmental, non-U.S. or church plan or arrangement subject to Similar Law, will not constitute or result in anon-exempt violation of Similar Law.

We are acquiring the Notes for our own account or for resale pursuant to Rule 144A and further, understand that such Notes may be resold, pledged or transferred only (i) to a person reasonably believed to be a Qualified Institutional Buyer who is a Qualified Purchaser that purchases for its own account or for the account of a Qualified Institutional Buyer to whom notice is given that the resale, pledge or transfer is being made in reliance on Rule 144A, or (ii) pursuant to another exemption from registration under the Act.

Very truly yours,

Print Name of Transferee

By: _____
Responsible Officer

FORM OF CERTIFICATION

[Date]

Hercules Capital, Inc.
as the Servicer
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: Chief Financial Officer
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services - EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In connection with our purchase of the above-captioned Notes, the undersigned certifies to each of the parties to whom this letter is addressed that it is a qualified institutional buyer (as defined in Rule 144A under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Act")) who is a qualified purchaser (as defined in Section 2(a)(51) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 (the "1940 Act")) as follows:

1. It owns and/or invests on a discretionary basis eligible securities (excluding affiliate's securities, bank deposit notes and CD's, loan participations, repurchase agreements, securities owned but subject to a repurchase agreement and currency, interest rate and commodity swaps), as described below:

Amount: \$ _____; and

2. The dollar amount set forth above is:
- a. greater than \$100 million and the undersigned is one of the following entities:
 - (1) an insurance company as defined in Section 2(13) of the Act^{*}; or
 - (2) an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act or any business development company as defined in Section 2(a)(48) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 or as defined in Section 202(a)(22) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940; or
 - (3) a Small Business Investment Company licensed by the U.S. Small Business Administration under Section 301(c) or (d) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958; or
 - (4) a plan (i) established and maintained by a state, its political subdivisions, or any agency or instrumentality of a state or its political subdivisions, the laws of which permit the purchase of securities of this type, for the benefit of its employees and (ii) the governing investment guidelines of which permit the purchase of securities of this type; or
 - (5) a corporation (other than a United States bank, savings and loan association or equivalent foreign institution), partnership, Massachusetts or similar statutory or business trust, or an organization described in Section 501(c)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code; or
 - (6) a United States bank, savings and loan association or equivalent foreign institution, which has an audited net worth of at least \$25 million as demonstrated in its latest annual financial statements as of a date not more than 16 months preceding the date of sale in the case of a U.S. institution or 18 months in the case of a foreign institution; or
 - (7) an investment adviser registered under the Investment Advisers Act; or
 - b. greater than \$25 million, and the undersigned is a broker-dealer registered with the SEC; or
 - c. [Reserved]
 - d. less than \$100 million, and the undersigned is an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, which, together with one or more registered investment companies having the same or an affiliated investment adviser, owns at least \$100 million of eligible securities; or
 - e. less than \$100 million, and the undersigned is an entity, all the equity owners of which are qualified institutional buyers.

^{*} A purchase by an insurance company for one or more of its separate accounts, as defined by section 2(a)(37) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, which are neither registered nor required to be registered thereunder, shall be deemed to be a purchase for the account of such insurance company.

The undersigned further certifies that it is purchasing Notes for its own account or for the account of others that independently qualify as "Qualified Institutional Buyers" as defined in Rule 144A who are "Qualified Purchasers" as defined in the 1940 Act. It is aware that the sale of the Notes is being made in reliance on its continued compliance with Rule 144A. It is aware that the transferor may rely on the exemption from the provisions of Section 5 of the Act provided by Rule 144A. The undersigned understands that the Notes may be resold, pledged or transferred pursuant to Rule 144A only to a person reasonably believed to be a Qualified Institutional Buyer who is a Qualified Purchaser that purchases for its own account or for the account of a Qualified Institutional Buyer who is a Qualified Purchaser to whom notice is given that the resale, pledge or transfer is being made in reliance in Rule 144A.

The undersigned agrees that if at some time before the expiration of the holding period described in Rule 144 it wishes to dispose of or exchange any of the Notes, it will not transfer or exchange any of the Notes to a Qualified Institutional Buyer without first obtaining a letter in the form hereof from the transferee and delivering such certificate to the addressees hereof.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this document has been executed by the undersigned who is duly authorized to do so on behalf of the undersigned Qualified Institutional Buyer who is a Qualified Purchaser on the _____ day of _____, _____.

Name of Institution

Signature

Name

Title**

FORM OF TRANSFER CERTIFICATE FOR RULE 144A GLOBAL NOTE TO
REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE DURING DISTRIBUTION COMPLIANCE PERIOD
(Pursuant to Section 4.02(1)(i) of the Indenture)

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services - EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is hereby made to the Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018 (as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), between Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the issuer (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Issuer"), and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Trustee"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Agreement.

This letter relates to US \$ _____ aggregate current principal amount of Notes (the "Notes") which are held in the form of the Rule 144A Global Note (CUSIP No. [____]) with the Depository in the name of [insert name of transferor] (the "Transferor"). The Transferor has requested a transfer of such beneficial interest in the Notes for an interest in the Regulation S Global Note (CUSIP No. [____]) to be held with [Euroclear] [Clearstream] (Common Code No. [____]) through the Depository.

In connection with such request and in respect of such Notes, the Transferor does hereby certify that such transfer has been effected in accordance with the transfer restrictions set forth in the Agreement and pursuant to and in accordance with Regulation S under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), and accordingly the Transferor does hereby certify that:

- (1) the offer of the Notes was not made to a person in the United States;
- (2) [at the time the buy order was originated, the transferee was outside the United States or the Transferor and any person acting on its behalf reasonably believed that the transferee was outside the United States] [the transaction was executed in, on or through the facilities of a designated offshore securities market and neither the Transferor nor any person acting on its behalf knows that the transaction was pre-arranged with a buyer in the United States];

-
- (3) the transferee is not a U.S. Person within the meaning of Rule 902(o) of Regulation S nor a Person acting for the account or benefit of a U.S. Person;
 - (4) The transferee, and any account on behalf of which the transferee is acquiring the Notes, is a “Qualified Purchaser” within the meaning of Section 2(a)(51) of the 1940 Act;
 - (5) no directed selling efforts have been made in contravention of the requirements of Rule 903(b) or Rule 904(b) of Regulation S, as applicable;
 - (6) the transaction is not part of a plan or scheme to evade the registration requirements of the Securities Act; and
 - (7) upon completion of the transaction, the beneficial interest being transferred as described above will be held with the Depository through [Euroclear] [Clearstream].

This certificate and the statements contained herein are made for your benefit and the benefit of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser of the offering of the Notes.

[Insert Name of Transferor]

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Dated:

FORM OF TRANSFER CERTIFICATE FOR RULE 144A GLOBAL NOTE TO
REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE AFTER DISTRIBUTION COMPLIANCE PERIOD
(Pursuant to Section 4.02(1)(ii) of the Indenture)

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services - EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is hereby made to the Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018 (as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), between Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the issuer (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Issuer"), and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee (the "Trustee"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Agreement.

This letter relates to US \$ _____ aggregate current principal amount of Notes (the "Notes") which are held in the form of the Rule 144A Global Note (CUSIP No. [] _____) with the Depository in the name of [insert name of transferor] (the "Transferor"). The Transferor has requested a transfer of such beneficial interest in the Notes for an interest in the Regulation S Global Note (Common Code No. [] _____).

In connection with such request, and in respect of such Notes, the Transferor does hereby certify that such transfer has been effected in accordance with the transfer restrictions set forth in the Agreement and, (i) with respect to transfers made in reliance on Regulation S under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), the Transferor does hereby certify that:

- (1) the offer of the Notes was not made to a person in the United States;
- (2) [at the time the buy order was originated, the transferee was outside the United States or the Transferor and any person acting on its behalf reasonably believed that the transferee was outside the United States] [the transaction was executed in, on or through the facilities of a designated offshore securities market and neither the Transferor nor any person acting on its behalf knows that the transaction was pre-arranged with a buyer in the United States];
- (3) no directed selling efforts have been made in contravention of the requirements of Rule 903(b) or Rule 904(b) of Regulation S, as applicable;

-
- (4) The transferee, and any account on behalf of which the transferee is acquiring the Notes, is a “Qualified Purchaser” within the meaning of Section 2(a)(51) of the 1940 Act; and
 - (5) the transaction is not part of a plan or scheme to evade the registration requirements of the Securities Act;

or (ii) with respect to transfers made in reliance on Rule 144 under the Securities Act, the Transferor does hereby certify that the Notes that are being transferred are not “restricted securities” as defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act.

This certificate and the statements contained herein are made for your benefit and the benefit of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser of the offering of the Notes.

[Insert Name of Transferor]

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Dated:

FORM OF TRANSFER CERTIFICATE REGULATION S GLOBAL NOTE
TO RULE 144A GLOBAL NOTE DURING DISTRIBUTION COMPLIANCE PERIOD
(Pursuant to Section 4.02(l)(iii)(3)(i) of the Indenture)

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services - EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Reference is hereby made to the Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018 (as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), between Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the issuer (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Issuer"), and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Trustee"). Capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to them in the Agreement.

This letter relates to US \$ _____ aggregate current principal amount of Notes (the "Notes") which are held in the form of the Regulation S Global Note (CUSIP No. [____]) with [Euroclear] [Clearstream] (Common Code No. [____]) through the Depository in the name of [insert name of transferor] (the "Transferor"). The Transferor has requested a transfer of such beneficial interest in the Notes for an interest in the Regulation 144A Global Note (CUSIP No. [____]).

In connection with such request, and in respect of such Notes, the Transferor does hereby certify that such Notes are being transferred in accordance with (i) the transfer restrictions set forth in the Agreement and (ii) Rule 144A under the Securities Act to a transferee that the Transferor reasonably believes is purchasing the Notes for its own account with respect to which the transferee exercises sole investment discretion and the transferee and any such account is a "Qualified Institutional Buyer" within the meaning of Rule 144A who is a "Qualified Purchaser" under the 1940 Act, in each case in a transaction meeting the requirements of Rule 144A and in accordance with any applicable securities laws of any state of the United States or any jurisdiction.

This certificate and the statements contained herein are made for your benefit and the benefit of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser of the offering of the Notes.

[Insert Name of Transferor]

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Dated:

FORM OF TRANSFER CERTIFICATE FOR REGULATION S
GLOBAL NOTE DURING DISTRIBUTION COMPLIANCE PERIOD
(Pursuant to Section 4.02(l)(iv)(3) of the Indenture)

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services - EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Notes

Ladies and Gentlemen:

This certificate is delivered pursuant to Section 4.02 of the Indenture, dated as of November 1, 2018 (as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), between Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the issuer (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Issuer"), and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Trustee"), in connection with the transfer by the undersigned (the "Transferor") to _____ (the "Transferee") of \$ _____ current principal amount of Notes, in fully registered form (each, an "Individual Note"), or a beneficial interest of such aggregate current principal amount in the Regulation S Global Note (the "Global Note") maintained by The Depository Trust Company or its successor as Depository under the Agreement (such transferred interest, in either form, being the "Transferred Interest").

In connection with such transfer, the Transferor does hereby certify that such transfer has been effected in accordance with the transfer restrictions set forth in the Agreement and the Notes and (i) with respect to transfers made in accordance with Regulation S ("Regulation S") promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), the Transferor does hereby certify that:

- (1) the offer of the Transferred Interest was not made to a person in the United States;
- (2) [at the time the buy order was originated, the Transferee was outside the United States or the Transferor and any person acting on its behalf reasonably believed that the Transferee was outside the United States] [the transaction was executed in, on or through the facilities of a designated offshore securities market and neither the undersigned nor any person acting on its behalf knows that the transaction was pre-arranged with a buyer in the United States];
- (3) the transferee is not a U.S. Person within the meaning of Rule 902(o) of Regulation S nor a person acting for the account or benefit of a U.S. Person, and upon completion of the transaction, the Transferred Interest will be held with the Depository through [Euroclear] [Clearstream];

-
- (4) The transferee, and any account on behalf of which the transferee is acquiring the Notes, is a “Qualified Purchaser” within the meaning of Section 2(a)(51) of the 1940 Act;
 - (5) no directed selling efforts have been made in contravention of the requirements of Rule 903(b) or Rule 904(b) of Regulation S, as applicable; and
 - (6) the transaction is not part of a plan or scheme to evade the registration requirements of the Securities Act;

or (ii) with respect to transfers made in reliance on Rule 144 under the Securities Act, the Transferor does hereby certify that such Notes that are being transferred are not “restricted securities” as defined in Rule 144 under the Securities Act.

This certificate and the statements contained herein are made for your benefit and the benefit of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser of the offering of the Notes.

[Insert Name of Transferor]

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Dated:

AMENDED AND RESTATED TRUST AGREEMENT

by and between

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor

and

WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
as the Owner Trustee

Dated as of November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Asset-Backed Notes

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS	1
Section 1.01 Definitions	1
Section 1.02 Other Terms	4
Section 1.03 Computation of Time Periods	4
Section 1.04 Interpretation	4
Section 1.05 References	5
Section 1.06 Calculations	5
ARTICLE II ORGANIZATION	5
Section 2.01 Name	5
Section 2.02 Office	6
Section 2.03 Purposes and Powers	6
Section 2.04 Appointment of Owner Trustee	7
Section 2.05 Initial Capital Contribution of Trust Estate	7
Section 2.06 Declaration of Trust	7
Section 2.07 Liability of the Certificateholders	8
Section 2.08 Title to Trust Property	8
Section 2.09 Situs of Trust	8
Section 2.10 Representations and Warranties of the Trust Depositor	8
Section 2.11 Federal Income Tax Allocations	9
Section 2.12 Covenant of Certificateholders	11
ARTICLE III TRUST CERTIFICATES AND TRANSFER OF INTERESTS	12
Section 3.01 Initial Ownership	12
Section 3.02 The Trust Certificates	12
Section 3.03 Authentication of Trust Certificates	12
Section 3.04 Registration of Transfer and Exchange of Trust Certificates	13
Section 3.05 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Trust Certificates	13
Section 3.06 Persons Deemed Owners	14
Section 3.07 Access to List of Certificateholders' Names and Addresses	14
Section 3.08 Maintenance of Office or Agency	14
Section 3.09 Appointment of Trustee as Paying Agent	15
Section 3.10 Transfer Restrictions	15
ARTICLE IV ACTIONS BY OWNER TRUSTEE	19
Section 4.01 Prior Notice to and Consent by Certificateholders with Respect to Certain Matters	19
Section 4.02 Action by Certificateholders with Respect to Bankruptcy	20
Section 4.03 Restrictions on Certificateholders' Power	21
Section 4.04 Majority Control	21
ARTICLE V APPLICATION OF TRUST FUNDS; CERTAIN DUTIES	21
Section 5.01 Establishment of Trust Account	21

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page	
Section 5.02	Application of Trust Funds	21
Section 5.03	Method of Payment	22
Section 5.04	No Segregation of Moneys; No Interest	22
Section 5.05	Accounting and Reports to the Certificateholders, the Internal Revenue Service and Others	23
Section 5.06	Signature on Returns; Partnership Representative	23
ARTICLE VI AUTHORITY AND DUTIES OF OWNER TRUSTEE		24
Section 6.01	General Authority	24
Section 6.02	General Duties	24
Section 6.03	Action upon Instruction	24
Section 6.04	No Duties Except as Specified in this Agreement or in Instructions	26
Section 6.05	Restrictions	26
ARTICLE VII CONCERNING THE OWNER TRUSTEE		26
Section 7.01	Acceptance of Trusts and Duties	26
Section 7.02	Furnishing of Documents	28
Section 7.03	Representations and Warranties	28
Section 7.04	Reliance; Advice of Counsel	29
Section 7.05	Not Acting in Individual Capacity	29
Section 7.06	Owner Trustee Not Liable for Trust Certificates or Loans	29
Section 7.07	Owner Trustee May Own Trust Certificates and Notes	30
ARTICLE VIII COMPENSATION OF OWNER TRUSTEE		30
Section 8.01	Owner Trustee's Fees and Expenses	30
Section 8.02	Indemnification	30
Section 8.03	Payments to the Owner Trustee	31
ARTICLE IX TERMINATION OF TRUST AGREEMENT		31
Section 9.01	Termination of Trust Agreement	31
ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR OWNER TRUSTEES AND ADDITIONAL OWNER TRUSTEES		32
Section 10.01	Eligibility Requirements for Owner Trustee	32
Section 10.02	Resignation or Removal of Owner Trustee	33
Section 10.03	Successor Owner Trustee	34
Section 10.04	Merger or Consolidation of Owner Trustee	34
Section 10.05	Appointment of Co-Trustee or Separate Trustee	34
ARTICLE XI MISCELLANEOUS		36
Section 11.01	Supplements and Amendments	36
Section 11.02	No Legal Title to Trust Estate in Certificateholders	37
Section 11.03	Limitations on Rights of Others	38

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

		Page
Section 11.04	Notices	38
Section 11.05	Severability	38
Section 11.06	Separate Counterparts	39
Section 11.07	Successors and Assigns	39
Section 11.08	No Petition	39
Section 11.09	No Recourse	39
Section 11.10	Headings	40
Section 11.11	GOVERNING LAW; SUBMISSION TO JURISDICTION; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL	40
Section 11.12	Termination of Original Trust Agreement	40

EXHIBITS

Exhibit A	Form of Trust Certificate (Physical)	A
Exhibit B	Form of Certificate of Trust	B
Exhibit C	Form of Purchaser's Representation and Warranty Letter	C

TRUST AGREEMENT

THIS AMENDED AND RESTATED TRUST AGREEMENT (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Trust Agreement" or this "Agreement"), dated as of November 1, 2018, is between HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING2018-1 LLC, a Delaware limited liability company, as trust depositor (the "Trust Depositor"), and WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association (in its individual capacity, together with its successors and assigns, the "Trust Company"), as owner trustee (solely in such capacity, the "Owner Trustee").

RECITALS

WHEREAS, the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee have heretofore established a trust known as the Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1 (the "Trust") pursuant to the Trust Agreement dated as of June 11, 2018 (the "Original Trust Agreement") and the Certificate of Trust (as defined below); and

WHEREAS, the Trust Depositor desires to continue the Trust; and

WHEREAS, the Trust Depositor desires to retain the Owner Trustee as the trustee of the Trust; and

WHEREAS, the Owner Trustee is willing to continue to serve as trustee of the Trust; and

WHEREAS, each of the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee consents to the amendment and restatement on the Original Trust Agreement pursuant to this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, based upon the above recitals, the mutual promises and agreements contained herein, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto, intending to be legally bound, hereby agree as follows:

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01 Definitions.

For all purposes of this Trust Agreement, except as otherwise expressly provided below or unless the context otherwise requires, capitalized terms used but not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Sale and Servicing Agreement, dated as of November 1, 2018 (the "Sale and Servicing Agreement"), among Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1, as the Issuer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor, Hercules Capital, Inc., as the Seller and as the Servicer and U.S. Bank National Association, as the Trustee, Backup Servicer, Custodian and Paying Agent which capitalized terms are incorporated by reference herein. All other capitalized terms used herein shall have the meanings specified herein or below.

“Agreement” shall have the meaning given to such term in the Preamble of this Trust Agreement.

“Bankruptcy Action” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 4.02 of this Agreement.

“Benefit Plan” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 3.10(b) of this Trust Agreement.

“Capital Account” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 2.11(d) of this Trust Agreement.

“Certificate Account” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 5.01(a) of this Trust Agreement.

“Certificate Register” shall mean the Certificate Register established and maintained in accordance with this Trust Agreement.

“Certificate Registrar” shall mean, initially, the Trustee, and thereafter, any successor appointed pursuant to this Trust Agreement.

“Certificate of Trust” shall mean a certificate of trust duly executed in the form of Exhibit B attached hereto.

“Corporate Trust Office” shall mean (a) in the case of Owner Trustee: Wilmington Trust, National Association, Rodney Square North, 1100 Market Street, Wilmington, Delaware 19890, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration and in the case of the Trustee/Certificate Registrar: U.S. Bank National Association, 111 Fillmore Avenue East, Attn: Bondholder Services—EP-MN-WS2N, St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107, Ref: Hercules2018-1; (b) in the case of the Trustee: the principal office of the Trustee currently located at (i) for Note transfer purposes and presentment of the Notes for final payment thereon, the corporate office of the Trustee located at 111 Fillmore Avenue East, Attention: Bondholder Services-EP-MNWS2N, St. Paul, MN 55107, Reference: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 and (ii) for all other purposes, the corporate office of the Trustee located at One Federal Street, 3rd Floor, Boston, Massachusetts 02110, Attention: Jack Lindsay, Reference: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 telephone number (617) 603-6789, facsimile number (855) 869-2187, email: jack.lindsay@usbank.com; and (c) at such other address as the Owner Trustee or the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Issuer.

“Domestic Corporation” shall mean an entity that is treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes and is created or organized in, or under the laws of, the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia.

“Expenses” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 8.02 of this Trust Agreement.

“Fiscal Year” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 2.11(e) of this Trust Agreement.

“Indemnified Parties” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 8.02 of this Trust Agreement.

“Majority Certificateholders” means the Holder or Holders of Trust Certificates evidencing an aggregate Percentage Interest in excess of 50%.

“Non-Foreign Status Certificate” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 3.10(g) of this Trust Agreement.

“Original Trust Agreement” shall have the meaning given to such term in the recitals of this Trust Agreement.

“Owner Trustee” shall have the meaning given to such term in the Preamble of this Trust Agreement.

“Percentage Interest” shall mean with respect to a Trust Certificate, the percentage set forth on the face thereof.

“QIBs” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 3.10 of this Trust Agreement.

“S&P” means Standard & Poor’s Financial Services LLC.

“Sale and Servicing Agreement” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 1.01 of this Trust Agreement.

“Secretary of State” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 2.02 of this Agreement.

“Section 385 Certificateholder” shall mean a holder of a Trust Certificate (or interest therein) that is (a) a Domestic Corporation, (b) an entity that is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes and has an expanded group partner (as defined in Treasury Regulations Section 1.385-3(g)(12)) that is a Domestic Corporation or (c) a disregarded entity or grantor trust of an entity described in clause (a) or (b).

“Section 385 Controlled Partnership” shall have the meaning set forth in Treasury Regulations Section 1.385-1(c)(1) for a “controlled partnership”.

“Transfer” shall have the meaning given to such term in Section 3.10(d) of this Trust Agreement.

“Treasury Regulations” or “Treas. Regs.” shall mean regulations, including proposed or temporary regulations, promulgated under the Code. References herein to specific provisions of proposed or temporary Treasury Regulations shall include analogous provisions of final Treasury Regulations or other successor Treasury Regulations.

“Trust” shall have the meaning given to such term in the recitals of this Trust Agreement.

“Trust Agreement” shall have the meaning given to such term in the Preamble of this Trust Agreement.

“Trust Certificate” shall mean a trust certificate representing a beneficial interest in the Trust executed and authenticated in the form of Exhibit A attached hereto.

“Trust Company” shall have the meaning given to such term in the Preamble of this Trust Agreement.

“Trust Depositor” shall have the meaning given to such term in the Preamble of this Trust Agreement.

“Trust Estate” shall mean all right, title and interest of the Trust in and to the Loan Assets and all other property and rights assigned to the Trust pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement, all funds on deposit from time to time in the Transaction Accounts and the Certificate Account, and all other property of the Trust from time to time, including any rights of the Owner Trustee and the Trust pursuant to the Transaction Documents.

Section 1.02 Other Terms.

All accounting terms used but not specifically defined herein shall be construed in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States. The symbol “\$” shall mean the lawful currency of the United States of America. All terms used in Article 9 of the UCC in the State of Delaware, and not specifically defined herein, are used herein as defined in such Article 9.

Section 1.03 Computation of Time Periods.

Unless otherwise stated in this Agreement, in the computation of a period of time from a specified date to a later specified date, the word “from” means “from and including”, the words “to” and “until” each mean “to but excluding”, and the word “within” means “from and excluding a specified date and to and including a later specified date”.

Section 1.04 Interpretation.

In this Agreement, unless a contrary intention appears:

- (i) the singular number includes the plural number and *vice versa*;
- (ii) reference to any Person includes such Person’s successors and assigns but, if applicable, only if such successors and assigns are permitted by the Transaction Documents;
- (iii) reference to any gender includes each other gender;
- (iv) reference to day or days without further qualification means calendar days;

(v) unless otherwise stated, reference to any time means New York, New York time;

(vi) references to “writing” include printing, typing, lithography, electronic or other means of reproducing words in a visible form;

(vii) reference to any agreement (including any Transaction Document), document or instrument means such agreement, document or instrument as amended, modified, supplemented, replaced, restated, waived or extended and in effect from time to time in accordance with the terms thereof and, if applicable, the terms of the other Transaction Documents, and reference to any promissory note includes any promissory note that is an extension or renewal thereof or a substitute or replacement therefor; and

(viii) reference to any Applicable Law means such Applicable Law as amended, modified, codified, replaced or reenacted, in whole or in part, and in effect from time to time, including rules and regulations promulgated thereunder and reference to any Section or other provision of any Applicable Law means that provision of such Applicable Law from time to time in effect and constituting the substantive amendment, modification, codification, replacement or reenactment of such Section or other provision.

Section 1.05 References.

All Section references (including references to the Preamble), unless otherwise indicated, shall be to Sections (and the Preamble) in this Agreement.

Section 1.06 Calculations.

Except as otherwise provided herein, all interest rate and basis point calculations hereunder will be made on the basis of a 360 day year consisting of twelve 30-day months and will be carried out to at least three decimal places.

ARTICLE II

ORGANIZATION

Section 2.01 Name.

The Trust created and continued hereby shall be known as the “Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1,” in which name the Trust shall have power and authority and is hereby authorized and empowered, without the need for further action on the part of the Trust, and the Owner Trustee shall have power and authority, and is hereby authorized and empowered, to conduct the business of the Trust, make and execute contracts and other instruments on behalf of the Trust and sue and be sued.

Section 2.02 Office.

The office of the Trust shall be in care of the Owner Trustee at the Corporate Trust Office or at such other address in the State of Delaware as the Owner Trustee may designate by written notice to the Certificateholders and the Trust Depositor. The Trust shall constitute a statutory trust within the meaning of Section 3801(g) of the Statutory Trust Statute for which the Owner Trustee has filed a Certificate of Trust with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware (the "Secretary of State") pursuant to Section 3810(a) of the Statutory Trust Statute. The execution and filing of the Certificate of Trust by the Owner Trustee is hereby ratified, authorized, and approved. The Owner Trustee shall have power and authority, and is hereby authorized and empowered, to execute and file with the Secretary of State any other certificate required or permitted under the Statutory Trust Statute to be filed with the Secretary of State. It is the intention of the parties hereto that this Trust Agreement constitute the governing instrument of such statutory trust.

Section 2.03 Purposes and Powers.

The purpose of the Trust is, and the Trust shall have the power and authority and is hereby authorized and empowered, without the need for further action on the part of the Trust, and the Owner Trustee shall have power and authority, and is hereby authorized and empowered (but shall not be obligated), in the name and on behalf of the Trust, to do or cause to be done all acts and things necessary, appropriate or convenient to cause the Trust, to engage in the following activities:

(a) to execute, authenticate, deliver, and issue from time to time the Notes pursuant to the Indenture and the Trust Certificates pursuant to this Trust Agreement and, if applicable, a supplement hereto, and to sell the Notes and to transfer the Trust Certificates pursuant to such agreements and the other Transaction Documents;

(b) with the proceeds of the sale of the Notes, to purchase the Initial Loans, to pay the organizational, start-up and transactional expenses of the Trust and to fund the Transaction Accounts then permitted or required to be funded pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement or the Indenture;

(c) as permitted under the Transaction Documents, to purchase, acquire, own, hold, receive, manage, exercise rights and remedies with respect to, sell, transfer and dispose of, the Trust Estate or any portion thereof as well as any permitted Trust subsidiary;

(d) to assign, grant, transfer, pledge, mortgage, convey and grant a security interest in the Trust Estate pursuant to the Indenture and to hold, manage, transfer and distribute to the Certificateholders pursuant to the terms of this Trust Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement any portion of the Trust Estate released from the lien of, and remitted to the Trust pursuant to, the Indenture;

(e) to enter into, execute, deliver and perform its obligations under the Transaction Documents to which it is to be a party and to exercise its rights and remedies thereunder;

(f) subject to compliance with the Transaction Documents, to engage in such other activities as may be required in connection with the conservation of the Trust Estate and the making of distributions to the Certificateholders, the Noteholders and others specified in the Transaction Documents; and

(g) to engage in those activities, including entering into agreements, that are necessary, suitable or convenient to accomplish the foregoing or are incidental thereto or connected therewith.

The Trust is hereby authorized to engage in the foregoing activities. The Trust shall not engage in any activity other than in connection with the foregoing or other than as required or authorized by the terms of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Owner Trustee on behalf of the Trust to engage in any other business operations or any activities other than those set forth in this Section 2.03. Specifically, the Owner Trustee shall have no authority on behalf of the Trust to engage in any business operations, or acquire any assets other than those specifically included in the Trust Estate from time to time in accordance with the Transaction Documents. Similarly, the Owner Trustee shall have no discretionary duties other than performing those acts necessary to accomplish the purpose of this Trust as set forth in this Section 2.03, certain of which may be delegated to the Servicer or the Administrator. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the Trust may hold the Notes prior to their sale by the Initial Purchaser.

Section 2.04 Appointment of Owner Trustee.

The Trust Depositor hereby appoints the Owner Trustee as trustee of the Trust effective as of the date hereof, to have all the rights, powers and duties set forth herein, and the Owner Trustee hereby accepts such appointment.

Section 2.05 Initial Capital Contribution of Trust Estate.

The Trust Depositor hereby sells, assigns, transfers, conveys and sets over to the Owner Trustee, as of the date hereof, the sum of ten dollars (\$10.00). The Owner Trustee hereby acknowledges receipt from the Trust Depositor, as of the date hereof, of the foregoing contribution, which shall constitute the initial Trust Estate (prior to giving effect to the conveyances described in the Sale and Servicing Agreement) and shall be deposited in the Certificate Account. The Trust Depositor shall pay organizational expenses of the Trust as they may arise or shall, upon the request of the Owner Trustee, promptly reimburse the Owner Trustee for any such expenses paid by the Owner Trustee.

Section 2.06 Declaration of Trust.

The Owner Trustee hereby declares that it will hold the Trust Estate in trust upon and subject to the conditions set forth herein for the use and benefit of the Certificateholders, subject to the obligations of the Trust under the Transaction Documents. It is the intention of the parties hereto that the Trust constitute a statutory trust under the Statutory Trust Statute and that this Trust Agreement constitute the governing instrument of such statutory trust. It is the intention of the parties hereto that, solely for federal income tax purposes, the Trust shall be treated as set forth in Section 2.11 of this Agreement. The parties agree that, unless otherwise required by

appropriate tax authorities, the Trust will file or cause to be filed annual or other necessary returns, reports and other forms consistent with the characterization of the Trust as set forth in Section 2.11 of this Agreement. Effective as of the date hereof, the Owner Trustee shall have all rights, powers and authority set forth herein and in the Statutory Trust Statute with respect to accomplishing the purposes of the Trust.

Section 2.07 Liability of the Certificateholders.

No Certificateholder shall have any personal liability for any liability or obligation of the Trust.

Section 2.08 Title to Trust Property.

Legal title to all of the Trust Estate shall be vested at all times in the Trust as a separate legal entity except where Applicable Law in any jurisdiction requires title to any part of the Trust Estate to be vested in a trustee or trustees, in which case title shall be deemed to be vested in the Owner Trustee, a co-trustee and/or a separate trustee, as the case may be. If any portion of the Trust Estate is deemed to be vested in the Owner Trustee, co-trustee and/or a separate trustee, (a) the Trust Depositor or the Owner Trustee, upon having actual knowledge thereof, will immediately notify the Trustee and the Servicer and (b) the Servicer will cause to be filed such UCC financing statements and related filings, documents or writings as are necessary (or as shall be reasonably requested by the Trustee) to maintain the Trustee's security interest in the Collateral under the Indenture.

Section 2.09 Situs of Trust.

All bank accounts maintained by the Owner Trustee or the Trustee on behalf of the Trust shall be located in the State of Delaware or such other state in which the Corporate Trust Office of the Owner Trustee or the Trustee may be located. The Trust shall not have any employees in any state other than Delaware; *provided* that nothing herein shall restrict or prohibit the Owner Trustee from having employees within or without the State of Delaware. Payments will be received by the Trust only in Delaware or such other state in which the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee may be located, and payments will be made by the Trust only from Delaware or such other state in which the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee may be located. The only office of the Trust will be at the Corporate Trust Office in Delaware.

Section 2.10 Representations and Warranties of the Trust Depositor.

The Trust Depositor hereby represents and warrants to the Owner Trustee that:

(a) The Trust Depositor is duly organized and validly existing as a limited liability company in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware, with power and authority to own its properties and to conduct its business as such properties are currently owned and such business is presently conducted.

(b) The Trust Depositor has the power and authority to execute and deliver this Agreement and to carry out its terms. The Trust Depositor has full power and authority to sell and assign the property to be sold and assigned to and deposited with the Trust and the Trust Depositor has duly authorized such sale and assignment and deposit to the Trust by all necessary limited liability company action.

(c) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement have been duly authorized by the Trust Depositor by all necessary limited liability company action.

(d) This Agreement constitutes a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Trust Depositor enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization and similar laws relating to creditors' rights generally and subject to general principles of equity.

(e) The execution, delivery and performance of this Trust Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party by the Trust Depositor, and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, will not violate any material Applicable Law applicable to the Trust Depositor, or constitute a material breach of any mortgage, indenture, contract or other agreement to which the Trust Depositor is a party or by which the Trust Depositor or any of the Trust Depositor's properties may be bound, or result in the creation or imposition of any security interest, lien, charge, pledge, preference, equity or encumbrance of any kind upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such mortgage, indenture, contract or other agreement, other than as contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(f) To the Trust Depositor's best knowledge, there are no proceedings or investigations pending, or to the Trust Depositor's knowledge threatened, before any court, regulatory body, administrative agency or other governmental instrumentality having jurisdiction over the Trust Depositor or its properties: (A) asserting the invalidity of this Trust Agreement, (B) seeking to prevent the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Trust Agreement or (C) seeking any determination or ruling that might materially and adversely affect the performance by the Trust Depositor of its obligations under, or the validity or enforceability of, this Trust Agreement.

Section 2.11 Federal Income Tax Allocations.

(a) It is the intent of the Trust Depositor and the Certificateholders that (i) for any period that the Trust Certificates are owned by a single beneficial owner for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the Trust will be disregarded as an entity separate from such beneficial owner for U.S. federal income tax purposes, and the Certificateholders (and the beneficial owner of the Trust Certificates), by acceptance of the Trust Certificates (or a beneficial interest therein), agree to take no action inconsistent with such treatment and (ii) for any period that the Trust Certificates are owned by more than one beneficial owner for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the Trust will be treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, other than a publicly traded partnership, the partners of which are the beneficial owners of the Trust Certificates, and the Certificateholders (and beneficial owners of the Trust Certificates), by acceptance of a Trust Certificate (or beneficial interest therein) agree to treat the Trust Certificates as equity and to take no action inconsistent with such treatment.

(b) Neither the Trust Depositor nor any Certificateholder will, under any circumstances, and at any time, make an election on Internal Revenue Service Form 8832 or otherwise take any action that would cause the Trust to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

(c) For any period that the Trust has two or more equity owners and is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the provisions of Section 2.11(d)-(g) shall apply.

(d) With respect to each taxable year (or portion thereof) in which the Trust is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) a capital account (“Capital Account”) will be maintained by the Trust for each Certificateholder with respect to all items of income, deduction, gain, loss or credit and such items will be allocated to such Capital Accounts in a manner consistent with Section 704 of the Code, and (ii) without limiting the foregoing, upon liquidation of the Trust or at such time as a Certificateholder ceases to hold any Trust Certificates in the Trust, liquidating distributions will be made in accordance with the Capital Account balances of the Certificateholders (as determined after taking into account all required Capital Account adjustments for the taxable year during which such liquidation occurs) by the later of the end of the taxable year or, the date which is 90 days after the date of such liquidation. The provisions of this Section relating to Capital Accounts are intended to comply with such provisions and related provisions issued with respect to Section 704 of the Code and shall be interpreted consistently therewith. The Trust shall have the authority to make such adjustments to the Certificateholder’s Capital Accounts as may be required to cause the allocations made by the Trust to comply with such provisions.

(e) With respect to each taxable year (or portion thereof) in which the Trust is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, at least once each such taxable year of the Trust for U.S. federal income tax purposes (as determined under Section 706 of the Code, a “Fiscal Year”), after adjusting each Certificateholder’s Capital Account for all contributions and distributions with respect to such Fiscal Year, the Trust shall allocate all profits and losses and items thereof in the following order of priority: (i) first, profits and losses and items thereof shall be allocated in the manner and to the extent provided by (A) Treas. Regs. §1.704-1(b)(4), (B) Treas. Regs. §1.704-1(b)(2) (to comply with the substantial economic effect safe harbors), including, without limitation, Treas. Regs. §1.704-1(b)(2)(ii)(d) (the “qualified income offset”) and Treas. Regs. §1.704-1(b)(2)(iv) (capital accounting requirements) and (C) Treas. Regs. §1.704-2, including, without limitation, Treas. Regs. §§1.704-2(e) (provided that allocations pursuant to Treas. Regs. §1.704-2(e) shall be made to the Certificateholders pro rata in accordance with the capital each Certificateholder has contributed to the Trust), 1.704-2(i)(2), and 1.704-2(i)(4); and (ii) all remaining profits and losses and items thereof shall be allocated to the Certificateholders’ Capital Accounts in a manner such that, after such allocations have been made, the balance of each Certificateholder’s Capital Account (which may be a positive, negative, or zero balance) shall equal (A) the amount that would be distributed to such Certificateholder, determined as if the Trust were to sell all of its assets for the Section 704(b) Book Value (as defined below) thereof and distribute the proceeds thereof (net of any sales commissions and other similar transaction fees and payments required to be made to creditors) pursuant to the relevant legal documents setting forth such distributions, minus (B) the sum of (I) such Certificateholder’s share of the “partnership minimum gain” (as determined under Treas. Regs. §§1.704-2(d) and (g)(3)) and “partner minimum gain” (as determined under Treas. Regs.

§1.704-2(i)), and (II) the amount, if any, that such Certificateholder is obligated (or is deemed for U.S. federal income tax purposes to be obligated) to contribute, in its capacity as a Certificateholder, to the capital of the Trust as of the last day of such Fiscal Year. For purposes of this Section 2.11, (i) the term "Section 704(b) Book Value" means, with respect to any Trust property, the Trust's adjusted basis for U.S. federal income tax purposes, adjusted from time to time to reflect the adjustments required or permitted by Treas. Regs. §§1.704-1(b)(2)(iv)(d) through (g), provided that on the date of the contribution of an asset to the Trust, the Section 704(b) Book Value of any asset contributed to the Trust shall be equal to the fair market value of such asset on the date of such contribution, and (ii) the term "profits and losses" shall mean the items of profit and loss of the Trust (including separately stated items) as computed under Treas. Regs. §1.704-1(b)(2)(iv).

(f) With respect to each taxable year (or portion thereof) in which the Trust is classified as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, except as provided in this Section 2.11(f), each item of taxable income, gain, loss, deduction, or credit shall be allocated in the same manner as its correlative item of "book" items allocated pursuant to Section 2.11(e). In accordance with Section 704(c)(1)(A) of the Code (and the principles thereof) and Treas. Regs. §1.704-3, income, gain, loss and deduction with respect to any property contributed to the capital of the Trust, or after Trust property has been revalued under Treas. Regs. §1.704-1(b)(2)(iv)(f), shall, solely for U.S. federal, state and local tax purposes, be allocated among the Certificateholders so as to take into account any variation between the adjusted basis of such Trust property to the Trust for U.S. federal income tax purposes and its value as so determined at the time of the contribution or revaluation of Trust property.

(g) In the event that the Trust is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the Servicer shall be the partnership representative within the meaning of Section 6223(a) of the Code. The partnership representative may, in its sole discretion, cause the Trust to make an election under Section 754 of the Code. The partnership representative shall (i) if the Trust is eligible, cause the Trust to elect, pursuant to Section 6221(b) of the Code, that Section 6221(a) of the Code shall not apply to the Trust or (ii) if the election in Section 6221(b) of the Code is not available, to the extent applicable, cause the Trust to make the election under Section 6226(a) of the Code.

Section 2.12 Covenant of Certificateholders

Each Certificateholder agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of the Trust Certificates and of this Trust Agreement, including any supplements or amendments hereto, and to perform the obligations of a Certificateholder as set forth therein or herein, in all respects as if it were a signatory hereto. This undertaking is made for the benefit of the Trust Depositor, the Trust, the Owner Trustee, the Trust Company and all other Certificateholders present and future.

ARTICLE III

TRUST CERTIFICATES AND TRANSFER OF INTERESTS

Section 3.01 Initial Ownership.

Upon the formation of the Trust by the contribution by the Trust Depositor pursuant to Section 2.05 and until the issuance of the Trust Certificates, the Trust Depositor shall be the sole beneficiary of the Trust.

Section 3.02 The Trust Certificates.

(a) The Trust Certificates shall be substantially in the form set forth in Exhibit A hereto, with such changes as may be specified in a supplement to this Trust Agreement. Except as otherwise set forth in a supplement to this Trust Agreement, the Trust Certificates shall be issued from time to time in minimum Percentage Interests of 10% and integral multiples of 1% in excess thereof; *provided* that one Trust Certificate may be issued in a different denomination. The Trust Certificates shall be executed on behalf of the Trust by manual or facsimile signature of an authorized officer of the Owner Trustee. Trust Certificates bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were, at the time when such signatures shall have been affixed, authorized to sign on behalf of the Trust, shall be validly issued and entitled to the benefit of this Trust Agreement, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them shall have ceased to be so authorized prior to the authentication and delivery of such Trust Certificates or did not hold such offices at the date of authentication and delivery of such Trust Certificates.

(b) A transferee of a Trust Certificate shall become a Certificateholder and shall be entitled to the rights and subject to the obligations of a Certificateholder hereunder upon such transferee's acceptance of a Trust Certificate duly registered in such transferee's name pursuant to Section 3.04.

Section 3.03 Authentication of Trust Certificates.

Concurrently with the initial transfer of the Initial Loans to the Trust pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trust shall issue the Trust Certificates, in an aggregate Percentage Interest equal to 100%, executed by the Owner Trustee on behalf of the Trust, authenticated by the Certificate Registrar and delivered to or upon the written order of the Trust Depositor, signed by its chairman of the board, its chief executive officer, its chief financial officer, its president, any vice president, secretary or any assistant treasurer, without further limited liability company action by the Trust Depositor, in authorized denominations. No Trust Certificate shall entitle its Holder to any benefit under this Agreement or be valid for any purpose unless there shall appear on such Trust Certificate a certificate of authentication substantially in the form set forth in Exhibit A, executed by the Certificate Registrar, by manual signature; such authentication shall constitute conclusive evidence that such Trust Certificate has been duly and validly authorized, issued, authenticated and delivered hereunder and, subject to the terms of this Agreement, fully paid and non-assessable. All Trust Certificates shall be dated the date of their authentication.

Section 3.04 Registration of Transfer and Exchange of Trust Certificates

(a) The Certificate Registrar shall keep or cause to be kept, at the office or agency maintained pursuant to Section 3.08, a Certificate Register in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Certificate Registrar shall provide for the registration of Trust Certificates and, subject to Section 3.10 hereof, of transfers and exchanges of Trust Certificates as herein provided. The Trustee shall be the initial Certificate Registrar. Promptly upon written request therefor from the Owner Trustee, the Certificate Registrar shall provide to the Owner Trustee in writing such information regarding or contained in the Certificate Register as the Owner Trustee may reasonably request. The Owner Trustee shall be entitled to rely (and shall be fully protected in relying) on such information.

(b) Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Trust Certificate at the office or agency maintained pursuant to Section 3.08, the Certificate Registrar shall cause the Owner Trustee to execute on behalf of the Trust and the Certificate Registrar shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Trust Certificates in authorized denominations of a like aggregate amount dated the date of authentication by the Certificate Registrar or any authenticating agent. At the option of a Certificateholder, Trust Certificates may be exchanged for other Trust Certificates of authorized denominations of a like aggregate amount upon surrender of the Trust Certificates to be exchanged at the office or agency maintained pursuant to Section 3.08.

(c) Every Trust Certificate presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange shall be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer and accompanied by IRS Form W-8 BEN, W-8 ECI or W-9, as applicable, and such other documentation as may be required by the Owner Trustee in order to comply with Applicable Law, each in a form satisfactory to the Owner Trustee and the Certificate Registrar duly executed by the registered Certificateholder or such registered Certificateholder's attorney duly authorized in writing. Each Trust Certificate surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange shall be cancelled and subsequently disposed of by the Certificate Registrar in accordance with its customary practice.

(d) No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Trust Certificates, but the Owner Trustee or the Certificate Registrar may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any transfer or exchange of Trust Certificates.

Section 3.05 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Trust Certificates

If (a) any mutilated Trust Certificate shall be surrendered to the Certificate Registrar, or if the Certificate Registrar and the Owner Trustee shall receive evidence to its satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Trust Certificate, and (b) there shall be delivered to the Certificate Registrar and the Owner Trustee such security or indemnity as may be reasonably required by them to save each of them harmless, then in the absence of notice to the Trust that such Trust Certificate has been acquired by a protected purchaser, the Certificate Registrar shall cause the Owner Trustee on behalf of the Trust to execute and the Certificate Registrar shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Trust Certificate, a new Trust Certificate of like tenor and denomination. The Holder of

such Trust Certificate shall pay the reasonable expenses and charges of the Certificate Registrar and the Owner Trustee in connection therewith. In connection with the issuance of any new Trust Certificate under this [Section 3.05](#), the Owner Trustee or the Certificate Registrar may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection therewith. Any duplicate Trust Certificate issued pursuant to this [Section 3.05](#) shall constitute conclusive evidence of ownership of a beneficial interest in the Trust, as if originally issued, whether or not the lost, stolen or destroyed Trust Certificate shall be found at any time.

Section 3.06 Persons Deemed Owners

Prior to due presentation of a Trust Certificate for registration of transfer, the Owner Trustee, the Certificate Registrar or any paying agent or other agent thereof may treat the Person in whose name any Trust Certificate is registered in the Certificate Register as the owner of such Trust Certificate for the purpose of receiving distributions pursuant to [Section 5.02](#) and for all other purposes whatsoever, and none of the Owner Trustee, the Certificate Registrar or any paying agent or other agent thereof shall be bound by any notice to the contrary.

Section 3.07 Access to List of Certificateholders' Names and Addresses

The Certificate Registrar shall furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent, the Owner Trustee, the Servicer and the Trust Depositor, within ten (10) Business Days after receipt by the Certificate Registrar of a written request therefor from the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Servicer or the Trust Depositor, a list, in such form as the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent, the Owner Trustee, the Servicer or the Trust Depositor may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the Certificateholders as of the most recent Record Date. If three or more Certificateholders or one or more Holders of Trust Certificates evidencing not less than 25% of the Percentage Interests apply in writing to the Certificate Registrar, and such application states that the applicants desire to communicate with other Certificateholders with respect to their rights under this Trust Agreement or under the Trust Certificates and such application is accompanied by a copy of the communication that such applicants propose to transmit, then the Certificate Registrar shall, within five (5) Business Days after the receipt of such application, afford such applicants access during normal business hours to the current list of Certificateholders. Upon receipt of any such application, the Certificate Registrar will promptly notify the Trust Depositor by providing a copy of such application and a copy of the list of Certificateholders produced in response thereto. Each Certificateholder, by receiving and holding a Trust Certificate, shall be deemed to have agreed not to hold any of the Trust Depositor, the Certificate Registrar and the Owner Trustee accountable by reason of the disclosure of its name and address, regardless of the source from which such information was derived.

Section 3.08 Maintenance of Office or Agency

The Certificate Registrar shall maintain an office or offices or agency or agencies where Trust Certificates may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange and where notices and demands to or upon the Certificate Registrar in respect of the Trust Certificates and the Transaction Documents may be served. The Certificate Registrar initially designates the office

of the Certificate Registrar at the Corporate Trust Office as its office for such purposes. The Certificate Registrar shall give prompt written notice to the Trust Depositor, any paying agent, the Owner Trustee and the Certificateholders of any change in the location of the Certificate Register or any such office or agency.

Section 3.09 Appointment of Trustee as Paying Agent

The Trustee shall make distributions to Certificateholders from the Certificate Account pursuant to Section 5.02 and shall report the amounts of such distributions to the Owner Trustee. Any paying agent of the Trustee shall have the revocable power to withdraw funds from the Certificate Account for the purpose of making the distributions referred to above. The Owner Trustee (acting at the written direction of the Administrator or the Certificateholder) may revoke such power and remove the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent of the Trustee, if the Administrator or the Certificateholder determines in its sole discretion that the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent shall have failed to perform its obligations under this Trust Agreement in any material respect. The paying agent initially shall be U.S. Bank National Association, as Trustee under the Indenture. U.S. Bank National Association shall be permitted to resign as paying agent upon 30 days' written notice to the Owner Trustee and the Servicer. In the event that U.S. Bank National Association shall no longer be the paying agent, the Owner Trustee (acting at the written direction of the Administrator or the Certificateholder) shall appoint a successor to act as paying agent (which shall be a bank or trust company). The Owner Trustee shall cause the Trustee and such successor paying agent or any additional paying agent appointed by the Owner Trustee to execute and deliver to the Owner Trustee an instrument in which the Trustee and such successor paying agent or additional paying agent shall agree with the Owner Trustee that, as paying agent, the Trustee and such successor paying agent or additional paying agent will hold all sums, if any, held by it for payment to the Certificateholders in trust for the benefit of the Certificateholders entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Certificateholders. The Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent, shall return all unclaimed funds to the Owner Trustee and upon removal of a paying agent such paying agent shall also return all funds in its possession to the Owner Trustee. The provisions of Sections 7.01, 7.04, 7.05, 7.06, 8.01 and 8.02 shall apply to U.S. Bank National Association or the Owner Trustee also in its role as paying agent and Certificate Registrar as if U.S. Bank National Association and the Owner Trustee were named in such Sections, for so long as U.S. Bank National Association or the Owner Trustee shall act as paying agent or Certificate Registrar and, to the extent applicable, to any other paying agent or certificate registrar appointed hereunder. Any reference in this Agreement to the paying agent shall include any co-paying agent unless the context requires otherwise.

Section 3.10 Transfer Restrictions

The Trust Certificates may not be offered, transferred or sold except to the Trust Depositor or an Affiliate thereof or to Qualified Institutional Buyers (“QIBs”) for purposes of Rule 144A under the Securities Act who are Qualified Purchasers for purposes of Section 3(c)(7) under the 1940 Act, and who are United States persons (as defined in Section 7701(a)(30) of the Code) in reliance on an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

(a) The Trust Certificates have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act, or any state securities law. No transfer, sale, pledge or other disposition of any Trust Certificate shall be made unless such disposition is made pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act and effective registration or qualification under applicable state securities laws, or is made in a transaction which does not require such registration or qualification. No transfer of any Trust Certificates shall be made if such transfer would require the Trust to register as an "investment company" under the 1940 Act. In the event that a transfer is to be made, the transferee shall execute and deliver to the Owner Trustee and Certificate Registrar a certification substantially in the form of Exhibit C hereto. In the event that such transfer is to be made in reliance on the availability of an exemption under the Securities Act, the Owner Trustee may require the prospective transferee to provide an Opinion of Counsel satisfactory to it that such transfer may be made pursuant to an exemption from the Securities Act, which Opinion of Counsel shall not be an expense of the Owner Trustee or of the Trust.

(b) Neither the Trust Certificates nor any beneficial interest in such Trust Certificates may be acquired or held by or with plan assets of any employee benefit plans, retirement arrangements, individual retirement accounts or Keogh plans subject to either Part 4, Subtitle B of Title I of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended, or Section 4975 of the Code (a "Benefit Plan") and any such purported transfer shall not be effective. Each transferee of a Trust Certificate shall be required to represent (a) that it is not a Benefit Plan and is not acquiring such Trust Certificate with the plan assets of a Benefit Plan and (b) that if such Trust Certificate is subsequently deemed to be a plan asset of such a Benefit Plan, it will dispose of such Trust Certificate.

(c) Each Trust Certificate will bear the legends set forth in paragraph 6 of Exhibit C hereto.

(d) No transfer, sale, pledge or other disposition of one or more Trust Certificates (a "Transfer") shall be made unless the Percentage Interest of the Trust Certificates so Transferred is no less than ten (10%) percent.

(e) Notwithstanding any other provision herein or elsewhere, other than to determine that any certification delivered to the Owner Trustee or Certificate Registrar, as the case may be, pursuant to Section 3.10(a) hereof is substantially in the form of Exhibit C hereto and to determine (including, without limitation, based on one or more certificates from the Person transferring such Trust Certificate and/or the Note Registrar) that any transfer of a Trust Certificate described in such certification delivered to the Owner Trustee complies with Section 3.10(d), the Owner Trustee and Certificate Registrar shall have no obligation to determine whether or not any transfer or exchange or proposed or purported transfer or exchange of a Trust Certificate is permitted under or in accordance with this Agreement, the Securities Act or applicable state securities laws, and the Owner Trustee and Certificate Registrar shall have no personal liability to any Person in connection with any transfer or exchange or proposed or purported transfer or exchange (and/or registration thereof).

(f) No Transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein shall be made unless the Trust and the Owner Trustee (and any of their agents) receive from the prospective transferee a representation and warranty that the prospective transferee is a "United States person" as defined

in section 7701(a)(30) of the Code and a correct, complete and properly executed Internal Revenue Service Form W-9 (or applicable successor form). If any holder of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein (other than the Trust Depositor as the initial Certificateholder) fails to provide the Trust and the Owner Trustee (and any of their agents) with the properly completed and signed tax certification specified above, the acquisition of its interest in the Trust Certificates shall be void *ab initio*.

(g) No Transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein shall be made unless the transferor delivers to the transferee, with a copy to the Trust and the Owner Trustee, prior to the Transfer of the Trust Certificate or any interest therein, a properly completed certificate, in a form reasonably acceptable to the transferee and the Trust, stating, under penalty of perjury, the transferor's United States taxpayer identification number and that the transferor is not a foreign person within the meaning of Section 1446(f)(2) of the Code (such certificate, a "Non-Foreign Status Certificate"). Each transferor of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein acknowledges, or by acquiring the Trust Certificate or any interest therein will be deemed to acknowledge, that the failure to provide a Non-Foreign Status Certificate to the transferee may result in withholding on the amount realized on its disposition of the Trust Certificate.

(h) No Transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein, including the initial issuance to the Trust Depositor, shall be made, unless the prospective transferee acknowledges (other than the Trust Depositor) and agrees that no Trust Certificate or any interest therein may be acquired or owned by any Person that is classified for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a partnership, subchapter S corporation or grantor trust unless (i)(A) none of the direct or indirect beneficial owners of any interest in such Person have or ever will have more than 40% of the value of its interest in such Person attributable to the aggregate interest of such Person in the Trust Certificates and any other equity interests of the Trust, and (B) it is not and will not be a principal purpose of the arrangement involving the investment of such Person in the Trust Certificates and any other equity interests of the Trust to permit any partnership to satisfy the 100 partner limitation of Treasury Regulation Section 1.7704-1(h)(1)(ii) or (ii) such Person obtains an opinion of nationally recognized U.S. tax counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trust that such transfer will not cause the Trust to be treated as a publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation.

(i) No Transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein, including the initial issuance to the Trust Depositor, shall be made unless the prospective transferee acknowledges and agrees that no Trust Certificate may be acquired, and no Certificateholder (or holder of an interest in a Trust Certificate) may sell, transfer, assign, participate, pledge or otherwise dispose of a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) or other equity interest in the Trust or cause a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) or other equity interest in the Trust to be marketed, (i) on or through an "established securities market" within the meaning of Section 7704(b)(1) of the Code and Treasury Regulation Section 1.7704-1(b), including without limitation, an interdealer quotation system that regularly disseminates firm buy or sell quotations or (ii) if such acquisition, sale, transfer, assignment, participation, pledge or other disposition would cause the combined number of holders of Trust Certificates and other equity interests in the Trust to be more than 88.

(j) No Transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein, including the initial issuance to the Trust Depositor, shall be made unless the prospective transferee acknowledges and agrees that it will not participate in the creation or other transfer of any financial instrument or contract the value of which is determined in whole or in part by reference to the Trust (including the amount of distributions by the Trust, the value of the Trust's assets, the results of the Trust's operation or the Trust Certificates).

(k) No Transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein, including the initial issuance to the Trust Depositor, shall be made unless the prospective transferee acknowledges and agrees that any sale, transfer, assignment, participation, pledge, or other disposition of a Trust Certificate that would violate any of the three preceding paragraphs above or otherwise cause the Trust to be unable to rely on the "private placement" safe harbor of Treasury Regulation Section 1.7704-1(h) will be void and of no force or effect, and it will not transfer any interest in its Trust Certificates to any person that does not agree to be bound by the three preceding paragraphs above or by this paragraph.

(l) Unless the Trust Depositor, Trust and Owner Trustee have received an Opinion of Counsel from Dechert LLP or other nationally recognized tax counsel that the restriction on the proposed acquisition of a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) described by this paragraph is no longer necessary to conclude that any such acquisition (and subsequent resale of the applicable Notes described below) will not cause the Treasury Regulations under Section 385 of the Code to apply to such Notes in a manner that could cause a material adverse effect on the Trust or the Trust to be treated as an association or publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) a Section 385 Certificateholder cannot acquire a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) if (A) a member of any "expanded group" (as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.385-1(c)(4)) that includes such Section 385 Certificateholder owns any Notes or (B) a Section 385 Controlled Partnership of such expanded group owns any Notes and (ii) a Section 385 Certificateholder cannot hold a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) if (A) a member of any "expanded group" (as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.385-1(c)(4)) that includes such Section 385 Certificateholder acquires any Notes from the Trust, any Affiliate of the Trust or any other subsequent transferor of a Note or (B) a Section 385 Controlled Partnership of such expanded group acquires any Notes from the Trust, any Affiliate of the Trust or any other subsequent transferor of a Note. The preceding sentence shall not apply if the Noteholder or potential Noteholder is a U.S. corporate member of the same U.S. corporate "affiliated group" (as defined in Section 1504 of the Code) filing a consolidated federal income tax return that includes each of any applicable related Section 385 Certificateholders (including in the case of a partnership, the relevant "expanded group partner" (as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.385-3(g)(12)). If a Certificateholder (or holder of an interest in a Trust Certificate) fails to comply with the foregoing requirements, the Trust and Depositor are authorized, at their discretion, to compel such Certificateholder (or holder of an interest in a Trust Certificate) to sell its Trust Certificate (or interest therein) to a Person whose ownership complies with this subsection so long as such sale does not otherwise cause a material adverse effect on the Trust or cause the Trust to be treated as an association or publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

ARTICLE IV

ACTIONS BY OWNER TRUSTEE

Section 4.01 Prior Notice to and Consent by Certificateholders with Respect to Certain Matters

With respect to the following matters, the Trust shall not take action unless either (i), at least ten (10) Business Days before the taking of such action, the Owner Trustee shall have notified the Certificateholders and the Trust Depositor (who shall promptly forward such notice to any Rating Agency) in writing of the proposed action and the Certificateholders holding a Percentage Interest of not less than 66-2/3% shall not, prior to the tenth (10th) Business Day after such notice is given, have notified the Owner Trustee in writing that such Certificateholders have withheld consent or provided alternative direction or (ii) Certificateholders holding a Percentage Interest of not less than 66-2/3% direct the Owner Trustee to take action with respect to:

- (a) the initiation of any claim or lawsuit by the Trust and the compromise of any action, claim or lawsuit brought by or against the Trust;
- (b) the election by the Trust to file an amendment to the Certificate of Trust (unless such amendment is required to be filed under the Statutory Trust Statute);
- (c) the amendment of the Indenture or any other Transaction Document in circumstances where the consent of any Noteholder is required;
- (d) the amendment of the Indenture or any other Transaction Document in circumstances where the consent of any Noteholder is not required and such amendment may reasonably be expected to adversely affect the interest of the Certificateholders;
- (e) such Certificateholders direct the Owner Trustee to initiate any amendment to any Transaction Document or to seek any waiver or other modification thereof;
- (f) the appointment pursuant to the Indenture of a successor paying agent or Trustee or pursuant to this Trust Agreement of a successor Certificate Registrar, or paying agent, or the consent to the assignment by the Trustee or Certificate Registrar of its obligations under the Indenture or this Trust Agreement, as applicable;
- (g) the consent to the calling or waiver of any Event of Default of any Transaction Document or such Certificateholders direct the Owner Trustee to call or waive any such Event of Default;
- (h) the consent to the assignment of the Trustee or Servicer of their respective obligations under any Transaction Document;
- (i) except as provided in Article IX hereof, the dissolution, termination or liquidation of the Trust in whole or in part;

-
- (j) the merger or consolidation of the Trust with or into any other entity, or conveyance or transfer of all or substantially all of the Trust's assets to any other entity;
 - (k) the incurrence, assumption or guaranty by the Trust of any indebtedness other than as set forth in this Agreement or the Transaction Documents;
 - (l) the doing of any act which would make it impossible to carry on the ordinary business of the Trust as described in Section 2.03 hereof;
 - (m) the confession of a judgment against the Trust;
 - (n) the possession of Loan Assets or other Collateral, or assignment of the Trust's right to property, for other than a purpose permitted under Section 2.03;
 - (o) the lending by the Trust of any funds to any entity, except as permitted or required under the Sale and Servicing Agreement with respect to the Loan Assets or other Collateral;
 - (p) the change in the Trust's purpose and powers from those set forth in this Trust Agreement; or
 - (q) the removal or replacement of the Servicer or the Trustee.

In addition, the Trust shall not commingle its assets with those of any other entity other than as permitted under the Transaction Documents. The Trust shall maintain its financial and accounting books and records separate from those of any other entity; *provided* that the Trust may be consolidated with another entity in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and, when so consolidated will note on its consolidated financial statement that the Trust's assets are not available to satisfy the claims of creditors of such consolidating Person. Except as expressly set forth herein, the Trust shall pay its indebtedness, operating expenses and liabilities from its own funds, and the Trust shall not pay the indebtedness, operating expenses and liabilities of any other entity.

Section 4.02 Action by Certificateholders with Respect to Bankruptcy.

To the extent permitted by Applicable Law, the Trust shall not have the power, without the unanimous prior written approval of the Certificateholders, and to the extent otherwise consistent with the Transaction Documents, to (i) institute proceedings to have the Trust declared or adjudicated as bankrupt or insolvent, (ii) consent to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against the Trust, (iii) file a petition or consent to a petition seeking reorganization or relief on behalf of the Trust under any applicable federal or state law relating to bankruptcy, (iv) consent to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or any similar official) of the Trust or a substantial portion of the property of the Trust, (v) make any assignment for the benefit of the Trust's creditors, (vi) cause the Trust to admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or (vii) take any action, or cause the Trust to take any action, in furtherance of any of the foregoing (any of the above, a "Bankruptcy Action"). So long as the Indenture remains in effect, and to the extent permitted by Applicable Law, no Certificateholder shall have the power to take and shall not take any Bankruptcy Action with respect to the Trust or direct the Owner Trustee to take any Bankruptcy Action with respect to the Trust.

Section 4.03 Restrictions on Certificateholders' Power.

The Certificateholders shall not direct the Owner Trustee to take or to refrain from taking any action if such action or inaction would be contrary to any obligation of the Trust or the Owner Trustee under this Trust Agreement or any of the Transaction Documents or would cause a violation of any of the Transaction Documents or would be contrary to or inconsistent with Section 2.03, nor shall the Owner Trustee be obligated to follow any such direction, if given.

Section 4.04 Majority Control.

Except as expressly provided herein or in any supplement to this Trust Agreement, any action or direction that may be taken or given by the Certificateholders under this Trust Agreement may not be taken or given unless agreed to or directed by the Majority Certificateholders. Except as expressly provided herein or in any supplement to this Trust Agreement, any written notice of the Certificateholders delivered pursuant to this Trust Agreement shall be effective if signed by Majority Certificateholders at the time of the delivery of such notice.

ARTICLE V

APPLICATION OF TRUST FUNDS; CERTAIN DUTIES

Section 5.01 Establishment of Trust Account.

(a) For the benefit of the Certificateholders, the Trustee on behalf of the Trust shall establish and maintain in the name of the Trust an Eligible Deposit Account with the Trustee (the "Certificate Account"), bearing a designation clearly indicating that the funds deposited therein are held for the benefit of the Certificateholders. Each Qualified Institution maintaining the Certificate Account shall agree in writing (and the Trustee does hereby so agree) to comply with all instructions originated by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent, or Owner Trustee directing the disposition of funds in the account without the further consent of the Trust.

(b) The Trust shall possess all right, title and interest in all funds on deposit from time to time in the Certificate Account and in all proceeds thereof. Except as provided in Section 3.09 or as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Certificate Account shall be under the sole dominion and control of the Trustee for the benefit of the Certificateholders. If, at any time, the Certificate Account ceases to be an Eligible Deposit Account, the Trustee shall within ten (10) Business Days (or such longer period, not to exceed 30 calendar days, as to which any Rating Agency may consent) establish a new Certificate Account as an Eligible Deposit Account and shall transfer any cash and/or any investments to such new Certificate Account.

Section 5.02 Application of Trust Funds.

(a) On each Payment Date and at and in accordance with the instruction of the Servicer, the Trustee shall distribute to the Certificateholders *pro rata* based on their respective Percentage Interests, the amounts deposited in the Certificate Account received from the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture or the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(b) On each Payment Date, the Trustee shall, or shall cause the Servicer to, make available to each Certificateholder via its website at <http://pivot.usbank.com> the statement or statements provided to the Trustee by the Servicer pursuant to the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement with respect to such Payment Date.

(c) In the event that any withholding tax is imposed on the Trust's payment (or allocations of income) to a Certificateholder, such tax shall reduce the amount otherwise distributable to the Certificateholder in accordance with this [Section 5.02](#). The Trustee is hereby authorized and directed to retain from amounts otherwise distributable to the Certificateholders sufficient funds for the payment of any tax that is legally owed by the Trust (but such authorization shall not prevent the Owner Trustee or the Trustee from contesting any such tax in appropriate proceedings, and withholding payment of such tax, if permitted by Applicable Law, pending the outcome of such proceedings); *provided* that the Trustee shall not be responsible for determining whether any such tax is owed and may rely for such purposes on the written direction of the Trust Depositor or Servicer. The amount of any withholding tax imposed with respect to a Certificateholder shall be treated as cash distributed to such Certificateholder at the time it is withheld by the Trust and remitted to the appropriate taxing authority. If there is a possibility that withholding tax is payable with respect to a distribution, the Trustee may in its sole discretion withhold such amounts in accordance with this [Section 5.02\(c\)](#). In the event that a Certificateholder wishes to apply for a refund of any such withholding tax, the Owner Trustee or the Trustee shall reasonably cooperate with such Certificateholder in making such claim so long as such Certificateholder agrees to reimburse the Owner Trustee and the Trustee, in its capacity as paying agent, for any out-of-pocket expenses incurred. The Certificateholders shall supply the Owner Trustee, the Trustee and any paying agent with Internal Revenue Service forms, with appropriate supporting documentation, and such other certificates, information or forms that the Owner Trustee, the Trustee or any paying agent may request from time to time in connection with any withholding tax or the application for a refund thereof.

Section 5.03 Method of Payment

Subject to [Section 9.01\(c\)](#), distributions required to be made to Certificateholders on any Payment Date shall be made to each Certificateholder of record on the preceding Record Date either by wire transfer, in immediately available funds, to the account of such Certificateholder at a bank or other entity having appropriate facilities therefor, if such Certificateholder shall have provided to the Certificate Registrar and the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent appropriate written instructions at least five (5) Business Days prior to such Payment Date or, if not, by check mailed to such Certificateholder at the address of such holder appearing in the Certificate Register.

Section 5.04 No Segregation of Moneys; No Interest

Subject to [Sections 5.01](#) and [5.02](#), moneys received by the Owner Trustee, the Trustee or any paying agent hereunder need not be segregated in any manner except to the extent required by any Applicable Law or the Sale and Servicing Agreement and may be deposited under such general conditions as may be prescribed by any Applicable Law, and neither a paying agent, the Trustee, the Trust Company nor the Owner Trustee shall be liable for any interest thereon.

Section 5.05 Accounting and Reports to the Certificateholders, the Internal Revenue Service and Others

The Trust Depositor shall (a) maintain (or cause to be maintained) the books of the Trust on a calendar year basis on the accrual method of accounting, (b) deliver (or cause to be delivered) to each Certificateholder, as may be required by the Code and applicable Treasury Regulations, such information as may be required (including, if applicable, Schedule K-1) to enable each Certificateholder to prepare its federal and state income tax returns, (c) prepare or cause to be prepared, and file, or cause to be filed, all tax returns, if any, relating to the Trust (including, if applicable, a partnership information return, IRS Form 1065) and in writing direct the Owner Trustee to make such elections as from time to time may be required or appropriate under any applicable state or federal statute or any rule or regulation thereunder so as to maintain the Trust's characterization as a partnership for federal income tax purposes or an entity that is disregarded as separate from its sole beneficial owner for federal income tax purposes, (d) collect or cause to be collected any withholding tax as described in and in accordance with Section 5.02(c) with respect to income or distributions to Certificateholders and (e) upon the request of the Trust, provide to necessary parties such reasonably current information as is specified in paragraph (d)(4) of Rule 144A under the Securities Act. The Owner Trustee shall make all elections pursuant to this Section 5.05 as directed by the Trust Depositor in writing.

Section 5.06 Signature on Returns; Partnership Representative

(a) The Servicer shall sign on behalf of the Trust the tax returns of the Trust, and any other returns as may be required by law if any, as the same shall be furnished to it in execution form by the Trust Depositor, unless Applicable Law requires a Certificateholder to sign such documents, in which case such documents shall not be furnished to the Servicer, but shall be furnished to and signed by the Trust Depositor so long as it is a Certificateholder, in its capacity as "partnership representative" (if applicable), or such other Certificateholder as may have been designated "partnership representative" (if applicable). In executing any such return, the Servicer shall rely entirely upon, and shall have no personal liability for, information or calculations provided by the Trust Depositor.

(b) In the event the Trust Depositor is a Certificateholder and the Trust is characterized as a partnership, the Trust Depositor shall be the "partnership representative" of the Trust pursuant to the Code. In the event the Trust receives a notice of final partnership administrative adjustment under Section 6231(a)(3) of the Code, the Trust shall make an election pursuant to Section 6226 of the Code and shall comply with all of the requirements and procedures required in connection with such election.

ARTICLE VI

AUTHORITY AND DUTIES OF OWNER TRUSTEE

Section 6.01 General Authority.

Each of the Owner Trustee, the Servicer, the Administrator and the Trust Depositor shall have power and authority, and each is hereby authorized and empowered, in the name and on behalf of the Trust, to execute and deliver the Transaction Documents to which the Trust is to be a party and each certificate or other document attached as an Exhibit to or contemplated by the Transaction Documents to which the Trust is to be a party and any amendment or other agreement or instrument, in each case, in such form as the Owner Trustee, the Servicer, the Administrator or the Trust Depositor shall approve, as evidenced conclusively by the Owner Trustee's, the Servicer's, the Administrator's or the Trust Depositor's execution thereof. In addition to the foregoing, the Owner Trustee shall have power and authority and hereby is further authorized (but shall not be obligated) to take all actions required of the Trust pursuant to the Transaction Documents. The Trust and the Owner Trustee are hereby authorized to delegate such power and authority, or any portion thereof, with respect to the duties and obligations of the Trust and/or the Owner Trustee under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to the Servicer and the Administrator. The Owner Trustee shall have power and authority and hereby is further authorized from time to time to take such action as the Servicer, the Trust Depositor or the Administrator recommends and directs with respect to the Transaction Documents.

Section 6.02 General Duties.

It shall be the duty of the Owner Trustee to discharge (or cause to be discharged) all of the duties expressly required to be performed by the Owner Trustee under the terms of this Agreement in the interest of the Certificateholders, subject to the Transaction Documents and in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Owner Trustee shall be deemed to have discharged its duties and responsibilities hereunder and under the Transaction Documents to the extent the Trust Depositor has agreed hereunder or the Servicer has agreed in the Sale and Servicing Agreement or the Administrator has agreed in the Administration Agreement to perform any act or to discharge any duty of the Owner Trustee or of the Trust under any Transaction Document, and the Owner Trustee shall not be held personally liable for the default or failure of the Trust Depositor, the Administrator or the Servicer to carry out its obligations under the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Administration Agreement or this Trust Agreement, as applicable.

Section 6.03 Action upon Instruction.

(a) Subject to Article IV and Section 7.01 and in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents, the Certificateholders may by written instruction direct the Owner Trustee in the management of the Trust. Such direction may be exercised at any time by written instruction to the Owner Trustee of the Certificateholders pursuant to Article IV.

(b) The Owner Trustee shall not be required to take any action hereunder or under any Transaction Document if the Owner Trustee shall have reasonably determined, or shall have been advised by counsel, that such action is likely to result in personal liability on the part of the Owner Trustee or is contrary to the terms hereof or of any Transaction Document or is otherwise contrary to Applicable Law.

(c) Whenever the Owner Trustee is unable to decide between alternative courses of action permitted or required by the terms of this Trust Agreement or under any Transaction Document, the Owner Trustee shall promptly give notice (in such form as shall be appropriate under the circumstances) to the Certificateholders requesting instruction as to the course of action to be adopted and stating that if the Owner Trustee shall not have received appropriate instruction within ten (10) Business Days of such notice (or within such shorter period of time as reasonably may be specified in such notice or may be necessary under the circumstances) it may, but shall be under no duty to, take or refrain from taking such action not inconsistent with this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents as it shall deem to be in the best interests of the Certificateholders and shall have no personal liability to any Person for such action or inaction. To the extent the Owner Trustee acts or refrains from acting in good faith in accordance with any written instruction received from Majority Certificateholders, the Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable on account of such action or inaction to any Person. If the Owner Trustee shall not have received appropriate instruction within ten (10) Business Days of such notice (or within such shorter period of time as reasonably may be specified in such notice or may be necessary under the circumstances) it may, but shall be under no duty to, take or refrain from taking such action not inconsistent with this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents as it shall deem to be in the best interests of the Certificateholders and shall have no personal liability to any Person for such action or inaction.

(d) In the event that the Owner Trustee is unsure as to the application of any provision of this Trust Agreement or any Transaction Document or any such provision is ambiguous as to its application, or is, or appears to be, in conflict with any other applicable provision, or in the event that this Trust Agreement permits any determination by the Owner Trustee or is silent or is incomplete as to the course of action that the Owner Trustee is required or permitted to take with respect to a particular set of facts, the Owner Trustee may give notice (in such form as shall be appropriate under the circumstances) to the Certificateholders requesting instruction and stating that if the Owner Trustee shall not have received appropriate instruction within ten (10) Business Days of such notice (or within such shorter period of time as reasonably may be specified in such notice or may be necessary under the circumstances) it may, but shall be under no duty to, take or refrain from taking such action not inconsistent with this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents as it shall deem to be in the best interests of the Certificateholders, and shall have no personal liability to any Person for such action or inaction. To the extent that the Owner Trustee acts or refrains from acting in good faith in accordance with any such instruction received from Majority Certificateholders, the Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable, on account of such action or inaction, to any Person. If the Owner Trustee shall not have received appropriate instruction within ten (10) Business Days of such notice (or within such shorter period of time as reasonably may be specified in such notice or may be necessary under the circumstances) it may, but shall be under no duty to, take or refrain from taking such action not inconsistent with this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents as it shall deem to be in the best interests of the Certificateholders, and shall have no personal liability to any Person for such action or inaction.

Section 6.04 No Duties Except as Specified in this Agreement or in Instructions

The Owner Trustee shall not have any duty or obligation to manage, make any payment with respect to, register, record, sell, dispose of, or otherwise deal with the Trust Estate, or to otherwise take or refrain from taking any action under, or in connection with, the Transaction Documents or any document contemplated hereby or thereby, except as expressly provided by the terms of this Trust Agreement or in any document or written instruction received by the Owner Trustee pursuant to Section 6.03; and no implied duties or obligations shall be read into this Trust Agreement or any other Transaction Document against the Owner Trustee. The Owner Trustee shall have no responsibility for filing any financing or continuation statement in any public office at any time or to otherwise perfect or maintain the perfection of any security interest or lien granted to it hereunder or to prepare or file any Commission filing for the Trust or to record this Trust Agreement or any Transaction Document. The Owner Trustee nevertheless agrees that it will, at its own cost and expense, promptly take all action as may be necessary to discharge any liens on any part of the Trust Estate that result from actions by, or claims against, the Owner Trustee in its individual capacity that are not related to the Trust, this Trust Agreement, the Trust Company's serving as Owner Trustee or the ownership or the administration of the Trust Estate.

Section 6.05 Restrictions

The Owner Trustee shall not take any action that, (i) is inconsistent with the purposes of the Trust set forth in Section 2.03 or (ii) to the actual knowledge of a Responsible Officer of the Owner Trustee, would result in the Trust's becoming taxable as a corporation for federal income tax purposes. The Certificateholders shall not direct the Owner Trustee to take action that would violate the provisions of this Section 6.05.

ARTICLE VII

CONCERNING THE OWNER TRUSTEE

Section 7.01 Acceptance of Trusts and Duties

The Owner Trustee accepts the trusts hereby created and agrees to perform its duties hereunder but only upon the terms of this Trust Agreement. The Owner Trustee also agrees to disburse all moneys actually received by it constituting part of the Trust Estate upon the terms of this Trust Agreement and the other Transaction Documents. The Owner Trustee shall not be personally answerable or accountable hereunder or under any other Transaction Document under any circumstances, except to the Trust and the Certificateholders (i) for its own willful misconduct, bad faith or gross negligence or (ii) in the case of the inaccuracy of any representation or warranty contained in Section 7.03 expressly made by the Owner Trustee. In particular, but not by way of limitation (and subject to the exceptions set forth in the preceding sentence):

(a) the Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable for any error of judgment made by a Responsible Officer of the Owner Trustee which did not result from gross negligence or willful misconduct on the part of such Responsible Officer;

(b) the Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in accordance with the instructions of the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or of Certificateholders holding such Percentage Interest as is required with respect thereto under this Agreement or the applicable Transaction Documents;

(c) no provision of this Trust Agreement or any other Transaction Document shall require the Owner Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur any personal financial liability in the performance of any of its rights or powers hereunder or under any Transaction Document if the Owner Trustee shall have reasonable grounds for believing that repayment of such funds or adequate indemnity against such risk or liability is not reasonably assured or provided to it;

(d) under no circumstances shall the Owner Trustee be personally liable for indebtedness evidenced by or arising under any of the Transaction Documents, including the principal of and interest on the Notes;

(e) the Owner Trustee shall not be personally responsible (i) for or in respect of the validity or sufficiency of this Trust Agreement or for the due execution hereof by the Trust Depositor, (ii) for the form, character, genuineness, sufficiency, value or validity of any of the Trust Estate, or (iii) for or in respect of the validity or sufficiency of the Transaction Documents, other than the Owner Trustee's due execution of the Trust Certificate on behalf of the Trust, and the Owner Trustee shall in no event assume or incur any personal liability, duty, or obligation to any Noteholder or any Certificateholder other than as expressly provided for herein or expressly agreed to in the Transaction Documents;

(f) the Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable for the default or misconduct of the Trust Depositor, the Trustee, the Certificate Registrar, the Administrator or the Servicer or any other Person under any of the Transaction Documents or otherwise and the Owner Trustee shall have no obligation or personal liability to monitor or perform the obligations of the Trust or the Certificate Registrar under this Trust Agreement or the other Transaction Documents that are required to be performed by the Trustee under the Indenture, the Administrator under the Administration Agreement or the Servicer or the Trust Depositor under the Sale and Servicing Agreement; and

(g) the Owner Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Trust Agreement, or to institute, conduct or defend any litigation under this Trust Agreement or otherwise or in relation to this Trust Agreement or any other Transaction Document, at the request, order or direction of any of the Certificateholders, unless such Certificateholders have offered to the Owner Trustee security or indemnity satisfactory to it against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred by the Owner Trustee therein or thereby. The right of the Owner Trustee to perform any discretionary act enumerated in this Trust Agreement or in any other Transaction Document shall not be construed as a duty, and the Owner Trustee shall not be personally answerable therefor other than to the Trust and the Certificateholders for its willful misconduct, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of any such act.

Section 7.02 Furnishing of Documents.

The Owner Trustee shall furnish to the Certificateholders duplicates or copies of all reports, notices, requests, demands, certificates, financial statements and any other instruments furnished to the Owner Trustee under the Transaction Documents.

Section 7.03 Representations and Warranties.

The Owner Trustee hereby represents and warrants to the Trust Depositor, for the benefit of the Trust Depositor and Certificateholders, that:

(a) It is national banking association, duly organized and validly existing in good standing under the laws of the United States of America. It has all requisite power and authority to execute, deliver and perform its obligations under this Trust Agreement.

(b) It has taken all action necessary to authorize the execution and delivery by it of this Trust Agreement, and this Trust Agreement will be executed and delivered by one of its officers who is duly authorized to execute and deliver this Trust Agreement on its behalf.

(c) Neither the execution nor the delivery by it of this Trust Agreement, nor the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby nor compliance by it with any of the terms or provisions hereof, will (i) contravene any federal or Delaware state law, governmental rule or regulation governing the trust powers of the Trust Company or any judgment or order binding on it, (ii) constitute any default under its charter documents or organizational documents or any indenture, mortgage, contract, long-term lease, license or other agreement or instrument to which it is a party or by which any of its properties may be bound or (iii) result in the creation or imposition of any lien, charge or encumbrance on the Trust Estate resulting from actions by or claims against the Owner Trustee individually which are unrelated to this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents.

(d) This Agreement constitutes a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Owner Trustee enforceable in accordance with its terms, subject to applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization and similar laws relating to creditors' rights generally and creditors of national banking associations and subject to general principles of equity.

(e) To the Owner Trustee's best knowledge, there are no proceedings or investigations pending, or to the Owner Trustee's knowledge threatened, before any court, regulatory body, administrative agency or other governmental instrumentality having jurisdiction over the Owner Trustee or its properties: (A) asserting the invalidity of this Trust Agreement, (B) seeking to prevent the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Trust Agreement or (C) seeking any determination or ruling that might materially and adversely affect the performance by the Owner Trustee of its obligations under, or the validity or enforceability of, this Trust Agreement.

Section 7.04 Reliance: Advice of Counsel.

(a) The Owner Trustee shall incur no personal liability to anyone in acting upon any signature, instrument, notice, resolution, request, consent, order, certificate, report, opinion, bond or other document or paper believed by it to be genuine and believed by it to be signed by an appropriate Person or Persons. The Owner Trustee may accept a certified copy of a resolution of the board of directors or other governing body of any Person as conclusive evidence that such resolution has been duly adopted by such body and that the same is in full force and effect. As to any fact or matter the method of determination of which is not specifically prescribed herein, the Owner Trustee may for all purposes hereof require and rely on a certificate, signed by the president or any vice president or by the treasurer or other authorized officer or agent of an appropriate Person or Persons or of any manager thereof, as to such fact or matter and such certificate shall constitute full protection to the Owner Trustee for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in reliance thereon.

(b) In the exercise or administration of the trusts hereunder and in the performance of its duties and obligations under this Trust Agreement or the other Transaction Documents, the Owner Trustee may act directly or through its agents or attorneys pursuant to agreements entered into with any of them, and the Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable for the conduct or misconduct of such agents or attorneys if such agents or attorneys shall have been selected by the Owner Trustee with reasonable care, and may consult with counsel, accountants and other skilled Persons to be selected with reasonable care and employed by it. The Owner Trustee shall not be personally liable for anything done, suffered or omitted in good faith by it in accordance with the written opinion or advice of any such counsel, accountants or other such Persons. The Owner Trustee shall have no duty to monitor or supervise any other trustee, the Certificate Registrar, a paying agent, the Trust Depositor, the Holders, the Servicer, any Subservicer, the Trustee, the Administrator, any agent, independent contractor, officer, employee or manager of the Trust, any delegatee of any trustee, or any other Person.

Section 7.05 Not Acting in Individual Capacity.

Except as provided in this Article VII, in performing its duties hereunder, the Trust Company acts solely as Owner Trustee hereunder and not in its individual capacity, and all Persons having any claim against the Owner Trustee by reason of the transactions contemplated by this Trust Agreement or any Transaction Document shall look only to the Trust Estate for payment or satisfaction thereof.

Section 7.06 Owner Trustee Not Liable for Trust Certificates or Loans

The recitals contained herein and in the Trust Certificates shall be taken as the statements of the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee assumes no personal responsibility for the correctness thereof. The Owner Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Trust Agreement, of any other Transaction Document or of the Trust Certificates (other than as to the due execution by the Owner Trustee of the Trust Certificates on behalf of the Trust) or the Notes, or of any Loan or related documents. The Owner Trustee shall at no time have any personal responsibility or liability for or with respect to the legality, validity and enforceability of any Loan, or for or with respect to the sufficiency of the Trust Estate or its

ability to generate the payments to be distributed to Certificateholders under this Trust Agreement or the Noteholders under the Indenture, including, without limitation: (a) the existence, condition and ownership of any collateral securing a Loan; (b) the existence and enforceability of any insurance thereon; (c) the validity of the assignment of any Loan to the Trust or of any intervening assignment; (d) the performance or enforcement of any Loan; and (e) the compliance by the Trust Depositor or the Servicer with any warranty or representation made under any Transaction Document or in any related document or the accuracy of any such warranty or representation, or any action of the Trust Depositor, the Trustee, the Administrator or the Servicer or any subservicer taken in the name of the Owner Trustee.

Section 7.07 Owner Trustee May Own Trust Certificates and Notes

The Owner Trustee in its individual or any other capacity may become the owner or pledgee of Trust Certificates or Notes and may deal with the Trust Depositor, the Trustee and the Servicer in banking transactions with the same rights as it would have if it were not Owner Trustee.

ARTICLE VIII

COMPENSATION OF OWNER TRUSTEE

Section 8.01 Owner Trustee's Fees and Expenses

The Owner Trustee shall receive as compensation for its services hereunder such fees as have been separately agreed upon before the date hereof between the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee, and the Owner Trustee shall be entitled to be reimbursed by the Trust Depositor for its other reasonable expenses hereunder, including, but not limited to, the reasonable compensation, expenses and disbursements of such agents, representatives, experts and counsel as the Owner Trustee may employ in connection with the exercise and performance of its rights and its duties hereunder. The Trust Depositor shall be responsible for such fees and expenses only to the extent the same are not paid pursuant to the Priority of Payments, such fees and expenses to be paid to the Owner Trustee in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

Section 8.02 Indemnification

Trust Depositor shall be liable as primary obligor for, and shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless the Owner Trustee (in its individual capacity and in its capacity as Owner Trustee) and its successors, assigns, agents and servants (collectively, the "Indemnified Parties") from and against, any and all liabilities, obligations, losses, damages, taxes, claims, actions and suits (provided that any indemnification for damages is limited to actual damages, not consequential, special or punitive damages), and any and all reasonable costs, expenses and disbursements (including reasonable legal fees and expenses and fees and expenses incurred in connection with the enforcement of indemnification rights) of any kind and nature whatsoever (collectively, "Expenses") which may at any time be imposed on, incurred by or asserted against an Indemnified Party in any way relating to or arising out of this Trust Agreement, the Transaction Documents, the Trust Estate, the administration of the Trust Estate or the action or inaction of the Owner Trustee hereunder, except only that the Trust Depositor shall not be liable for or

required to indemnify an Indemnified Party from and against Expenses arising or resulting from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of such Indemnified Party. The indemnities contained in this Section shall survive the resignation or removal of the Owner Trustee and the termination of this Trust Agreement. If an Indemnified Party seeks indemnification hereunder it shall promptly notify the Trust Depositor if a Responsible Officer of the Indemnified Party receives a complaint, claim, compulsory process or other notice of any loss, claim, damage or liability giving rise to a claim of indemnification hereunder but failure to provide such notice shall not relieve the Trust Depositor of its indemnification obligations hereunder unless the Trust Depositor is deprived of material substantive or procedural rights or defenses as a result thereof. The Trust Depositor shall assume (with the consent of the Indemnified Party, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld) the defense and any settlement of any such claim and pay all expenses in connection therewith, including reasonable counsel fees, and promptly pay, discharge and satisfy any judgment or decree which may be entered against the Indemnified Party in respect of such claim; provided that the Owner Trustee shall be entitled to retain separate counsel at the expense of the Trust Depositor in the event that a conflict of interest or the possible imposition of criminal liability. If the consent of the Indemnified Party required in the immediately preceding sentence is unreasonably withheld, the Trust Depositor is relieved of its indemnification obligations hereunder with respect to such Person to the extent its defense of its claims are prejudiced thereby. The Trust Depositor shall be responsible for such indemnification to the extent the same is not paid pursuant to the Priority of Payments, such indemnification to be paid first in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

Section 8.03 Payments to the Owner Trustee.

Any amounts paid to the Owner Trustee pursuant to this Article VIII shall be deemed not to be a part of the Trust Estate immediately after such payment.

ARTICLE IX

TERMINATION OF TRUST AGREEMENT

Section 9.01 Termination of Trust Agreement.

(a) The Trust shall dissolve, liquidate and be wound up in accordance with Section 3808 of the Statutory Trust Statute upon (i) the final distribution by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent of all moneys or other property or proceeds of the Trust Estate in accordance with the terms of the Indenture, the Sale and Servicing Agreement and Article V, upon which the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent shall notify the Owner Trustee and the Trust Depositor in writing and (ii) the written consent of the Certificateholders. The bankruptcy, liquidation, termination, dissolution, death or incapacity of any Certificateholder shall not (x) operate to dissolve or terminate this Trust Agreement or the Trust or (y) entitle such Certificateholder's legal representatives or heirs to claim an accounting or to take any action or proceeding in any court for a partition or winding up of all or any part of the Trust or Trust Estate or (z) otherwise affect the rights, obligations and liabilities of the parties hereto.

(b) Except as provided in Section 9.01(a), neither the Trust Depositor nor any Certificateholder shall be entitled to revoke or terminate the Trust.

(c) Notice of any termination of the Trust, specifying the Payment Date upon which the Certificateholders shall surrender their Trust Certificates to the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent of the Trustee for payment of the final distribution and cancellation, shall be given by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent by letter to Certificateholders mailed within five (5) Business Days of receipt of written notice of such termination from the Servicer stating, as set forth in such notice from the Servicer, (i) the Payment Date upon or with respect to which final payment of the Trust Certificates shall be made upon presentation and surrender of the Trust Certificates at the office of the Trustee therein designated, (ii) the amount of any such final payment and (iii) that the Record Date otherwise applicable to such Payment Date is not applicable, payments being made only upon presentation and surrender of the Trust Certificates at the office of the Trustee therein specified. The Trustee shall give such notice to the Certificate Registrar (if other than the Owner Trustee) and the Owner Trustee at the time such notice is given to Certificateholders. Upon presentation and surrender of the Trust Certificates, the Trustee shall cause to be distributed to Certificateholders amounts distributable on such Payment Date pursuant to Section 5.02.

In the event that all of the Certificateholders shall not surrender their Trust Certificates for cancellation within six months after the date specified in the above mentioned written notice, the Trustee shall give a second written notice to the remaining Certificateholders to surrender their Trust Certificates for cancellation and receive the final distribution with respect thereto. If within one year after the second notice all the Trust Certificates shall not have been surrendered for cancellation, the Trustee may take appropriate steps, or may appoint an agent to take appropriate steps, to contact the remaining Certificateholders concerning surrender of their Trust Certificates, and the cost thereof shall be paid out of the funds and other assets that shall remain subject to this Trust Agreement. Any funds remaining in the Trust after exhaustion of such remedies shall be distributed by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent, to the Trust Depositor. Certificateholders shall thereafter look solely to the Trust Depositor as general unsecured creditors.

(d) Upon the winding up of the Trust and payment of all liabilities in accordance with Section 3808 of the Statutory Trust Statute, the paying agent shall make a final distribution to the Certificateholders in accordance with Article V and Section 9.01(c) above and the Administrator shall instruct the Owner Trustee to cause the Certificate of Trust to be cancelled by filing a certificate of cancellation with the Secretary of State in accordance with the provisions of Section 3810 of the Statutory Trust Statute. Thereupon, the Trust and this Trust Agreement (other than the rights, benefits, protections, privileges and immunities of the Owner Trustee and the Trust Company) shall terminate.

ARTICLE X

SUCCESSOR OWNER TRUSTEES AND ADDITIONAL OWNER TRUSTEES

Section 10.01 Eligibility Requirements for Owner Trustee.

The Owner Trustee shall at all times be a Person (a) satisfying the provisions of Section 3807(a) of the Statutory Trust Statute; (b) authorized to exercise corporate trust powers; (c) having a combined capital and surplus of (or having a parent with a combined capital and

surplus of) at least \$100,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by federal or state banking authorities; and (d) having (or having a parent that has) an investment grade rating with respect to S&P and Moody's. If such Person shall publish reports of condition at least annually pursuant to Applicable Law or the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purpose of this Section 10.01, the combined capital and surplus of such Person shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. In case at any time the Owner Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 10.01, the Owner Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 10.02.

Section 10.02 Resignation or Removal of Owner Trustee

(a) The Owner Trustee may at any time resign and be discharged from the trusts hereby created by giving written notice thereof to the Trust Depositor. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Trust Depositor shall promptly appoint a successor Owner Trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Owner Trustee and one copy shall be delivered to the successor Owner Trustee. If no successor Owner Trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Owner Trustee, at the expense of the Trust Depositor, may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Owner Trustee.

(b) The Trust Depositor may remove the Owner Trustee at any time without cause or at any time (1) that the Owner Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 10.01 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Trust Depositor or (2) the Owner Trustee shall be legally unable to act, or shall be adjudged bankrupt or insolvent, or a receiver of the Owner Trustee or of its property shall be appointed, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Owner Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation. If the Trust Depositor shall remove the Owner Trustee under the authority of the immediately preceding sentence, the Trust Depositor shall promptly appoint a successor Owner Trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, one (1) copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the outgoing Owner Trustee so removed, and one (1) copy shall be delivered to the successor Owner Trustee, and shall pay all fees owed to the outgoing Owner Trustee in its individual capacity.

(c) Any resignation or removal of the Owner Trustee and appointment of a successor Owner Trustee pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall not become effective until the appointment by the successor Owner Trustee pursuant to Section 10.03 has become effective and, in the case of removal, payment of all accrued and unpaid fees and expenses owed to the outgoing Owner Trustee in its individual capacity. The Trust Depositor shall provide notice of such resignation or removal of the Owner Trustee to all Holders, the Trustee, the Servicer and any Rating Agency.

Section 10.03 Successor Owner Trustee.

(a) Any successor Owner Trustee appointed pursuant to Section 10.02 shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Trust Depositor and to its predecessor Owner Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment under this Trust Agreement, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the predecessor Owner Trustee shall become effective, and such successor Owner Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become fully vested with all the rights, powers, duties and obligations of its predecessor under this Trust Agreement, with like effect as if originally named as Owner Trustee. The predecessor Owner Trustee shall upon payment of fees, expenses and indemnity owing to it in its individual capacity deliver to the successor Owner Trustee all documents and statements and monies held by it under this Trust Agreement; and the Trust Depositor and the predecessor Owner Trustee shall execute and deliver such instruments and do such other things as may reasonably be required for fully and certainly vesting and confirming in the successor Owner Trustee all such rights, powers, duties and obligations.

(b) No successor Owner Trustee shall accept appointment as provided in this Section 10.03 unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Owner Trustee shall be eligible pursuant to Section 10.01.

(c) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor Owner Trustee pursuant to this Section 10.03, the Trust Depositor shall mail notice thereof to all Holders, the Trustee, the Servicer and any Rating Agency. If the Trust Depositor shall fail to mail such notice within ten (10) Business Days after acceptance of such appointment by the successor Owner Trustee, the successor Owner Trustee shall cause such notice to be mailed at the expense of the Trust Depositor. Furthermore, upon acceptance of appointment by a successor Owner Trustee pursuant to this Section 10.03, such successor Owner Trustee shall file an amendment to the Certificate of Trust with the Secretary of State in accordance with the provisions of Section 3810 of the Statutory Trust Statute.

Section 10.04 Merger or Consolidation of Owner Trustee.

Any Person into which the Owner Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Owner Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Owner Trustee, shall be the successor of the Owner Trustee hereunder, without the execution or filing of any instrument or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding; *provided* that such Person shall be eligible pursuant to Section 10.01; *provided, further*, that the Owner Trustee shall mail notice of such merger or consolidation to all Holders, the Trustee, the Servicer and the Trust Depositor (who shall promptly forward such notice to any Rating Agency) and file an amendment to the Certificate of Trust with the Secretary of State in accordance with the provisions of Section 3810 of the Statutory Trust Statute.

Section 10.05 Appointment of Co-Trustee or Separate Trustee.

(a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Trust Agreement, at any time, for the purpose of meeting any legal requirements of any jurisdiction in which any part of the Trust Estate may at the time be located, the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee acting jointly shall have the power and authority to execute and deliver all instruments to appoint one or more Persons approved by the Trust Depositor and Owner Trustee to act as co-trustee, jointly with the

Owner Trustee, or as separate trustee or separate trustees, of all or any part of the Trust Estate, and to vest in such Person, in such capacity, such title to the Trust Estate or any part thereof and, subject to the other provisions of this Section, such powers, duties, obligations, rights and trusts as the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee may consider necessary or desirable. If the Trust Depositor shall not have joined in such appointment within 15 Business Days after the receipt by it of a request so to do, the Owner Trustee alone shall have the power, authority and authorization to make such appointment. No co-trustee or separate trustee under this Trust Agreement shall be required to meet the terms of eligibility as a successor Owner Trustee pursuant to Section 10.01 and no notice of the appointment of any co-trustee or separate trustee shall be required pursuant to Section 10.03.

(b) Each separate trustee and co-trustee shall, to the extent permitted by any Applicable Law, be appointed and act subject to the following provisions and conditions:

(i) all rights, powers, duties and obligations conferred or imposed upon the Owner Trustee shall be conferred upon and exercised or performed by the Owner Trustee and such separate trustee or co-trustee jointly (it being understood that such separate trustee or co-trustee is not authorized to act separately without the Owner Trustee joining in such act), except to the extent that under any Applicable Law of any jurisdiction in which any particular act or acts are to be performed, the Owner Trustee shall be incompetent or unqualified to perform such act or acts, in which event such rights, powers, duties and obligations (including the holding of title to the Trust Estate or any portion thereof in any such jurisdiction) shall be exercised and performed singly by such separate trustee or co-trustee, but solely at the direction of the Owner Trustee;

(ii) no separate trustee or co-trustee under this Trust Agreement or the Owner Trustee shall be personally liable by reason of any act or omission of any other trustee under this Trust Agreement; and

(iii) the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee acting jointly may at any time accept the resignation of or remove any separate trustee or co-trustee.

(c) Any notice, request or other writing given to the Owner Trustee shall be deemed to have been given to each of the then separate trustees and co-trustees, as effectively as if given to each of them. Every instrument appointing any separate trustee or co-trustee shall refer to this Trust Agreement and the conditions of this Article X. Each separate trustee and co-trustee, upon its acceptance of the trusts conferred, shall be vested with the estates or property specified in its instrument of appointment, either jointly with the Owner Trustee or separately, as may be provided therein, subject to all the provisions of this Trust Agreement, specifically including every provision of this Agreement relating to the conduct of, affecting the liability of, or affording protection to, the Owner Trustee. Each such instrument shall be filed with the Owner Trustee and a copy thereof given to each of the Trust Depositor, the Trustee and the Servicer.

(d) Any separate trustee or co-trustee may at any time appoint the Owner Trustee as its agent or attorney-in-fact with full power and authority, to the extent not prohibited by law, to do any lawful act under or in respect of this Trust Agreement on its behalf and in its name, and the Owner Trustee shall have the full power and authority to delegate its responsibilities to the

Servicer as provided for herein and in the other Transaction Documents. If any separate trustee or co-trustee shall die, become incapable of acting, resign or be removed, all of its estates, properties, rights, remedies and trusts shall vest in and be exercised by the Owner Trustee, to the extent permitted by law, without the appointment of a new or successor co-trustee or separate trustee.

ARTICLE XI

MISCELLANEOUS

Section 11.01 Supplements and Amendments.

(a) This Trust Agreement may be amended by the Trust Depositor, the Trust Company, and the Owner Trustee, with the consent of the Majority Noteholders (so long as the Notes are outstanding) and the consent of the Majority Certificateholders for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions in this Trust Agreement or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Noteholders or the Certificateholders; *provided* that such action shall not, as evidenced by an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer, materially adversely affect the interests of any Noteholder or Certificateholder. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, this Trust Agreement may be amended by the Trust Depositor, the Trust Company, and the Owner Trustee without the consent of any Noteholder or Certificateholder to cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provisions in this Trust Agreement in a manner consistent with the intent of this Trust Agreement and the Transaction Documents.

(b) Except as provided in Section 11.01(a) hereof, this Trust Agreement may be amended from time to time by the Trust Depositor, the Trust Company, and the Owner Trustee, with the consent of the Majority Noteholders (so long as the Notes are outstanding) and the consent of the Majority Certificateholders, for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Trust Agreement or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Noteholders or the Certificateholders hereunder; *provided* that no such amendment shall (a) increase or reduce in any manner the amount of, or accelerate or delay the timing of any amounts received on the Loans which are required to be distributed on any Note or Trust Certificate without the consent of the Holder of that Note or Trust Certificate or (b) reduce the aforesaid percentage of Noteholders and the aggregate Percentage Interest of Certificateholders required to consent to any such amendment, without the consent of the holders of all the outstanding Notes and Trust Certificates.

(c) Promptly after the execution of any such amendment or consent, the Owner Trustee shall furnish written notification of the substance of such amendment or consent to the Trustee and the Trust Depositor (who shall promptly forward such notice to any Rating Agency) and the Trustee shall furnish written notification of the substance of such amendment or consent to each Certificateholder and Noteholder.

(d) It shall not be necessary for the consent of Certificateholders or Noteholders pursuant to this Section 11.01 to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment or consent, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof. The

manner of obtaining such consents (and any other consents of Certificateholders or Noteholders provided for in this Trust Agreement or in any other Transaction Document) and of evidencing the authorization of the execution thereof by Certificateholders or Noteholders shall be subject to such reasonable requirements as the Owner Trustee may prescribe.

(e) Promptly after the execution of any amendment to the Certificate of Trust, the Owner Trustee shall cause the filing of such amendment with the Secretary of State of Delaware.

(f) Prior to the execution of any amendment to this Trust Agreement or the Certificate of Trust, the Owner Trustee shall be entitled to receive and rely upon an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such amendment is authorized or permitted by this Trust Agreement and an officer's certificate of the Trust Depositor that all conditions precedent to the execution and delivery of such amendment have been met. The Owner Trustee and the Trust Company may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such amendment that affects the Owner Trustee's or the Trust Company's own rights, duties or immunities under this Trust Agreement or otherwise. Notwithstanding any other provision herein or elsewhere, no provision, amendment, supplement, waiver, or consent of or with respect to any of the Transaction Documents that affects any right, power, authority, duty, benefit, protection, privilege, immunity or indemnity of the Owner Trustee or the Trust Company shall be binding on the Owner Trustee or the Trust Company unless the Owner Trustee and the Trust Company shall have expressly consented thereto in writing.

(g) This Trust Agreement may only be amended to the extent that written advice from Dechert LLP or an opinion of tax counsel of nationally recognized standing in the United States experienced in such matters is delivered to the Issuer (with a copy to the Owner Trustee) to the effect that such amendment will not (i) cause the Trust to be treated as an association, publicly traded partnership or taxable mortgage pool, in each case, taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (ii) cause the Notes to be deemed to have been sold or exchanged under Section 1001 of the Code or (iii) cause any Notes that were characterized as indebtedness at the time of issuance to be characterized as other than indebtedness.

Section 11.02 Customer Identification Program.

Pursuant to Applicable Law, the Owner Trustee is required to obtain on or before closing, and from time to time thereafter, documentation to verify and record information that identifies each person who opens an account. For a non-individual person such as a business entity, a charity, a trust or other legal entity, the Owner Trustee will ask for documentation to verify the entity's formation and existence, its financial statements, licenses, tax identification documents, identification and authorization documents from individuals claiming authority to represent the entity and other relevant documentation and information (including beneficial owners of such entities). To the fullest extent permitted by Applicable Law, the Owner Trustee may conclusively rely on, and shall be fully protected and indemnified in relying on, any such information received. Failure to provide such information may result in an inability of the Owner Trustee to perform its obligations hereunder, which, at the sole option of the Owner Trustee, may result in the Owner Trustee's resignation in accordance with the terms hereof. The parties hereto agree that for purposes of Applicable Law, (a) Ownership Prong: The Trust Depositor is and shall be deemed to be the sole beneficial owner of the Trust, and (b) Control Prong: The Trust Depositor is and shall be deemed to be the party with the power and authority to control the Trust

Section 11.03 No Legal Title to Trust Estate in Certificateholders.

The Certificateholders shall not have legal title to any part of the Trust Estate. The Certificateholders shall be entitled to receive distributions with respect to their undivided beneficial ownership interest therein only in accordance with Articles V and IX. No transfer, by operation of law or otherwise, of any right, title or interest of the Certificateholders to and in their beneficial ownership interest in the Trust Estate shall operate to dissolve the Trust or terminate this Agreement or the trusts hereunder or entitle any transferee to an accounting or to the transfer to it of legal title to any part of the Trust Estate.

Section 11.04 Limitations on Rights of Others.

The provisions of this Trust Agreement are solely for the benefit of the Owner Trustee, the Trust Company, the Indemnified Parties, the Trust Depositor, the Certificateholders and, to the extent expressly provided herein, the Trustee and the Noteholders, and nothing in this Trust Agreement, whether express or implied, shall be construed to give to any other Person any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim in the Trust Estate or under or in respect of this Trust Agreement or any covenants, conditions or provisions contained herein.

Section 11.05 Notices.

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Certificateholders or other documents provided or permitted by this Trust Agreement shall be in writing to and mailed, return receipt requested, hand delivered, sent by overnight courier service guaranteeing next day delivery or by facsimile or teletype in legible form, if to the Owner Trustee, addressed to its Corporate Trust Office; or if to the Trust Depositor, addressed to Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, c/o Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, Attention: Chief Financial Officer, Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, Telephone: (650) 289-3060, Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194; with a copy to Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, c/o Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, Attention: General Counsel, Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, Telephone: (650) 289-3060, Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194 or if to a Certificateholder shall be given by first-class mail, postage prepaid, at the address of such Certificateholder as shown in the Certificate Register.

(b) Delivery of any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Noteholders or other documents made as provided above will be deemed effective (except that notice to the Owner Trustee shall be deemed given only upon actual receipt by the Owner Trustee): (i) if in writing and delivered in Person or by overnight courier service, on the date it is delivered; (ii) if sent by facsimile transmission, on the date that transmission is received by the recipient in legible form (it being agreed that the burden of proving receipt will be on the sender and will not be met by a transmission report generated by the sender's facsimile machine); and (iii) if sent by mail, on the date that mail is delivered or its delivery is attempted; in each case, unless the date of that delivery (or attempted delivery) or that receipt, as applicable, is not a Business Day or that communication is delivered (or attempted) or received, as applicable, after the close of business on a Business Day, in which case that communication shall be deemed given and effective on the first following day that is a Business Day.

Section 11.06 Severability.

Any provision of this Trust Agreement that is prohibited or unenforceable in any jurisdiction shall, as to such jurisdiction, be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or unenforceability without invalidating the remaining provisions hereof, and any such prohibition or unenforceability in any jurisdiction shall not invalidate or render unenforceable such provision in any other jurisdiction.

Section 11.07 Separate Counterparts.

This Trust Agreement may be executed by the parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 11.08 Successors and Assigns.

All covenants and agreements contained herein shall be binding upon, and inure to the benefit of, each of the Trust Depositor, the Owner Trustee, the Trust Company, each Certificateholder and their respective successors and permitted assigns, all as herein provided. Any request, notice, direction, consent, waiver or other instrument or action by a Certificateholder shall bind the successors and assigns of such Certificateholder.

Section 11.09 No Petition.

(a) To the extent permitted by Applicable Law, the Trust Depositor will not, prior to the date which is one (1) year and one (1) day (or, if longer, the applicable preference period then in effect) after payment in full of the Notes rated by any Rating Agency (or such longer preference period as shall then be in effect), institute against the Trust any bankruptcy proceedings under any United States Federal or state bankruptcy or similar law in connection with any obligations relating to the Trust Certificates, the Notes, this Trust Agreement or any of the other Transaction Documents.

(b) To the extent permitted by Applicable Law, the Owner Trustee, by entering into this Trust Agreement, each Certificateholder, by accepting a Trust Certificate, and the Trustee and each Noteholder, by accepting the benefits of this Trust Agreement, hereby covenant and agree that they will not, prior to the date which is one (1) year and one (1) day (or if longer, the applicable preference period as shall then be in effect) after payment in full of the Notes rated by any Rating Agency (or such longer preference period as shall then be in effect), institute against the Trust, or join in any institution against the Trust of, any bankruptcy proceedings under any United States federal or state bankruptcy or similar law in connection with any obligations relating to the Trust Certificates, the Notes, this Trust Agreement or any of the other Transaction Documents; provided, however, that nothing contained herein shall prevent the Owner Trustee from filing a proof of claim in any such proceeding.

(c) The provisions of this Section 11.08 shall survive the termination of this Trust Agreement for any reason whatsoever.

Section 11.10 No Recourse.

To the extent permitted by Applicable Law, each Certificateholder by accepting a Trust Certificate acknowledges that such Certificateholder's Trust Certificates represent beneficial interests in the Trust only and do not represent interests in or obligations of the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Seller, the Owner Trustee, the Trust Company, the Trustee, Certificate Registrar or any Affiliate thereof and no recourse may be had against such parties or their assets, except as may be expressly set forth or contemplated in this Trust Agreement, the Trust Certificates or the Transaction Documents. Each Certificateholder by accepting a Trust Certificate (i) acknowledges that such Trust Certificate represents a beneficial interest in the Trust only and does not represent an interest in or an obligation of the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Seller, the Owner Trustee, the Trustee, or any Affiliate of the foregoing, and no recourse may be had against any such party or their assets, except as may be expressly set forth or contemplated in the Transaction Documents and (ii) enters into the undertakings and agreements provided for such Certificateholder set forth in Section 13.09 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The right to distributions of the assets of the Trust or the proceeds thereof arising under this Agreement or the Trust Certificates shall be payable solely in accordance with the priority set forth in Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement until the final discharge of the Indenture, and no Certificateholder shall have any recourse against the Trust except in accordance therewith. The provisions of this Section 11.09 shall survive any termination of this Agreement.

Section 11.11 Headings.

The headings of the various Articles and Sections herein are for convenience of reference only and shall not define or limit any of the terms or provisions hereof.

Section 11.12 GOVERNING LAW; SUBMISSION TO JURISDICTION; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL.

THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF DELAWARE, WITHOUT REFERENCE TO ITS CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS, AND THE OBLIGATIONS, RIGHTS AND REMEDIES OF THE PARTIES HEREUNDER SHALL BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SUCH LAWS. SECTION 3540 OF TITLE 12 OF THE DELAWARE CODE SHALL NOT APPLY TO THIS TRUST.

ANY LEGAL ACTION OR PROCEEDING WITH RESPECT TO THIS TRUST AGREEMENT MAY BE BROUGHT IN THE COURTS OF THE UNITED STATES FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE, AND BY EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF THIS TRUST AGREEMENT, EACH PARTY HERETO CONSENTS, FOR ITSELF AND IN RESPECT OF ITS PROPERTY, TO THE NON-EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THOSE COURTS. EACH SUCH PARTY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY OBJECTION, INCLUDING ANY OBJECTION TO THE LAYING OF VENUE OR BASED ON THE GROUNDS OF FORUM NON CONVENIENS, WHICH IT MAY NOW OR HEREAFTER HAVE TO THE BRINGING OF ANY ACTION OR PROCEEDING IN SUCH JURISDICTION IN RESPECT OF THIS TRUST AGREEMENT OR ANY DOCUMENT RELATED HERETO.

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EACH PARTY HERETO IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ALL RIGHT OF TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY ACTION, PROCEEDING OR COUNTERCLAIM BASED ON, OR ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR ANY MATTER ARISING HEREUNDER.

Section 11.13 Termination of Original Trust Agreement

The parties hereto agree that the Original Trust Agreement is hereby superseded in its entirety by this Agreement.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank.]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Trust Agreement to be duly executed by their respective officers hereunto duly authorized, as of the day and year first above written.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC, as Trust
Depositor

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
A&R Trust Agreement

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Trust Agreement to be duly executed by their respective officers hereunto duly authorized, as of the day and year first above written.

WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
as Owner Trustee and as the Trust Company

By: /s/ Roseline K. Maney

Name: Roseline K. Maney

Title: Administrative Vice President

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
A&R Trust Agreement

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Trust Agreement to be duly executed by their respective officers hereunto duly authorized, as of the day and year first above written.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as Trustee, hereby accepts the appointment as Certificate Registrar and paying agent pursuant to Sections 3.04 and 3.09 hereof and agrees to be bound by the obligations expressly set forth herein applicable to it in such capacities.

By: /s/ Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Name: Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Title: Senior Vice President

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
A&R Trust Agreement

FORM OF TRUST CERTIFICATE

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE HAS NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "SECURITIES ACT") OR STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THE HOLDER HEREOF, BY PURCHASING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE, AGREES THAT THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE MAY BE MAY BE REOFFERED, RESOLD, PLEDGED OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED ONLY IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAW AND ONLY TO (1) A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER," AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT THAT IS A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER" AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A)(51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 (EACH SUCH PERSON, A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER"), (2) AN INSTITUTION THAT QUALIFIES AS AN "ACCREDITED INVESTOR" MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF RULE 501(A)(1), (2), (3) OR (7) OF REGULATION D UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT (AN "INSTITUTIONAL ACCREDITED INVESTOR") THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND, IN EITHER CASE, IS ACQUIRING SUCH TRUST CERTIFICATE FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT (AND NOT FOR THE ACCOUNT OF OTHERS) OR AS A FIDUCIARY OR AGENT FOR OTHERS (WHICH OTHERS ALSO ARE INSTITUTIONAL ACCREDITED INVESTORS), PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN EACH CASE, SUBJECT TO (A) THE RECEIPT BY THE OWNER TRUSTEE AND THE CERTIFICATE REGISTRAR OF A LETTER SUBSTANTIALLY IN THE FORM PROVIDED IN THE TRUST AGREEMENT AND (B) THE RECEIPT BY THE OWNER TRUSTEE AND THE CERTIFICATE REGISTRAR OF SUCH OTHER EVIDENCE ACCEPTABLE TO THE OWNER TRUSTEE THAT SUCH REOFFER, RESALE, PLEDGE OR TRANSFER IS IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES ACT AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAW OR IN EACH CASE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ALL APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAWS OF THE UNITED STATES AND SECURITIES AND BLUE SKY LAWS OF ANY STATE OF THE UNITED STATES AND ANY OTHER APPLICABLE JURISDICTION, (3) PURSUANT TO ANOTHER EXEMPTION AVAILABLE UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH ANY APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS, OR (4) PURSUANT TO A VALID REGISTRATION STATEMENT. EACH INVESTOR IN THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND WARRANTED THAT EITHER (1) IT IS NOT, AND IS NOT DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ACQUIRING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE FOR, ON BEHALF OF OR WITH ANY ASSETS OF, AN EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO PART 4, SUBTITLE B, TITLE I OF THE EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT OF 1974, AS AMENDED ("ERISA"), A PLAN SUBJECT TO SECTION 4975 OF THE INTERNAL REVENUE CODE OF 1986, AS AMENDED (THE "CODE"), OR AN ENTITY WHOSE UNDERLYING ASSETS INCLUDE PLAN ASSETS OF ANY SUCH PLANS (COLLECTIVELY, A "BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR") OR A PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO ANY PROVISIONS UNDER ANY FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, NON-U.S. OR OTHER LAWS OR REGULATIONS THAT ARE

SUBSTANTIVELY SIMILAR TO SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE (“SIMILAR LAW”) OR (II) IT IS A PLAN SUBJECT TO SIMILAR LAW AND ITS ACQUISITION, HOLDING AND DISPOSITION OF SUCH TRUST CERTIFICATE OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN WILL NOT CONSTITUTE OR RESULT IN A NON-EXEMPT VIOLATION OF SIMILAR LAW. SUCH REPRESENTATION SHALL BE DEEMED MADE ON EACH DAY FROM THE DATE ON WHICH THE ACQUIRER ACQUIRES ITS INTEREST IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATE THROUGH AND INCLUDING THE DATE ON WHICH THE ACQUIRER DISPOSES OF ITS INTEREST IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATE.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE IS NOT GUARANTEED OR INSURED BY ANY GOVERNMENTAL AGENCY.

NO TRANSFER, SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER DISPOSITION OF ONE OR MORE TRUST CERTIFICATES (A “TRANSFER”) SHALL BE MADE UNLESS SIMULTANEOUSLY WITH THE TRANSFER THE PERCENTAGE INTEREST OF THE TRUST CERTIFICATES SO TRANSFERRED IS NO LESS THAN TEN (10%) PERCENT.

EACH HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) REPRESENTS AND WARRANTS THAT IT IS A “UNITED STATES PERSON” AS DEFINED IN SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE AND WILL PROVIDE THE TRUST AND THE OWNER TRUSTEE (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH A CORRECT, COMPLETE AND PROPERLY EXECUTED INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-9 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM). IF ANY HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN) (OTHER THAN THE INITIAL HOLDER) FAILS TO PROVIDE THE TRUST AND THE OWNER TRUST (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH THE PROPERLY COMPLETED AND SIGNED TAX CERTIFICATIONS SPECIFIED ABOVE, THE ACQUISITION OF ITS INTEREST IN THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE SHALL BE VOID *AB INITIO*.

EACH TRANSFEROR OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL AGREE, OR BY ACQUIRING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE OR AN INTEREST THEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED, TO DELIVER TO THE TRANSFEREE, WITH A COPY TO THE TRUST AND THE OWNER TRUSTEE, PRIOR TO THE TRANSFER OF THE TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN), A PROPERLY COMPLETED CERTIFICATE, IN A FORM REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRANSFEREE AND THE TRUST, STATING, UNDER PENALTY OF PERJURY, THE TRANSFEROR’S UNITED STATES TAXPAYER IDENTIFICATION NUMBER AND THAT THE TRANSFEROR IS NOT A FOREIGN PERSON WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 1446(f)(2) OF THE CODE (SUCH CERTIFICATE, A “NON-FOREIGN STATUS CERTIFICATE”). EACH TRANSFEROR OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) ACKNOWLEDGES, OR BY ACQUIRING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE OR AN INTEREST THEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO ACKNOWLEDGE, THAT THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE A NON-FOREIGN STATUS CERTIFICATE TO THE TRANSFEREE MAY RESULT IN WITHHOLDING ON THE AMOUNT REALIZED ON ITS DISPOSITION OF THE TRUST CERTIFICATE.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) MAY NOT BE ACQUIRED OR OWNED BY ANY PERSON (OTHER THAN THE TRUST DEPOSITOR) THAT IS CLASSIFIED FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES AS A PARTNERSHIP, SUBCHAPTER S CORPORATION OR GRANTOR TRUST UNLESS (I) (A) NONE OF THE DIRECT OR INDIRECT BENEFICIAL OWNERS OF ANY INTEREST IN SUCH PERSON HAVE OR EVER WILL HAVE MORE THAN 40% OF THE VALUE OF ITS INTEREST IN SUCH PERSON ATTRIBUTABLE TO THE AGGREGATE INTEREST OF SUCH PERSON IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATES AND ANY OTHER EQUITY INTERESTS OF THE TRUST, AND (B) IT IS NOT AND WILL NOT BE A PRINCIPAL PURPOSE OF THE ARRANGEMENT INVOLVING THE INVESTMENT OF SUCH PERSON IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATES AND ANY OTHER EQUITY INTERESTS OF THE TRUST TO PERMIT ANY PARTNERSHIP TO SATISFY THE 100 PARTNER LIMITATION OF TREAS. REG. § 1.7704-1(h)(1)(ii) OR (II) SUCH PERSON OBTAINS AN OPINION OF NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED U.S. TAX COUNSEL REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRUST THAT SUCH TRANSFER WILL NOT CAUSE THE TRUST TO BE TREATED AS A PUBLICLY TRADED PARTNERSHIP TAXABLE AS A CORPORATION.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) MAY NOT BE ACQUIRED, AND NO CERTIFICATEHOLDER MAY SELL, TRANSFER, ASSIGN, PARTICIPATE, PLEDGE OR OTHERWISE DISPOSE OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) OR CAUSE THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) TO BE MARKETED, (I) ON OR THROUGH AN "ESTABLISHED SECURITIES MARKET" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7704(b)(1) OF THE CODE AND TREAS. REG. § 1.7704-1(b), INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, AN INTERDEALER QUOTATION SYSTEM THAT REGULARLY DISSEMINATES FIRM BUY OR SELL QUOTATIONS, OR (II) IF SUCH ACQUISITION, SALE, TRANSFER, ASSIGNMENT, PARTICIPATION, PLEDGE OR OTHER DISPOSITION WOULD CAUSE THE COMBINED NUMBER OF HOLDERS OF TRUST CERTIFICATES AND OTHER EQUITY INTERESTS IN THE TRUST TO BE MORE THAN 88.

NO HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL PARTICIPATE IN THE CREATION OR OTHER TRANSFER OF ANY FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT OR CONTRACT THE VALUE OF WHICH IS DETERMINED IN WHOLE OR IN PART BY REFERENCE TO THE TRUST (INCLUDING THE AMOUNT OF DISTRIBUTIONS BY THE TRUST, THE VALUE OF THE TRUST'S ASSETS, THE RESULTS OF THE TRUST'S OPERATIONS OR THE TRUST CERTIFICATES).

EACH HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) ACKNOWLEDGES AND AGREES THAT ANY SALE, TRANSFER, ASSIGNMENT, PARTICIPATION, PLEDGE, OR OTHER DISPOSITION OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE THAT WOULD VIOLATE ANY OF THE THREE PRECEDING

PARAGRAPHS ABOVE OR OTHERWISE CAUSE THE TRUST TO BE UNABLE TO RELY ON THE “PRIVATE PLACEMENT” SAFE HARBOR OF TREAS. REG. § 1.7704-1(h) WILL BE VOID AND OF NO FORCE OR EFFECT, AND IT WILL NOT TRANSFER ANY INTEREST IN THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE TO ANY PERSON THAT DOES NOT AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE THREE PRECEDING PARAGRAPHS ABOVE OR BY THIS PARAGRAPH.

UNLESS THE TRUST DEPOSITOR, TRUST AND OWNER TRUSTEE HAVE RECEIVED AN OPINION OF COUNSEL FROM DECHERT LLP OR OTHER NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED TAX COUNSEL THAT THE RESTRICTION ON THE PROPOSED ACQUISITION OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) DESCRIBED BY THIS PARAGRAPH IS NO LONGER NECESSARY TO CONCLUDE THAT ANY SUCH ACQUISITION (AND SUBSEQUENT RESALE OF THE APPLICABLE NOTES DESCRIBED BELOW) WILL NOT CAUSE THE TREASURY REGULATIONS UNDER SECTION 385 OF THE CODE TO APPLY TO SUCH NOTES IN A MANNER THAT COULD CAUSE A MATERIAL ADVERSE EFFECT ON THE TRUST OR THE TRUST TO BE TREATED AS AN ASSOCIATION OR PUBLICLY TRADED PARTNERSHIP TAXABLE AS A CORPORATION FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES, (I) A SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER CANNOT ACQUIRE A TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) IF (A) A MEMBER OF ANY “EXPANDED GROUP” (AS DEFINED IN TREASURY REGULATION SECTION 1.385-1(c)(4)) THAT INCLUDES SUCH SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER OWNS ANY NOTES OR (B) A SECTION 385 CONTROLLED PARTNERSHIP OF SUCH EXPANDED GROUP OWNS ANY NOTES AND (II) A SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER CANNOT HOLD A TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) IF (A) A MEMBER OF ANY “EXPANDED GROUP” (AS DEFINED IN TREASURY REGULATION SECTION 1.385-1(c)(4)) THAT INCLUDES SUCH SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER ACQUIRES ANY NOTES FROM THE TRUST, ANY AFFILIATE OF THE TRUST OR ANY OTHER SUBSEQUENT TRANSFEROR OF A NOTE OR (B) A SECTION 385 CONTROLLED PARTNERSHIP OF SUCH EXPANDED GROUP ACQUIRES ANY NOTES FROM THE TRUST, ANY AFFILIATE OF THE TRUST OR ANY OTHER SUBSEQUENT TRANSFEROR OF A NOTE. THE PRECEDING SENTENCE SHALL NOT APPLY IF THE NOTEHOLDER OR POTENTIAL NOTEHOLDER IS A U.S. CORPORATE MEMBER OF THE SAME U.S. CORPORATE “AFFILIATED GROUP” (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 1504 OF THE CODE) FILING A CONSOLIDATED FEDERAL INCOME TAX RETURN THAT INCLUDES EACH OF ANY APPLICABLE RELATED SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDERS (INCLUDING IN THE CASE OF A PARTNERSHIP, THE RELEVANT “EXPANDED GROUP PARTNER” (AS DEFINED IN TREASURY REGULATION SECTION 1.385-3(g)(12)). IF A CERTIFICATEHOLDER (OR HOLDER OF AN INTEREST IN A TRUST CERTIFICATE) FAILS TO COMPLY WITH THE FOREGOING REQUIREMENTS, THE TRUST AND DEPOSITOR ARE AUTHORIZED, AT THEIR DISCRETION, TO COMPEL SUCH CERTIFICATEHOLDER (OR HOLDER OF AN INTEREST IN A TRUST CERTIFICATE) TO SELL ITS TRUST CERTIFICATE (OR INTEREST THEREIN) TO A PERSON WHOSE OWNERSHIP COMPLIES WITH THIS PARAGRAPH SO LONG AS SUCH SALE DOES NOT OTHERWISE CAUSE A MATERIAL ADVERSE EFFECT

ON THE TRUST OR CAUSE THE TRUST TO BE TREATED AS AN ASSOCIATION OR PUBLICLY TRADED PARTNERSHIP TAXABLE AS A CORPORATION FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES.

NUMBER 1

PERCENTAGE INTEREST: 100%

A-1-5

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

TRUST CERTIFICATE

Evidencing a beneficial ownership interest in the Trust, as defined below, the property of which includes primarily the Loans transferred to the Trust by Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC.

(This Trust Certificate does not represent an interest in or obligation of Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, Hercules Capital, Inc. (the “Servicer”) or the Owner Trustee (as defined below) (as such or in its individual capacity) or any of their respective affiliates, except to the extent described below.)

THIS CERTIFIES THAT HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC is the registered owner of the nonassessable, fully paid, beneficial ownership interest in HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1 (the “Trust”) formed by Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, in the Percentage Interest evidenced hereby.

The Trust was created pursuant to a Trust Agreement, dated as of June 11, 2018 (as amended and restated as of November 1, 2018 and as further amended, modified, restated, waived, substituted or supplemented from time to time, the “Trust Agreement”), between Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as trust depositor (the “Trust Depositor”), and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as owner trustee (the “Owner Trustee”), a summary of certain of the pertinent provisions of which is set forth below and a Certificate of Trust filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 11, 2018. To the extent not otherwise defined herein, the capitalized terms used herein have the meanings assigned to them in the Trust Agreement.

This Trust Certificate is one of a duly authorized issue of Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Certificates (herein called the “Trust Certificates”). This Trust Certificate is issued under and is subject to the terms, provisions and conditions of the Trust Agreement, to which Trust Agreement the holder of this Trust Certificate by virtue of its acceptance hereof assents and by which such holder is bound.

Under the Trust Agreement, there will be distributions on the 20th day of each month or, if such 20th day is not a Business Day, the next Business Day (each, a “Payment Date”), commencing on November 20, 2018, to the Person in whose name this Trust Certificate is registered at the close of business on the last Business Day of the month immediately preceding the Payment Date (the “Record Date”), such Certificateholder’s Percentage Interest in the amount to be distributed to Certificateholders on such Payment Date pursuant to the terms of the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the Indenture.

The Holder of this Trust Certificate acknowledges and agrees that its rights to receive distributions in respect of this Trust Certificate are subordinated to the rights of the Noteholders as described in the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the Indenture.

It is the intent of the Trust Depositor and the Certificateholders that (i) for any period that the Trust Certificates are owned by a single beneficial owner, for U.S. federal income tax

purposes, the Trust will be disregarded as an entity separate from such beneficial owner for U.S. federal income tax purposes, and the Certificateholders (and the beneficial owner of the Trust Certificates), by acceptance of the Trust Certificates (or a beneficial interest therein), agree to take no action inconsistent with such treatment and (ii) for any period that the Trust Certificates are owned by more than one beneficial owner for U.S. federal income tax purposes, the Trust will be treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes, other than a publicly traded partnership, the partners of which are the beneficial owners of the Trust Certificates, and the Certificateholders (and beneficial owners of the Trust Certificates), by acceptance of a Trust Certificate (or beneficial interest therein) agree to treat the Trust Certificates as equity and to take no action inconsistent with such treatment.

To the fullest extent permitted by Applicable Law, each Certificateholder, by its acceptance of a Trust Certificate, covenants and agrees that such Certificateholder, will not prior to the date which is one (1) year and one (1) day (or, if longer, the applicable preference period then in effect) after the payment in full of the Notes rated by any Rating Agency, institute against the Trust, or join in any institution against the Trust of, any bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency or liquidation proceedings, or other proceedings under any United States federal or state bankruptcy or similar law in connection with any obligations relating to the Trust Certificates, the Notes, the Trust Agreement or any of the other Transaction Documents.

Distributions on this Trust Certificate will be made as provided in the Trust Agreement by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent by wire transfer or check mailed to the Certificateholder of record in the Certificate Register without the presentation or surrender of this Trust Certificate or the making of any notation hereon. Except as otherwise provided in the Trust Agreement and notwithstanding the above, the final distribution on this Trust Certificate will be made after due notice by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent of the pendency of such distribution and only upon presentation and surrender of this Trust Certificate at the office or agency maintained for that purpose by the Trustee or any other party acting as paying agent.

Reference is hereby made to the further provisions of this Trust Certificate set forth on the reverse hereof, which further provisions shall for all purposes have the same effect as if set forth at this place.

Unless the certificate of authentication hereon shall have been executed by an authorized officer of the Certificate Registrar, by manual signature, this Trust Certificate shall not entitle the Holder hereof to any benefit under the Trust Agreement or the Sale and Servicing Agreement or be valid for any purpose.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE SHALL BE CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF DELAWARE, WITHOUT REFERENCE TO ITS CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS, AND THE OBLIGATIONS, RIGHTS AND REMEDIES OF THE PARTIES HEREUNDER SHALL BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SUCH LAWS.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Owner Trustee, on behalf of the Trust and not in its individual capacity, has caused this Trust Certificate to be duly executed.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

By: WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL
ASSOCIATION, solely as Owner Trustee and not in its
individual capacity

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

This is one of the Trust Certificates of Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 referred to in the within-mentioned Trust Agreement.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as Certificate
Registrar

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

[REVERSE OF TRUST CERTIFICATE]

The Trust Certificates do not represent an obligation of, or an interest in, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Owner Trustee or any affiliates of any of them and no recourse may be had against such parties or their assets, except as expressly set forth or contemplated herein or in the Trust Agreement, the Indenture or the Transaction Documents. In addition, this Trust Certificate is not guaranteed by any governmental agency or instrumentality and is limited in right of payment to certain collections and recoveries with respect to the Loans (and certain other amounts), all as more specifically set forth herein and in the Transaction Documents. A copy of each of the Transaction Documents may be examined by any Certificateholder upon written request during normal business hours at the principal office of the Trust Depositor and at such other places, if any, designated by the Trust Depositor.

The Trust Agreement permits, with certain exceptions therein provided, the amendment thereof and the modification of the rights and obligations of the Trust Depositor and the rights of the Certificateholders under the Trust Agreement at any time, by the Trust Depositor, the Trust Company and the Owner Trustee with the consent of the holders of the Trust Certificates evidencing not less than a majority of the outstanding Percentage Interest and of the holders of the Majority Noteholders. Any such consent by the holder of this Trust Certificate shall be conclusive and binding on such holder and on all future holders of this Trust Certificate and of any Trust Certificate issued upon the transfer hereof or in exchange herefor or in lieu hereof, whether or not notation of such consent is made upon this Trust Certificate. The Trust Agreement also permits the amendment thereof, in certain limited circumstances, without the consent of the holders of any of the Trust Certificates.

As provided in the Trust Agreement and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, the transfer of this Trust Certificate is registerable in the Certificate Register upon surrender of this Trust Certificate for registration of transfer at the offices or agencies of the Certificate Registrar, accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Owner Trustee and the Certificate Registrar duly executed by the holder hereof or such holder's attorney duly authorized in writing, and thereupon one or more new Trust Certificates of authorized denominations evidencing the same aggregate interest in the Trust will be issued to the designated transferee. The initial Certificate Registrar appointed under the Trust Agreement is U.S. Bank National Association.

The Trust Certificates are issuable only as registered Trust Certificates without coupons in minimum Percentage Interests of ten (10%) percent and integral multiples of one (1%) percent in excess thereof; *provided* that one Trust Certificate may be issued in a different denomination. As provided in the Trust Agreement and subject to certain limitations therein set forth, Trust Certificates are exchangeable for new Trust Certificates of authorized denominations evidencing the same aggregate denomination, as requested by the holder surrendering the same. No service charge will be made for any such registration of transfer or exchange, but the Owner Trustee or the Certificate Registrar may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or governmental charge payable in connection therewith.

The Owner Trustee, the Certificate Registrar and any agent of the Owner Trustee or the Certificate Registrar may treat the Person in whose name this Trust Certificate is registered as the owner hereof for all purposes, and none of the Owner Trustee, the Certificate Registrar or any such agent shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

This Trust Certificate may not be acquired directly or indirectly by, or held by or with plan assets of any employee benefit plans, retirement arrangements, individual retirement accounts or Keogh plans subject to either Title I of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended, or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended. By accepting and holding this Trust Certificate, the Holder hereof shall be deemed to have represented and warranted that it is not any of the foregoing entities.

This Trust Certificate may not be transferred to any person who is not a U.S. Person, as such term is defined in Section 7701(a)(30) of the Internal Revenue Code, as amended.

Each purchaser of the Trust Certificates shall be required, prior to purchasing a Trust Certificate, to execute the Purchaser's Representation and Warranty Letter in the form attached to the Trust Agreement as Exhibit C.

The obligations and responsibilities created by the Trust Agreement and the Trust created thereby shall terminate upon (i) the payment to Certificateholders of all amounts required to be paid to them pursuant to the Trust Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the disposition of all property held as part of the Trust and (ii) the written consent of the Certificateholders. The Servicer on behalf of the Trustee has the option to cause the sale of the corpus of the Trust at a price and pursuant to procedures specified in the Indenture and the Sale and Servicing Agreement, and such sale of the receivables and other property of the Trust will effect early retirement of the Trust Certificates.

ASSIGNMENT

FOR VALUE RECEIVED the undersigned hereby sells, assigns and transfers unto

PLEASE INSERT SOCIAL SECURITY OR
OTHER IDENTIFYING NUMBER OF ASSIGNEE

(Please print or type name and address, including postal zip code, of assignee)

the within Trust Certificate, and all rights thereunder, hereby irrevocably constituting and appointing

to transfer said Trust Certificate on the books of the Certificate Registrar, with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated:

Signature Guaranteed: *

*

* NOTICE: The signature to this assignment must correspond with the name as it appears upon the face of the within Trust Certificate in every particular, without alteration, enlargement or any change whatever. Such signature must be guaranteed by a member firm of the New York Stock Exchange or a commercial bank or trust company.

**CERTIFICATE OF TRUST OF
HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST2018-1**

This Certificate of Trust of HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST2018-1 (the "Trust"), is being duly executed and filed by the undersigned, as owner trustee, to form a statutory trust under the Statutory Trust Statute (12 Del. Code, § 3801 *et seq.*) (the "Act").

- 1. Name. The name of the statutory trust formed hereby is HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST2018-1.
- 2. Delaware Trustee. The name and business address of a trustee of the Trust having its principal place of business in the State of Delaware is Wilmington Trust, National Association, 1100 North Market Street, Wilmington, Delaware 19890, Attention: Corporate Trust Administration.
- 3. Effective Date. This Certificate of Trust shall be effective upon its filing with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned, being the only owner trustee of the Trust, has duly executed this Certificate of Trust in accordance with Section 3811(a)(1) of the Act.

WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity, but solely as owner trustee of
the Trust

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Form of Purchaser's Representation and Warranty Letter

Dated: November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
c/o Wilmington Trust, National Association, as Owner Trustee
1100 North Market Street
Wilmington, Delaware 19890
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration

U.S. Bank National Association, as Certificate Registrar
111 Fillmore Avenue East
Attn: Bondholder Services—EP-MN-WS2N
St. Paul, Minnesota, 55107
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

Re: **Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 (the "Trust")**

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In connection with our proposed acquisition of Trust Certificates (the "Trust Certificates") issued under the Trust Agreement, dated as of June 11, 2018 (as amended and restated as of November 1, 2018 and as further amended, modified, restated, replaced, waived, substituted, supplemented or extended from time to time, the "Agreement"; capitalized terms used but not defined herein shall have the meanings given to such terms in the Agreement), between Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor (the "Trust Depositor"), and Wilmington Trust, National Association, as Owner Trustee, the undersigned (the "Purchaser") represents, warrants and agrees that:

1. It is (1) the Trust Depositor or an Affiliate thereof, (2) a Qualified Institutional Buyer (a "QIB") for purposes of Rule 144A under the Securities Act and is acquiring the Trust Certificates for its own institutional account or for the account of a QIB or (3) an Institutional "Accredited Investor" (within the meaning of Rule 501 (a)(1)-(3) or (7) under the Securities Act) purchasing for investment and not for distribution in violation of the act.

2. It is not an employee benefit plan, retirement arrangement, individual retirement account or Keogh plan subject to either Title I of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended, or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended and is not acquiring Trust Certificates with plan assets of any of the foregoing.

3. It has such knowledge and experience in evaluating business and financial matters so that it is capable of evaluating the merits and risks of an investment in the Trust Certificates. It understands the full nature and risks of an investment in the Trust Certificates and based upon its present and projected net income and net worth, it believes that it can bear the economic risk of an immediate or future loss of its entire investment in the Trust Certificates.

4. It understands that the Trust Certificates will be offered in a transaction not involving any public offering within the meaning of the Securities Act, and that, if in the future it decides to resell, pledge or otherwise transfer any Trust Certificates, such Trust Certificates may be resold, pledged or transferred only (a) to a person who the seller reasonably believes is a QIB/QP that purchases for its own account or for the account of another QIB/QP or (b) pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act.

5. It understands that each Trust Certificate will bear legends substantially to the following effect:

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE HAS NOT BEEN REGISTERED UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED (THE "ACT") OR STATE SECURITIES LAWS. THE HOLDER HEREOF, BY PURCHASING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE, AGREES THAT THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE MAY BE MAY BE REOFFERED, RESOLD, PLEDGED OR OTHERWISE TRANSFERRED ONLY IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE ACT AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAW AND ONLY (1) A "QUALIFIED INSTITUTIONAL BUYER," AS DEFINED IN RULE 144A UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT THAT IS A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER" AS DEFINED IN SECTION 2(A) (51) OF THE INVESTMENT COMPANY ACT OF 1940 (EACH SUCH PERSON, A "QUALIFIED PURCHASER"), (2) AN INSTITUTION THAT QUALIFIES AS AN "ACCREDITED INVESTOR" MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF RULE 501(A)(1), (2), (3) OR (7) OF REGULATION D UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT ("INSTITUTIONAL ACCREDITED INVESTOR") THAT IS A QUALIFIED PURCHASER PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND, IN EITHER CASE, IS ACQUIRING SUCH TRUST CERTIFICATE FOR ITS OWN ACCOUNT (AND NOT FOR THE ACCOUNT OF OTHERS) OR AS A FIDUCIARY OR AGENT FOR OTHERS (WHICH OTHERS ALSO ARE INSTITUTIONAL ACCREDITED INVESTORS), PURSUANT TO AN EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT AND IN EACH CASE, SUBJECT TO (A) THE RECEIPT BY THE OWNER TRUSTEE AND THE CERTIFICATE REGISTRAR OF A LETTER SUBSTANTIALLY IN THE FORM PROVIDED IN THE TRUST AGREEMENT AND (B) THE RECEIPT BY THE OWNER TRUSTEE AND THE CERTIFICATE REGISTRAR OF SUCH OTHER EVIDENCE ACCEPTABLE TO THE OWNER TRUSTEE THAT SUCH REOFFER, RESALE, PLEDGE OR TRANSFER IS IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE ACT AND OTHER APPLICABLE LAW OR IN EACH CASE IN ACCORDANCE WITH ALL APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAWS OF THE UNITED STATES AND SECURITIES AND BLUE SKY LAWS OF ANY STATE OF THE UNITED STATES AND ANY OTHER APPLICABLE JURISDICTION, (3) PURSUANT TO ANOTHER EXEMPTION AVAILABLE UNDER THE ACT AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH ANY APPLICABLE STATE SECURITIES LAWS, OR (4) PURSUANT TO A VALID REGISTRATION STATEMENT. EACH INVESTOR IN THIS TRUST

CERTIFICATE WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE REPRESENTED AND WARRANTED THAT EITHER (I) IT IS NOT, AND IS NOT DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ACQUIRING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE FOR, ON BEHALF OF OR WITH ANY ASSETS OF, AN EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO PART 4, SUBTITLE B, TITLE I OF THE EMPLOYEE RETIREMENT INCOME SECURITY ACT OF 1974, AS AMENDED (“ERISA”), A PLAN SUBJECT TO SECTION 4975 OF THE INTERNAL REVENUE CODE OF 1986, AS AMENDED (THE “CODE”), OR AN ENTITY WHOSE UNDERLYING ASSETS INCLUDE PLAN ASSETS OF ANY SUCH PLANS (COLLECTIVELY, A “BENEFIT PLAN INVESTOR”) OR A PLAN OR OTHER ARRANGEMENT SUBJECT TO ANY PROVISIONS UNDER ANY FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL, NON-U.S. OR OTHER LAWS OR REGULATIONS THAT ARE SUBSTANTIVELY SIMILAR TO SECTION 406 OF ERISA OR SECTION 4975 OF THE CODE (“SIMILAR LAW”) OR (II) IT IS A PLAN SUBJECT TO SIMILAR LAW AND ITS ACQUISITION, HOLDING AND DISPOSITION OF SUCH TRUST CERTIFICATE OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN WILL NOT CONSTITUTE OR RESULT IN A NON-EXEMPT VIOLATION OF SIMILAR LAW. SUCH REPRESENTATION SHALL BE DEEMED MADE ON EACH DAY FROM THE DATE ON WHICH THE ACQUIRER ACQUIRES ITS INTEREST IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATE THROUGH AND INCLUDING THE DATE ON WHICH THE ACQUIRER DISPOSES OF ITS INTEREST IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATE.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE IS NOT GUARANTEED OR INSURED BY ANY GOVERNMENTAL AGENCY.

NO TRANSFER, SALE, PLEDGE OR OTHER DISPOSITION OF ONE OR MORE TRUST CERTIFICATES (A “TRANSFER”) SHALL BE MADE UNLESS SIMULTANEOUSLY WITH THE TRANSFER THE PERCENTAGE INTEREST OF THE TRUST CERTIFICATES SO TRANSFERRED IS NO LESS THAN TEN (10%) PERCENT.

EACH HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) REPRESENTS AND WARRANTS THAT IT IS A “UNITED STATES PERSON” AS DEFINED IN SECTION 7701(a)(30) OF THE CODE AND WILL PROVIDE THE TRUST AND THE OWNER TRUSTEE (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH A CORRECT, COMPLETE AND PROPERLY EXECUTED INTERNAL REVENUE SERVICE FORM W-9 (OR APPLICABLE SUCCESSOR FORM). IF ANY HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (OR ANY INTEREST THEREIN) (OTHER THAN THE INITIAL HOLDER) FAILS TO PROVIDE THE TRUST AND THE OWNER TRUST (AND ANY OF THEIR AGENTS) WITH THE PROPERLY COMPLETED AND SIGNED TAX CERTIFICATIONS SPECIFIED ABOVE, THE ACQUISITION OF ITS INTEREST IN THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE SHALL BE VOID *AB INITIO*.

EACH TRANSFEROR OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL AGREE, OR BY ACQUIRING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE OR AN INTEREST THEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO HAVE AGREED, TO DELIVER TO THE TRANSFEREE, WITH A COPY TO THE TRUST AND THE OWNER TRUSTEE, PRIOR TO THE TRANSFER OF THE TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN), A PROPERLY COMPLETED CERTIFICATE, IN A FORM REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRANSFEREE AND THE TRUST, STATING, UNDER PENALTY OF PERJURY, THE TRANSFEROR'S UNITED STATES TAXPAYER IDENTIFICATION NUMBER AND THAT THE TRANSFEROR IS NOT A FOREIGN PERSON WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 1446(f)(2) OF THE CODE (SUCH CERTIFICATE, A "NON-FOREIGN STATUS CERTIFICATE"). EACH TRANSFEROR OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) ACKNOWLEDGES, OR BY ACQUIRING THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE OR AN INTEREST THEREIN WILL BE DEEMED TO ACKNOWLEDGE, THAT THE FAILURE TO PROVIDE A NON-FOREIGN STATUS CERTIFICATE TO THE TRANSFEREE MAY RESULT IN WITHHOLDING ON THE AMOUNT REALIZED ON ITS DISPOSITION OF THE TRUST CERTIFICATE.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) MAY NOT BE ACQUIRED OR OWNED BY ANY PERSON (OTHER THAN THE TRUST DEPOSITOR) THAT IS CLASSIFIED FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES AS A PARTNERSHIP, SUBCHAPTER S CORPORATION OR GRANTOR TRUST UNLESS (I) (A) NONE OF THE DIRECT OR INDIRECT BENEFICIAL OWNERS OF ANY INTEREST IN SUCH PERSON HAVE OR EVER WILL HAVE MORE THAN 40% OF THE VALUE OF ITS INTEREST IN SUCH PERSON ATTRIBUTABLE TO THE AGGREGATE INTEREST OF SUCH PERSON IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATES AND ANY OTHER EQUITY INTERESTS OF THE TRUST, AND (B) IT IS NOT AND WILL NOT BE A PRINCIPAL PURPOSE OF THE ARRANGEMENT INVOLVING THE INVESTMENT OF SUCH PERSON IN THE TRUST CERTIFICATES AND ANY OTHER EQUITY INTERESTS OF THE TRUST TO PERMIT ANY PARTNERSHIP TO SATISFY THE 100 PARTNER LIMITATION OF TREAS. REG. § 1.7704-1(h)(1)(ii) OR (II) SUCH PERSON OBTAINS AN OPINION OF NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED U.S. TAX COUNSEL REASONABLY ACCEPTABLE TO THE TRUST THAT SUCH TRANSFER WILL NOT CAUSE THE TRUST TO BE TREATED AS A PUBLICLY TRADED PARTNERSHIP TAXABLE AS A CORPORATION.

THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) MAY NOT BE ACQUIRED, AND NO CERTIFICATEHOLDER MAY SELL, TRANSFER, ASSIGN, PARTICIPATE, PLEDGE OR OTHERWISE DISPOSE OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) OR CAUSE THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) TO BE MARKETED, (I) ON OR THROUGH AN "ESTABLISHED SECURITIES MARKET" WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 7704(b)(1) OF THE CODE AND TREAS. REG. § 1.7704-1(b), INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, AN INTERDEALER QUOTATION SYSTEM THAT REGULARLY DISSEMINATES FIRM BUY OR

SELL QUOTATIONS, OR (II) IF SUCH ACQUISITION, SALE, TRANSFER, ASSIGNMENT, PARTICIPATION, PLEDGE OR OTHER DISPOSITION WOULD CAUSE THE COMBINED NUMBER OF HOLDERS OF TRUST CERTIFICATES AND OTHER EQUITY INTERESTS IN THE TRUST TO BE MORE THAN 88.

NO HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) WILL PARTICIPATE IN THE CREATION OR OTHER TRANSFER OF ANY FINANCIAL INSTRUMENT OR CONTRACT THE VALUE OF WHICH IS DETERMINED IN WHOLE OR IN PART BY REFERENCE TO THE TRUST (INCLUDING THE AMOUNT OF DISTRIBUTIONS BY THE TRUST, THE VALUE OF THE TRUST'S ASSETS, THE RESULTS OF THE TRUST'S OPERATIONS OR THE TRUST CERTIFICATES).

EACH HOLDER OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) ACKNOWLEDGES AND AGREES THAT ANY SALE, TRANSFER, ASSIGNMENT, PARTICIPATION, PLEDGE, OR OTHER DISPOSITION OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE THAT WOULD VIOLATE ANY OF THE THREE PRECEDING PARAGRAPHS ABOVE OR OTHERWISE CAUSE THE TRUST TO BE UNABLE TO RELY ON THE "PRIVATE PLACEMENT" SAFE HARBOR OF TREAS. REG. § 1.7704-1(h) WILL BE VOID AND OF NO FORCE OR EFFECT, AND IT WILL NOT TRANSFER ANY INTEREST IN THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE TO ANY PERSON THAT DOES NOT AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE THREE PRECEDING PARAGRAPHS ABOVE OR BY THIS PARAGRAPH.

UNLESS THE TRUST DEPOSITOR, TRUST AND OWNER TRUSTEE HAVE RECEIVED AN OPINION OF COUNSEL FROM DECHERT LLP OR OTHER NATIONALLY RECOGNIZED TAX COUNSEL THAT THE RESTRICTION ON THE PROPOSED ACQUISITION OF THIS TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) DESCRIBED BY THIS PARAGRAPH IS NO LONGER NECESSARY TO CONCLUDE THAT ANY SUCH ACQUISITION (AND SUBSEQUENT RESALE OF THE APPLICABLE NOTES DESCRIBED BELOW) WILL NOT CAUSE THE TREASURY REGULATIONS UNDER SECTION 385 OF THE CODE TO APPLY TO SUCH NOTES IN A MANNER THAT COULD CAUSE A MATERIAL ADVERSE EFFECT ON THE TRUST OR THE TRUST TO BE TREATED AS AN ASSOCIATION OR PUBLICLY TRADED PARTNERSHIP TAXABLE AS A CORPORATION FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES, (I) A SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER CANNOT ACQUIRE A TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) IF (A) A MEMBER OF ANY "EXPANDED GROUP" (AS DEFINED IN TREASURY REGULATION SECTION 1.385-1(c)(4)) THAT INCLUDES SUCH SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER OWNS ANY NOTES OR (B) A SECTION 385 CONTROLLED PARTNERSHIP OF SUCH EXPANDED GROUP OWNS ANY NOTES AND (II) A SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER CANNOT HOLD A TRUST CERTIFICATE (AND ANY INTEREST THEREIN) IF (A) A MEMBER OF ANY "EXPANDED GROUP" (AS DEFINED IN

TREASURY REGULATION SECTION 1.385-1(c)(4)) THAT INCLUDES SUCH SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDER ACQUIRES ANY NOTES FROM THE TRUST, ANY AFFILIATE OF THE TRUST OR ANY OTHER SUBSEQUENT TRANSFEROR OF A NOTE OR (B) A SECTION 385 CONTROLLED PARTNERSHIP OF SUCH EXPANDED GROUP ACQUIRES ANY NOTES FROM THE TRUST, ANY AFFILIATE OF THE TRUST OR ANY OTHER SUBSEQUENT TRANSFEROR OF A NOTE. THE PRECEDING SENTENCE SHALL NOT APPLY IF THE NOTEHOLDER OR POTENTIAL NOTEHOLDER IS A U.S. CORPORATE MEMBER OF THE SAME U.S. CORPORATE "AFFILIATED GROUP" (AS DEFINED IN SECTION 1504 OF THE CODE) FILING A CONSOLIDATED FEDERAL INCOME TAX RETURN THAT INCLUDES EACH OF ANY APPLICABLE RELATED SECTION 385 CERTIFICATEHOLDERS (INCLUDING IN THE CASE OF A PARTNERSHIP, THE RELEVANT "EXPANDED GROUP PARTNER" (AS DEFINED IN TREASURY REGULATION SECTION 1.385-3(g)(12)). IF A CERTIFICATEHOLDER (OR HOLDER OF AN INTEREST IN A TRUST CERTIFICATE) FAILS TO COMPLY WITH THE FOREGOING REQUIREMENTS, THE TRUST AND DEPOSITOR ARE AUTHORIZED, AT THEIR DISCRETION, TO COMPEL SUCH CERTIFICATEHOLDER (OR HOLDER OF AN INTEREST IN A TRUST CERTIFICATE) TO SELL ITS TRUST CERTIFICATE (OR INTEREST THEREIN) TO A PERSON WHOSE OWNERSHIP COMPLIES WITH THIS PARAGRAPH SO LONG AS SUCH SALE DOES NOT OTHERWISE CAUSE A MATERIAL ADVERSE EFFECT ON THE TRUST OR CAUSE THE TRUST TO BE TREATED AS AN ASSOCIATION OR PUBLICLY TRADED PARTNERSHIP TAXABLE AS A CORPORATION FOR U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX PURPOSES.

6. It is acquiring the Trust Certificates for its own account and not with a view to the public offering thereof in violation of the Securities Act (subject, nevertheless, to the understanding that disposition of its property shall at all times be and remain within its control).

7. It has been furnished with all information regarding the Trust and Trust Certificates which it has requested from the Trust and the Trust Depositor.

8. Neither it nor anyone acting on its behalf has offered, transferred, pledged, sold or otherwise disposed of any Trust Certificate, any interest in any Trust Certificate or any other similar security to, or solicited any offer to buy or accept a transfer, pledge or other disposition of any Trust Certificate, any interest in any Trust Certificate or any other similar security from, or otherwise approached or negotiated with respect to any Trust Certificate, any interest in any Trust Certificate or any other similar security with, any person in any manner or made any general solicitation by means of general advertising or in any other manner, which would constitute a distribution of the Trust Certificates under the Securities Act or which would require registration pursuant to the Securities Act nor will it act, nor has it authorized or will authorize any person to act, in such manner with respect to any Trust Certificate.

9. It is a Qualified Purchaser ("QP") for purposes of Section 3(c)(7) of the 1940 Act.

10. It acknowledges and agrees that it is a “United States person” as defined in section 7701(a)(30) of the Code and it has provided to the Trust and the Owner Trustee (and any of their agents) a correct, complete and properly executed Internal Revenue Service Form W-9 (or applicable successor form) and any transfer of the Trust Certificates to any person that fails to provide such form shall be void *ab initio*.

11. It acknowledges and agrees that, no transfer of a Trust Certificate or any interest therein shall be made unless the transferor delivers to the transferee, with a copy to the Trust, the Owner Trustee and the Certificate Registrar, prior to the Transfer of the Trust Certificate or any interest therein, a properly completed certificate, in a form reasonably acceptable to the transferee and the Trust, stating, under penalty of perjury, the transferor’s United States taxpayer identification number and that the transferor is not a foreign person within the meaning of Section 1446(f)(2) of the Code (such certificate, a “Non-Foreign Status Certificate”). It acknowledges that the failure to provide a Non-Foreign Status Certificate to the transferee may result in withholding on the amount realized on its disposition of the Trust Certificate.

12. It is not, and it agrees that no Trust Certificate or any interest therein may be acquired or owned by any Person (other than the Trust Depositor) that is, classified for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a partnership, subchapter S corporation or grantor trust unless (i)(A) none of the direct or indirect beneficial owners of any interest in such Person have or ever will have more than 40% of the value of its interest in such Person attributable to the aggregate interest of such Person in the Trust Certificates and any other equity interests of the Trust, and (B) it is not and will not be a principal purpose of the arrangement involving the investment of such Person in the Trust Certificates and any other equity interests of the Trust to permit any partnership to satisfy the 100 partner limitation of Treasury Regulation Section 1.7704-1(h)(1)(ii) or (ii) such Person obtains an opinion of nationally recognized U.S. tax counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trust that such transfer will not cause the Trust to be treated as a publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation.

13. It acknowledges and agrees that no Trust Certificate may be acquired, and no Certificateholder (or holder of an interest in a Trust Certificate) may sell, transfer, assign, participate, pledge or otherwise dispose of a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) or other equity interest in the Trust or cause a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) or other equity interest in the Trust to be marketed, (i) on or through an “established securities market” within the meaning of Section 7704(b)(1) of the Code and Treasury Regulation Section 1.7704-1(b), including without limitation, an interdealer quotation system that regularly disseminates firm buy or sell quotations or (ii) if such acquisition, sale, transfer, assignment, participation, pledge or other disposition would cause the combined number of holders of Trust Certificates and other equity interests in the Trust to be more than 88.

14. It acknowledges and agrees that it will not participate in the creation or other transfer of any financial instrument or contract the value of which is determined in whole or in part by reference to the Trust (including the amount of distributions by the Trust, the value of the Trust’s assets, the results of the Trust’s operation or the Trust Certificates).

15. It acknowledges and agrees that any sale, transfer, assignment, participation, pledge, or other disposition of a Trust Certificate that would violate any of the three preceding paragraphs above or otherwise cause the Trust to be unable to rely on the “private placement” safe harbor of Treasury Regulation Section 1.7704-1(h) will be void and of no force or effect, and it will not transfer any interest in its Trust Certificates to any person that does not agree to be bound by the three preceding paragraphs above or by this paragraph.

16. It acknowledges and agrees that, unless the Trust Depositor, Trust and Owner Trustee have received an Opinion of Counsel from Dechert LLP or other nationally recognized tax counsel that the restriction on the proposed acquisition of a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) described by this paragraph is no longer necessary to conclude that any such acquisition (and subsequent resale of the applicable Notes described below) will not cause the Treasury Regulations under Section 385 of the Code to apply to such Notes in a manner that could cause a material adverse effect on the Trust or the Trust to be treated as an association or publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) a Section 385 Certificateholder cannot acquire a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) if (A) a member of any “expanded group” (as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.385-1(c)(4)) that includes such Section 385 Certificateholder owns any Notes or (B) a Section 385 Controlled Partnership of such expanded group owns any Notes and (ii) a Section 385 Certificateholder cannot hold a Trust Certificate (or any interest therein) if (A) a member of any “expanded group” (as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.385-1(c)(4)) that includes such Section 385 Certificateholder acquires any Notes from the Trust, any Affiliate of the Trust or any other subsequent transferor of a Note or (B) a Section 385 Controlled Partnership of such expanded group acquires any Notes from the Trust, any Affiliate of the Trust or any other subsequent transferor of a Note. The preceding sentence shall not apply if the Noteholder or potential Noteholder is a U.S. corporate member of the same U.S. corporate “affiliated group” (as defined in Section 1504 of the Code) filing a consolidated federal income tax return that includes each of any applicable related Section 385 Certificateholders (including in the case of a partnership, the relevant “expanded group partner” (as defined in Treasury Regulation Section 1.385-3(g)(12)). It understands that if it fails to comply with the foregoing requirements, the Trust and Depositor are authorized, at their discretion, to compel it to sell its Trust Certificate (or interest therein) to a Person whose ownership complies with this subsection so long as such sale does not otherwise cause a material adverse effect on the Trust or cause the Trust to be treated as an association or publicly traded partnership taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

Very truly yours,

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC

By: _____
Name:
Title:

SALE AND SERVICING AGREEMENT

by and among

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1,
as the Issuer,

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor,

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.
as the Seller and as the Servicer.

and

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
as the Trustee, Backup Servicer, Custodian and Paying Agent

Dated as of November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Asset-Backed Notes

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
ARTICLE 1. DEFINITIONS	2
Section 1.01. Definitions	2
Section 1.02. Usage of Terms	37
Section 1.03. Section References	37
Section 1.04. Calculations	37
Section 1.05. Accounting Terms	37
ARTICLE 2. ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUER; TRANSFER OF LOAN ASSETS	38
Section 2.01. Creation and Funding of Issuer; Transfer of Loan Assets	38
Section 2.02. Conditions to Transfer of Initial Loan Assets to Issuer	40
Section 2.03. Acceptance by Issuer	41
Section 2.04. Conveyance of Substitute Loans	42
Section 2.05. Optional Sales of Loans	43
Section 2.06. Optional Substitution of Loans	44
Section 2.07. Acquisition of Additional Loans	44
Section 2.08. Release of Excluded Amounts	46
Section 2.09. Delivery of Documents in the Loan File	47
Section 2.10. Limitations on Optional Sale and Substitution	47
Section 2.11. Certification by Custodian; Possession of Loan Files	48
ARTICLE 3. REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES	50
Section 3.01. Representations and Warranties Regarding the Trust Depositor	50
Section 3.02. Representations and Warranties Regarding Each Loan and as to Certain Loans in the Aggregate	54
Section 3.03. [Reserved]	55
Section 3.04. Representations and Warranties Regarding the Required Loan Documents	55
Section 3.05. [Reserved]	55
Section 3.06. Representations and Warranties Regarding the Servicer	55
Section 3.07. Representations of the Backup Servicer	56
ARTICLE 4. PERFECTION OF TRANSFER AND PROTECTION OF SECURITY INTERESTS	58
Section 4.01. Custody of Loans	58

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page
Section 4.02. Filing	58
Section 4.03. Changes in Name, Organizational Structure or Location	58
Section 4.04. Costs and Expenses	59
Section 4.05. Sale Treatment	59
Section 4.06. Separateness from Trust Depositor	59
ARTICLE 5. SERVICING OF LOANS	59
Section 5.01. Appointment and Acceptance	59
Section 5.02. Duties of the Servicer and the Backup Servicer	59
Section 5.03. Liquidation of Loans	66
Section 5.04. [Reserved.]	67
Section 5.05. Maintenance of Insurance	67
Section 5.06. Collection of Certain Loan Payments	67
Section 5.07. Access to Certain Documentation and Information Regarding the Loans	68
Section 5.08. Satisfaction of Collateral and Release of Loan Files	68
Section 5.09. Scheduled Payment Advances; Servicing Advances and Nonrecoverable Advances	69
Section 5.10. Title, Management and Disposition of Foreclosed Property	70
Section 5.11. Servicing Compensation	72
Section 5.12. Assignment; Resignation	73
Section 5.13. Merger or Consolidation of Servicer	73
Section 5.14. Limitation on Liability of the Servicer and Others	73
Section 5.15. Determination of Reserve Account Required Balance	74
Section 5.16. Rights of and Limitation of Liability of Backup Servicer	74
ARTICLE 6. COVENANTS OF THE TRUST DEPOSITOR	75
Section 6.01. Legal Existence	75
Section 6.02. [Reserved]	76
Section 6.03. Security Interests	76
Section 6.04. Delivery of Collections	76
Section 6.05. Regulatory Filings	76
Section 6.06. Compliance with Law	76

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page
Section 6.07. Activities; Transfers of Notes or Certificates by Trust Depositor	76
Section 6.08. Indebtedness	77
Section 6.09. Guarantees	77
Section 6.10. Investments	77
Section 6.11. Merger; Sales	77
Section 6.12. Distributions	77
Section 6.13. Other Agreements	78
Section 6.14. Separate Legal Existence	78
Section 6.15. Location; Records	78
Section 6.16. Liability of Trust Depositor	78
Section 6.17. Bankruptcy Limitations	78
Section 6.18. Limitation on Liability of Trust Depositor and Others	79
Section 6.19. Payments from Obligors	79
ARTICLE 7. ESTABLISHMENT OF ACCOUNTS; DISTRIBUTIONS;	79
Section 7.01. Distribution Account; Lockbox Account and Other Accounts	79
Section 7.02. Reserve Account	80
Section 7.03. Collection Account	81
Section 7.04. Reinvestment Account	84
Section 7.05. Securityholder Distributions	84
Section 7.06. Allocations and Distributions	84
ARTICLE 8. SERVICER DEFAULT; SERVICER TRANSFER	88
Section 8.01. Servicer Default	88
Section 8.02. Servicer Transfer	89
Section 8.03. Acceptance by Successor Servicer; Reconveyance; Successor Servicer to Act	90
Section 8.04. Notification to Securityholders	92
Section 8.05. Effect of Transfer	93
Section 8.06. Database File	93
Section 8.07. Waiver of Defaults	93
ARTICLE 9. REPORTS	93

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page
Section 9.01. Monthly Reports	93
Section 9.02. Quarterly Reports	94
Section 9.03. Preparation of Reports; Officer's Certificate	94
Section 9.04. Other Data; Obligor Financial Information	95
Section 9.05. Annual Report of Accountants	96
Section 9.06. Statements of Compliance from Servicer	97
Section 9.07. [Reserved]	97
Section 9.08. Notices of Event of Default, Servicer Default or Rapid Amortization Event	97
Section 9.09. Trustee's Right to Examine Servicer Records, Audit Operations and Deliver Information to Noteholders	98
ARTICLE 10. TERMINATION	98
Section 10.01. Optional Redemption of Notes; Rights of Certificateholders Following Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	98
Section 10.02. Termination	99
ARTICLE 11. REMEDIES UPON MISREPRESENTATION; REPURCHASE OPTION	100
Section 11.01. Repurchases of, or Substitution for, Loans for Breach of Representations and Warranties	100
Section 11.02. Reassignment of Repurchased or Substituted Loans	100
ARTICLE 12. INDEMNITIES	101
Section 12.01. Indemnification by Servicer	101
Section 12.02. Indemnification by Trust Depositor	101
Section 12.03. Survival	102
ARTICLE 13. MISCELLANEOUS	102
Section 13.01. Amendment	102
Section 13.02. [Reserved]	103
Section 13.03. Governing Law	103
Section 13.04. Notices	104
Section 13.05. Severability of Provisions	107
Section 13.06. Third Party Beneficiaries	107
Section 13.07. Counterparts	107

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page
Section 13.08. Headings	107
Section 13.09. No Bankruptcy Petition; Disclaimer	107
Section 13.10. Jurisdiction	108
Section 13.11. Tax Characterization	108
Section 13.12. [Reserved]	108
Section 13.13. Limitation of Liability of Owner Trustee	108
Section 13.14. [Reserved]	109
Section 13.15. No Partnership	109
Section 13.16. Successors and Assigns	109
Section 13.17. Acts of Holders	109
Section 13.18. Duration of Agreement	109
Section 13.19. Limited Recourse	109
Section 13.20. Confidentiality	110
Section 13.21. Non-Confidentiality of Tax Treatment	110

EXHIBITS

Exhibit A	Form of Assignment	A-1
Exhibit B	Form of Closing Certificate of Trust Depositor	B-1
Exhibit C	Form of Closing Certificate of Servicer/Seller	C-1
Exhibit D	Form of Liquidation Report	D-1
Exhibit E	EU Retention Undertaking Letter	E-1
Exhibit F	Servicer Officer's Certificate	F-1
Exhibit G	List of Loans	G-1
Exhibit H-1	Form of Quarterly Report	H-1
Exhibit H-2	Form of Monthly Report	H-2
Exhibit I	[Reserved]	I-1
Exhibit J	[Reserved]	J-1
Exhibit K	Form of Annual Certification Regarding Required Loan Documents	K-1
Exhibit L-1	Form of Initial Certification	L-1
Exhibit L-2	Form of Final Certification	L-2
Exhibit M	Form of Request for Release of Documents	M-1

SALE AND SERVICING AGREEMENT

THIS SALE AND SERVICING AGREEMENT, dated as of November 1, 2018, is by and among:

- (1) **HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1**, a statutory trust created and existing under the laws of the State of Delaware (together with its successors and assigns, the "Issuer");
- (2) **HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC**, a Delaware limited liability company, as the trust depositor (together with its successor and assigns, in such capacity, the "Trust Depositor");
- (3) **HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.**, a Maryland corporation (together with its successors and assigns, "Hercules"), as the servicer (together with its successors and assigns, in such capacity, the "Servicer"), and as the seller (together with its successors and assigns, in such capacity, the "Seller"); and
- (4) **U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION** (together with its successors and assigns, "U.S. Bank"), not in its individual capacity but as the trustee (together with its successors and assigns, in such capacity, the "Trustee"), not in its individual capacity but as the backup servicer (together with its successors and assigns, in such capacity, the "Backup Servicer") and not in its individual capacity but as the custodian (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Custodian") and not in its individual capacity but as paying agent (together with its successors and assigns in such capacity, the "Paying Agent").

RECITALS

WHEREAS, in the regular course of its business, the Seller originates and/or otherwise acquires Loans (as defined herein);

WHEREAS, the Trust Depositor acquired the Initial Loans from the Seller and may acquire from time to time thereafter certain Additional Loans and Substitute Loans;

WHEREAS, it is a condition to the Trust Depositor's acquisition of the Initial Loans, any Additional Loans and any Substitute Loans from the Seller that the Seller make certain representations and warranties regarding the Loan Assets for the benefit of the Trust Depositor as well as the Issuer;

WHEREAS, on the Closing Date, the Trust Depositor will sell, convey and assign all its right, title and interest in the Initial Loan Assets and certain other assets to the Issuer as provided herein;

WHEREAS, the Issuer is willing to purchase and accept assignment of the Loan Assets from the Trust Depositor pursuant to the terms hereof;

WHEREAS, the Servicer is willing to service the Loan Assets for the benefit and account of the Issuer pursuant to the terms hereof; and

WHEREAS, the Backup Servicer is willing to provide backup servicing for the Loan Assets.

NOW, THEREFORE, based upon the above recitals, the mutual premises and agreements contained herein, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto, intending to be legally bound, hereby agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1.

DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01. Definitions.

Whenever used in this Agreement, the following words and phrases, unless the context otherwise requires, shall have the following meanings:

“1940 Act” means the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

“Additional Loan” means one or more Loans transferred by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer under and in accordance with Section 2.07.

“Additional Loan Assets” means any assets acquired by the Issuer from the Trust Depositor following the Closing Date in connection with the conveyance of one or more Additional Loans pursuant to Section 2.07, which assets shall include the Trust Depositor’s right, title and interest in the following:

- (i) the Additional Loans listed in the related Subsequent List of Loans and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the Additional Loan Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the Additional Loan Cutoff Date;
- (ii) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Loans;
- (iii) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans;
- (iv) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;
- (v) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and

(vi) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amount with respect thereto.

“Additional Loan Cutoff Date” means each date on or after the Closing Date on which an Additional Loan is transferred to the Issuer.

“Adjusted Pool Balance” means, as of any Payment Date, Reference Date and Transfer Date, the Pool Balance (as of the last day of the related Collection Period, for any Reference Date or Payment Date, or as of such Transfer Date in the case of any Transfer Date) *minus*, without duplication, (a) the Excess Concentration Amounts (as of the last day of the related Collection Period, for any Reference Date or Payment Date, or as of such Transfer Date in the case of any Transfer Date), as applicable, *minus* (b) the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Delinquent Loans and Restructured Loans as of such date.

“Administration Agreement” means the Administration Agreement, as amended, supplemented or otherwise modified and in effect from time to time, dated as of the Closing Date, among the Issuer, the Administrator, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee.

“Administrative Expense Cap” means for all fees, expenses and indemnity payments due and owing with respect to each of the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Backup Servicer, the Custodian, the Split Loan Agent, if any, the Paying Agent and the Lockbox Bank pursuant to clause 1 of Section 7.06(a), prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default, collectively, an aggregate annual maximum amount of \$500,000 (for the year ending on the first anniversary of the Closing Date and each year ending on each subsequent anniversary thereof), *provided*, however, that any amounts in respect of indemnification owing to the Backup Servicer as Successor Servicer shall not be subject to the Administrative Expense Cap. After the occurrence of an Event of Default that is continuing, the Administrative Expense Cap will not apply to indemnity payments to the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Backup Servicer, the Custodian, the Split Loan Agent (if any), the Paying Agent and the Lockbox Bank. If the Administrative Expense Cap is reached, all amounts owed to such parties above the Administrative Expense Cap will be paid pursuant to clause 6 of Section 7.06(a) and clause 3 of the Section 7.06(b) and will again be paid pursuant to clause 1 of the Section 7.06(a) beginning on the next anniversary of the Closing Date until the Administrative Expense Cap is again reached for such year.

“Administrative Expenses” means fees and expenses (excluding amounts related to indemnification) due or accrued with respect to any Payment Date and payable by the Issuer:

(a) to any Person in respect of any governmental fee, charge or tax in relation to the Issuer;

(b) to the Trustee, the Lockbox Bank, the Custodian, the Paying Agent and the Split Loan Agent (if any), (i) any monthly fees to be paid to it pursuant to the Transaction Documents, (ii) any additional fees, expenses or other amounts due and owing thereto and (iii) if a Successor Servicer is being appointed, any Servicing Transfer Costs incurred by the Trustee;

(c) to the Owner Trustee, (i) any monthly fees to be paid to it pursuant to the Transaction Documents and (ii) any additional fees, expenses or other amounts due and owing thereto;

(d) to the Backup Servicer, (i) the Backup Servicer Fee to be paid to it pursuant to the Transaction Documents, (ii) any additional fees, expenses or other amounts due and owing thereto and (iii) fees and expenses and other amounts payable to the Backup Servicer in connection with a Servicer Transfer pursuant to Section 8.02(c);

(e) to the Independent Accountants, agents and counsel of the Issuer for fees and expenses including, but not limited to, audit fees and expenses, and to the Servicer for expenses and other amounts (excluding the Servicing Fee, any Scheduled Payment Advances and any Servicing Advances) payable under this Agreement;

(f) to the Trustee, for unpaid fees and expenses (including fees and expenses of its agents and counsel) incurred in the exercise of its rights and remedies on behalf of the Securityholders pursuant to Article V of the Indenture; and

(g) to KBRA for its surveillance fees in relation to the Notes;

provided that Administrative Expenses will not include (I) any amounts due or accrued with respect to the actions taken on or in connection with the Closing Date, (II) any principal of or interest on any Notes or (III) amounts payable to Trustee and the Owner Trustee in respect of indemnification.

“Administrator” means Hercules, as administrator pursuant to the Administration Agreement.

“Advance Rate” means for any Payment Date, with respect to each Loan included in the Collateral as of the related Reference Date, an amount to be determined by the number of obligors as set forth below:

# of Obligors	Advance Rate
10 or fewer	N/A (Rapid Amortization Event)
11-14	60%
15-29	65%
30	66%
31	67%
32	68%
33	69%
34 or more	70%

“Affiliate” of any specified Person means any other Person that, directly or indirectly, controls, is controlled by or is under common control with such Person, or is a director or officer of such Person; *provided* that for purposes of determining whether any Loan is an Eligible Loan or any

Obligor is an Eligible Obligor, the term Affiliate shall not include any Affiliate relationship which may exist solely as a result of direct or indirect ownership of, or control by, a common owner which is a financial institution, fund or other investment vehicle which is in the business of making diversified investments including investments independent from the Loans. For the purposes of this definition, "control" (including the terms "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with"), when used with respect to any specified Person means the possession, direct or indirect, of the power to vote 25% or more of the voting securities of such Person or to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of such Person, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise. Each of the Trustee and the Owner Trustee may conclusively presume that a Person is not an Affiliate of another Person unless a Responsible Officer of such trustee has actual knowledge to the contrary.

"Agented Loan" means, any Loan with respect to which, (a) the Loan is originated or purchased by the Seller in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy as a part of a syndicated loan transaction that has been fully consummated prior to such Loan becoming part of the Collateral, (b) the Issuer, as assignee of the Loan, has all of the rights (including without limitation voting rights) of the Seller with respect to such Loan and the Seller's right, title and interest in and to the Related Property, (c) the Loan is secured by an undivided interest in the Related Property that also secures and is shared by, on a pro rata basis, all other holders of such Obligor's notes of equal priority issued in such syndicated loan transaction and (d) the Seller (or a wholly owned subsidiary of the Seller) is the lead agent or collateral agent for all lenders in such syndicated loan transaction and receives payment directly from the Obligor and may collect such payments on behalf of such lenders.

"Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance" means, as of any date, the sum of the Outstanding Loan Balance for each Loan owned by the Issuer.

"Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance" means, as of any date of determination, the sum of the Outstanding Principal Balances of the Notes on such date.

"Agreement" means this Sale and Servicing Agreement, as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time in accordance with the terms hereof.

"Applicable Law" means, for any Person or property of such Person, all existing and future applicable laws, rules, regulations (including proposed, temporary and final income tax regulations), statutes, treaties, codes, ordinances, permits, certificates, orders and licenses of and interpretations by any Governmental Authority (including, without limitation, usury laws, the Federal Truth in Lending Act, and Regulation Z and Regulation B of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System), the Customer Identification Program requirements established under the Uniting and Strengthening America by Providing Appropriate Tools Required to Intercept and Obstruct Terrorism Act of 2001, Title III of Pub. L. 107 56 (signed into law October 26, 2001) and its implementing regulations (collectively, USA PATRIOT Act), the Financial Crimes Enforcement Network's (FinCEN) Customer Due Diligence Requirements and such other laws, rules, regulations and executive orders in effect from time to time applicable to banking institutions and applicable judgments, decrees, injunctions, writs, awards or orders of any court, arbitrator or other administrative, judicial, or quasi-judicial tribunal or agency of competent jurisdiction.

“Applicable Premium” means (i) prior to the end of the Reinvestment Period, the Make-Whole Premium; and (ii) \$0 thereafter.

“Assignment” means each Assignment, substantially in the form of Exhibit A, relating to an assignment, transfer and conveyance of Loans and the Related Property by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer.

“Available Funds” means, with respect to any Payment Date, an amount equal to the sum of, without duplication, (a) Collections received during the related Collection Period; (b) interest earned on and any other investment earnings with respect to funds on deposit in each of the Collection Account and the Reserve Account during the related Interest Period; and (c) any Scheduled Payment Advances deposited into the Collection Account on the related Reference Date.

“Backup Servicer” has the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“Backup Servicer Fee” means the annual administration fee payable to the Backup Servicer as provided in the fee letter agreement between the Issuer and U.S. Bank.

“Bankruptcy Code” means the United States Bankruptcy Reform Act of 1978 (11 U.S.C. § 101, et seq.), as amended from time to time.

“Beneficial Owner” shall have the meaning provided in the Indenture.

“Borrowing Base” means, for any Payment Date, the sum of (A) the product of (x) the Advance Rate and (y) the Adjusted Pool Balance, (B) the amount on deposit in the Reinvestment Account (including for the avoidance of doubt, any capital contributions), and (C) all Principal Collections in the Collection Account anticipated to be deposited into the Reinvestment Account on such Payment Date (or the related Payment Date, as applicable) pursuant to Section 7.06(b), in each case determined as of the related Reference Date.

“Business Day” means any day other than (a) a Saturday or Sunday or (b) a day on which banking institutions in New York, New York, Palo Alto, California, Wilmington, Delaware, Boston, Massachusetts, or St. Paul, Minnesota are authorized or obligated by law or executive order to be closed.

“Cash Yield Rate” means, for any Loan, a rate of return inclusive of interest, scheduled principal and fees for such Loan.

“Certificate” means the Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Certificate representing a beneficial ownership interest in the Issuer and issued pursuant to the Trust Agreement.

“Certificate Account” shall have the meaning provided in Section 5.01 of the Trust Agreement.

“Certificate Register” shall have the meaning provided in the Trust Agreement.

“Certificateholder” means the registered holder of the Certificate.

“Closing Date” means November 1, 2018.

“Co-Agented Loan” means, any Loan with respect to which, (a) the Loan is originated or purchased by the Seller in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy as a part of a syndicated loan transaction that has been fully consummated prior to such Loan becoming part of the Collateral, (b) the Issuer, as assignee of the Loan, has all of the rights (including without limitation voting rights) of the Seller with respect to such Loan and the Seller’s right, title and interest in and to the Related Property, (c) the Loan is secured by an undivided interest in the Related Property that also secures and is shared by, on a *pro rata* basis, all other holders of such Obligor’s notes of equal priority issued in such syndicated loan transaction and (d) either (i) the Seller (or a wholly owned subsidiary of the Seller) is a co-agent, collateral agent or paying agent in such syndicated loan transaction, (ii) neither the Seller nor any other lender is deemed to be the collateral agent in such syndicate loan transaction, or (iii) the Seller receives payment directly from the Obligor thereof on behalf of itself (but not on behalf of any other holders of such Obligor’s notes) and no other holder of such Obligor’s notes (nor any affiliate thereof) is identified as the lead agent, collateral agent or paying agent in such syndicated loan transaction.

“Code” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or any successor legislation thereto.

“Collateral” means, as of any date, the “Indenture Collateral,” as such term is defined in the Indenture.

“Collection Account” means the interest bearing trust account so designated and established and maintained pursuant to Section 7.03(a).

“Collection Period” means, with respect to the first Payment Date, the period from and including the Cutoff Date to the close of business November 4, 2018, and for any Payment Date thereafter, the period from and including the fifth day of the calendar month in which the prior Payment Date occurred to the fourth day of the calendar month in which such Payment Date occurs.

“Collections” means the aggregate of Interest Collections and Principal Collections.

“Commission” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Computer Records” means the computer records generated by the Servicer that provide information relating to the Loans and that were used by the Seller in selecting the Loans conveyed by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.01 (and any Additional Loans conveyed by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.07 and Substitute Loans conveyed by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to Section 2.04 and Section 2.06, respectively).

“Continued Error” shall have the meaning provided in Section 8.03(e).

“Contractual Obligation” means, with respect to any Person, any provision of any securities issued by such Person or any indenture, mortgage, deed of trust, contract, undertaking, agreement, instrument or other document to which such Person is a party or by which it or any of its property is bound or is subject.

“Corporate Trust Office” means, with respect to the Trustee, the Owner Trustee or the Backup Servicer, as applicable, the office of the Trustee, the Owner Trustee or the Backup Servicer at which at any particular time its corporate trust business with respect to the transaction shall be principally administered, which offices at the date of the execution of this Agreement are located at the addresses set forth in Section 13.04.

“Credit and Collection Policy” means the policies and procedures of the Seller and Servicer with respect to underwriting, credit monitoring, investment grading, collection and servicing of Life Sciences Loans and Technology Loans in effect on the Cutoff Date, including without limitation the valuation policy and procedures of the Seller and Servicer and the Credit Monitoring Guidelines, in each case as amended, modified or supplemented from time to time, a description of which has been provided to the Trust Depositor, the Issuer, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee; and, with respect to any Successor Servicer (including for the avoidance of doubt the Backup Servicer in such capacity), the written credit and collection policies and procedures of such Person at the time such Person becomes a Successor Servicer.

“Credit Monitoring Guidelines” means the written Valuation Policy and Procedures of the Seller and Servicer dated October 2014 and in effect as of the Cutoff Date, as amended, modified or supplemented from time to time.

“Curtailment” means, with respect to a Loan, any payment of principal received by the Issuer during a Collection Period as part of a payment allocable to a Loan that is in excess of the principal portion of the Scheduled Payment due for such Collection Period and which is not intended to satisfy the Loan in full, nor is intended to cure a delinquency including any accelerated amortization due to structural features of the related Loan.

“Custodian” has the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“Cutoff Date” means with respect to (i) the Initial Loans, the Initial Cutoff Date or (ii) any Additional Loan or Substitute Loan, the related Transfer Date.

“Cutoff Date Pool Balance” shall have the meaning provided in Section 2.10.

“Defaulted Loan” means a Loan in the Collateral as to which the earliest of the following has occurred: (i) any payment, or any part of any payment, due under such Loan (taking into account any waivers or modifications granted by the Servicer on such Loan) has become 120 days or more delinquent, whether or not the Servicer has foreclosed upon the related Collateral; (ii) the Servicer has foreclosed upon and sold the related collateral; (iii) 90 days has elapsed since the related Collateral was foreclosed upon by the Servicer; or (iv) the Servicer has determined in accordance with its customary practices that the Loan is uncollectible; *provided* if the principal amount of a Loan is reduced, written down or written off by the Servicer, the portion of such Loan (but not the whole Loan) that is so reduced, written down or written off shall be deemed to be a Defaulted Loan; *provided, however*, that any Loan that the Seller or the Trust Depositor is obligated to and does repurchase or purchase under this Agreement or any Loan that has been substituted and replaced by the Issuer with a Substitute Loan pursuant to Section 2.04 and Section 2.06 will not be deemed to be a Defaulted Loan.

“Distribution Account” means the non-interest bearing trust account so designated and established and maintained pursuant to Section 7.01.

“Delinquent Loan” means a Loan which is more than forty-five (45) days delinquent in payment; *provided, however*, that any Loan that has been substituted and replaced by the Issuer with a Substitute Loan pursuant to Section 2.04 and Section 2.06 will not be deemed to be a Delinquent Loan.

“Dollar” and “\$” means the lawful currency of the United States.

“EBITDA” means, with respect to any Loan, (i) “EBITDA” of the Obligor under such Loan or (ii) if the Underlying Loan Agreement for such Loan do not require an Obligor to calculate EBITDA, “operating income” (or such similar financial measurement), in each case as calculated and reported in accordance with the Underlying Loan Agreement for such Loan and with such adjustments as the Servicer determines to be appropriate in accordance with the Servicing Standard.

“ECA Calculation Balance” means, for any Record Date, Payment Date or Transfer Date means the sum of (i) the Pool Balance as of the last day of the related Collection Period (or for any Transfer Date, such Transfer Date), (ii) all funds on deposit in the Reinvestment Account as of the last day of the related Collection Period (or for any Transfer Date, as of such Transfer Date) and (iii) all Principal Collections in the Collection Account that are anticipated to be deposited in the Reinvestment Account on such Payment Date (or in the case of a Record Date or Transfer Date, the immediately following Payment Date) pursuant to Section 7.06(b).

“Eligible Deposit Account” means either (a) a segregated account with a Qualified Institution, or (b) a segregated trust account with the corporate trust department of a depository institution organized under the laws of the United States or any state of the United States or the District of Columbia, or any domestic branch of a foreign bank, having corporate trust powers and acting as trustee for funds deposited in the related account, so long as any of the securities of that depository institution has a credit rating from Moody’s or another nationally recognized statistical rating organization in one of its generic rating categories that signifies investment grade.

“Eligible Loan” means, (i) on and as of the Cutoff Date, in the case of the Initial Loans, (ii) on and as of the Additional Loan Cutoff Date, in the case of any Additional Loans, and (iii) on and as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, in the case of any Substitute Loans, a Loan as to which each of the following is true:

(a) such Loan is either a Life Sciences Loan or a Technology Loan, has been originated or purchased by the Seller in the ordinary course of the Seller’s business and has been fully and properly executed by the parties thereto;

(b) such Loan is not a commercial loan to an obligor that is generally a later-stage, established company that is, at the time of origination of such Loan, (i) not venture backed (ii) is generating positive EBITDA and (iii) cash flow positive operations;

-
- (c) provides for periodic payments of interest and/or principal in cash, which are due and payable on a monthly or quarterly basis;
- (d) the information provided to the Issuer and its assigns in respect of such Loan pursuant to the Transaction Documents is true and correct in all material respects;
- (e) provides for, in the event that such Loan is prepaid in whole, a prepayment that fully pays the principal amount of such prepayment together with interest and fees through the date of payment;
- (f) such Loan satisfies in all material respects the requirements under the Credit and Collection Policy and was originated in accordance therewith;
- (g) such Loan represents the legal, valid and binding payment obligation in writing of the related Obligor, enforceable by the holder thereof in accordance with its terms, except as enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally and by general principles of equity;
- (h) such Loan is not due from the United States or any state thereof or from any agency, department or instrumentality of the United States or any state thereof;
- (i) such Loan is secured by a valid, binding and enforceable first priority or second priority perfected security interest (subject to Permitted Liens) in favor of the underlying secured parties upon certain property of the Obligor identified in the Loan documentation; provided that, if the Seller is the sole lender, pursuant to the Underlying Loan Agreement, immediately prior to its conveyance, transfer, contribution and assignment by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer, such Loan is secured by a valid, binding and enforceable first priority or second priority perfected security interest (subject to Permitted Liens) in favor of the Seller, which security interest in favor of the Seller has been assigned by the Seller to the Trust Depositor, by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer, and pledged by the Issuer to the Trustee;
- (j) such Loan is not subject to any right of rescission, setoff, counterclaim or defense, including the defense of usury, and the operation of any of the terms of any contract, or the exercise of any right thereunder, will not render such contract unenforceable in whole or in part or subject to any right of rescission, setoff, counterclaim or defense, including the defense of usury, and neither the Seller nor the Trust Depositor has received written notice of the assertion of any such right of rescission, setoff, counterclaim or defense asserted with respect thereto;
- (k) such Loan does not have liens or claims (other than Permitted Liens) that exist or have been filed for work, labor or materials or unpaid state or federal taxes relating to collateral that are prior to, or equal or coordinate with, the security interest in such collateral created by the related Underlying Loan Agreement, except for such liens or claims that have been waived or modified as permitted hereunder;

(l) the Servicer is not aware that any default, breach, violation or event permitting acceleration under the terms of any Underlying Loan Agreement has occurred and is continuing with respect to such Loan, nor is the Servicer aware of any continuing condition with respect to such Loan that, with notice or the lapse of time or both, would constitute a default, breach, violation or event permitting acceleration under the terms of any contract, except for such defaults, breaches, violations or events which have been or are permitted to be waived or modified as permitted under the Servicing Standard and the Credit and Collection Policy;

(m) such Loan does not relate to property that has been foreclosed upon;

(n) such Loan has not been sold, transferred, assigned or pledged to any person other than the Issuer and has not been discharged;

(o) (i) immediately prior to the transfer of such Loan to the Trust Depositor, the Seller had good and marketable title to such Loan free and clear of all liens, encumbrances, security interests and rights of others (other than Permitted Liens) and, immediately upon such transfer, the Trust Depositor shall have good and marketable title to such Loan, free and clear of all liens, encumbrances, security interests and rights of others; and (ii) immediately prior to the transfer of such Loan to the Issuer, the Trust Depositor had good and marketable title to such Loan free and clear of all liens, encumbrances, security interests and rights of others (other than Permitted Liens) and, immediately upon such transfer, the Issuer shall have good and marketable title to such Loan, free and clear of all liens, encumbrances, security interests and rights of others;

(p) has been perfected against the related Obligor by all necessary action under the relevant UCC, Personal Property Security Act or other applicable statutes existing in jurisdictions in Canada that do not use the Personal Property Security Act, or applicable statutes existing in the relevant jurisdictions;

(q) has not been originated in, and is not subject to the laws of, any jurisdiction under which the sale, transfer, assignment and conveyance of such contract under the Sale and Contribution Agreement, this Agreement or the pledge of such Loan under the Indenture, is unlawful, void or voidable;

(r) other than with respect to Noteless Loans and Participated Loans, such Loan has only one original executed promissory note for each note relating to such Loan;

(s) such Loan was not due from an Obligor that was the subject of a proceeding under the Bankruptcy Code or was bankrupt;

(t) such Loan had a Cash Yield Rate, as determined by the Servicer in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy, of at least 6%*per annum*;

(u) the Required Loan Documents relating to such Loan have been delivered to the Custodian prior to the Closing Date, in the case of any Initial Loan, the Transfer Date, in the case of any Additional Loan, or the applicable date of substitution, in the case of any Substitute Loan;

(v) such Loan had no payment due that was thirty-one (31) or more days past due and such Loan was not a Defaulted Loan;

(w) such Loan is due from an Obligor with its headquarters, principal place of business and primary operations in the United States, Canada (other than in the Province of Quebec), the United Kingdom, Australia or a member state of the European Union;

(x) such Loan is payable in U.S. Dollars;

(y) such Loan is in registered form for U.S. federal income tax purposes (or in registered or bearer form if not a “registration-required obligation” as defined in Section 163(f)(2)(A) of the Code);

(z) such Loan has not been subject to waiver or modified, except as permitted hereunder;

(aa) as of the Transfer Date of such Loan, the Hercules Credit Score of the Loan is Grade 3, Grade 2 or Grade 1;

(bb) the origination of such Loan by the Seller and the transfer of such Loan by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer have complied in all material respects with Applicable Law;

(cc) no selection procedures believed by the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Servicer to be adverse to the interests of any Noteholder shall have been employed in the selection of such Loan;

(dd) all required notifications, if any, have been given to the collateral agent, the paying agent and any other parties required by the Underlying Loan Agreement of, and all required consents, if any, have been obtained with respect to, the Seller’s assignment of such Loan and the Seller’s right, title and interest in the Related Property to the Trust Depositor, the assignment thereof to the Issuer and the Trustee’s security interest therein on behalf of the Noteholders;

(ee) the scheduled term to maturity of such Loan is no later than six months prior to the Legal Final Payment Date;

(ff) if such Loan is an Agented Loan, Co-Agented Loan or a Third Party Agented Loan:

(i) if the entity serving as the collateral agent of the security for all notes of the Obligor issued under the applicable Underlying Loan Agreement has changed from the time of the origination of the Loan, all appropriate assignments of the collateral agent’s rights in and to the collateral on behalf of the holders of the indebtedness of the Obligor under such facility have been executed and filed or recorded as appropriate prior to such Loan becoming a part of the Collateral;

(ii) except as otherwise provided in the related intercreditor agreement, the right to control certain actions of and replace the collateral agent and/or the paying agent of the Obligor’s indebtedness under the facility may be exercised by at least a majority in interest of all holders of such indebtedness;

(iii) all required notifications, if any, have been given to the collateral agent, the paying agent and any other parties required by the underlying loan agreement of, and all required consents, if any, have been obtained with respect to, the Seller's assignment of such Loan and the Seller's right title and interest in the Related Property to the Trust Depositor, the assignment thereof to the Issuer and the Trustee's security interest therein on behalf of the Noteholders; and

(iv) all indebtedness of the Obligor of the same priority within each facility is cross-defaulted, the Related Property securing such indebtedness is held by the collateral agent for the benefit of all holders of such indebtedness and all holders of such indebtedness (A) have an undivided *pari passu* interest in the collateral securing such indebtedness, (B) share in the proceeds of the sale or other disposition of such collateral on a *pro rata* basis and (C) may transfer or assign their right, title and interest in the Related Property;

(gg) all actions or additional actions (if any) necessary to perfect the security interest and assignment of such Loan and any material Related Property to the Trust Depositor, the Issuer, and the Trustee have been taken as of or prior to the Transfer Date of such Loan;

(hh) such Loan is not made to an Obligor doing business in the energy, clean energy or alternative energy sector;

(ii) such Loan shall not be a revolving line of credit or include any unfunded commitment; and

(jj) if such Loan is a floating rate Loan, such Loan has a credit spread over the applicable floating rate index of no less than 3%.

“Eligible Repurchase Obligations” means repurchase obligations with respect to any security that is a direct obligation of, or fully guaranteed by, the United States or any agency or instrumentality thereof the obligations of which are backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, in either case entered into with a depository institution or trust company (acting as principal) described in clause (c)(ii) of the definition of Permitted Investments.

“Enterprise Value” means, with respect to the Obligor of a Loan, as determined by the Servicer on a quarterly basis as follows:

- (a) If such Obligor is a publicly-traded company, the public market capitalization of such company; or
- (b) If such Obligor is a private company, a value based on (1) the market adjusted implied value of the most recent round of financing of such Obligor or (2) market multiples and the most recent financial statements of such Obligor;

provided that the Servicer may adjust the Enterprise Value of an Obligor based on such Obligor's performance since the last round of financing.

"Error" shall have the meaning provided in Section 8.03(e).

"Event of Default" shall have the meaning specified in Section 5.01 of the Indenture.

"Excess Concentration Amounts" means, as to any Payment Date, the sum of the following amounts (without duplication):

(a) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans made to any single Obligor (together with Affiliates thereof) in the Collateral exceeds five percent (5%) of the ECA Calculation Balance; *plus*

(b) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans made to the five (5) largest Obligors (together, in each case, with Affiliates thereof) in the Collateral (based on the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans in the Collateral as of the Payment Date) exceeds twenty-three percent (23%) of the ECA Calculation Balance; *plus*

(c) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans made to the ten (10) largest Obligors (together, in each case, with Affiliates thereof) in the Collateral (based on the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans in the Collateral as of the Payment Date) exceeds forty-four percent (44%) of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(d) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Technology Loans exceeds 40% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(e) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for fixed rate Loans exceeds 85% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(f) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Loans with a Hercules Credit Score of Grade 3 or worse exceeds 35% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(g) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Loans that have more than 15% of their original loan balance due at maturity exceeds 20% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(h) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Life Sciences Loans that have an original interest only period greater than 24 months measured from the last credit action taken pursuant to the Credit and Collection Policy exceeds 25% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(i) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Loans that are second lien Loans exceeds 15% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(j) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Loans that are Participated Loans exceeds 15% of the ECA Calculation Balance;

(k) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Loans with respect to which any Obligor material to the underwriting of such Loan does not have its headquarters, principal place of business or primary operations in the United States exceeds 20% of the ECA Calculation Balance; and

(l) the amount by which the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for Loans that are Participated Loans with respect to which the administrative agent on the underlying Loans, other than the Seller or an affiliate thereof, does not have an investment grade corporate rating issued by a national recognized statistical rating organization, exceeds 5% of the ECA Calculation Balance.

provided, for the avoidance of doubt, that the Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans made to any single Obligor (together with Affiliates thereof) will be assigned to the category above that results in the greatest excess amount and will not be included in more than one category for any date of determination.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Excluded Amounts” means (a) any amount received by, on or with respect to any Loan in the Collateral, which amount is attributable to the payment of any tax, fee or other charge imposed by any Governmental Authority on such Loan, (b) any amount representing escrows relating to taxes, insurance and other amounts in connection with any Loan which is held in an escrow account for the benefit of the related Obligor and the secured party pursuant to escrow arrangements, (c) any amount with respect to any Loan substituted, sold, retransferred or replaced under Sections 2.04, 2.05, 2.06 or 11.01, to the extent such amount is attributable to a time after the effective date of such substitution, sale, retransfer or replacement, (d) any origination fee retained by the Seller in connection with the origination of any Loan, and (e) any amount permitted to be retained by the Servicer as an Excluded Amount hereunder.

“FDIC” means the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation and any successor thereto.

“Finance Charges” means, with respect to any Loan, any interest or finance charges owing by an Obligor pursuant to or with respect to such Loan.

“Foreclosed Property” means Related Property acquired by the Issuer or a subsidiary thereof for the benefit of the Noteholders in foreclosure or by other legal process.

“Foreclosed Property Disposition” means the final sale of a Foreclosed Property or of Repossessed Property. The proceeds of any “Foreclosed Property Disposition” constitute part of the definition of Liquidation Proceeds.

“Global Note” shall have the meaning provided in the Indenture.

“Governmental Authority” means, with respect to any Person, any nation or government, any state or other political subdivision thereof, any central bank (or similar monetary or regulatory authority) thereof, any entity exercising executive, legislative, judicial, regulatory or administrative functions of or pertaining to government and any court or arbitrator having jurisdiction over such Person or its property.

“Hercules” means Hercules Capital, Inc., a Maryland corporation, together with its successors in interest.

“Hercules Credit Score” means, for any Obligor, the internal credit rating grade assigned to such Obligor by the Seller in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy.

“Holder” means (a) with respect to a Certificate, the Person in whose name such Certificate is registered in the Certificate Register, and (b) with respect to a Note, the Person in whose name such Note is registered in the Note Register; *provided* that a Beneficial Owner of a Note shall be deemed a Holder of such Note as provided in Section 13.17.

“Indebtedness” means, with respect to any Person at any date, (a) all indebtedness of such Person for borrowed money or for the deferred purchase price of property or services (other than current liabilities incurred in the ordinary course of business and payable in accordance with customary trade practices) or which is evidenced by a note, bond, debenture or similar instrument, (b) all obligations of such Person under capital leases, (c) all obligations of such Person in respect of acceptances issued or created for the account of such Person, and (d) all liabilities secured by any Lien on any property owned by such Person even though such Person has not assumed or otherwise become liable for the payment thereof.

“Indenture” means the Indenture, dated as of the Closing Date, between the Issuer and the Trustee, as such agreement may be amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time.

“Independent” means, when used with respect to any specified Person, such Person (a) is in fact independent of the Issuer, any other obligor on the Notes, the Trust Depositor and any Affiliate of any of the foregoing Persons, (b) does not have any direct financial interest or any material indirect financial interest in the Issuer, any such other obligor, the Trust Depositor or any Affiliate of any of the foregoing Persons and (c) is not connected with the Issuer, any such other obligor, the Trust Depositor or any Affiliate of any of the foregoing Persons as an officer, employee, trustee, partner, director or person performing similar functions; *provided* that a Person that otherwise satisfies the requirements of clauses (a) through (c) of this definition, but is a director, officer or manager of a bankruptcy remote special purpose Affiliate of Hercules, will be deemed to be Independent for purposes hereof.

“Independent Accountants” shall have the meaning provided in Section 9.05.

“Ineligible Loan” shall have the meaning provided in Section 11.01.

“Initial Note Principal Balance” means \$200,000,000.

“Initial Cutoff Date” means September 30, 2018.

“Initial Loans” means those Loans conveyed to the Issuer on the Closing Date and identified for inclusion in the Collateral on the initial List of Loans required to be delivered pursuant to Section 2.02(d).

“Initial Loan Assets” means any assets acquired by the Issuer from the Trust Depositor on the Closing Date pursuant to Section 2.01, which assets shall include the Trust Depositor’s right, title and interest in the following:

- (i) the Initial Loans listed in the initial List of Loans and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the Cutoff Date;
- (ii) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Loans;
- (iii) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans;
- (iv) the Transaction Accounts, together with all cash and investments in each of the foregoing;
- (v) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;
- (vi) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and
- (vii) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amount with respect thereto.

“Initial Purchaser” means Guggenheim Securities, LLC.

“Insolvency Event” means, with respect to a specified Person, (i) the filing of a decree or order for relief by a court having jurisdiction in the premises in respect of such Person or any substantial part of its property in an involuntary case under any applicable Insolvency Law now or hereafter in effect, or the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee, sequestrator or similar official for such Person or for any substantial part of its property, or the ordering of the winding-up or liquidation of such Person’s affairs, which decree or order shall remain unstayed or undismitted and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or (ii) the commencement by such Person of a voluntary case under any applicable Insolvency Law now or hereafter in effect, or the consent by such Person to the entry of an order for relief in an involuntary case under any such law, or the consent by such Person to the appointment of or the taking of possession by a receiver, liquidator, assignee, custodian, trustee, sequestrator or similar official for such Person or for any substantial part of its property, or the making by such Person of any general assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the failure by such Person generally to pay its debts as such debts become due, or the taking of action by such Person in furtherance of any of the foregoing.

“Insolvency Laws” means the Bankruptcy Code and all other applicable liquidation, conservatorship, bankruptcy, moratorium, rearrangement, receivership, insolvency, reorganization, suspension of payments, or similar debtor relief laws from time to time in effect affecting the rights of creditors generally.

“Insolvency Proceeding” means any case, action or proceeding before any court or other Governmental Authority relating to any Insolvency Event.

“Insurance Policy” means, with respect to any Loan, an insurance policy covering liability and physical damage to or loss of the applicable Related Property, including, but not limited to, title, hazard, life, accident and/or flood insurance policies.

“Insurance Proceeds” means any amounts payable or any payments made on or with respect to a Loan or the Related Property under any Insurance Policy which are not applied or paid by the Obligor, the Servicer or, in the case of Co-Agented Loans or Third Party Agented Loans, the party primarily responsible for servicing such Loans, as applicable, to the restoration or repair of the Related Property or released to the Obligor, another creditor or any other Person in accordance with the Applicable Law, the Required Loan Documents, the Credit and Collection Policy, the Servicing Standard and this Agreement, net of costs of collection.

“Interest Amount” means, for each Interest Period, the sum of (A) product of (i) the Interest Rate for such Interest Period, (ii) the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes as of the first day of such Interest Period (after giving effect to all distributions made on such day) and (iii) one-twelfth (or, in the case of the first Interest Period, a fraction, the numerator of which is the number of days from and after the Closing Date to and including the day before the first Payment Date, and the denominator of which is 360) and (B) all unpaid Interest Shortfalls from any prior Payment Dates (and interest accrued thereon at the Interest Rate, to the extent permitted by law).

“Interest Collections” means the aggregate of:

- (a) all amounts deposited into the Collection Account in respect of:
 - (i) all payments received on or after the Cutoff Date on account of interest on the Loans (including Finance Charges and other fees) and all late payment, default and waiver charges; and
 - (ii) the interest portion of any amounts received (x) in connection with the purchase or repurchase of any Loan (but which shall exclude interest on Loans accrued to the date of acquisition thereof by the Issuer purchased with Principal Collections) and the amount of any adjustment for Substitute Loans and (y) as Servicing Advances (if any); and
 - (iii) amounts transferred from the Reserve Account or as a result of the amount on deposit in the Reserve Account being in excess of the Reserve Account Required Balance; *plus*

-
- (b) investment earnings on funds invested in Permitted Investments in the Transaction Accounts (other than the Reserve Account) *minus*
- (c) the amount of any losses incurred in connection with investments in Permitted Investments in the Transaction Accounts.

“Interest Period” means, for the first Payment Date, the period commencing on the Closing Date and ending on and including the day before the first Payment Date; and thereafter, the period commencing on a Payment Date and ending on and including the day before the next Payment Date.

“Interest Rate” means the annual rate of interest payable with respect to the Notes, which shall be equal to 4.605% *per annum*.

“Interest Shortfall” means, with respect to the Notes and any Payment Date, as applicable, an amount equal to the excess, if any, of (a) the Interest Amount over (b) the amount of interest actually paid to the Notes.

“Issuer” means the trust created by the Trust Agreement and funded pursuant to this Agreement.

“KBRA” means Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc. and any successor thereto.

“Legal Final Payment Date” means November 22, 2027.

“Lien” means any mortgage, deed of trust, pledge, hypothecation, assignment, deposit arrangement, encumbrance, lien (statutory or other), preference, priority or other security agreement or preferential arrangement of any kind or nature whatsoever, including, without limitation, any conditional sale or other title retention agreement, and any financing lease having substantially the same economic effect as any of the foregoing (including any UCC financing statement or any similar instrument filed against a Person’s assets or properties).

“Life Sciences Loan” means a Loan made to an Obligor that is a life sciences company, including, but not limited to, a company involved in drug discovery and development, drug delivery, medical devices and equipment, biotechnology tools, specialty pharmaceuticals and therapeutic, diagnostic and surgical devices.

“Liquidation Expenses” means, with respect to any Loan, the aggregate amount of all out-of-pocket expenses reasonably incurred by the Servicer (including amounts paid to any Subservicer) and any reasonably allocated costs of counsel (if any), in each case in accordance with the Servicer’s customary procedures in connection with the repossession, refurbishing and disposition of any Related Property securing such Loan upon or after the expiration or earlier termination of such Loan and other out-of-pocket costs related to the liquidation of any such Related Property, including the attempted collection of any amount owing pursuant to such Loan if it is a Defaulted Loan, and, if requested by the Trustee, the Servicer must provide to the Trustee a breakdown of the Liquidation Expenses for any Loan along with any supporting documentation therefor.

“Liquidation Proceeds” means, with respect to any Defaulted Loan, whatever is receivable or received when such Loan or the Related Property is sold, liquidated, foreclosed, exchanged, or otherwise disposed of, whether such disposition is voluntary or involuntary, and includes all amounts representing late fees and penalties relating thereto net of, without duplication, (a) Liquidation Expenses relating to such Loan or Related Property reimbursed to the Servicer therefrom pursuant to the terms of this Agreement and (b) amounts required to be released to other creditors, including any other costs, expenses and taxes, or the related Obligor or grantor pursuant to applicable law or the governing Required Loan Documents.

“Liquidation Report” shall have the meaning provided in Section 5.03(d).

“List of Loans” means the list identifying each Loan constituting part of the Loan Assets, which list shall consist of the initial List of Loans reflecting the Initial Loans transferred to the Issuer on the Closing Date attached to this Agreement as Exhibit G, together with any Subsequent List of Loans amending the most current List of Loans reflecting any Additional Loans and Substitute Loans transferred to the Issuer on the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date or Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable (together with, if applicable, a deletion from such list of the related Loan or Loans with respect to which a Substitution Event has occurred), and which list in each case (a) identifies by account number each Loan included in the Collateral, and (b) sets forth as to each such Loan (i) the Outstanding Loan Balance as of the Cutoff Date in the case of the Initial Loans, the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of Additional Loans and the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of Substitute Loans, (ii) the maturity date (iii) the Loan Type, (iv) whether such Loan is a Co-Agented Loan or Third-Party Agented Loan (and the name of the agent thereunder), (v) whether such Loan is a Noteless Loan or a Participated Loan and (vi) whether evidence of filing of UCC-1 financing statements naming the Seller as secured party with respect to such Loan are available.

“Loan” means, to the extent transferred by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer, an individual loan to an Obligor, or portion thereof made by the Seller including, but not limited to, Agented Loans, Co-Agented Loans, Third Party Agented Loans and Participated Loans.

“Loan Assets” means, collectively and as applicable, the Initial Loan Assets, the Additional Loan Assets and the Substitute Loan Assets, as applicable.

“Loan File” means, with respect to any Loan and Related Property, (a) each of the Required Loan Documents and (b) duly executed originals (to the extent indicated on the Annex A to the List of Loans) or copies (including electronic copies) of any credit agreement, intercreditor agreement, subordination agreement, UCC financing statements (or similar instruments) and any amendments to any of the foregoing, in each case, identified on Annex A to the List of Loans with respect to such Loan and Related Property.

“Loan Rate” means, for each Loan and Collection Period, the current cash pay interest rate for such Loan in such period, as specified in the related Underlying Note, Underlying Loan Agreement or related Required Loan Documents.

“Loan Type” means, with respect to any Loan, means the characterization of such Loan as a Technology Loan or Life Sciences Loan.

“Lockbox Account” means the segregated account so designated and established and maintained pursuant to Section 7.01(a).

“Lockbox Bank” shall have the meaning provided in Section 7.01.

“Majority Noteholders” means, as of any date of determination, the Noteholders evidencing at least 51% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of all Notes.

“Make-Whole Premium” means the positive difference, if any, between (a) the present value, computed using a discount rate equal to the Treasury Rate plus 0.50%, of all interest (less the Interest Amount) and principal that would otherwise be expected to be payable on the Notes assuming such Notes do not amortize and are redeemed in full at the end of the Reinvestment Period at a price of 100% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance as of such date less (b) the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes as of the Redemption Date.

“Monthly Report” shall have the meaning provided in Section 9.01.

“Moody’s” means Moody’s Investors Service, Inc. and any successor thereto.

“Nonrecoverable Advance” means any Scheduled Payment Advance or Servicing Advance, as applicable, previously made in respect of a Loan or any Related Property that, as determined by the Servicer in its reasonable, good faith judgment, will not be ultimately recoverable from subsequent payments or collections with respect to the applicable Loan including, without limitation, payments or reimbursements from the related Obligor, Insurance Proceeds or Liquidation Proceeds on or in respect of such Loan or Related Property.

“Note” means any one of the notes of the Issuer, executed and authenticated in accordance with the Indenture.

“Note Purchase Agreement” means the Note Purchase Agreement, dated October 25, 2018, by and among the Seller, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser.

“Note Register” shall have the meaning provided in Section 4.02(a) of the Indenture.

“Noteholder” means each Person in whose name a Note is registered in the Note Register *provided* that a Beneficial Owner of a Note may be deemed a Holder of such Note as provided in Section 13.17.

“Noteless Loan” means any Loan that, pursuant to the terms of the related credit agreement (or equivalent document), is not evidenced by a note.

“Notice of Substitution” shall have the meaning provided in Section 2.06.

“Obligor” means, with respect to any Loan, any Person or Persons obligated to make payments pursuant to or with respect to such Loan, including any guarantor thereof, but excluding, in each case, any such Person that is an obligor or guarantor that is in addition to the primary obligors or guarantors with respect to the assets, cash flows or credit of which the related Loan is principally underwritten.

“Offering Memorandum” means the Offering Memorandum dated October 26, 2018, prepared in connection with the offer and sale of the Notes.

“Officer’s Certificate” means a certificate delivered to the Trustee signed by a Responsible Officer of (i) the member of the Trust Depositor, (ii) the Servicer, or (iii) the Owner Trustee, the Administrator, or any other Person acting on behalf of the Issuer, as required by this Agreement or any other Transaction Document.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may be outside counsel, or internal counsel (except with respect to federal securities law, tax law, bankruptcy law or UCC matters), for the Issuer, the Trust Depositor or the Servicer, including Dechert LLP or other counsel reasonably acceptable to the Owner Trustee or the Trustee, as the case may be.

“Optional Redemption” means a redemption of the Notes pursuant to Section 10.01 of the Indenture.

“Original Trust Agreement” shall have the meaning provided in Section 2.01.

“Outstanding” shall have the meaning provided in Section 1.01 of the Indenture.

“Outstanding Loan Balance” of a Loan means, with respect to any date of determination, the outstanding principal amount of such Loan.

“Outstanding Principal Balance” means, as of date of determination and with respect to any Notes, the original principal amount of such Notes on the Closing Date, as reduced by all amounts paid by the Issuer with respect to such principal amount up to such date.

“Owner Trustee” means the Person acting, not in its individual capacity, but solely as Owner Trustee, under the Trust Agreement, its successors in interest and any successor owner trustee under the Trust Agreement. The Owner Trustee will initially be Wilmington Trust, National Association.

“Owner Trustee Cap” means the portion of the Administrative Expense Cap reserved for the Owner Trustee, subject to an annual maximum amount of \$100,000.

“Participated Loans” means the Loans in which the Seller holds a participation interest as of the Closing Date, the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date or the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (if after the Closing Date), as the case may be, which interest has been assigned to the Trust Depositor and the Issuer pursuant to the Transfer and Servicing Agreements.

“Paying Agent” has the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“Payment Date” means the 20th day of each month, commencing in November 2018, or if such day is not a Business Day, on the next succeeding Business Day.

“Percentage Interest” means, for the Holder of any Note of any class, the fraction, expressed as a percentage, the numerator of which is the then current Outstanding Principal Balance represented by such Note and the denominator of which is the then current Outstanding Principal Balance of all Notes.

“Permitted Investments” means on any date of determination, book-entry securities, negotiable instruments or securities represented by instruments in registered form for U.S. federal income tax purposes (or in registered or bearer form if not a “registered-required obligation” as defined in Section 163(f)(2)(A)) with maturities not exceeding the next Payment Date that evidence:

(i) direct obligations of, and obligations fully guaranteed by, the United States or any agency or instrumentality of the United States;

(ii) demand deposits, time deposits or certificates of deposit of any depository institution (including any affiliate of the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Trustee or the Owner Trustee) or trust company incorporated under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or the District of Columbia (or any domestic branch of a foreign bank) and subject to supervision and examination by Federal or state banking or depository institution authorities (including depository receipts issued by any such institution or trust company as custodian with respect to any obligation referred to in clause (i) above or a portion of such obligation for the benefit of the holders of such depository receipts); provided that at the time of the investment or contractual commitment to invest therein (which shall be deemed to be made again each time funds are reinvested following each Payment Date), the commercial paper or other short-term senior unsecured debt obligations (other than such obligations the rating of which is based on the credit of a person other than such depository institution or trust company) of such depository institution or trust company shall have a credit rating from Moody’s of “P-1” or from another nationally recognized statistical rating organization in its highest investment category, in each case, as notified to the Trustee in writing by the Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf);

(iii) commercial paper (including commercial paper of any affiliate of the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Trustee or the Owner Trustee) having, at the time of the investment or contractual commitment to invest therein, a rating from Moody’s of “P-1” or from another nationally recognized statistical rating organization in its highest investment category, in each case, as notified to the Trustee in writing by the Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf);

(iv) investments in money market funds (including funds for which the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Trustee or the Owner Trustee or any of their respective affiliates is investment manager or advisor) having a rating from Moody’s of “Aaa (*mf*)” or from another nationally recognized statistical rating organization in its highest investment category, in each case, as notified to the Trustee in writing by the Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf);

(v) banker’s acceptances issued by any depository institution or trust company referred to in clause (ii) above; and

(vi) repurchase obligations with respect to any security that is a direct obligation of, or fully guaranteed by, the United States or any agency or instrumentality thereof the obligations of which are backed by the full faith and credit of the United States, in either case entered into with a depository institution or trust company (acting as principal) referred to in clause (ii) above.

The Trustee may purchase or sell to itself or an Affiliate, as principal or agent, the Permitted Investments described above.

“Permitted Liens” means

(i) with respect to the interest of the Seller, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer in the Loans included in the Collateral: (a) Liens in favor of the Trust Depositor created pursuant to the Sale and Contribution Agreement and transferred to the Issuer pursuant hereto, (b) Liens in favor of the Issuer created pursuant to this Agreement, (c) Liens in favor of the Trustee created pursuant to the Indenture and/or this Agreement, and (d) Liens, if any, which have priority over first priority perfected security interests in the Loans or any portion thereof under the UCC or any other Applicable Law; and

(ii) with respect to the interest of the Seller, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer in the other Collateral (including any Related Property): (a) materialmen’s, warehousemen’s, mechanics’ and other Liens arising by operation of law in the ordinary course of business for sums not due or sums that are being contested in good faith, (b) purchase money security interests in certain items of equipment, (c) Liens for state, municipal and other local taxes if such taxes shall not at the time be due and payable or the validity or amount thereof is currently being contested by an appropriate Person in good faith by appropriate proceedings, (d) other customary Liens permitted with respect thereto consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy or the Servicing Standard, (e) Liens in favor of the Trust Depositor created by the Seller and transferred by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to this Agreement, (f) Liens in favor of the Issuer created pursuant to this Agreement, (g) Liens in favor of the Trustee created pursuant to the Indenture and/or this Agreement, and (h) with respect to Agented Loans, Co-Agented Loans and Third Party Agented Loans, Liens in favor of the lead agent, the collateral agent or the paying agent on behalf of all holders of indebtedness of such Obligor under the related facility.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, estate, partnership, business or statutory trust, limited liability company, sole proprietorship, joint venture, association, joint stock company, trust (including any beneficiary thereof), unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof or other entity.

“Physical Note” shall have the meaning provided in the Indenture.

“Pool Balance” means, as of any date of determination, the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance minus (a) the Outstanding Loan Balance of all Defaulted Loans and (b) the Outstanding Loan Balance of all Ineligible Loans required to be repurchased by the Seller pursuant to Section 11.01.

“Predecessor Servicer Work Product” shall have the meaning provided in Section 8.03(e).

“Prepayments” means any and all (a) prepayments, including prepayment premiums, on or with respect to a Loan (including, with respect to any Loan and any Collection Period, any Scheduled Payment, Finance Charge or portion thereof that is due in a subsequent Collection Period that the Servicer has received and expressly permitted the related Obligor to make in advance of its scheduled due date, and that will be applied to such Scheduled Payment on such due date), (b) Liquidation Proceeds, and (c) Insurance Proceeds.

“Principal Collections” means amounts deposited into the Collection Account in respect of payments received on or after the Cutoff Date in the case of the Initial Loans, the applicable Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loans and the applicable Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loans on account of principal of the Loans, including (without duplication):

- (a) the principal portion of:
 - (i) any Scheduled Payments and Prepayments; and
 - (ii) any amounts received other than Interest Collections (1) in connection with the purchase or repurchase of any Loan (and any related Substitution Deficit Amounts) and (2) as Servicing Advances (if any);
- (b) all Curtailments;
- (c) all Liquidation Proceeds;
- (d) all Sale Proceeds;
- (e) Insurance Proceeds (other than amounts to be applied to the restoration or repair of the Related Property, or released or to be released to the Obligor or others);
- (f) any proceeds from any Related Property securing the Loans (other than amounts released or to be released to the Obligor or others);
- (g) all funds transferred from the Reinvestment Account in accordance with the Transaction Documents (other than investment earnings);
- (h) following a Rapid Amortization Event or on the Legal Final Payment Date, all funds transferred from the Reserve Account; and
- (i) all other amounts not specifically included in Interest Collections.

“Principal Distribution Amount” means, for any Payment Date, an amount equal to the greater of (A) the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes (calculated immediately prior to such Payment Date) *minus* the Borrowing Base and (B) zero.

“Priority of Payments” means, collectively, the payments made on each Payment Date in accordance with Section 7.06(a), Section 7.06(b) and Section 7.06(c), as applicable.

“Proceeds” means, with respect to any Collateral, whatever is receivable or received when such Collateral is sold, liquidated, foreclosed, exchanged, or otherwise disposed of, whether such disposition is voluntary or involuntary, and includes all rights to payment with respect to any insurance relating to such Collateral.

“Qualified Additional Loan” means a Loan which is an Eligible Loan and meets each of the following additional criteria, as of its date of acquisition by the Issuer:

(a) the sum of (a) the product of (i) the Outstanding Loan Balance of such Loan multiplied by (ii) the Advance Rate, plus (b) accrued and unpaid interest and fees thereon is greater than or equal to the cash amount paid by the Issuer for such Additional Loan;

(b) immediately following the Transfer Date of such Additional Loan, the weighted average Cash Yield Rate of all Loans as of the applicable Transfer Date shall not be decreased by more than 100 basis points from the weighted average Cash Yield Rate of the Initial Loans as of the Initial Cutoff Date; and

(c) immediately prior to and following the Transfer Date of any Additional Loan, no Event of Default is occurring and continuing.

“Qualified Institution” means (a) the corporate trust department of the Trustee, or (b) a depository institution organized under the laws of the United States or any one of the states thereof or the District of Columbia (or any domestic branch of a foreign bank), that has either a long-term unsecured debt rating of at least “Baa3” from Moody’s (or another nationally recognized statistical rating organization in one of its generic rating categories that signifies investment grade) or a long-term unsecured debt rating, a short-term unsecured debt rating or a certificate of deposit rating from another nationally recognized statistical rating agency acceptable to KBRA, and whose deposits are insured by the FDIC.

“Qualified Substitute Loan” means a Loan which is an Eligible Loan and meets each of the following additional criteria, as of its date of substitution:

(a) such Substitute Loan is of substantially similar or better credit quality to the Loan it will replace (as measured by reference to the Hercules Credit Score of the replaced Loan at the time such Loan was initially transferred to the Issuer);

(b) immediately following the Transfer Date of such Substitute Loan, the weighted average Cash Yield Rate of all Loans as of the applicable Transfer Date shall not be decreased by more than 100 basis points from the weighted average Cash Yield Rate of the Initial Loans as of the initial Cutoff Date;

(c) the Outstanding Loan Balance of such Substitute Loan (or, if more than one Substitute Loan will replace a Loan or Loans, the sum of the Outstanding Loan Balances of such Substitute Loans) is substantially similar to the Loan it will replace (and in the event that such Substitute Loan has an Outstanding Loan Balance that is less than that of the replaced Loan(s), the applicable Substitution Deficit Amount will be paid to the Issuer, for deposit into the Collection Account, at the time of substitution), and in any case will not be more than 110% of the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance(s) of the Loan(s) being replaced;

(d) the scheduled term to maturity of such Substitute Loan (or, if more than one Substitute Loan will replace a Loan or Loans in the Loan Pool, the combined effect of such Substitute Loans) will not cause the remaining weighted average life of the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance (measured immediately prior to the removal of the Loans related to such substitution) to increase by more than four months; *provided* that, in the case of any substitution made after the Reinvestment Period Termination Date, such substitution will not cause the remaining weighted average life of the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance (measured immediately prior to the removal from of the Loans related to such substitution) to increase.

“Quarterly Report” has the meaning provided in Section 9.02.

“Rapid Amortization Event” shall mean the occurrence of any of the following:

(i) the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Delinquent Loans and Restructured Loans that would constitute Delinquent Loans had such Loans not become Restructured Loans exceeds ten percent (10%) of the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance for a period of three (3) consecutive Payment Dates;

(ii) the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of Defaulted Loans exceeds, for a period of three (3) consecutive Payment Dates, 5% of the initial Pool Balance determined as of the Closing Date;

(iii) the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance exceeds the Borrowing Base for a period of three (3) consecutive Payment Dates (after giving effect to all distributions on such Payment Dates);

(iv) the Loans in the Collateral consist of Loans to 10 or fewer Obligor (together, in each case, with Affiliates thereof); and

(v) the occurrence and continuance of an Event of Default.

“Rating Agency” means each of KBRA and any other nationally recognized statistical rating organization, so long as such Persons maintain a rating on any of the Notes; and if any of KBRA or such other organization (if any) no longer maintains a rating on any of the Notes, such other nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if any, selected by the Trust Depositor.

“Record Date” means, with respect to each Payment Date, (i) for Global Notes, the close of business on the Business Day immediately preceding such Payment Date and (ii) for Physical Notes, the close of business on the last Business Day of the month immediately preceding the month in which such Payment Date occurs.

“Records” means all documents, books, records and other information (including without limitation, Computer Records, computer programs, tapes, disks, data processing software and related property and rights) executed in connection with the origination or acquisition of the Loans or maintained with respect to the Loans and the related Obligors that the Seller or the Servicer have generated, in which the Seller, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer, the Trustee or the Servicer have acquired an interest pursuant to the Transfer and Servicing Agreements or in which the Seller, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer, the Trustee or the Servicer have otherwise obtained an interest to the extent transferable, and subject to any confidentiality and/or transferability restrictions.

“Redemption Date” means any Payment Date designated as such by the Issuer in connection with an Optional Redemption.

“Redemption Price” means, in connection with an Optional Redemption, pursuant to Section 10.01 of the Indenture, an amount equal to the sum (without duplication) of: (i) the then Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes to be redeemed plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to but excluding the Redemption Date and all other amounts accrued and unpaid with respect thereto; *plus* (ii) the Applicable Premium; *plus* (iii) all administrative and other fees, expenses, advances and other amounts accrued and payable or reimbursable in accordance with the Priority of Payments (including fees and expenses, if any, incurred by the Trustee and the Servicer in connection with any sale of Loans in connection with an Optional Redemption).

“Reference Date” means the day of each month that is the third (3rd) Business Day prior to a Payment Date.

“Reinvestment Account” means the interest bearing trust account so designated and established and maintained pursuant to Section 7.04(a).

“Reinvestment Period” means the period beginning on the Closing Date to but excluding the Reinvestment Period Termination Date.

“Reinvestment Period Termination Date” means the earlier to occur of (a) the Payment Date occurring in October, 2020, (b) the occurrence of a Rapid Amortization Event or a Reinvestment Period Early Termination Event and (c) the day of any optional redemption of the Notes. For the avoidance of doubt, there will only be one Reinvestment Period, and such period cannot be re-commenced or continue after the occurrence of a Rapid Amortization Event or any Reinvestment Period Early Termination Event.

“Reinvestment Period Early Termination Event” means, as of any date of determination, the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Defaulted Loans (including any Defaulted Loans optionally sold or substituted by the Issuer or previously liquidated by the Servicer, in each case measured at the time each such Loan becomes a Defaulted Loan) exceeds 13.5% of the Pool Balance as of the Closing Date.

“Related Loan” means, with respect to any Loan, one or more related revolving lines of credit or other related loans to the same Obligor, which may include future funding obligations, made by Hercules, an Affiliate of the Hercules, or an unaffiliated third party.

“Related Property” means, with respect to any Loan and as applicable in the context used, the interest of the Obligor, or the interest of the Seller, Trust Depositor or Issuer under the Loan, in any property or other assets designated and pledged or mortgaged as collateral to secure repayment of such Loan (including, without limitation, a pledge of the stock, membership or other ownership interests in the Obligor, but excluding any warrant interest in an Obligor held by the Seller or any of its Affiliates other than the Issuer or Trust Depositor), including all Proceeds from any sale or other disposition of such property or other assets.

“Repossessed Property” means items of Related Property taken in the name of the Issuer or a subsidiary thereof as a result of legal action enforcing the Lien on the Related Property resulting from a default on the related Loan.

“Required Loan Documents” means, with respect to:

(a) all Loans in the aggregate:

(i) a blanket assignment of all of the Seller’s and Trust Depositor’s right, title and interest in and to all Related Property securing the Loans at any time transferred to the Issuer including, without limitation, all rights under applicable guarantees and Insurance Policies;

(ii) irrevocable powers of attorney of the Seller, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer to the Trustee to execute, deliver, file or record and otherwise deal with the Related Property for the Loans at any time transferred to the Issuer. The powers of attorney will be delegable by the Trustee to the Servicer and any Successor Servicer and will permit the Trustee or its delegate to prepare, execute and file or record UCC financing statements and notices to insurers;

(iii) blanket UCC-1 financing statements in respect of the Loans to be transferred to the Issuer as Collateral and naming the Issuer and the Trustee, as assignee of the Issuer, as “Secured Party” and the Trust Depositor as the “Debtor”;

(b) for each Loan (*provided, however*, that in the case of each Participated Loan, in each case, as indicated on the List of Loans, to the extent in the possession of the Seller or reasonably available to the Seller, copies of all documents and instruments described in clause (b)(y), with respect to such Participated Loan): (x) other than in the case of a Noteless Loan or Participated Loan, the original or, if accompanied by a “lost note” affidavit and indemnity, a copy of the Underlying Note, endorsed by the prior holder of record either in blank or to the Trustee (and evidencing an unbroken chain of endorsements from the prior holder thereof evidenced in the chain of endorsements to the Trustee), with any endorsement to the Trustee to be in the following form: “U.S. Bank National Association, its successors and assigns, as Trustee under the Indenture, relating to Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1,” (y) in the case of a Participated Loan, a copy of each transfer document or instrument relating to such Participated

Loan evidencing the assignment of such Participated Loan to the Seller, from the Seller to the Trust Depositor and from the Trust Depositor to the Trustee or in blank and (z) in the case of a Noteless Loan, a copy of each transfer document or instrument relating to such Noteless Loan evidencing the assignment of such Noteless Loan from the Seller to the Trust Depositor and from the Trust Depositor to the Trustee or in blank;

“Required Payments” shall mean each of the items described in clauses 1 through 4 of Section 7.06(a).

“Reserve Account” means the interest bearing trust account so designated and established and maintained pursuant to Section 7.02(a).

“Reserve Account Required Balance” shall mean, as of any Payment Date, an amount equal to 3.0% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes on such date after taking into account all amounts applied to the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance on such date.

“Reserve Available Funds” means all amounts deposited into the Collection Account from the Reserve Account pursuant to Section 7.02.

“Responsible Officer” means, when used with respect to (a) the Owner Trustee or the Trustee, any officer assigned to the Corporate Trust Office with responsibility for administration of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, including any Chief Executive Officer, President, Executive Vice President, Vice President, Assistant Vice President, Secretary, any Assistant Secretary, Financial Services Officer, trust officer or any other officer of the Owner Trustee or the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and also, with respect to a particular matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of such officer’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and, in each case, responsible for the administration of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents, (b) the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Administrator, the Servicer or the Backup Servicer, the President, Chief Executive Officer, Executive Vice President or any Vice President thereof who is also a Servicing Officer of such Person or of the sole member of such Person, as applicable and (c) with respect to the Issuer, a Responsible Officer of the Trust Depositor, Administrator, Servicer or Owner Trustee.

“Restructured Loan” means any Loan (including any portion of a Loan) that has been, or in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy is required to be, modified or restructured to extend the maturity thereof or reduce the amount (other than by reason of the repayment thereof) or extend the time for payment of principal thereof, or otherwise modify the payment terms thereof, in each case as a result of the Obligor’s material financial underperformance, distress or default. Such Loan shall cease to be a Restructured Loan when such Loan has been performing for at least six (6) consecutive calendar months since the date the most recent modification was made and is no longer required to be so modified or restructured in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy.

“Sale and Contribution Agreement” means the Sale and Contribution Agreement, dated as of the date hereof, between the Seller and the Trust Depositor, as such agreement may be amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time.

“Sale Proceeds” means all proceeds received as a result of sales of Loans (other than Defaulted Loans) pursuant to this Agreement, net of any sales, brokerage and related administrative or sales expenses of the Servicer or the Trustee in connection with any such sale.

“Scheduled Payment” means, with respect to any Loan, each payment of principal and/or interest scheduled to be made by the related Obligor under the terms of such Loan after (a) in the case of the Initial Loans, the Cutoff Date, (b) in the case of Additional Loans, the Additional Loan Cutoff Date or (c) in the case of Substitute Loans, the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, as adjusted pursuant to the terms of the related Underlying Note and/or Required Loan Documents.

“Scheduled Payment Advance” means, with respect to any Payment Date, the amounts, if any, deposited by the Servicer in the Collection Account for such Payment Date in respect of Scheduled Payments (or portions thereof) pursuant to Section 5.09.

“Secured Parties” means, collectively, the Noteholders, the Trustee, the Servicer, the Backup Servicer, the Custodian, and the Owner Trustee.

“Securities” means the Notes and the Certificate, or any of them.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“Securityholders” means, collectively, the Noteholders and the Certificateholder.

“Seller” shall have the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“Servicer” means initially Hercules, or its successors in interest, until any Servicer Transfer hereunder or the resignation or permitted assignment by the Servicer and, thereafter, means the Backup Servicer or other Successor Servicer appointed pursuant to Article VIII with respect to the duties and obligations required of the Servicer under this Agreement.

“Servicer Default” shall have the meaning specified in Section 8.01.

“Servicer Transfer” shall have the meaning specified in Section 8.02(c).

“Servicing Advances” means all reasonable and customary “out-of-pocket” costs and expenses incurred in the performance by the Servicer of its servicing obligations, including, but not limited to, the cost of (a) the preservation, restoration and protection of any Related Property (including the security interest therein), (b) any pursuit of collections, enforcement or judicial proceedings, including foreclosures, and other actions to realize on the Loans, (c) the management and liquidation of any Foreclosed Property or Repossessed Property, (d) compliance with its obligations under this Agreement and other Transaction Documents and (e) services rendered in connection with the liquidation of a Loan (other than Liquidation Expenses), for all of which costs and expenses the Servicer is entitled to reimbursement with interest thereon as provided in this Agreement.

“Servicing Fee” shall have the meaning provided in Section 5.11.

“Servicing File” means, for each Loan, the following documents or instruments:

(a) copies of each of the Required Loan Documents; and

(b) any other portion of the Loan File which is not part of the Required Loan Documents.

“Servicing Officer” means any officer of the Servicer involved in, or responsible for, the administration and servicing of Loans whose name appears on a list of servicing officers appearing in an Officer’s Certificate furnished to the Trustee by the Servicer, as the same may be amended from time to time.

“Servicing Standard” means, with respect to any Loans and all other assets included in the Collateral, to service and administer such Loans and other assets in the Collateral in accordance with the Underlying Loan Agreements (as applicable) and all customary and usual servicing practices, in a manner consistent with the Servicer’s servicing of comparable senior loan agreements that it owns or services for itself or others, without regard to: (i) the Servicer’s right to receive compensation for its services hereunder or with respect to any particular transaction, or (ii) the ownership, servicing or management for others by the Servicer of any other loans, debt securities or property by the Servicer.

“Servicing Transfer Costs” means the fees, costs and expenses, if any, incurred by the Trustee or by any Successor Servicer (including the Backup Servicer) in connection with the transfer of servicing to any such Successor Servicer, which shall not exceed the Transition Expense Cap; *provided* that the foregoing limitations shall not apply after the occurrence of an Event of Default that is continuing and the Trustee has initiated proceedings or actions in furtherance of the liquidation of the Collateral.

“Solvent” means, as to any Person at any time, that (a) the fair value of the property of such Person is greater than the amount of such Person’s liabilities (including disputed, contingent and unliquidated liabilities) as such value is established and liabilities evaluated for purposes of Section 101(32) of the Bankruptcy Code; (b) such Person is able to realize upon its property and pay its debts and other liabilities (including disputed, contingent and unliquidated liabilities) as they mature in the normal course of business; (c) such Person does not intend to, and does not believe that it will, incur debts or liabilities beyond such Person’s ability to pay as such debts and liabilities mature; and (d) such Person is not engaged in business or a transaction, and is not about to engage in a business or a transaction, for which such Person’s property would constitute unreasonably small capital.

“Split Loan” means an Additional Loan or Substitute Loan acquired by the Issuer that has one or more Related Loans or other loans under the same facility or tranche that will be financed by Hercules or an Affiliate thereof in a Warehouse Loan Facility.

“Split Loan Account” means any designated account held at the Split Loan Agent in the name of Hercules, as agent for the benefit of the Trustee and the applicable Warehouse Lender, as secured parties in respect of Split Loans and any Related Loans, respectively.

“Split Loan Agent” means U.S. Bank or another Qualified Institution serving as Split Loan Agent pursuant to the Transaction Documents.

“Split Loan Intercreditor Agreement” means any intercreditor agreement entered into by and among the Issuer, the Servicer, the applicable Warehouse Lender, Split Loan Agent, the Trustee, the Custodian and the Backup Servicer, which shall provide, among other things, key terms that are substantially as follows: (a) payments received in respect of such Split Loans and the Related Loans will be applied pro rata to the outstanding principal exposure among the lenders or, if payment is received in connection with a particular tranche, pro rata among all lenders in the particular tranche; (b) the percentage of lenders required to constitute required lenders under the underlying credit documents will be 50.1 percent of the outstanding loan amount thereunder; provided that, upon certain key events, if there are three (3) or fewer unaffiliated lenders (i.e., lenders not affiliated with Hercules) all lenders must consent or vote affirmatively to constitute required lenders under the underlying credit documents; (c) upon an exercise of remedies with respect to such Split Loans and Related Loans, Hercules, as agent for the underlying secured parties, will allocate collateral proceeds pro rata based on outstanding principal exposure of the lenders; (d) each Warehouse Lender, the Trustee and the Custodian will acknowledge the rights and interests of the other secured parties and the Split Loan Agent with respect to such Split Loans and the Related Loans, the underlying loan files and the Split Loan Account; and (e) in the event of either an involuntary bankruptcy filing (which filing remains unstayed for a period of sixty (60) days) or a voluntary bankruptcy filing by Hercules, any exercise of remedies by Hercules (as agent for the underlying secured parties under the underlying credit documents) or amendments or other modifications to the underlying credit documents will be subject to approval of and direction by required lenders under the underlying credit documents (subject to clause (b) above).

“Statutory Trust Statute” means Chapter 38 of Title 12 of the Delaware Code, 12 Del. C. §§ 3801 et seq., as the same may be amended from time to time.

“Subsequent List of Loans” means a list, in the form of the initial List of Loans delivered on the Closing Date, but listing each Additional Loan or Substitute Loan, as the case may be, transferred to the Issuer from time to time.

“Subservicer” means any direct or indirect wholly owned subsidiary of Hercules that Hercules has identified as a subservicer or additional collateral agent or any other Person with whom the Servicer has entered into a Subservicing Agreement and who satisfies the requirements set forth in Section 5.02(b) of this Agreement in respect of the qualification of a Subservicer.

“Subservicing Agreement” means any agreement between the Servicer and any Subservicer relating to subservicing and/or administration of certain Loans as provided in this Agreement, a copy of which shall be delivered, along with any modifications thereto, to the Trustee.

“Substitute Loan” means one or more Loans transferred by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer under and in accordance with Section 2.06.

“Substitute Loan Assets” means any assets acquired by the Issuer from the Trust Depositor following the Closing Date in connection with substitution of one or more Substitute Loans pursuant to Section 2.04 or Section 2.06, which assets shall include the Trust Depositor’s right, title and interest in the following:

(i) the Substitute Loans listed in the related Subsequent List of Loans and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the Substitute Loan Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(ii) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligor under such Loans;

(iii) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans;

(iv) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;

(v) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and

(vi) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amount with respect thereto.

“Substitute Loan Cutoff Date” means each date on or after the Closing Date on which a Substitute Loan is transferred to the Issuer.

“Substitution Deficit Amount” means, in respect of one or more Loans replaced with one or more Substitute Loans, the amount (if positive) by which the Outstanding Loan Balance of such Loans exceeds the Outstanding Loan Balance of such Substitute Loans.

“Substitution Event” shall have the meaning provided in Section 2.06.

“Successor Servicer” shall have the meaning provided in Section 8.02(b).

“Successor Servicer Engagement Fee” shall have the meaning provided in Section 5.02(y).

“Super-Majority Noteholders” means prior to the payment in full of the Notes, the Noteholders evidencing more than 66 2/3% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of Notes (excluding Notes held by the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Servicer or any of their respective Affiliates).

“Tape” shall have the meaning provided in Section 9.04(a).

“Technology Loan” means a Loan made to an Obligor that is a technology company, including a company involved in, but not limited to, semi-conductor manufacturing, software, internet consumer and business services, content providers, media, communications and networking, clean technologies (excluding companies doing business in the energy, clean energy or alternative energy sectors), information services, or internet consumer and business services.

“Termination Notice” shall have the meaning provided in Section 8.02(a).

“Third Party Agented Loan” means, any Loan with respect to which, (a) the Loan is originated by a Person other than or in addition to the Seller as part of a syndicated loan transaction which has been fully consummated prior to such Loan becoming part of the Collateral, (b) upon the sale of the Loan under the Transfer and Servicing Agreements to the Issuer, the Required Loan Documents shall have been delivered to the Custodian, (c) the Issuer, as assignee of the Loan, has all of the rights (including without limitation voting rights) of the Seller which have been transferred by the Seller with respect to the Loan and the Seller’s right, title and interest in and to the Related Property, (d) the Loan is secured by an undivided interest in the Related Property that also secures and is shared by, on a *pro rata* basis, all other holders of such Obligor’s indebtedness of equal priority issued in such syndicated loan transaction, and (e) the third party Loan originator (or an affiliate thereof) is the lead agent, collateral agent or paying agent for all lenders in such syndicated loan transaction.

“Transaction Account Property” means the Transaction Accounts, all amounts and investments held from time to time in any Transaction Account (whether in the form of deposit accounts, physical property, book-entry securities, uncertificated securities or otherwise), and all proceeds of the foregoing.

“Transaction Accounts” means, collectively, the Collection Account, the Reserve Account, the Distribution Account, the Reinvestment Account and the Lockbox Account.

“Transaction Documents” means the Transfer and Servicing Agreements, the Trust Agreement, the Administration Agreement, the Notes, the Certificate, any Split Loan Intercreditor Agreement (to the extent the Issuer acquires any Split Loans), the Note Purchase Agreement, any fee letters, any UCC financing statements filed pursuant to the terms of the Transaction Documents, and any additional document the execution of which is necessary or incidental to carrying out the terms of, or which is identified as a “Transaction Document” in, the foregoing documents, all as such documents are amended, modified, restated, replaced, waived, substituted, supplemented or extended from time to time.

“Transfer and Servicing Agreements” means, collectively, this Agreement, the Indenture and the Sale and Contribution Agreement.

“Transfer Date” means, with respect to any Loan, the date upon which such Loan is conveyed to or acquired by the Issuer.

“Transfer Deposit Amount” means, on any date of determination with respect to any Loan, an amount equal to the sum of (a) the Outstanding Loan Balance of such Loan, (b) accrued interest thereon through such date of determination at the Loan Rate provided for thereunder and (c) any outstanding Scheduled Payment Advances and Servicing Advances thereon that have not been waived by the Servicer entitled thereto.

“Transition Expense Cap” means, for any given servicing transfer, an aggregate maximum amount of \$25,000 for a servicing transfer to the Backup Servicer or \$150,000 to any other Successor Servicer.

“Treasury Rate” means, in the case of an Optional Redemption of the Notes, the yield to maturity (adjusted to a “mortgage equivalent basis” pursuant to the standards and practices of the Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association) at the time of computation of United States Treasury securities with a constant maturity (as compiled and published in the most recent Federal Reserve Statistical Release H.15 (519) which has become publicly available at least two Business Days (but not more than five Business Days) prior to the Redemption Date (or, if such statistical release is not so published or available, any publicly available source of similar market data selected by the Issuer in good faith)) most nearly equal to the period from the Redemption Date to the end of the Reinvestment Period; provided, however, that if the period from the Redemption Date to the end of the Reinvestment Period is not equal to the constant maturity of a United States Treasury security for which a weekly average yield is given, the Treasury Rate shall be obtained by linear interpolation (calculated to the nearest one-twelfth of a year) from the weekly average yields of United States Treasury securities for which such yields are given, except that if the period from the redemption date to such applicable date is less than one year, the weekly average yield on actually traded United States Treasury securities adjusted to a constant maturity of one year shall be used.

“Trust Agreement” means the Amended and Restated Trust Agreement, dated as of the Closing Date, between the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee, as amended, modified, restated, waived or supplemented from time to time.

“Trust Depositor” shall have the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“Trust Depositor LLC Agreement” means the Limited Liability Company Agreement of the Trust Depositor, dated as of the Closing Date, between the Seller, as the sole member, and the Independent manager party thereto.

“Trust Estate” shall have the meaning provided in the Trust Agreement.

“Trustee” means the Person acting as Trustee under the Indenture, its successors in interest and any successor trustee under the Indenture.

“Trustees” means the Owner Trustee and the Trustee, or any of them individually as the context may require.

“UCC” means the Uniform Commercial Code, as amended from time to time, as in effect in any specified jurisdiction.

“Underlying Loan Agreement” means, with respect to any Loan, the single-lender or multi-lender commercial loan or credit agreement or other debt agreement or instrument evidencing such Loan or facility pursuant to which such Loan is made.

“Underlying Note” means the one or more promissory notes executed by the applicable Obligor evidencing a Loan.

“United States” means the United States of America.

“U.S. Bank” shall have the meaning provided in the Preamble.

“Volcker Rule” means Section 619 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (the “Dodd-Frank Act”), as implemented by regulations jointly adopted by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Federal Deposit Corporation and the Commission and any orders or interpretations issued thereby.

“Warehouse Lender” means one or a syndicate of financial institutions providing warehouse loan financing to Hercules or an Affiliate thereof pursuant to a Warehouse Loan Facility.

“Warehouse Loan Facility” means a warehouse loan facility provided to Hercules or an Affiliate thereof by one or more Warehouse Lenders.

Section 1.02. Usage of Terms.

With respect to all terms in this Agreement, the singular includes the plural and the plural the singular; words importing any gender include the other genders; references to “writing” include printing, typing, lithography and other means of reproducing words in a visible form; references to agreements and other contractual instruments include all amendments, modifications and supplements thereto or any changes therein entered into in accordance with their respective terms and not prohibited by this Agreement; references to Persons include their permitted successors and assigns; and the term “including” means “including without limitation.”

Section 1.03. Section References.

All Section references (including references to the Preamble), unless otherwise indicated, shall be to Sections (and the Preamble) in this Agreement.

Section 1.04. Calculations.

Except as otherwise provided herein, all interest rate and basis point calculations hereunder will be made on the basis of a 360 day year consisting of twelve 30-day months and will be carried out to at least three decimal places.

Section 1.05. Accounting Terms.

All accounting terms used but not specifically defined herein shall be construed in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States.

ARTICLE 2.

ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUER; TRANSFER OF LOAN ASSETS

Section 2.01. Creation and Funding of Issuer; Transfer of Loan Assets.

(a) The Issuer shall be governed pursuant to the terms and conditions of the Trust Agreement, dated as of the Closing Date, between the Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee (the "Original Trust Agreement"), upon the execution and delivery of the Original Trust Agreement and created by the filing by the Owner Trustee of an appropriately completed Certificate of Trust (as defined in the Original Trust Agreement) under the Statutory Trust Statute. The Trust Depositor, as settlor of the Issuer, shall fund and convey assets to the Issuer pursuant to the terms and provisions hereof. The Issuer shall be administered pursuant to the provisions of this Agreement, the Administration Agreement and the Trust Agreement for the benefit of the Securityholders. Each of the Owner Trustee and the Administrator is hereby specifically recognized by the parties hereto as empowered to conduct business dealings on behalf of the Issuer in accordance with the terms hereof and of the Trust Agreement and Administration Agreement. The initial Servicer is hereby specifically recognized by the parties hereto as empowered to act on behalf of the Issuer in accordance with Section 5.02(g) and Section 5.02(h). The Servicer is hereby specifically recognized by the parties hereto as empowered to perform the duties and obligations required to be performed by the Servicer under the Transaction Documents.

(b) Subject to and upon the terms and conditions set forth herein, and in consideration of the Issuer's delivery to or upon the order of the Trust Depositor of the Notes and the payment to the Trust Depositor of the net proceeds of the Notes, the Trust Depositor hereby sells, transfers, assigns, sets over and otherwise conveys to the Issuer all the right, title and interest of the Trust Depositor in and to the Initial Loan Assets.

To the extent the purchase price paid to the Trust Depositor for any Loan Assets is less than the fair market value of such Loan Assets, the difference between such fair market value and such purchase price shall be deemed to be a capital contribution made by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer on the Closing Date in the case of the Initial Loans, as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loans and as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loans. For all purposes of this Agreement, any contributed Loan Assets shall be treated the same as Loan Assets sold for cash, including without limitation for purposes of Section 11.01.

(c) The Seller and the Trust Depositor each acknowledge with respect to itself that the representations and warranties of the Seller in the Sale and Contribution Agreement and of the Trust Depositor in Section 3.01 through Section 3.04 hereof will run to and be for the benefit of the Issuer and the Trustees, and the Issuer and the Trustees may enforce directly (without joinder of the Trust Depositor when enforcing against the Seller) the repurchase obligations of the Seller or Trust Depositor, as applicable, with respect to breaches of such representations and warranties that materially and adversely affect the interests of any Noteholder as set forth in the Sale and Contribution Agreement or in this Agreement; provided that neither the Owner Trustee nor the Trustee shall have a duty or obligation (i) to discover or make and attempt to discover, inquire about or investigate the breach of any of such representations or warranties, (ii) to determine if such breach materially and adversely affects the interests of any Noteholder or (iii) to enforce the repurchase obligations of the Seller and/or the Trust Depositor it being understood that a Trustee's sole duty upon receipt by a Responsible Officer of actual knowledge or written notice of a breach that materially and adversely affects the interests of Noteholders shall be to make demand upon the Seller or Trust Depositor, as

applicable, to repurchase the Loan(s) unless the applicable Trustee receives written direction and indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it from the Super-Majority Noteholders specifying the additional action to be taken (or omitted) by the Trustee, including but not limited to commencing litigation against the Seller or Trust Depositor, as applicable.

(d) The sale, transfer, assignment, set-over and conveyance of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to this Agreement does not constitute and is not intended to result in a creation or an assumption by the Issuer of any obligation of the Seller or the Trust Depositor in connection with the Loan Assets, or any agreement or instrument relating thereto, including, without limitation, (i) any obligation to any Obligor relating to any unfunded commitment from the Seller or the Trust Depositor, (ii) any taxes, fees, or other charges imposed by any Governmental Authority and (iii) any insurance premiums that remain owing with respect to any Loan Asset at the time such Loan Asset is sold hereunder. Without limiting the foregoing, (x) the Issuer does not assume any obligation to purchase any additional notes or loans under agreements governing the Loan Assets and (y) the sale, transfer, assignment, set-over and conveyance of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to this Agreement does not constitute and is not intended to result in a creation or an assumption by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer of any obligation of the Seller as lead agent or collateral agent under any Agented Loan or Co-Agented Loan. The Trust Depositor also hereby assigns to the Issuer all of the Trust Depositor's right, title and interest (but none of its obligations) under the Sale and Contribution Agreement, including but not limited to the Trust Depositor's right to exercise the remedies created by the Sale and Contribution Agreement.

(e) The Seller, Trust Depositor and Issuer intend and agree that (i) the transfer of the Loan Assets by the Seller to the Trust Depositor under the Sale and Contribution Agreement and the transfer of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer hereunder are intended to be a sale, conveyance and transfer of ownership of the Loan Assets, as the case may be, rather than the mere granting of a security interest to secure a borrowing and (ii) such Loan Assets shall not be part of the Seller's or the Trust Depositor's estate in the event of a filing of a bankruptcy petition or other action by or against such Person under any Insolvency Law. In the event, however, that notwithstanding such intent and agreement, such transfers are deemed to be a mere granting of a security interest to secure indebtedness, the Seller shall be deemed to have granted (and as of the Closing Date hereby grants to) the Trust Depositor and the Trust Depositor shall be deemed to have granted (and as of the Closing Date hereby grants) to the Issuer, as the case may be, a perfected first priority security interest in all right, title and interest of the Seller or of the Trust Depositor, respectively, in such Loan Assets and this Agreement shall constitute a security agreement under Applicable Law, securing the repayment of the purchase price paid hereunder, the obligations and/or interests represented by the Securities, in the order and priorities, and subject to the other terms and conditions of, this Agreement, the Indenture and the Trust Agreement, together with such other obligations or interests as may arise hereunder and thereunder in favor of the parties hereto and thereto.

(f) If any such transfer of the Loan Assets is deemed to be the mere granting of a security interest to secure a borrowing, the Trust Depositor may, to secure the Trust Depositor's own borrowing under this Agreement (to the extent that the transfer of the Loan Assets thereunder is deemed to be a mere granting of a security interest to secure a borrowing) repledge and reassign (i) all or a portion of the Loan Assets pledged to Trust Depositor by the

Seller and with respect to which the Trust Depositor has not released its security interest at the time of such pledge and assignment, and (ii) all proceeds thereof. Such repledge and reassignment may be made by Trust Depositor with or without a repledge and reassignment by Trust Depositor of its rights under any agreement with the Seller, and without further notice to or acknowledgment from the Seller. The Seller waives, to the extent permitted by applicable law, all claims, causes of action and remedies, whether legal or equitable (including any right of setoff), against Trust Depositor or any assignee of Trust Depositor relating to such action by Trust Depositor in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

(g) The Trust Depositor and the Issuer acknowledge and agree (and the Trustee is hereby directed to acknowledge and does acknowledge) that, solely for administrative convenience, any assignment agreement required to be executed and delivered in connection with the transfer of a Loan in accordance with the terms of related Underlying Loan Agreements may reflect that the Seller is assigning such Loan directly to the Issuer. Nothing in such assignment agreements shall be deemed to impair the transfers of the Loan Assets by the Seller to the Trust Depositor in accordance with the terms of this Agreement and the Sale and Contribution Agreement, as applicable, and the subsequent transfer of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer in accordance with the terms hereof.

Section 2.02. Conditions to Transfer of Initial Loan Assets to Issuer.

On or before the Closing Date, or, with respect to clause (g) below, within the period specified therein, the Seller or the Trust Depositor, as applicable, shall deliver or cause to be delivered to the Initial Purchaser, Owner Trustee and Trustee each of the documents, certificates and other items as follows:

- (a) a certificate of an officer of the Seller substantially in the form of Exhibit C hereto;
- (b) copies of resolutions of Hercules, as Seller and Servicer, and the sole member of the Trust Depositor approving the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, the Transaction Documents to which it is a party and the transactions contemplated hereunder and thereunder, certified in each case by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of Hercules and the sole member of the Trust Depositor;
- (c) officially certified evidence dated within 30 days of the Closing Date of due formation and good standing of the Seller under the laws of the State of Maryland;
- (d) the initial List of Loans, certified by an officer of the Trust Depositor, together with an Assignment with respect to the Initial Loan Assets substantially in the form of Exhibit A (along with the delivery of any instruments and Loan Files as required under Section 2.09);
- (e) a certificate of an officer of the sole member of the Trust Depositor substantially in the form of Exhibit B hereto;
- (f) a letter from a nationally recognized accounting firm, addressed to the Seller and the Trust Depositor, stating that such firm has reviewed a sample of ten (10) of the Initial Loans and performed specific procedures for such sample with respect to certain loan terms;

(g) officially certified evidence dated within 30 days of the Closing Date of due organization and good standing of the Trust Depositor under the laws of the State of Delaware;

(h) evidence of the proper filing of a UCC-1 financing statement, naming the Seller as seller or debtor, naming the Trust Depositor as assignor, buyer or secured party, and naming the Issuer as total assignee of the Seller, buyer or secured party and describing the Loan Assets as collateral, with the office of the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware and in such other locations as required by the applicable UCC; and evidence of the proper filing of a UCC-1 financing statement, naming the Trust Depositor as seller or debtor, naming the Issuer as assignor, buyer or secured party, and naming the Trustee as total assignee of the Trust Depositor, buyer or secured party and describing the Loan Assets as collateral with the office of the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware and in such other locations as required by the applicable UCC; and evidence of proper filing of a UCC-1 financing statement, naming the Issuer as debtor, naming the Trustee as secured party and describing the Collateral as collateral with the office of the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware and in such other locations as required by the applicable UCC;

(i) an Officer's Certificate listing the Servicer's Servicing Officers;

(j) a fully executed copy of each of the Transaction Documents;

(k) except with respect to (i) Agent Loans, Co-Agent Loans and Third Party Agent Loans where the Seller (or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Seller) receives payments on behalf of or as agent for the other lenders thereunder or where payments thereunder are made directly to such other lenders on behalf of or as agent for the Seller (or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Seller) and (ii) Loans described in Section 7.01(d), a copy of the written notice from the Servicer notifying and directing the Obligor with respect to each such Loan to make all payments on the Loans, whether by wire transfer, ACH or otherwise, directly to the Lockbox Account;

(l) a copy of the written notice from the Servicer notifying and directing each of Hercules'sco-lenders under Co-Agent Loans and Third-Party Agent Loans that receive payments on behalf of the Seller, to transfer such payments received from the Obligors with respect to such Loans to the Lockbox Account within one (1) business day of receipt of such payments by such co-lender; and

(m) written evidence with respect to the reconveyance of and release of any Lien upon any portion of Collateral previously secured by another warehouse financing of the Seller or its Affiliates.

Section 2.03. Acceptance by Issuer.

On the Closing Date, if the conditions set forth in Section 2.02 have been satisfied, the Issuer shall issue to, or upon the order of, the Trust Depositor the Certificate representing ownership of a beneficial interest in one hundred percent (100%) of the Issuer and the Issuer shall issue, and the Trustee shall authenticate, to, or upon the order of, the Trust Depositor the Notes secured by the Collateral.

Section 2.04. Conveyance of Substitute Loans.

(a) With respect to any Substitute Loans to be conveyed to the Trust Depositor by the Seller as described in Section 2.06, the Seller hereby sells, transfers, assigns, sets over and otherwise conveys to the Trust Depositor, without recourse other than as expressly provided herein (and the Trust Depositor shall purchase through cash payment and/or by exchange of one or more related Loans released by the Issuer to the Trust Depositor on the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date), all the right, title and interest of the Seller in and to the Substitute Loans and Related Property.

The purchase price may equal, exceed or be less than the fair market value of such Substitute Loan as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, plus in each case accrued interest thereon. To the extent the purchase price of any Loan is less than the fair market value thereof, the Seller will be deemed to have made a capital contribution with respect to such excess to the Trust Depositor.

(b) Subject to Sections 2.01(d) and (e) and the conditions set forth in Section 2.06, the Trust Depositor shall sell, transfer, assign, set over and otherwise convey to the Issuer, without recourse other than as expressly provided herein and therein, (i) all the right, title and interest of the Trust Depositor in and to the Substitute Loans and (ii) all other Related Property related to such Substitute Loans (the property in clauses (i) and (ii) above, upon such transfer, becoming part of the Collateral).

(c) The Seller shall transfer to the Trust Depositor under the Sale and Contribution Agreement and the Trust Depositor shall transfer to the Issuer hereunder the applicable Substitute Loans and Related Property only upon the satisfaction of each of the following conditions on or prior to the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in addition to the conditions set forth in Section 2.10):

(i) the Trust Depositor shall have provided the Issuer and the Trustee with timely notice of such substitution, which shall be delivered no later than 11:00 a.m. on the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(ii) there shall have occurred, with respect to each such Substitute Loan, a corresponding Substitution Event with respect to one or more Loans then in the Collateral;

(iii) the Seller and the Trust Depositor shall have delivered to the Issuer and the Trustee a Subsequent List of Loans listing the applicable Substitute Loans and an assignment agreement as required by the related Underlying Loan Agreement indicating that the Issuer is the holder of the related Substitute Loan;

(iv) the Seller shall have deposited or caused to be deposited in the Collection Account all Collections received by it with respect to the applicable Substitute Loans on and after the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(v) each of the representations and warranties made by the Trust Depositor pursuant to Sections 3.02 and 3.04 applicable to the Substitute Loans shall be true and correct as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(vi) the Seller shall bear all incidental transactions costs incurred in connection with a substitution effected pursuant to this Agreement and shall, at its own expense, on or prior to the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, indicate in its Computer Records that ownership of each Substitute Loan identified on the Subsequent List of Loans has been sold by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to the Transfer and Servicing Agreements; and

(vii) if such Substitute Loan is a Co-Agented Loans or a Third-Party Agented Loan, the Servicer shall have notified and directed each of Hercules's co-lenders under such Substitute Loan that receive payments on behalf of the Seller, to transfer such payments received from the Obligor with respect to such Substitute Loan to the Lockbox Account within one (1) business day of receipt of such payments by such co-lender.

(d) The Servicer, the Issuer and the Trustee (at the request of the Servicer) shall execute and deliver such instruments, consents or other documents and perform all acts reasonably requested by the Servicer in order to effect the transfer and release of any of the Issuer's interests in the Loans that are being substituted.

Section 2.05. Optional Sales of Loans

(a) At its option, any Loan may be sold by the Issuer to Hercules (or any of its Affiliates) or a third party if:

(i) such Loan becomes a Defaulted Loan;

(ii) such Loan becomes a Delinquent Loan;

(iii) such Loan becomes a Restructured Loan; or

(iv) the Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf), in its discretion, elects to sell the Loan.

(b) No optional sale of any Loan (whether to Hercules, any of its affiliates, or a third party) may be executed for a price less than the sum of (i) the Outstanding Loan Balance of such Loan and (ii) interest accrued to the date of such sale on the principal balance of such Loan at the interest rate applicable to such Loan, and any such sale shall be subject to the further limitations described in Section 2.10 below.

The Sale Proceeds from any sale pursuant to this Section 2.05(a) will be deposited into the Collection Account and allocated as provided in Section 7.06. Upon receipt by the Servicer for deposit in the Collection Account of the amounts of Sale Proceeds received in connection with any such sale, the Servicer shall request and the Issuer and the Trustee shall assign to the party designated by the Servicer (or to the Servicer itself) all of the Issuer's and Trustee's right, title and interest in the repurchased Loan and related Loan Assets without recourse, representation or warranty. Thereafter, such reassigned Loan shall no longer be included in the Collateral.

Section 2.06. Optional Substitution of Loans.

(a) At its option, any Loan may be substituted by the Issuer and replaced with a substitute loan (each such Loan, a Substitute Loan) if any of the following occur (each, a "Substitution Event"):

- (i) such Loan becomes a Defaulted Loan;
- (ii) such Loan becomes a Delinquent Loan;
- (iii) such Loan becomes a Restructured Loan; or
- (iv) the Issuer, in its discretion, elects to substitute the Loan.

Any such substitution shall be initiated by delivery of written notice (a "Notice of Substitution") to the Trustee from the Servicer that the Issuer intends to substitute a Loan pursuant to this Section 2.06 and shall be completed prior to sixty (60) days after delivery of such notice. Each Notice of Substitution shall specify the Loan to be substituted, the reasons for such substitution and the Transfer Deposit Amount with respect to the Loan. The price deemed paid by the Issuer for any Substitute Loan shall be an amount equal to the Outstanding Loan Balance thereof, *plus* accrued interest thereon.

(b) No substitution of a Substitute Loan will be permitted unless the Servicer determines that such Substitute Loan is a Qualified Substitute Loan as of the date each such Substitute Loan is transferred to the Issuer.

(c) Any such substitution shall be subject to the further limitations described in Section 2.10 below.

Section 2.07. Acquisition of Additional Loans.

(a) During the Reinvestment Period, the Servicer may elect to transfer a portion of the Principal Collections in the Collection Account that are anticipated to be otherwise available for deposit in the Reinvestment Account on the immediately following Payment Date pursuant to Section 7.06(b) to the Reinvestment Account in accordance with Section 7.06(b), which amounts, together with other amounts on deposit in the Reinvestment Account, may be used by the Issuer to acquire Additional Loans at any time during the Reinvestment Period.

(b) With respect to any Additional Loans to be conveyed to the Trust Depositor by the Seller in connection with the acquisition of such Additional Loan, the Seller hereby sells, transfers, assigns, sets over and otherwise conveys to the Trust Depositor, without recourse other than as expressly provided herein (and the Trust Depositor shall purchase through cash payment), all the right, title and interest of the Seller in and to the Additional Loans and Related Property.

(c) Subject to Sections 2.01(d) and (e), the Trust Depositor shall sell, transfer, assign, set over and otherwise convey to the Issuer, without recourse other than as expressly provided herein and therein, (i) all the right, title and interest of the Trust Depositor in and to the Additional Loans and (ii) all other Related Property related to such Additional Loans (the property in clauses (i) and (ii) above, upon such transfer, becoming part of the Collateral).

(d) The Seller shall transfer to the Trust Depositor under the Sale and Contribution Agreement and the Trust Depositor shall transfer to the Issuer hereunder the applicable Additional Loans and Related Property only upon the satisfaction of each of the following conditions on or prior to the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date:

- (i) such Additional Loan is a Qualified Additional Loan as of the date such Additional Loan is transferred to the Issuer;
- (ii) the Trust Depositor shall have provided the Issuer and the Trustee with timely notice of such acquisition, which shall be delivered no later than 11:00 a.m. on the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date;
- (iii) the Seller and the Trust Depositor shall have delivered to the Issuer and the Trustee a Subsequent List of Loans listing the applicable Additional Loans and an assignment agreement as required by the related Underlying Loan Agreement indicating that the Issuer is the holder of the related Additional Loan;
- (iv) the Seller shall have deposited or caused to be deposited in the Collection Account all Collections received by it with respect to the applicable Additional Loans on and after the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date;
- (v) each of the representations and warranties made by the Trust Depositor pursuant to Sections 3.02 and 3.04 applicable to the Additional Loans shall be true and correct as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date;
- (vi) the Seller shall bear all incidental transactions costs incurred in connection with an acquisition of Additional Loans effected pursuant to this Agreement and shall, at its own expense, on or prior to the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date, indicate in its Computer Records that ownership of each Additional Loan identified on the Additional List of Loans has been sold by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to the Transfer and Servicing Agreements; and
- (vii) if such Additional Loan is a Co-Agented Loans or a Third-Party Agented Loan, the Servicer shall have notified and directed each of Hercules's co-lenders under such Substitute Loan that receive payments on behalf of the Seller, to transfer such payments received from the Obligors with respect to such Substitute Loan to the Lockbox Account within one (1) business day of receipt of such payments by such co-lender.

(e) The Issuer's acquisition of Split Loans will be subject to the satisfaction of the following conditions:

(i) on or prior to the Transfer Date on which the Issuer acquires any Split Loans:

(1) U.S. Bank (or another Qualified Institution) shall have been designated as Split Loan Agent by the Issuer, the Servicer and the applicable Warehouse Lender and shall have accepted its appointment as such Split Loan Agent;

(2) the Issuer, the Servicer, the applicable Warehouse Lender, the Split Loan Agent, and acting at the direction of the Issuer, the Trustee, the Custodian and the Backup Servicer shall have implemented an arrangement with the applicable Warehouse Lender governing the splitting of such Split Loans with the loans financed by the applicable Warehouse Lender pursuant to a Split Loan Intercreditor Agreement satisfying the requirements set forth in this Agreement;

(3) the Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf) shall have instructed the Obligors under any such Split Loans acquired by the Issuer to make payments to the applicable Split Loan Account; and

(4) the original loan files relating to any Split Loans shall have been delivered to the Split Loan Agent to be held by the Split Loan Agent (or its agent), as custodian, and as agent for the benefit of the applicable Warehouse Lender and the Issuer.

(ii) Collections received in respect of any Split Loans shall be swept on a daily basis by the Split Loan Agent (at the direction of the Servicer) or the Servicer, as applicable, to a subaccount held at the Split Loan Agent in the name of the Issuer and then swept on a daily basis by the Split Loan Agent to the Collection Account.

(f) The Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf) shall deliver notice to the Rating Agency of the implementation of any Split Loan arrangement and the entry into any Split Loan Intercreditor Agreement.

Section 2.08. Release of Excluded Amounts.

(a) The parties hereto acknowledge and agree that the Issuer has no interest in the Excluded Amounts. The Trustee hereby agrees to release to the Issuer from the Loan Assets, and the Issuer hereby agrees to release to the Trust Depositor, any Excluded Amounts immediately upon identification thereof and upon receipt of an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer, which release shall be automatic and shall require no further act by the Trustee or the Issuer; *provided* that the Trustee and Issuer shall execute and deliver such instruments of release and assignment or other documents, or otherwise confirm the foregoing release, as may reasonably be requested by the Trust Depositor in writing. Such Excluded Amounts shall not constitute and shall not be included in the Loan Assets.

(b) Immediately upon the release to the Trust Depositor by the Trustee of any Excluded Amounts, the Trust Depositor hereby irrevocably agrees to release to the Seller such Excluded Amounts, which release shall be automatic and shall require no further act by the Trust Depositor; *provided* that the Trust Depositor shall execute and deliver such instruments of release and assignment or other documents, or otherwise confirm the foregoing release of such Excluded Amounts, as may be reasonably requested by the Seller in writing.

Section 2.09. Delivery of Documents in the Loan File

(a) Subject to the delivery requirements set forth in Section 2.09(b), the Issuer hereby authorizes and directs the Seller and the Trust Depositor to deliver possession of all the Loan Files to the Custodian on the Trustee's behalf (with copies to be held by the Servicer), on behalf of and for the account of the Noteholders. The Seller and the Trust Depositor shall also identify on the List of Loans (including any deemed amendment thereof associated with any Additional Loans or Substitute Loans), whether by attached schedule or marking or other effective identifying designation, all Loans that are evidenced by such instruments.

(b) With respect to each Loan in the Collateral, (i) on or prior to the Closing Date in the case of the Initial Loans and two (2) Business Days before the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loan or the Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loans (or, in each case, such lesser time as shall be acceptable to the Custodian), the Trust Depositor or the Seller will deliver or cause to be delivered to the Custodian on the Trustee's behalf, to the extent not previously delivered, each of the Required Loan Documents with respect to such Loan (including electronic copies except to the extent required under the definition of Required Loan Documents or noted on Annex A to the List of Loans); and (ii) on or before the Closing Date in the case of the Initial Loans and on or before the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loan or the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loan (or, in each case, such lesser time as shall be acceptable to the Custodian), the Trust Depositor or the Seller will deliver or cause to be delivered to the Custodian on the Trustee's behalf, to the extent not previously delivered, each of the documents in the Loan File that is not part of the Required Loan Documents with respect to such Loan (including electronic copies except to the extent noted on Annex A to the List of Loans).

Section 2.10. Limitations on Optional Sale and Substitution

In no event may (a) the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of Delinquent Loans and Restructured Loans optionally sold or substituted by the Issuer hereunder for any reason exceed 7.5% (rounded to the nearest tenth of a percent) of the sum of (i) the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance as of the Cutoff Date (the "Cutoff Date Pool Balance") *plus* (ii) the sum of the Outstanding Loan Balance of each Additional Loan acquired by the Issuer after the Closing Date (determined as of the date such Additional Loan is acquired by the Issuer), subject to the limitation in clause (c) below on aggregate optional sales and substitutions with respect to all of the Loans, (b) the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of Defaulted Loans sold or substituted by

the Issuer exceed 7.5% (rounded to the nearest tenth of a percent) of the sum of (i) the Cutoff Date Pool Balance *plus* (ii) the sum of the Outstanding Loan Balance of each Additional Loan acquired by the Issuer after the Closing Date (determined as of the date such Additional Loan is acquired by the Issuer), subject to the limitation in clause (c) below on aggregate optional sales and substitutions with respect to all of the Loans, or (c) the aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance of all Loans (including any Delinquent Loans, Restructured Loans or Defaulted Loans optionally sold or substituted as described above) optionally sold or substituted by the Issuer for any reason exceed 15% (rounded to the nearest whole number) of the sum of (i) the Cutoff Date Pool Balance *plus* (ii) the sum of the Outstanding Loan Balance of each Additional Loan acquired by the Issuer after the Closing Date (determined as of the date such Additional Loan is acquired by the Issuer). The foregoing limitations shall not apply to sales to unaffiliated third parties of (i) Delinquent Loans, Restructured Loans or Defaulted Loans where the Issuer (or the Servicer on its behalf) has determined in good faith that the best recovery for such Loan is the sale thereof, (ii) a Loan which is subject to contractual purchase rights of unaffiliated third parties and such unaffiliated third party has exercised such right and (iii) a Loan which is being refinanced and the related Obligor or new lender has requested that such Loan be sold to an unaffiliated third party for the purpose of refinancing such Loan. For the purpose of calculating the percentage of the Cutoff Date Pool Balance comprising Loans that are optionally sold or substituted as described above, any Substitute Loans that have been placed into the Collateral in satisfaction of the Trust Depositor's obligations to repurchase or substitute Loans pursuant to Section 11.01 shall be disregarded.

Section 2.11. Certification by Custodian: Possession of Loan Files

(a) Review; Certification. On or prior to the date that is two (2) Business Days after the Closing Date (in the case of the Initial Loans), the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Additional Loans) or the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Substitute Loans), the Custodian shall review the Required Loan Documents in the Loan File that are required to be delivered pursuant to Section 2.09(b) on the Closing Date (in the case of the Initial Loans), the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Additional Loans) or the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Substitute Loans), and shall deliver to the Seller, the Trust Depositor, the Trustee, and the Servicer a certification with respect to the Required Loan Documents delivered to it at such time in the form attached hereto as Exhibit L-1 on or prior to the date that is two (2) Business Days after the Closing Date (in the case of the Initial Loans), the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Additional Loans) or the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Substitute Loans). Within two (2) Business Days after the Custodian receives the Required Loan Documents in the Loan File that are permitted, pursuant to Section 2.09(b), to be delivered after the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Additional Loans) or the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Substitute Loans), the Custodian shall deliver to the Seller, the Trust Depositor, the Trustee and the Servicer a certification with respect to the Required Loan Documents delivered to it at such time in the form attached hereto as Exhibit L-1, which updated certification shall supplement any previous certification given. Within 360 days after the Closing Date (in the case of the Initial Loans), the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Additional Loans) and the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in the case of any Substitute Loans), the Custodian shall deliver to the Seller, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Trustee and any Noteholder who requests a copy from the Trustee a final certification in the form attached hereto as Exhibit L-2. A copy of the final certification will be provided to any Noteholder upon request.

(b) Non-Conforming Loan Files. If the Custodian during the process of reviewing the Required Loan Documents in a Loan File finds any document constituting the Required Loan Documents that is not properly executed (if applicable), has not been received, is unrelated to a Loan identified in the List of Loans, or does not conform on its face in a material respect to the requirements of the definition of Required Loan Documents, or the description thereof as set forth in items (b)(i) and (ii) of the definition of List of Loans, the Custodian shall promptly so notify the Seller, the Trust Depositor and the Servicer in the form of an exception report attached to a certification required to be delivered pursuant to Section 2.11(a). In performing any such review, the Custodian may conclusively rely on the Seller as to the purported genuineness of any such document and any signature thereon. It is understood that the scope of the Custodian's review of the Loan Files is limited solely to confirming that the documents listed in the definition of Required Loan Documents have been executed and received and relate to the Loans identified in the List of Loans. The Seller agrees to use commercially reasonable efforts to remedy a defect in a document constituting part of a Loan File of which it is so notified by the Custodian in an exception report and which the Seller, the Trust Depositor or the Servicer has determined to be material in nature. If, however, within 30 days after the determination by the Seller (notice of which determination shall be provided to the Trust Depositor and the Servicer (with a copy to the Trustee and the Owner Trustee) or notice from the Trust Depositor or Servicer (with a copy to the Trustee and the Owner Trustee) that an exception is material, the Seller has not remedied the defect and such defect materially and adversely affects the value of the related Loan, such Loan will be treated as an Ineligible Loan and the Seller will (i) substitute in lieu of such Loan a Substitute Loan in the manner and subject to the conditions set forth in Section 11.01 or (ii) repurchase such Loan at a purchase price equal to the Transfer Deposit Amount, which purchase price shall be deposited in the Collection Account within such 30 day period. For the avoidance of doubt, neither the Trustee nor the Custodian shall be responsible for determining whether an item listed on an exception report constitutes a material defect or whether such defect materially and adversely affects the value of the related Loan or the interest of any Noteholder.

(c) Release of Entire Loan File upon Sale, Substitution or Repurchase. Subject to Section 5.08(a), upon receipt by the Custodian of a certification of a Servicing Officer of the Servicer of such substitution or of such purchase and the deposit of the amounts then required to be deposited as described in Section 2.05, Section 2.06, Section 2.11(b) or Section 11.01, as applicable, in the Collection Account (which certification shall be in the form of Exhibit M hereto), the Custodian shall release and ship to the Servicer for release to the Seller the related Loan File and, upon request, the Trustee and the Issuer shall execute, without recourse, and deliver such instruments of transfer necessary to transfer all right, title and interest in such Loan to the Seller free and clear of any Liens created by the Transaction Documents. All costs of any such transfer shall be borne by the Seller.

(d) Partial Release of Loan File and/or Related Property. Subject to Section 5.08(b), if in connection with taking any action in connection with a Loan (including, without limitation, the amendment to documents in the Loan File and/or a revision to Related Property) the Servicer requires any item constituting part of the Loan File, or the release from the Lien of

the related Loan of all or part of any Related Property, the Servicer shall deliver to the Custodian a certificate to such effect in the form attached as Exhibit M hereto. Subject to Section 5.08(d), upon receipt of such certification, the Custodian shall ship for delivery to the Servicer within two (2) Business Days of such request (if such request was received by 2:00 p.m., central time), the requested documentation, and, upon request of the Servicer, the Trustee shall execute, without recourse, and deliver such instruments of transfer necessary to release all or the requested part of the Related Property from the Lien of the related Loan and/or the Lien under the Transaction Documents.

(e) Annual Certification. Within ninety (90) days of the beginning of each calendar year, commencing in 2019, the Custodian shall deliver to the Seller, the Trust Depositor and the Servicer a certification in the form of Exhibit K.

(f) Notwithstanding any language to the contrary herein, neither the Trustee nor the Custodian makes any representations as to, and shall not be responsible to verify, (i) the validity, legality, enforceability, due authorization, recordability, sufficiency for any purpose, or genuineness of any of the documents contained in each Loan File or (ii) the collectability, insurability, effectiveness or suitability of any such Loan Asset. In its review of documents and instruments pursuant to this Agreement, the Custodian and Trustee shall be under no duty or obligation to inspect, review or examine the Loan Files to determine that the contents thereof are genuine, enforceable or appropriate for the represented purpose or that they are other than what they purport to be on their face.

ARTICLE 3.

REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES

The Trust Depositor makes, and upon each conveyance of Additional Loans or Substitute Loans, as applicable, is deemed to make, the representations and warranties in Section 3.01 through Section 3.04, on which the Issuer will rely in purchasing the Initial Loan Assets on the Closing Date, any Additional Loan Assets on the relevant Additional Loan Cutoff Date and any Substitute Loan Assets on the relevant Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, and on which the Securityholders will rely.

Such representations and warranties are given as of the execution and delivery of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date (or Additional Loan Cutoff Date or Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable), but shall survive the sale, transfer and assignment of the Loan Assets to the Issuer. The repurchase obligation or substitution obligation of the Trust Depositor set forth in Section 11.01 constitutes the sole remedy available for a breach of a representation or warranty of the Trust Depositor set forth in Section 3.01 through Section 3.04 of this Agreement.

Section 3.01. Representations and Warranties Regarding the Trust Depositor

The Trust Depositor represents and warrants to the Issuer and the Trustee that:

(a) Organization and Good Standing. The Trust Depositor is a limited liability company duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Delaware and has the power to own its assets and to transact the business in which it is currently engaged. The Trust Depositor is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing in each jurisdiction in which the character of the business transacted by it or properties owned or leased by it requires such qualification and in which the failure so to qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets, or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Trust Depositor or the Issuer.

(b) Authorization; Valid Sale; Binding Obligations. The Trust Depositor has the power and authority to make, execute, deliver and perform this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and all of the transactions contemplated under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, and to create the Issuer and cause it to make, execute, deliver and perform its obligations under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party, and the Trust Depositor has taken all necessary limited liability company action to authorize the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party. This Agreement shall effect a valid sale, transfer and assignment of or grant a security interest in the Loan Assets from the Trust Depositor to the Issuer. This Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Trust Depositor is a party constitute the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Trust Depositor enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except as enforcement of such terms may be limited by applicable Insolvency Laws and general principles of equity, whether considered in a suit at law or in equity.

(c) No Consent Required. The Trust Depositor is not required to obtain the consent of any other party (other than those that it has already obtained) or any consent, license, approval or authorization from, or registration or declaration with, any Governmental Authority (other than (i) the filing of UCC financing statements and (ii) those that it has already obtained) in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

(d) No Violations. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party by the Trust Depositor, and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, will not violate in any material respect any Applicable Law applicable to the Trust Depositor, or conflict with, result in a default under or constitute a breach of the Trust Depositor's organizational documents or material Contractual Obligations to which the Trust Depositor is a party or by which the Trust Depositor or any of the Trust Depositor's properties may be bound, or result in the creation or imposition of any Lien of any kind upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such material Contractual Obligations, other than as contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(e) Litigation. No litigation or administrative proceeding of or before any court, tribunal or governmental body is currently pending, or to the knowledge of the Trust Depositor threatened, against the Trust Depositor or any of its properties or with respect to this Agreement, the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party or the Securities (i) that, if adversely determined, would in the reasonable judgment of the Trust Depositor be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Trust Depositor or the Issuer or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which the Trust Depositor is a party or (ii) seeking to adversely affect the federal income tax or other federal, state or local tax attributes of the Certificate or Notes.

(f) Solvency. The Trust Depositor, at the time of and after giving effect to each conveyance of Loan Assets hereunder, is Solvent on and as of the date thereof.

(g) Taxes. The Trust Depositor has filed or caused to be filed all tax returns which, to its knowledge, are required to be filed and has paid all taxes shown to be due and payable on such returns or on any assessments made against it or any of its property and all other taxes, fees or other charges imposed on it or any of its property by any Governmental Authority (other than any amount of tax due, the validity of which is currently being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings and with respect to which reserves in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles have been provided on the books of the Trust Depositor); no tax Lien has been filed and, to the Trust Depositor's knowledge, no claim is being asserted, with respect to any such tax, fee or other charge.

(h) Place of Business; No Changes. The Trust Depositor's location (within the meaning of Article 9 of the UCC) is the State of Delaware. The Trust Depositor has not changed its name, whether by amendment of its certificate of formation, by reorganization or otherwise, and has not changed its location within the 4-months preceding the Closing Date.

(i) Not an Investment Company. The Trust Depositor is not and, after giving effect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, will not be required to be registered as an "investment company" under the 1940 Act.

(j) Sale Treatment. Other than for accounting and tax purposes, the Trust Depositor has treated the transfer of Loan Assets to the Issuer for all purposes as a sale and purchase on all of its relevant books and records and other applicable documents.

(k) Security Interest.

(i) This Agreement creates a valid and continuing security interest (as defined in the applicable UCC) in favor of the Issuer in all right, title and interest of Trust Depositor in the Loan Assets, which security interest is prior to all other Liens (except for Permitted Liens), and is enforceable as such against creditors of and purchasers from the Trust Depositor;

(ii) the Loans, along with the related Loan Files, constitute "general intangibles," "instruments," "accounts," "investment property," or "chattel paper," within the meaning of the applicable UCC;

(iii) the Trust Depositor owns and has, and upon the sale and transfer thereof by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer, the Issuer will have, good and marketable title to the Loan Assets free and clear of any Lien (other than Permitted Liens), claim or encumbrance of any Person;

(iv) the Trust Depositor has received all consents and approvals required by the terms of the Loan Assets to the sale of the Loan Assets hereunder to the Issuer;

(v) the Trust Depositor has caused the filing of all appropriate financing statements in the proper filing office in the appropriate jurisdictions under Applicable Law in order to perfect the security interest in the Loan Assets granted to the Issuer under this Agreement to the extent perfection can be achieved by filing a financing statement;

(vi) other than the security interest granted to the Issuer pursuant to this Agreement, the Trust Depositor has not pledged, assigned, sold, granted a security interest in or otherwise conveyed any of the Loan Assets. The Trust Depositor has not authorized the filing of and is not aware of any financing statements naming the Trust Depositor as debtor that include a description of collateral covering the Loan Assets other than any financing statement (A) relating to the security interest granted by the Trust Depositor under this Agreement, or (B) that has been terminated or for which a release or partial release has been filed. The Trust Depositor is not aware of the filing of any judgment or tax Lien filings against the Trust Depositor;

(vii) all original executed copies of each Underlying Note (if any) that constitute or evidence the Loan Assets have been delivered to the Trustee;

(viii) the Trust Depositor has received a written acknowledgment from the Trustee that the Trustee or its bailee is holding any Underlying Notes that constitute or evidence any Loan Assets solely on behalf of and for the benefit of the Securityholders; and

(ix) none of the Underlying Notes that constitute or evidence any Loan Assets has any marks or notations indicating that they have been pledged, assigned or otherwise conveyed to any Person other than the Issuer and the Trustee.

(l) Value Given. The cash payments and the Certificate received by the Trust Depositor in respect of the purchase price of the Loan Assets sold hereunder constitute reasonably equivalent value in consideration for the transfer to the Issuer of such Loan Assets under this Agreement, such transfer was not made for or on account of an antecedent debt owed by the Seller to the Trust Depositor, and such transfer was not and is not voidable or subject to avoidance under any Insolvency Law.

(m) Investment Company. The Issuer is not and, after giving effect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, will not be required to be registered as an “investment company” within the meaning of the 1940 Act.

(n) No Defaults. The Trust Depositor is not in default with respect to any order or decree of any court or any order, regulation or demand of any federal, state, municipal or governmental agency, which default would reasonably be expected to have consequences that would materially and adversely affect the condition (financial or otherwise) or operations of the Trust Depositor or its respective properties or might have consequences that would materially and adversely affect its performance hereunder.

(o) Bulk Transfer Laws. The transfer, assignment and conveyance of the Loans by the Trust Depositor pursuant to this Agreement are not subject to the bulk transfer laws or any similar statutory provisions in effect in any applicable jurisdiction.

(p) Origination and Collection Practices. The origination and collection practices used by any Affiliate of the Trust Depositor with respect to each Loan have been consistent with the Servicing Standard and have complied with the Credit and Collection Policy in all material respects.

(q) [Reserved].

(r) Lack of Intent to Hinder, Delay or Defraud. Neither the Trust Depositor nor any of its Affiliates sold, or will sell, any interest in any Loan Asset with any intent to hinder, delay or defraud any of their respective creditors.

(s) Nonconsolidation. The Trust Depositor conducts its affairs such that the Issuer would not be substantively consolidated in the estate of the Trust Depositor and their respective separate existences would not be disregarded in the event of the Trust Depositor's bankruptcy.

(t) Accuracy of Information. All written factual information heretofore furnished by the Trust Depositor for purposes of or in connection with this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which Trust Depositor is a party, or any transaction contemplated hereby or thereby is, and all such written factual information hereafter furnished by the Trust Depositor to any party to the Transaction Documents will be, true and accurate in all material respects, on the date such information is stated or certified; *provided* that the Trust Depositor shall not be responsible for any factual information furnished to it by any third party not affiliated with it, or the Seller or the Servicer, except to the extent that a Responsible Officer of the Trust Depositor has actual knowledge that such factual information is inaccurate in any material respect.

The representations and warranties set forth in Section 3.01(k) may not be waived by any Person and shall survive the termination of this Agreement. The Trust Depositor and Issuer shall provide the Rating Agency with prompt written notice upon obtaining knowledge of any breach of the representations and warranties set out in Section 3.01(k).

Section 3.02. Representations and Warranties Regarding Each Loan and as to Certain Loans in the Aggregate

The Trust Depositor represents and warrants as to each Initial Loan as of the Closing Date, as of each Additional Loan Cutoff Date with respect to each Additional Loan and as of each Substitute Loan Cutoff Date with respect to each Substitute Loan, that:

(a) List of Loans. The information set forth in the List of Loans attached hereto as Exhibit G (as the same may be amended or deemed amended in respect of a conveyance of Additional Loans on an Additional Loan Cutoff Date or Substitute Loans on a Substitute Loan Cutoff Date) is true, complete and correct as of the Closing Date and each Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable.

(b) Eligible Loan. Such Loan satisfies the criteria for the definition of Eligible Loan set forth in this Agreement as of the date of its conveyance hereunder.

Section 3.03. [Reserved].

Section 3.04. Representations and Warranties Regarding the Required Loan Documents

The Trust Depositor represents and warrants on the Closing Date with respect to the Initial Loans (or as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date (with respect to Additional Loans) or as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (with respect to Substitute Loans), as applicable), that except as otherwise provided in Section 2.09, the Required Loan Documents and each other item included in the Loan File for each Loan are in the possession of the Trustee (or the Custodian, on behalf of the Trustee).

Section 3.05. [Reserved].

Section 3.06. Representations and Warranties Regarding the Servicer.

The initial Servicer represents and warrants to the Owner Trustee and the Trustee that:

(a) Organization and Good Standing. The Servicer is a corporation duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of formation and has the power to own its assets and to transact the business in which it is currently engaged. The Servicer is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing in each jurisdiction in which the character of the business transacted by it or properties owned or leased by it requires such qualification and in which the failure to so qualify would have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets, or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Servicer or the Issuer. The Servicer is properly licensed in each jurisdiction to the extent required by the laws of such jurisdiction to service the Loans in accordance with the terms hereof and in which the failure to so qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets, or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Servicer or Issuer.

(b) Authorization; Binding Obligations. The Servicer has the power and authority to make, execute, deliver and perform this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Servicer is a party and all of the transactions contemplated under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Servicer is a party, and has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Servicer is a party. This Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Servicer is a party constitute the legal, valid and binding obligations of the Servicer enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except as enforcement of such terms may be limited by applicable Insolvency Laws and general principles of equity, whether considered in a suit at law or in equity.

(c) No Consent Required. The Servicer is not required to obtain the consent of any other party (other than those that it has already obtained) or any consent, license, approval or authorization from, or registration or declaration with, any Governmental Authority (other than those that it has already obtained) in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which the Servicer is a party.

(d) No Violations. The execution, delivery and performance by the Servicer of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Servicer is a party will not violate any Applicable Law applicable to the Servicer, or conflict with, result in a default under or constitute a breach of the Servicer's organizational documents or any material Contractual Obligations to which the Servicer is a party or by which the Servicer or any of the Servicer's properties may be bound, or result in the creation of or imposition of any Lien of any kind upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such material Contractual Obligations, other than as contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(e) Litigation. No litigation or administrative proceeding of or before any court, tribunal or governmental body is currently pending, or to the knowledge of the Servicer threatened, against the Servicer or any of its properties or with respect to this Agreement, or any other Transaction Document to which the Servicer is a party that, if adversely determined, would in the reasonable judgment of the Servicer be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Servicer or the Issuer or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any other Transaction Document to which the Servicer is a party.

(f) Reports. All reports, certificates and other written information furnished by the Servicer with respect to the Loans are correct in all material respects on the date such information is furnished or certified; *provided* that the Servicer shall not be responsible for any information furnished to it by any third party not affiliated with the Servicer contained in any such reports, certificates or other written information, except to the extent that a Responsible Officer of the Servicer has actual knowledge that such factual information is inaccurate in any material respect.

Section 3.07. Representations of the Backup Servicer.

The Backup Servicer represents and warrants to the Owner Trustee and the Trustee that:

(a) Organization and Good Standing. The Backup Servicer has been duly organized and is validly existing and in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of organization, with power, authority and legal right to own its properties and to conduct its business as such properties are currently owned and such business is currently conducted, and had at all relevant times, and now has, power, authority and legal right to enter into and perform its obligations under this Agreement;

(b) Due Qualification. The Backup Servicer is duly qualified to do business, is in good standing and has obtained all necessary licenses and approvals, in all jurisdictions in which the ownership or lease of property or the conduct of its business (including the servicing of the Loans as required by this Agreement) requires or shall require such qualification;

(c) Power and Authority. The Backup Servicer has the power and authority to execute and deliver this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party and to carry out its terms and their terms, respectively, and the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party have been duly authorized by the Backup Servicer by all necessary corporate action;

(d) Binding Obligation. This Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party shall constitute the legal, valid and binding obligations of the Backup Servicer enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except as enforceability may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, or other similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally and by equitable limitations on the availability of specific remedies, regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law;

(e) No Violation. The consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party, and the fulfillment of the terms of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party, shall not conflict with, result in any breach of any of the terms and provisions of, or constitute (with or without notice or lapse of time) a default under, the articles of incorporation or bylaws of the Backup Servicer, or any indenture, agreement, mortgage, deed of trust or other instrument to which the Backup Servicer is a party or by which it is bound, or result in the creation or imposition of any Lien upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such indenture, agreement, mortgage, deed of trust or other instrument, other than this Agreement, or violate any law, order, rule or regulation applicable to the Backup Servicer of any court or of any federal or state regulatory body, administrative agency or other governmental instrumentality having jurisdiction over the Backup Servicer or any of its properties;

(f) No Proceedings. There are no proceedings or investigations pending or, to the Backup Servicer's knowledge, threatened against the Backup Servicer, before any court, regulatory body, administrative agency or other tribunal or governmental instrumentality having jurisdiction over the Backup Servicer or its properties (A) asserting the invalidity of this Agreement or any of the Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party, (B) seeking to prevent the issuance of the Notes or the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any of the Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party, (C) seeking any determination or ruling that would reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the performance by the Backup Servicer of its obligations under, or the validity or enforceability of, this Agreement or any of the Transaction Documents to which the Backup Servicer is a party or (D) seeking to adversely affect the federal income tax or other federal, state or local tax attributes of the Notes;

(g) No Consents. The Backup Servicer is not required to obtain the consent of any other party or any consent, license, approval or authorization, or registration or declaration with, any governmental authority, bureau or agency in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of this Agreement which has not already been obtained.

ARTICLE 4.

PERFECTION OF TRANSFER AND PROTECTION OF SECURITY INTERESTS

Section 4.01. Custody of Loans.

The contents of each Loan File shall be held in the custody of the Custodian (on behalf of the Trustee) under the Indenture for the benefit of, and as agent for, the Securityholders.

Section 4.02. Filing.

On the Closing Date, the Seller, Trust Depositor and Servicer shall cause the UCC financing statement(s) referred to in Section 2.02(h) hereof to be filed, and from time to time the Servicer, on behalf of the Issuer, shall take and cause to be taken such actions and execute such documents as are necessary or desirable or as the Owner Trustee (acting at the direction of the Certificateholder) or Trustee (acting at the direction of the Majority Noteholders) may reasonably request to perfect and protect the Trustee's first priority perfected security interest in the Loan Assets against all other Persons, including, without limitation, the filing of financing statements, amendments thereto and continuation statements, the execution of transfer instruments and the making of notations on or taking possession of all records or documents of title. Notwithstanding the obligations of the Seller, Trust Depositor and Servicer set forth in the preceding sentence, the Issuer hereby authorizes the Servicer to prepare and file, at the expense of the initial Servicer, such UCC financing statements (including but not limited to renewal, continuation or in lieu statements) and amendments or supplements thereto or other instruments as the Servicer may from time to time deem necessary or appropriate in order to perfect and maintain the security interest granted hereunder in accordance with the UCC.

Section 4.03. Changes in Name, Organizational Structure or Location

(a) During the term of this Agreement, none of the Seller, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer shall change its name, form of organization, existence, state of formation or location without first giving at least 30 days' prior written notice to the other parties hereto and the Owner Trustee.

(b) If any change in either the Servicer's, the Seller's or the Trust Depositor's name, form of organization, existence, state of formation, location or other action would make any financing or continuation statement or notice of ownership interest or Lien relating to any Loan Asset seriously misleading within the meaning of applicable provisions of the UCC or any title statute, the Servicer, no later than ten (10) Business Days after the effective date of such change, shall file such amendments as may be required (including, but not limited to, any filings and other acts necessary or advisable under the UCC of each relevant jurisdiction) to preserve and protect the Trustee's security interest in the Loan Assets and the proceeds thereof.

Section 4.04. Costs and Expenses.

The initial Servicer agrees to pay all reasonable costs and disbursements in connection with the perfection and the maintenance of perfection, as against all third parties, of the Trustees' and Issuer's right, title and interest in and to the Loan Assets (including, without limitation, the security interest in the Related Property related thereto and the security interests provided for in the Indenture); *provided* that to the extent permitted by the Required Loan Documents, the Servicer may seek reimbursement for such costs and disbursements from the related Obligor.

Section 4.05. Sale Treatment

Other than for accounting and tax purposes, the Trust Depositor shall treat the transfer of Loan Assets made hereunder for all purposes as a sale and purchase on all of its relevant books and records.

Section 4.06. Separateness from Trust Depositor

The Seller agrees to take or refrain from taking or engaging in with respect to the Trust Depositor each of the actions or activities specified in the "substantive consolidation" opinion of Dechert LLP (including any certificates of the Seller delivered in connection therewith) delivered on the Closing Date, upon which the conclusions therein are based.

ARTICLE 5.

SERVICING OF LOANS

Section 5.01. Appointment and Acceptance.

(a) Hercules is hereby appointed as Servicer pursuant to this Agreement and pursuant to the other Transaction Documents under which the Servicer has any rights, duties or obligations. Hercules accepts such appointment and agrees to act as the Servicer pursuant to this Agreement and pursuant to the other Transaction Documents under which Hercules, as Servicer, has any rights, duties or obligations.

(b) U.S. Bank National Association is hereby appointed as Backup Servicer pursuant to this Agreement and pursuant to the other Transaction Documents under which the Backup Servicer has any rights, duties or obligations. U.S. Bank National Association hereby accepts such appointment and agrees to act as the Backup Servicer pursuant to this Agreement and pursuant to the other Transaction Documents under which U.S. Bank National Association, as Backup Servicer, has any rights, duties or obligations, subject to the terms of this Agreement.

Section 5.02. Duties of the Servicer and the Backup Servicer.

(a) The Servicer, as an independent contract servicer, shall service and administer the Loans (including, with respect to Agented Loans, Co-Agented Loans and Third Party Agented Loans, the Issuer's interest as a lender thereunder) and shall have full power and authority, acting alone, to do any and all things in connection with such servicing and administration which the Servicer may deem necessary or desirable and consistent with the terms of this Agreement, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard and the Issuer's rights under the applicable Underlying Loan Agreements. The parties hereto each acknowledge,

and the Noteholders and the Certificateholder are hereby deemed to acknowledge, that the Servicer, as Servicer under this Agreement, possesses only such rights with respect to the enforcement of rights and remedies with respect to the Loans and the Related Property and under the Required Loan Documents as those which have been transferred to the Issuer with respect to the related Loan. Therefore, the provisions of this Article V shall not apply to Third Party Agented Loans or Participated Loans except to the extent the Servicer, on behalf of the Issuer, has the right to vote, consent, give directions, make advances or receive payments with respect thereto, and these provisions shall only apply to Agented Loans and Co-Agented Loans with respect to which the Servicer is the lead agent and to the extent not inconsistent with the related Required Loan Documents.

(b) The Servicer may perform its duties directly or, consistent with the Servicing Standard, through agents, accountants, experts, attorneys, brokers, consultants or nominees selected with reasonable care by the Servicer. The Servicer will remain fully responsible and fully liable for its duties and obligations hereunder and under any other Transaction Document notwithstanding any such delegation to a third party. Performance by any such third party of any of the duties of the Servicer hereunder or under any other Transaction Document shall be deemed to be performance thereof by the Servicer. In addition, the Servicer may enter into Subservicing Agreements for any servicing and administration of Loans with any entity; *provided* that for any Subservicing Agreement that delegates all or substantially all of the Servicer's duties hereunder, the Holders of 100% of the Notes shall have consented in writing to such Subservicing Agreement and the Servicer shall have provided the Rating Agency with written notice of such Subservicing Agreement; *provided, further*, that the Backup Servicer shall not be required to obtain such consent if, after such time as the Backup Servicer shall have become the Servicer hereunder, it shall enter into a Subservicing Agreement that delegates all or substantially all of the Servicer's duties hereunder. The Servicer shall be entitled to terminate any Subservicing Agreement in accordance with the terms and conditions of such Subservicing Agreement and to either itself directly service the related Loans or enter into a Subservicing Agreement with a successor Subservicer as permitted in this clause (b); *provided* that the Servicer shall promptly notify the Rating Agency of the termination of any Subservicing Agreement that had delegated all or substantially all of the Servicer's duties hereunder. Notwithstanding any Subservicing Agreement, any of the provisions of this Agreement relating to agreements or arrangements between the Servicer and a Subservicer or referencing actions taken through a Subservicer or otherwise, so long as this Agreement shall remain effective, the Servicer shall remain obligated and primarily liable to the Trustee, for the benefit of Holders and on behalf of the Issuer, for the servicing and administering of the Loans in accordance with the provisions of this Agreement, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, without diminution of such obligation or liability by virtue of such Subservicing Agreements or other arrangements with third parties pursuant to this clause (b) or by virtue of indemnification from the Subservicer and to the same extent and under the same terms and conditions as if the Servicer alone were servicing and administering the Loans. For purposes of this Agreement, the Servicer shall be deemed to have received payments on Loans when any Subservicer has received such payments. The Servicer shall be entitled to enter into any agreement with a Subservicer for indemnification of the Servicer by such Subservicer, and nothing contained in this Agreement shall be deemed to limit or modify such indemnification.

(c) Any Subservicing Agreement that may be entered into and any transactions or services relating to the Loans involving a Subservicer in its capacity as such and not as an originator shall be deemed to be between the Subservicer and the Servicer alone, and the Trustee and the Securityholders shall not be deemed parties thereto and shall have no claims, rights, obligations, duties or liabilities with respect to the Subservicer except as set forth in Section 5.02(d). Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Servicer shall (i) at its expense and without reimbursement, deliver to the Trustee a copy of each Subservicing Agreement and (ii) provide notice of the termination of any Subservicer within a reasonable time after such Subservicer's termination to the Trustee.

(d) In the event the initial Servicer shall for any reason no longer be the Servicer, the initial Servicer at its expense and without right of reimbursement therefor, shall, upon request of the Trustee, deliver to the Backup Servicer or other Successor Servicer all documents and records (including computer tapes and diskettes) in its possession relating to each Subservicing Agreement and the Loans then being serviced hereunder and an accounting of amounts collected and held by it hereunder and otherwise use its best efforts to effect the orderly and efficient transfer of the Subservicing Agreements and of any other arrangements with third parties pursuant to clause (a) of this Section 5.02 to the Backup Servicer or other Successor Servicer to the extent permitted thereby.

(e) Modifications and Waivers Relating to Loans.

(i) So long as it is consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, the Servicer may agree to waive, modify or vary any term of any Loan, if in the Servicer's determination such waiver, modification or variance will not be materially adverse to the interests of the Noteholders; *provided* that the Servicer may not:

(1) agree to amend, waive, modify or vary any Loan in any manner that would extend the stated maturity date of such Loan beyond the Legal Final Payment Date; or

(2) enter into any amendment, waiver, modification or variance with respect to any Loan solely in order to render such Loan eligible for repurchase or substitution hereunder.

(ii) Except as expressly set forth in Section 5.02(e)(i), the Servicer may execute any amendments, waivers, modifications or variances related to such Loan and any documents related thereto on behalf of the Issuer.

(iii) [Reserved].

(iv) Although costs incurred by the Servicer or any Subservicer in respect of Servicing Advances, including any interest owed with respect thereto, may be added to the amount owing by the Obligor under the related Loan, such amounts shall not be so added for the purposes of calculating distributions to Noteholders. Any fees and costs imposed in connection therewith on the Obligor of the related Loan, and any reimbursement of Servicing Advances by any Obligor or out of Sale Proceeds,

Liquidation Proceeds or Insurance Proceeds, in each case, received with respect to the related Loan or its Related Property shall be withdrawn and payable to the Servicer from the Collection Account pursuant to Section 7.03(h) as additional servicing compensation or reimbursement, as applicable. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, so long as it is consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, the Servicer shall continue, and is hereby authorized and empowered to execute and deliver on behalf of the Issuer, the Trustee and each Securityholder, all instruments of amendment, waiver, satisfaction or cancellation, or of partial or full release, discharge and all other comparable instruments, with respect to the Loans and with respect to any Related Property. Such authority shall include, but not be limited to, the authority to substitute or release items of Related Property consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Agreement and sell Loans previously transferred to the Issuer. The Issuer and the Trustee have granted a power of attorney to the Servicer with respect thereto, pursuant to Section 5.02(t). In connection with any such sale, the Servicer shall deposit in the Collection Account, pursuant to Section 7.03(b), all proceeds received upon such sale (other than Excluded Amounts). If reasonably required by the Servicer, the Issuer and the Trustee shall furnish the Servicer, within five (5) Business Days of receipt of the Servicer's request, with any powers of attorney and other documents necessary or appropriate to enable the Servicer to carry out its servicing and administrative duties under this Agreement or under any of the other Transaction Documents. Any such request by the Servicer to the Issuer or the Trustee shall be accompanied by a certification in the form of Exhibit F attached hereto signed by a Servicing Officer. In connection with any substitution of Related Property, the Servicer shall deliver to the Trustee the items required by, and within the time frame set forth in, Section 2.09, assuming that the date of substitution is the relevant Substitute Loan Cutoff Date.

(v) The Servicer will not be in breach of its obligations under this Agreement by reason of any waiver, modification or variance taken by the administrative agent, syndicate agent or other Person acting in a similar capacity in respect of a Third Party Agented Loan or Participated Loan pursuant to its own authority or in respect of an Agented Loan, Co-Agented Loan or Third Party Agented Loan at the direction of the requisite percentage of the lenders in violation of this Agreement if the Servicer, acting on behalf of the Issuer, did not consent to such waiver, modification or variance on behalf of the Issuer.

(f) The Servicer shall service and administer the Loans (including collection, foreclosure, foreclosed property and repossessed collateral management procedures other than for Third Party Agented Loans and Participated Loans, and with respect to Third Party Agented Loans and Participated Loans, the Issuer's interest as a lender or purchaser thereunder) in accordance with the Required Loan Documents and other documents in the Loan File, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard.

(g) In accordance with the power set forth in Section 2.01(a), the initial Servicer shall perform the duties of the Issuer under the Transaction Documents. In furtherance of the foregoing, the initial Servicer shall consult with the Owner Trustee as the Servicer deems appropriate regarding the duties of the Issuer under the Transaction Documents. The initial

Servicer shall monitor the performance of the Issuer and the Owner Trustee of their respective duties under the Transaction Documents and shall advise the Owner Trustee when action is necessary to comply with the Issuer's or the Owner Trustee's duties under the Transaction Documents. The initial Servicer shall prepare for execution by the Owner Trustee or the Issuer or shall cause the preparation by other appropriate Persons of all such documents, reports, filings, instruments, certificates and opinions as it shall be the duty of the Issuer or the Owner Trustee to prepare, file or deliver pursuant to the Transaction Documents.

(h) In addition to the duties of the Servicer set forth in this Agreement or any of the Transaction Documents, the initial Servicer shall perform or shall cause to be performed such calculations and shall prepare for execution by the Issuer or the Owner Trustee or shall cause the preparation by other appropriate Persons of all such documents, reports, filings, instruments, certificates and opinions as it shall be the duty of the Issuer to prepare, file or deliver pursuant to state and federal tax and securities laws. In accordance with the directions of the Issuer or the Owner Trustee, as applicable, the initial Servicer shall administer, perform or supervise the performance of such other activities in connection with the Issuer as are not covered by any of the foregoing provisions and as are expressly requested by the Issuer or the Owner Trustee and are reasonably within the capability of the Servicer. The Servicer is hereby authorized to execute documents, instruments and certificates on behalf of the Issuer.

(i) Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement or any of the Transaction Documents to the contrary, the Servicer shall be responsible for promptly (upon a Responsible Officer of the Servicer having actual knowledge thereof) notifying the Owner Trustee and the Trustee in the event that any withholding tax is imposed on the Issuer's payments (or allocations of income) to a Securityholder. Any such notice shall be in writing and specify the amount of any withholding tax required to be withheld by the Owner Trustee or the Trustee pursuant to such provision.

(j) All tax returns required to be signed by the Issuer, if any, will be signed by the Servicer (so long as the Servicer is the Seller) on behalf of the Issuer if permitted under applicable law and otherwise by the Owner Trustee on behalf of the Issuer.

(k) The Servicer shall maintain appropriate books of account and records relating to services performed under this Agreement, which books of account and records shall be reasonably accessible for inspection by the Owner Trustee and Trustee at any time during the Servicer's normal business hours upon not less than three (3) Business Days' prior written notice.

(l) The initial Servicer shall provide written notice to the Rating Agency, the Backup Servicer and the Trustee of any change to the Servicing Standard and any material adverse change to the Credit and Collection Policy.

(m) For so long as any of the Notes are outstanding and are "restricted securities" within the meaning of Rule 144(a)(3) of the Securities Act, (i) the initial Servicer will provide or cause to be provided to any holder of such Notes and any prospective purchaser thereof designated by such holder, upon the request of such a holder or prospective purchaser, the information required to be provided to such holder or prospective purchaser by Rule

144A(d)(4) under the Securities Act; and (ii) the initial Servicer shall update such information from time to time in order to prevent such information from becoming false and misleading and will take such other actions as are necessary to ensure that the safe harbor exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act under Rule 144A is and will be available for resales of such Notes conducted in accordance with Rule 144A.

(n) The initial Servicer will keep in full force and effect its existence, rights and franchise as a Maryland corporation, and the Servicer shall obtain and preserve its qualification to do business in each jurisdiction in which such qualification is or shall be necessary to protect the validity and enforceability of this Agreement and of any of the Loans and to perform its duties under this Agreement.

(o) The Servicer shall be entitled to reimbursement for any Servicing Advances or Scheduled Payment Advances from Collections. Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, in no event shall the application of Scheduled Payment Advances prevent a Loan from being or becoming a Defaulted Loan.

(p) The Servicer shall not be responsible for any taxes payable by the Issuer or any Servicing Fees payable to any Successor Servicer.

(q) All payments received on Loans by the Servicer will be applied by the Servicer to amounts due by each Obligor in accordance with the provisions of the related Required Loan Documents or, if to be applied at the discretion of the Servicer, then consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard.

(r) To the extent permitted by applicable law, the initial Servicer shall be responsible for any tax reporting, disclosure, record keeping or list maintenance requirements of the Issuer under Code Sections 6011(a), 6111 or 6112, including, but not limited to, the preparation of IRS Form 8886 pursuant to Treasury Regulations Section 1.6011-4(d) or any successor provision and any required list maintenance under Treasury Regulations Section 301.6112-1 or any successor provision.

(s) The Servicer will maintain the Servicing Files at the principal place of business of the Servicer at the address set forth in Section 13.04 hereof in accordance with the Servicing Standard.

(t) The Trust Depositor, the Issuer and the Trustee each hereby irrevocably (except as provided below) appoint the Servicer its respective true and lawful agent and attorney-in-fact (with full power of substitution) in its name, place and stead and at the Issuer's expense, in connection with the performance of the Servicer's duties provided for in this Agreement and in the other Transaction Documents, including the following powers: (a) to give any necessary receipts or acquittance for amounts collected or received on or with respect to the Loans and the Related Property, (b) to make all necessary transfers of the Loans, and/or of the Related Property, as applicable, in accordance herewith and therewith, (c) to execute (under hand under seal or as a deed) and deliver all necessary or appropriate bills of sale, assignments, agreements and other instruments and endorsements in connection with any such transfer, and (d) to execute (under hand, under seal or as a deed) any votes, consents, directions, releases, amendments,

waivers, satisfactions and cancellations, agreements, instruments, orders or other documents or certificates in connection with or pursuant to this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents relating thereto or to the duties of the Servicer hereunder or thereunder, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer and the Trustee hereby ratifying and confirming all that such attorney-in-fact (or any substitute) shall lawfully do under this power of attorney and in accordance with this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents as applicable thereto. Nevertheless, if so requested by the Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer and the Trustee or any thereof, as requested, shall ratify and confirm any such act by executing and delivering to the Servicer or as directed by the Servicer all proper bills of sale, assignments, releases, endorsements and other certificates, instruments and documents of whatever nature as may reasonably be designated in any such request. This power of attorney shall, however, expire, and the Servicer and any substitute agent or attorney-in-fact appointed by the Servicer pursuant hereto shall cease to have any power to act as the agent or attorney-in-fact of the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or of the Trustee upon termination of this Agreement or upon a Servicer Transfer from and after which the Successor Servicer shall be deemed to have the rights of the Servicer pursuant to this clause (t).

(u) The Servicer shall execute and file such financing statements and cause to be executed and filed such continuation statements, all in such manner and in such places as may be required by law fully to preserve, maintain and protect the interest of the Issuer, the Securityholders, the Trustee and the Owner Trustee in the Loans and in the proceeds thereof. The Servicer shall deliver (or cause to be delivered) to the Owner Trustee and the Trustee file-stamped copies of, or filing receipts for, any document filed as provided above, as soon as available following such filing.

(v) The Servicer shall provide the Backup Servicer with a list of attorneys used in servicing or collecting on the Loans and shall provide an updated list to the Backup Servicer on an annual basis.

(w) Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, if any material conflict or material inconsistency exists among the Required Loan Documents, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, the provisions of the Required Loan Documents shall control.

(x) As set forth in and subject to the provisions of Article VIII, in the event the Servicer fails to perform its obligations hereunder, the Backup Servicer, should it assume the role of Successor Servicer, shall be responsible for the Servicer's duties in this Agreement as if it were the Servicer, provided that the Backup Servicer shall not be liable for the Servicer's breach of its obligations.

(y) The Backup Servicer shall receive a one-time fee of \$125,000 ("the Successor Servicer Engagement Fee") if it assumes the obligations of the Servicer hereunder.

(z) The Backup Servicer shall have the following duties: (i) the Backup Servicer shall conduct periodic on-site visits not more than once every 12 months to meet with appropriate operations personnel to discuss any changes in processes and procedures that have occurred since the last visit, (ii) within 90 days of the Closing Date and receipt of a complete data set from the Servicer, the Backup Servicer shall have completed all data-mapping, and (iii)

not more than once per year, the Backup Servicer shall update or amend the data-mapping by effecting a data-map refresh upon receipt of written notice from the Servicer specifying updated or amended fields, if any, in (a) fields in the Tape or (b) fields confirmed in the original data-mapping referred to in clause (ii) above. Each on-site visit shall be at the cost of Hercules.

Section 5.03. Liquidation of Loans.

(a) In the event that any payment due under any Loan and not postponed pursuant to Section 5.02 is not paid when the same becomes due and payable, or in the event the Obligor fails to perform any other covenant or obligation under the Loan which results in an event of default thereunder, the Servicer in accordance with the Required Loan Documents, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard shall take such commercially reasonable action as shall maximize the amount of recovery thereon and as the Servicer shall deem to be in the best interests of the Issuer; *provided* that if such Loan is an Agented Loan, Co-Agented Loan or a Third Party Agented Loan, the Servicer's obligations shall be limited to exercising the Issuer's rights thereunder; *provided, further*, that in lieu of taking such action, the Servicer, consistent with its Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, may amend or modify such Loan.

(b) The Servicer will not be in breach of its obligations under this Section 5.03 by reason of any action taken by the administrative agent, syndicate agent or other Person acting in a similar capacity in respect of a Third Party Agented Loan or a Participated Loan pursuant to its own authority or in respect of an Agented Loan, Co-Agented Loan, Third Party Agented Loan or Participated Loan at the direction of the requisite percentage of the lenders in violation of this Agreement if the Servicer, acting on behalf of the Issuer, did not consent to such action on behalf of the Issuer. The Servicer, consistent with its Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, may accelerate all payments due under any Loan to the extent permitted by the Required Loan Documents and foreclose upon at a public or private sale or otherwise comparably effect the ownership of Related Property relating to Defaulted Loans for which the related Loan is still outstanding and as to which no satisfactory arrangements can be made for collection of delinquent payments in accordance with the provisions of Section 5.10 nor satisfactory amendment or modification is made in accordance with Section 5.03(a). Subject to applicable law, the Servicer shall act, or shall engage an experienced Person qualified to act, as sales and processing agent for the Related Property that is foreclosed upon. In connection with such foreclosure or other conversion and any other liquidation action or enforcement of remedies, the Servicer shall exercise collection and foreclosure procedures in accordance with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard. Any sale of the Related Property is to be evidenced by a certificate of a Responsible Officer of the Servicer delivered to the Trustee setting forth the Loan, the Related Property, the sale price of the Related Property and certifying that such sale price is the fair market value of such Related Property. In any case in which any such Related Property has suffered damage, the Servicer will not expend funds in connection with any repair or toward the repossession of such Related Property unless it reasonably determines that such repair and/or repossession will increase the Liquidation Proceeds by an amount greater than the amount of such expenses.

(c) No later than two (2) Business Days following its receipt thereof, the Servicer will remit to the Lockbox Account, for subsequent deposit in the Collection Account, the Liquidation Proceeds and any Insurance Proceeds received in connection with the sale or disposition of Related Property relating to a Defaulted Loan.

(d) After a Loan has been liquidated, the Servicer shall promptly prepare and forward to the Trustee and upon request, any Securityholder, a report (the "Liquidation Report"), in the form attached hereto as Exhibit D, detailing the Liquidation Proceeds received from such Loan, the Liquidation Expenses incurred and reimbursed to the Servicer with respect thereto, any Scheduled Payment Advances and Servicing Advances, together with interest due thereon, reimbursed to the Servicer therefrom, any loss incurred in connection therewith, and any Nonrecoverable Advances to be reimbursed to the Servicer with respect thereto in accordance with the Priority of Payments in Section 7.06.

Section 5.04. [Reserved.]

Section 5.05. Maintenance of Insurance.

In connection with its activities as Servicer of the Loans, the Servicer agrees to present claims to the insurer under any applicable Insurance Policy (other than with respect to Third Party Agented Loans) and, with respect to any Foreclosed Property, any applicable general liability policy, and to settle, adjust and compromise such claims, in each case, consistent with the terms of the Required Loan Documents, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard. Any amounts collected by the Servicer under any such Insurance Policies in respect of the related Loan (other than amounts to be applied to the restoration or repair of the Related Property or amounts to be released to the Obligor or other creditors or Persons in accordance with Applicable Law, the Required Loan Documents, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard) shall be deposited in the Collection Account, subject to withdrawal pursuant to Section 7.03(h).

Section 5.06. Collection of Certain Loan Payments.

(a) The Servicer shall make reasonable efforts, consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, to collect all payments required under the terms and provisions of the Loans as and when the same become due. Consistent with the foregoing and the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, the Servicer may in its discretion waive or permit to be waived any fee or charge which the Servicer would be entitled to retain hereunder as servicing compensation and extend the due date for payments due on a Loan as provided in Section 5.02(e).

(b) Except as otherwise permitted under this Agreement, the Servicer agrees not to make, or consent to, any change, in the direction of, or instructions with respect to, any payments to be made by an Obligor or, in connection with an Agented Loan, Co-Agented Loan or a Third Party Agented Loan, the paying agent with respect thereto, in any manner that would diminish, impair, delay or otherwise adversely affect the timing or receipt of such payments without the prior written consent of the Trustee (acting at the direction of a Majority of Noteholders) and with the consent of the Majority Noteholders.

Section 5.07. Access to Certain Documentation and Information Regarding the Loans

The Servicer shall provide to the Issuer, the Trustee, the Backup Servicer, any Noteholder, any bank, thrift or insurance company regulatory authority and the supervisory agents and examiners of any regulated Noteholder, access to the documentation regarding the Loans required by applicable local, state and federal regulations, such access being afforded without charge but only upon not less than three Business Days prior written request by the Issuer, the Trustee, the Backup Servicer or any such regulated Noteholder and during normal business hours at the offices of the Servicer designated by it and in a manner that does not unreasonably interfere with the Servicer's normal operations or customer or employee relations. The Trustee, the Backup Servicer, the Issuer, such Noteholder and the representative of any such regulatory authority designated by the related Noteholder to view such information shall and shall cause their representatives to hold in confidence all such information except to the extent disclosure may be required by law (and all reasonable applications for confidential treatment are unavailing) and except to the extent that the Trustee and the Issuer may reasonably determine that such disclosure is consistent with their obligations hereunder. The Servicer may request that any such Person not a party hereto enter into a confidentiality agreement reasonably acceptable to the Servicer prior to permitting such Person to view such information.

Section 5.08. Satisfaction of Collateral and Release of Loan Files

(a) Upon the payment in full of any Loan, the receipt by the Servicer of a notification that payment in full will be escrowed in a manner customary for such purposes or the deposit into the Collection Account of the purchase price of any Loan acquired by the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or another Person pursuant to this Agreement, or any other Transaction Document, the Servicer will immediately notify the Trustee by a certification in the form of Exhibit M attached hereto (which certification shall include a statement to the effect that all amounts received or to be received in connection with such payment which are required to be deposited in the Collection Account pursuant to Section 7.03(b) have been or will be so deposited) of a Servicing Officer and shall request delivery to it of the Loan File. Upon receipt of such certification and request, the Trustee in accordance with Section 2.11(c), shall release, within two (2) Business Days (if such request was received by 2:00 p.m. Eastern time), the related Loan File to the Servicer. Expenses incurred in connection with any instrument of satisfaction or deed of reconveyance shall be payable by the Servicer and shall not be chargeable to the Collection Account or the Distribution Account; *provided* that the Servicer may collect and retain such expenses from the underlying Obligor.

(b) From time to time and as appropriate for the servicing or foreclosure of any Loan, the Trustee shall, upon request of the Servicer and delivery to the Trustee of a certification in the form of Exhibit M attached hereto signed by a Servicing Officer, release the related Loan File to the Servicer within two (2) Business Days (if such request was received by 2:00 p.m. Eastern time). The Servicer shall return the Loan File to the Trustee when the need therefor by the Servicer no longer exists, unless the Loan has been liquidated and the Liquidation Proceeds relating to the Loan have been deposited in the Lockbox Account, for further credit to the Collection Account, and remitted to the Trustee for deposit in the Distribution Account or the Loan File or such document has been delivered to an attorney, or to a public trustee or other public official as required by law, for purposes of initiating or pursuing legal action or other proceedings for the foreclosure or repossession of Related Property either judicially or non-judicially, and the Servicer has delivered to the Trustee a certificate of a Servicing Officer

certifying as to the name and address of the Person to whom such Loan File or such document was delivered and the purpose or purposes of such delivery. Upon receipt of a certificate of a Servicing Officer stating that such Loan was liquidated, the servicing receipt relating to such Loan shall be released by the Trustee to the Servicer.

(c) The Trustee shall execute and deliver to the Servicer any court pleadings, requests for trustee's sale or other documents provided to it necessary to the servicing or foreclosure or trustee's sale in respect of Related Property or to any legal action brought to obtain judgment against any Obligor on the related loan agreement (including any Underlying Note or other agreement securing Related Property) or to obtain a deficiency judgment, or to enforce any other remedies or rights provided by the related loan agreement (including any Underlying Note or other agreement securing Related Property) or otherwise available at law or in equity. Together with such documents or pleadings, the Servicer shall deliver to the Trustee a certificate of a Servicing Officer requesting that such pleadings or documents be executed by the Trustee and certifying as to the reason such documents or pleadings are required and that the execution and delivery thereof by the Trustee will not invalidate or otherwise adversely affect the Lien of the agreement securing Related Property, except for the termination of such a Lien upon completion of the foreclosure or trustee's sale. The Trustee shall, upon receipt of a written request from a Servicing Officer, execute any document provided to the Trustee by the Servicer or take any other action requested in such request, that is, in the opinion of the Servicer as evidenced by such request, required by any state or other jurisdiction or appropriate to discharge the Lien securing Related Property upon the satisfaction thereof and the Trustee will sign and post, but will not guarantee receipt of, any such documents to the Servicer, or such other party as the Servicer may direct, within five (5) Business Days of the Trustee's receipt of such certificate or documents. Such certificate or documents shall state that the related Loan has been paid in full by or on behalf of the Obligor (or subject to a deficiency claim against such Obligor) and that such payment has been deposited in the Collection Account.

(d) Notwithstanding anything contained in this [Section 5.08](#) to the contrary, in no event may the Servicer possess in excess of ten (10) Loan Files (excluding Loan Files for Loans which have been paid in full, sold or repurchased) at any given time.

Section 5.09. Scheduled Payment Advances; Servicing Advances and Nonrecoverable Advances

(a) With respect to each Collection Period, the Servicer will determine: (i) on or before the related Record Date, the amount of Available Funds described in [clauses \(a\) and \(b\)](#) of the definition thereof for the following Payment Date, and (ii) the amount required to be paid on the related Payment Date pursuant to [clauses 1 through 4 of Section 7.06\(a\)](#) (the amounts described in this [clause \(ii\)](#), the "[Scheduled Amount](#)"). If the Servicer determines that any Scheduled Payments (or portion thereof) that were due and payable pursuant to one or more Loans in the Collateral during the related Collection Period were not received prior to the end of such Collection Period and determines that, as a result of this, the Scheduled Amount for the related Payment Date exceeds the amount of Available Funds described in [clauses \(a\) and \(b\)](#) of the definition thereof for such Payment Date, then, subject to [Section 5.09\(b\)](#), the Servicer has the right to elect, at its option, but is not obligated, to make a Scheduled Payment Advance in an amount up to lesser of (1) the amount of such excess and (2) the amount of such delinquent

Scheduled Payments (or portion thereof). The Servicer will deposit any Scheduled Payment Advances into the Collection Account on or prior to 11:00 a.m. (New York City time) on the related Reference Date, in immediately available funds. The Servicer will be entitled to be reimbursed for Scheduled Payment Advances, together with accrued and unpaid interest thereon at the rate published in The Wall Street Journal from time to time as the prime rate in the United States pursuant to Section 5.09(c), Section 7.03 or the Priority of Payments, as applicable. In addition, the Servicer may, at its option, make Servicing Advances in the performance of its servicing duties, unless it believes in good faith that the advance plus interest expected to accrue thereon will be a Nonrecoverable Advance. The Servicer will be entitled to reimbursement for Servicing Advances, with interest thereon to accrue at the rate published in The Wall Street Journal from time to time as the prime rate in the United States, from the Collections received from the Loan to which the Servicing Advance relates as well as pursuant to Section 5.09(c), Section 7.03 or the Priority of Payments, as applicable.

(b) The Servicer will not make a Scheduled Payment Advance or a Servicing Advance if the Servicer has determined in its sole discretion, exercised in good faith and consistent with the Servicing Standard, that the amount of such Scheduled Payment Advance or Servicing Advance proposed to be advanced plus interest expected to accrue thereon will be a Nonrecoverable Advance. Absent bad faith, the Servicer's determination as to whether any Scheduled Payment Advance or Servicing Advance is expected to be a Nonrecoverable Advance or whether, once advanced, it is a Nonrecoverable Advance shall be conclusive and binding on the Issuer and on the Noteholders. Any such determination shall be made by the Servicer and shall be evidenced by an Officer's Certificate delivered promptly to the Trustee, setting forth the basis for such determination. For the avoidance of doubt, the Servicer has the right to elect, at its sole option, but is not obligated, to make a Scheduled Payment Advance.

(c) The Servicer will be entitled to recover any Scheduled Payment Advance made by it, together with accrued interest due thereon, from Collections; *provided* that if at any time any Scheduled Payment Advance, together with accrued interest thereon, made by the Servicer is subsequently determined to be a Nonrecoverable Advance, the Servicer will be entitled to recover the amount of such Nonrecoverable Advance on a Payment Date to the extent then permitted in accordance with the Priority of Payments. The Servicer will be entitled to recover the amount of any Servicing Advance, together with accrued interest thereon in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

(d) The Servicer shall be entitled to an annual rate of interest payable at the rate specified in Section 5.09(a) with respect to each Scheduled Payment Advance and each Servicing Advance from and including the date such advance is made by the Servicer to but not including the date of reimbursement of such advance to the Servicer.

Section 5.10. Title, Management and Disposition of Foreclosed Property.

(a) Except for Agent Loans, Co-Agent Loans and Third Party Agent Loans (in which case, the provisions of the Underlying Loan Agreement relating to taking title to collateral shall apply) in the event that title to Related Property is acquired by the Servicer hereunder in foreclosure or by deed in lieu of foreclosure or by other legal process, the deed, certificate of sale, or Repossessed Property may be taken in the name of the Issuer or in the name

of a subsidiary of the Issuer, the equity securities of which will be pledged as Collateral by the Issuer to the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture. Any such Issuer subsidiary shall be serviced by the Servicer, which may perform such services through a nominee or agent as set forth in Section 5.02(b).

(b) [Reserved].

(c) The Servicer, subject to the provisions of this Article V, shall manage, conserve, protect and operate each such Foreclosed Property or other Repossessed Property for the Issuer or such Issuer subsidiary, as applicable, solely for the purpose of its prudent and prompt disposition and sale. The Servicer shall, either itself or through an agent selected by the Servicer, manage, conserve, protect and operate the Foreclosed Property or other Repossessed Property in a manner consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard. The Servicer shall attempt to sell the same (and may temporarily rent the same) on such terms and conditions as the Servicer deems to be in the best interest of the Issuer.

(d) Subject to Section 5.10(e), the Servicer shall cause to be deposited in the Lockbox Account, no later than two (2) Business Days after the receipt thereof, all revenues received by the Issuer with respect to the conservation and disposition of the related Foreclosed Property or other Repossessed Property net of Liquidation Expenses or received by the Issuer as distributions from any Issuer subsidiary. Any Issuer subsidiary formed pursuant to Section 5.10(b) may utilize and set aside revenues received in respect of such real estate Related Property to pay for the normal operations of the business of such Issuer subsidiary and of such real estate Related Property, and for such other fees, costs and expenses relating thereto as are deemed appropriate to maximize value or reduce or prevent loss with respect thereto by the Servicer, consistent with the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard, and establish and maintain such cash reserves as the Servicer (or its agent) deem reasonably necessary with respect thereto; *provided* that no other funds of the Issuer shall be expended in connection with such Issuer subsidiary.

(e) Pursuant to the Priority of Payments, the Servicer shall receive reimbursement for any related unreimbursed Scheduled Payment Advances and Servicing Advances, together with accrued and unpaid interest due thereon relating to the related Loan or such Foreclosed Property or Repossessed Property, and the Servicer shall deposit in the Lockbox Account the net cash proceeds of the sale of any Foreclosed Property or other Repossessed Property to be distributed in accordance with Section 7.06 hereof.

(f) Notwithstanding any provision to the contrary contained in this Agreement, the Servicer shall not cause the Issuer or any Issuer subsidiary to foreclose on and obtain title to any Related Property pursuant to Section 5.10(b) or otherwise take any other action with respect to any such Related Property if, as a result of any such action, such Issuer subsidiary would be considered to hold title to, to be a "mortgagee-in-possession" of, or to be an "owner" or "operator" of, such Related Property within the meaning of the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980, as amended from time to time, or any comparable state or local environmental law, unless the Servicer has previously determined in accordance with the Servicing Standard and the Credit and Collection Policy that:

(i) such Related Property is in compliance in all material respects with applicable environmental laws or, if not, after consultation with an environmental consultant, that it would be in the best economic interest of the Issuer and such Issuer subsidiary to take such actions as are necessary to bring such Related Property in compliance therewith, and

(ii) there are no circumstances present at such Related Property relating to the use, management or disposal of any hazardous materials for which investigation, testing, monitoring, containment, clean-up or remediation would reasonably be expected to be required by the owner, occupier or operator of the Related Property under applicable federal, state or local law or regulation, or that, if any such hazardous materials are present for which such action would reasonably be expected to be required, after consultation with an environmental consultant, it would be in the best economic interest of the Issuer and the Issuer subsidiary to take such actions with respect to the affected Related Property.

Section 5.11. Servicing Compensation.

(a) As compensation for its servicing activities hereunder and reimbursement for its expenses, the Servicer shall be entitled to receive a servicing fee (the "Servicing Fee") calculated and payable monthly in arrears on each Payment Date prior to the termination of the Issuer. The Servicing Fee shall be equal to the sum of the product of: (i) one-twelfth of 2.00% (or, with respect to the first Collection Period, a fraction equal to the number of days from and including the Cutoff Date through and including November 20, 2018 over 360) and (ii) the Aggregate Outstanding Loan Balance as of the beginning of the related Collection Period. If Backup Servicer becomes the Successor Servicer, servicing shall be subject to a monthly minimum of \$10,000. In addition to the Servicing Fee, the Backup Servicer, upon becoming the Servicer shall be entitled to be reimbursed for all Servicing Transfer Costs. If any entity other than Hercules or the Backup Servicer becomes the Servicer, the Servicing Fee may be adjusted as agreed upon by the Majority Noteholders and such Successor Servicer, *provided* that if no Event of Default, Rapid Amortization Event, Servicer Default, or Reinvestment Period Early Termination Event is then occurring and continuing, the Issuer shall have received confirmation that the ratings provided by KBRA will not be lowered or withdrawn as a result of such adjustment to the Servicing Fee. The Servicing Fee is payable out of Collections pursuant to the Priority of Payments. For the avoidance of doubt, the Backup Servicer shall have no obligation to assume or accept any obligations as Successor Servicer unless and until it receives payment of its one-time servicer engagement fee of \$125,000.

(b) In addition to the Servicing Fee, the Servicer shall be entitled to retain for itself as additional servicing compensation: (i) reimbursement for Scheduled Payment Advances on the Loans, together with accrued interest thereon, (ii) reimbursement for Servicing Advances on the Loans, together with accrued interest thereon, and (iii) any mistaken deposits or other related amounts due on Loans that the Servicer is entitled to retain, including without limitation any amounts payable as additional servicing compensation pursuant to Section 5.02(e)(iv).

Section 5.12. Assignment; Resignation.

The Servicer shall not assign its rights and duties under this Agreement (other than in connection with a subservicing arrangement or other arrangement permitted under this Agreement) or resign from the obligations and duties imposed on it pursuant to this Agreement, in each case except (a) upon a determination by the Servicer that its performance of its duties as Servicer is no longer permissible under Applicable Law or administrative determination and such incapacity cannot be cured by commercially reasonable efforts of the Servicer, or (b) an assignment in connection with a merger, conversion, consolidation or sale of substantially all of the Servicer's business or substantially all of the Servicer's lending business permitted pursuant to Section 5.13 (in which case the Person resulting from the merger, conversion or consolidation shall be the successor of the Servicer). Any such determination pursuant to clause (a) permitting the resignation of the Servicer shall be evidenced by a written Opinion of Counsel (who may be counsel for the Servicer) to such effect delivered to the Trustee, which Opinion of Counsel shall be in form and substance reasonably acceptable to the Trustee. No such resignation shall become effective until a successor has been appointed pursuant to Section 8.02(b) and has assumed the Servicer's responsibilities and obligations in accordance with Section 8.03.

Section 5.13. Merger or Consolidation of Servicer.

Any Person into which the Servicer may be merged or consolidated, or any Person resulting from such merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Servicer is a party, or any Person succeeding to substantially all of the business or substantially all of the investment management business of the Servicer, which Person assumes the obligations of the Servicer, shall be the successor to the Servicer hereunder, notwithstanding any provision in Section 8.02 or Section 8.03 and without execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary; *provided* that no such entity resulting from the merger, conversion or consolidation of the Servicer or the sale of all or substantially all of the Servicer's assets or business or substantially all of the Servicer's lending business shall be the successor Servicer hereunder unless either (i) such Person has assets of at least \$50,000,000 and such Person's regular business includes the servicing of assets similar to the Loan Assets or (ii) the Majority Noteholders shall have consented thereto in writing. Such Successor Servicer shall be a permitted assignee of the Servicer. The provisions of Section 8.03(c) and (e) shall apply to any such servicing transfer.

Section 5.14. Limitation on Liability of the Servicer and Others.

The Servicer and any stockholder, partner, member, manager, director, officer, employee or agent of the Servicer may rely on any document of any kind which it in good faith reasonably believes to be genuine and to have been adopted or signed by the proper authorities or persons respecting any matters arising hereunder. Except as otherwise provided in Section 5.02(b), the Servicer shall not be liable for any errors, inaccuracies or omissions of any Person not affiliated with the Servicer contained in any information, report, certificate, data or other document delivered to the Servicer or on which the Servicer reasonably relies in order to perform its obligations hereunder and under the other Transaction Documents except to the extent that a Responsible Officer of the Servicer has actual knowledge of any such material error, inaccuracy or omission. The Servicer shall not be in default hereunder or incur any liability, except as provided in the proviso in the last sentence of this Section 5.14, for any failure, error or delay in carrying out its duties hereunder or under any other Transaction Document if such failure, error

or delay results from the Servicer acting in accordance with information prepared or supplied by a Person other than the Servicer or any of its Affiliates or the failure or delay of any such Person to prepare or provide such information. The Servicer shall not be in default and shall incur no liability for any act or failure to act by any servicer primarily responsible for servicing Third Party Agent Loans. Subject to the terms of Section 12.01 herein, the Servicer shall have no obligation to appear with respect to, prosecute or defend any legal action which is not incidental to the Servicer's duty to service the Loans in accordance with this Agreement, and that, in its opinion, may cause the Servicer to incur any expense or liability. The Servicer shall not be responsible for the payment of any taxes imposed on or with respect to the Issuer or for the fees of any Successor Servicer. Except as provided herein, neither the Servicer nor any of its directors, officers, employees or agents shall be under any liability to any other party to this Agreement, any Noteholder, any Certificateholder or any other Person for any action taken or for refraining from taking any action pursuant to this Agreement, whether arising from express or implied duties under this Agreement or any other Transaction Document, or for errors in judgment; *provided* that, notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, neither the Servicer nor any of its directors, officers, employees or agents shall be protected against any liability that would otherwise be imposed by reason of willful misconduct, bad faith or gross negligence in the performance of the Servicer's duties or by reason of its reckless disregard of its obligations and duties hereunder; *provided, however*, that the Servicer will not indemnify any party for any costs, expenses, losses, claims, damages or liabilities arising from its breach of any covenant for which the purchase of the affected Loans is specified as the sole remedy hereunder. The Servicer is not required to indemnify any Person for any costs, expenses, losses, claims, damages or liabilities arising from its breach of any covenant for which the purchase of the affected Loans is specified as the sole remedy hereunder.

Section 5.15. Determination of Reserve Account Required Balance.

The Servicer shall deposit funds into and withdraw funds from the Reserve Account in accordance with Sections 7.02 and 7.06. The Servicer shall maintain a complete and accurate record of the amount of funds on deposit in the Reserve Account. Prior to each Payment Date, the Servicer shall determine the Reserve Account Required Balance applicable to such Payment Date.

Section 5.16. Rights of and Limitation of Liability of Backup Servicer.

The Backup Servicer and any stockholder, partner, member, manager, director, officer, employee or agent of the Backup Servicer may rely on any document of any kind which it in good faith reasonably believes to be genuine and to have been adopted or signed by the proper authorities or persons respecting any matters arising hereunder. In the performance of its duties hereunder, the Backup Servicer is entitled to rely conclusively, and shall be fully protected in so relying, on the contents of each Tape, including, but not limited to, the completeness and accuracy thereof, provided by the Servicer. The Backup Servicer shall have no liability for any errors in the content of such Tape, and, except as specifically provided herein, shall not be required to verify, recompute, reconcile or recalculate any such information or data. Without limiting the generality of any terms of the foregoing, the Backup Servicer shall have no liability for any failure, inability or unwillingness on the part of the Servicer to provide accurate and complete information on a timely basis to the Backup Servicer, or otherwise on the part of any

such party to comply with the terms of this Agreement, or other Transaction Document, and shall have no liability for any inaccuracy or error in the performance or observance on the Backup Servicer's part of any of its duties hereunder that is caused by or results from any such inaccurate, incomplete or untimely information received by it, or other failure on the part of any such other party to comply with the terms hereof. The Backup Servicer undertakes to perform only such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Agreement, it being expressly understood by all parties hereto that there are no implied duties or obligations of the Backup Servicer hereunder. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Backup Servicer, except as expressly set forth herein, shall have no obligation to supervise, verify, monitor or administer the performance of the Servicer, the Trust Depositor or Seller and shall have no liability for any action taken or omitted by the Servicer (including any successor to the Servicer other than U.S. Bank) or the Trust Depositor or Seller. The Backup Servicer may act through its agents, attorneys and custodians in performing any of its duties and obligations under this Agreement. Neither the Backup Servicer nor any of its officers, directors, employees or agents shall be liable, directly or indirectly, for any damages or expenses arising out of the services performed under this Agreement other than damages or expenses that result from the gross negligence or willful misconduct of it or them or the failure to perform materially in accordance with this Agreement. If any party is prevented from fulfilling its obligations hereunder as a result of government actions, regulations, fires, strikes, accidents, acts of God or other causes beyond the control of either party, all parties' obligations shall be suspended for a reasonable time during which such conditions exist. In no event will the Backup Servicer (in its capacity as such or as Successor Servicer) be liable for indirect, special, consequential or incidental damages. The Backup Servicer may resign, either as Backup Servicer or as Successor Servicer, upon ninety (90) days prior written notice to the Trustee, the Issuer, the Servicer (in the case of a resignation as the Backup Servicer) and the Trust Depositor; *provided, however*, such resignation shall not become effective until there is a replacement Successor Servicer or Backup Servicer in place that is acceptable to, unless an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing, the Servicer and the Issuer, in each case, in their sole discretion, and a Majority Noteholders, which acceptance, in each case, shall not be unreasonably withheld. Upon the resignation of the Backup Servicer, the Servicer shall appoint a successor Backup Servicer (subject to the previous sentence) and if it does not do so within thirty (30) days of the Backup Servicer's resignation, the Backup Servicer may petition a court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor.

ARTICLE 6.

COVENANTS OF THE TRUST DEPOSITOR

Section 6.01. Legal Existence.

During the term of this Agreement, the Trust Depositor will keep in full force and effect its existence, rights and franchises as a limited liability company under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization and will obtain and preserve its qualification to do business in each jurisdiction in which such qualification is or shall be necessary to protect the validity and enforceability of this Agreement, the other Transaction Documents and each other instrument or agreement necessary or appropriate for the proper administration of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby. In addition, all transactions and dealings between the Trust Depositor and its Affiliates will be conducted on an arm's-length basis.

Section 6.02. [Reserved].

Section 6.03. Security Interests.

The Trust Depositor will not sell, pledge, assign or transfer to any Person other than the Issuer, or grant, create, incur, assume or suffer to exist any Lien on any Loan in the Collateral or its interest in any Related Property, other than the Lien granted to the Issuer, whether now existing or hereafter transferred to the Issuer, or as otherwise expressly contemplated by this Agreement. The Trust Depositor will promptly notify the Owner Trustee and the Trustee upon obtaining knowledge of the existence of any Lien on any Loan in the Collateral or its interest in any Related Property; and the Trust Depositor shall defend the right, title and interest of the Issuer in, to and under the Loans in the Collateral and the Issuer's interest in any Related Property, against all claims of third parties; *provided* that nothing in this Section 6.03 shall prevent or be deemed to prohibit the Trust Depositor from suffering to exist Permitted Liens upon any of the Loans in the Collateral or its interest in any Related Property.

Section 6.04. Delivery of Collections.

The Trust Depositor agrees to pay to the Servicer promptly (but in no event later than two Business Days after receipt) all Collections received by the Trust Depositor in respect of the Loans and Related Property, for application in accordance with this Agreement.

Section 6.05. Regulatory Filings.

The Trust Depositor shall make any filings, reports, notices, applications and registrations with, and seek any consents or authorizations from, the Commission and any state securities authority on behalf of the Issuer as may be necessary or that the Trust Depositor deems advisable to comply with any federal or state securities or reporting requirements laws.

Section 6.06. Compliance with Law.

The Trust Depositor hereby agrees to comply in all material respects with all Applicable Law applicable to the Trust Depositor except where the failure to do so would not reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the Issuer.

Section 6.07. Activities; Transfers of Notes or Certificates by Trust Depositor

Except as contemplated by the Trust Depositor LLC Agreement, this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents, the Trust Depositor shall not engage in any business or activity of any kind, or enter into any transaction or indenture, mortgage, instrument, agreement, contract, lease or other undertaking, which is not directly related to the transactions contemplated and authorized by this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein, the Trust Depositor may assign, transfer, convey or finance all or any portion of any Notes or Certificates owned by it.

Section 6.08. Indebtedness.

The Trust Depositor shall not create, incur, assume or suffer to exist any Indebtedness or other liability whatsoever, except (a) obligations incurred under this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents or to the Seller and (b) liabilities incident to the maintenance of its limited liability company existence in good standing.

Section 6.09. Guarantees.

The Trust Depositor shall not become or remain liable, directly or contingently, in connection with any Indebtedness or other liability of any other Person, whether by guarantee, endorsement (other than endorsements of negotiable instruments for deposit or collection in the ordinary course of business), agreement to purchase or repurchase, agreement to supply or advance funds, or otherwise.

Section 6.10. Investments.

Except as contemplated by the Trust Depositor LLC Agreement, the Trust Depositor shall not make or suffer to exist any loans or advances to, or extend any credit to, or make any investments (by way of transfer of property, contributions to capital, purchase of stock or securities or evidences of indebtedness, acquisition of the business or assets, or otherwise) in, any Person except for transfers of Loan Assets to the Issuer as contemplated by the Transaction Documents. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing or restricting the ability of the Trust Depositor to make capital contributions to the Issuer, the Trust Depositor shall not (i) provide credit to any other Securityholder for the purpose of enabling such Securityholder to purchase any Securities or (ii) lend any money to the Issuer.

Section 6.11. Merger; Sales.

The Trust Depositor shall not enter into any transaction of merger or consolidation, or liquidate or dissolve itself (or suffer any liquidation or dissolution) or acquire or be acquired by any Person, or (other in connection with the transfer of assets to a special purpose subsidiary in connection with a financing transaction) convey, sell, lease or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its property or business, except that the Trust Depositor shall sell Loan Assets to the Issuer as contemplated by this Agreement.

Section 6.12. Distributions.

The Trust Depositor shall not declare or pay, directly or indirectly, any dividend or make any other distribution (whether in cash or other property) with respect to the profits, assets or capital of the Trust Depositor or any Person's interest therein, or purchase, redeem or otherwise acquire for value any of its members' interests now or hereafter outstanding, except that, so long as no Event of Default has occurred and is continuing and no Event of Default would occur as a result thereof or after giving effect thereto and the Trust Depositor would continue to be Solvent as a result thereof and after giving effect thereto, the Trust Depositor may declare and pay distributions to its members.

Section 6.13. Other Agreements.

Except as provided in the Trust Depositor LLC Agreement, this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents, the Trust Depositor shall not become a party to, or permit any of its properties to be bound by, any indenture, mortgage, instrument, contract, agreement, lease or other undertaking, except this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party; nor shall it amend or modify the provisions of its organizational documents which relate to its bankruptcy remote nature or separateness covenants as required in connection with the true sale and substantive nonconsolidation opinions delivered on the Closing Date, or issue any power of attorney except to the Owner Trustee, the Trustee or the Servicer in accordance with the Transaction Documents.

Section 6.14. Separate Legal Existence.

The Trust Depositor shall (a) maintain compliance with the covenants set forth in Section 9(j) of the Trust Depositor LLC Agreement, and (b) to the extent in addition to the covenants referred to in clause (a) of this Section 6.14, take or refrain from taking, as applicable, each of the activities specified in the “substantive consolidation” opinion of Dechert LLP, on the Closing Date, upon which the conclusions expressed therein are based.

Section 6.15. Location; Records.

The Trust Depositor shall (a) not move its location outside the State of California or its jurisdiction of formation outside of the State of Delaware without 30 days’ prior written notice to the Owner Trustee and the Trustee and (b) will promptly take all actions (if any) required (including, but not limited to, all filings and other acts necessary or advisable under the UCC of each relevant jurisdiction) in order to continue the first priority perfected security interest of the Trustee in all Collateral.

Section 6.16. Liability of Trust Depositor.

The Trust Depositor shall be liable in accordance herewith only to the extent of the obligations specifically undertaken by the Trust Depositor under this Agreement.

Section 6.17. Bankruptcy Limitations.

The Trust Depositor shall not, without the prior unanimous written consent of its member and all of the Independent managers of the Trust Depositor (a) dissolve or liquidate, in whole or in part, or institute proceedings to be adjudicated bankrupt or insolvent, (b) consent to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against it, (c) file a petition seeking or consent to reorganization or relief under any applicable federal or state law relating to bankruptcy, (d) consent to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the limited liability company or a substantial part of its property, (e) make a general assignment for the benefit of creditors, (f) admit in writing its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, or (g) take any limited liability company action in furtherance of the actions set forth in clauses (a) through (f) above; *provided* that no Independent manager may be required by any member of the Trust Depositor to consent to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against the Trust Depositor so long as it is Solvent.

Section 6.18. Limitation on Liability of Trust Depositor and Others.

The Trust Depositor and any director, officer, employee or agent of the Trust Depositor may rely in good faith on any document of any kind, prima facie properly executed and submitted by the appropriate Person respecting any matters arising hereunder. The Trust Depositor and any director, officer, employee or agent of the Trust Depositor shall be reimbursed by the Trustee for any liability or expense incurred by reason of the Trustee's willful misfeasance, bad faith or gross negligence (except errors in judgment) in the performance of its duties hereunder, or by reason of the Trustee's material breach of the obligations and duties under this Agreement or the Transaction Documents. The Trust Depositor shall not be under any obligation to appear in, prosecute or defend any legal action that shall not be incidental to its obligations under this Agreement, and that in its opinion may involve it in any expense or liability.

Section 6.19. Payments from Obligors.

The Trust Depositor agrees not to make, or consent to, any change in the direction of, or instructions with respect to, any payments to be made by an Obligor in any manner that would diminish, impair, delay or otherwise adversely affect the timing or receipt of such payments into the Lockbox Account or otherwise without (a) the prior written consent of the Trustee and the consent of the Majority Noteholders and (b) delivery of prior written notice of such change to the Rating Agency.

ARTICLE 7.

ESTABLISHMENT OF ACCOUNTS;
DISTRIBUTIONS;

Section 7.01. Distribution Account; Lockbox Account and Other Accounts.

(a) Distribution Account and Lockbox Account. On or before the Closing Date, the Trustee shall establish and maintain the Distribution Account as a non-interest bearing trust account in the name of the Issuer, for the benefit of the Trustee and the Noteholders. On or before the Closing Date, the Issuer shall establish the Lockbox Account as a non-interest bearing, segregated account with U.S. Bank National Association (the "Lockbox Bank") and in the name of the Issuer, for the benefit of the Trustee and the Noteholders. The Servicer is, and so long as such accounts are maintained with the Trustee and the Lockbox Bank, the Trustee and the Lockbox Bank are, hereby required to ensure that each of the Distribution Account and the Lockbox Account is established and maintained as an Eligible Deposit Account with a Qualified Institution. The Servicer will monitor the Lockbox Account on a daily basis and review the previous day's Lockbox Account activity. If any institution with which any of the accounts established pursuant to this Section 7.01(a) and pursuant to Section 7.03 ceases to be a Qualified Institution, the Servicer, or if the Servicer fails to do so, the Trustee or the Lockbox Bank (as the case may be) shall within ten (10) Business Days of actual knowledge of such failure by a Responsible Officer establish a replacement account at a Qualified Institution after notice of such event. In no event shall the Trustee or the Lockbox Bank, as appropriate, be responsible for monitoring whether such institution shall remain a Qualified Institution. Each Qualified Institution maintaining an Eligible Deposit Account shall agree in writing to comply with all instructions originated by the Trustee or Lockbox Bank, as applicable.

(b) [Reserved].

(c) [Reserved].

(d) Alternative Collection Practices. With respect to certain Loans, the Servicer may make Collections thereon by debiting the appropriate amounts from designated accounts of the related Obligor. Within two (2) Business Days of receipt by the Servicer of the amounts so debited, the Servicer will cause the amounts so received belonging to the Issuer to be deposited into the Lockbox Account, and thereupon credited to the Collection Account.

(e) Other Accounts. Amounts representing payments sent by Obligor and by paying agents under Agented Loans, Co-Agented Loans and Third Party Agented Loans with respect to Loans pledged to the Trustee as well as with respect to Loans not pledged to the Trustee may be deposited into accounts other than the Lockbox Account. Within two (2) Business Days of receipt by the Seller or the Issuer of any amounts representing payments sent by Obligor and/or by paying agents under Agented Loans, Co-Agented Loans and Third Party Agented Loans with respect to Loans pledged to the Trustee, the Servicer, as agent for the Issuer, and the Seller will cause the amounts so received belonging to the Issuer to be deposited into the Lockbox Account, and thereupon credited to the Collection Account.

Section 7.02. Reserve Account.

(a) The Trustee shall establish and maintain the Reserve Account in the name of the Issuer for the benefit of the Trustee and the Noteholders. The Reserve Account shall be held in one Eligible Deposit Account with a Qualified Institution in the form of an interest-bearing trust account wherein the moneys therein are invested in Permitted Investments. The Servicer will monitor the Reserve Account in accordance with its customary policies and procedures.

(b) Deposits to the Reserve Account shall be made in accordance with Section 7.06(b).

(c) Subject to Sections 7.02(d) and (e) below, if on any Payment Date, Interest Collections, Principal Collections and any other amounts on deposit in the Collection Account (without giving effect to any deposit from the Reserve Account) would be insufficient to pay any portion of the Required Payments on such Payment Date, the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw from the Reserve Account an amount equal to the lesser of such insufficiency and the amount on deposit in the Reserve Account and deposit such amount in the Distribution Account on the Business Day immediately preceding such Payment Date.

(d) Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default, the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw all amounts on deposit in the Reserve Account and deposit such amounts to the Distribution Account for distribution in accordance with Section 7.06(c).

(e) On the earlier to occur of the Legal Final Payment Date and the Payment Date on which the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes is reduced to zero, the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw all amounts on deposit in the Reserve Account and deposit such amounts to the Distribution Account.

(f) Unless an Event of Default shall have occurred and is continuing, on any Payment Date, if amounts on deposit in the Reserve Account are greater than the Reserve Account Required Balance (after giving effect to all other distributions and disbursements on such Payment Date), the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw funds in excess of the Reserve Account Required Balance from the Reserve Account and disburse such amounts in accordance with Section 7.06(a).

(g) Upon the occurrence of a Rapid Amortization Event, the Servicer shall provide written notice thereof to the Trustee and shall direct the Trustee to (and the Trustee shall) withdraw all amounts on deposit in the Reserve Account and deposit such amounts to the Distribution Account for distribution in accordance with Section 7.06(b).

Section 7.03. Collection Account.

(a) The Trustee shall establish and maintain the Collection Account in the name of the Issuer for the benefit of the Trustee and the Noteholders. The Collection Account shall be held in one or more Eligible Deposit Accounts with a Qualified Institution in the form of interest-bearing trust accounts wherein the moneys therein are invested in Permitted Investments. The Servicer will monitor the Collection Account in accordance with its customary policies and procedures.

(b) The Servicer shall deposit or cause to be deposited into the Collection Account within two (2) Business Days of the deposit thereof into the Lockbox Account all Collections (including, for the avoidance of doubt, amounts received from co-lenders, collateral agents or paying agents under Agent Loans, Co-Agent Loans and Third Party Agent Loans and amounts debited from Obligor accounts as described in Section 7.01(d)) so deposited into the Lockbox Account. The Servicer will retain in the Collection Account, subject to withdrawal as permitted by this Section 7.03, the following amounts received by the Servicer, without duplication:

(i) all Collections accruing and received on or after the Cutoff Date, the Additional Loan Cutoff Date or Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable;

(ii) any other proceeds from any other Related Property securing the Loans (other than amounts released to the Obligor, other creditors or any other Person in accordance with Applicable Law, the Required Loan Documents, the Credit and Collection Policy and the Servicing Standard) and any disbursements, payments or proceeds from any other Collateral;

(iii) any amounts paid in connection with the purchase or repurchase of any Loan;

(iv) any amount required to be deposited in the Collection Account pursuant to Section 5.10 or this Section 7.03; and

(v) the amount of any gains and interest earned in connection with investments in Permitted Investments.

(c) The Servicer shall have no obligation to deposit into the Collection Account any Excluded Amounts.

(d) Not later than the close of business on each Reference Date immediately preceding a Payment Date, the Servicer will remit to the Lockbox Account any Scheduled Payment Advance that the Servicer determines to make at its option. The application of Scheduled Payment Advances will not prevent a Loan from being or becoming a Defaulted Loan.

(e) Notwithstanding Section 7.03(b), if (i) the Servicer makes a deposit into the Lockbox Account in respect of a Collection of a Loan in the Collateral and such Collection was received by the Servicer in the form of a check that is not honored for any reason or (ii) the Servicer makes a mistake with respect to the amount of any Collection and deposits an amount that is less than or more than the actual amount of such Collection, the Servicer shall appropriately adjust the amount subsequently deposited into the Lockbox Account to reflect such dishonored check or mistake. Any Scheduled Payment in respect of which a dishonored check is received shall be deemed not to have been paid.

(f) The foregoing requirements for deposit in the Collection Account and the Lockbox Accounts shall be exclusive, it being understood and agreed that, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, payments with respect to Liquidation Expenses and Excluded Amounts may not be deposited by the Servicer in the Collection Account.

(g) Prior to the occurrence of a Servicer Default or an Event of Default and acceleration of the Notes, to the extent there are uninvested available amounts deposited in the Collection Account on or before 3:00 p.m. (New York, New York time), all such amounts shall be invested by the Trustee in Permitted Investments selected by the Servicer in written instructions (which may be in the form of standing instructions) delivered to the Trustee and, if other than the Trustee in its corporate capacity, the Qualified Institution holding such Transaction Account, that mature no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Payment Date; to the extent that there are uninvested available funds deposited after 3:00 p.m. (New York, New York time), such funds shall be swept into the overnight funds investment which shall be a Permitted Investment selected by the Servicer in written instructions (which may be in the form of standing instructions) delivered to the Trustee and, if applicable, the Qualified Institution holding such Transaction Account. From and after the occurrence of a Servicer Default or an Event of Default and acceleration of the Notes, to the extent there are uninvested amounts in the Collection Account (net of losses and investment expenses), all amounts may be invested in Permitted Investments of the type described in clause (iv) of the definition of Permitted Investments and if any such Transaction Account is held by a Qualified Institution other than the Trustee, then upon written instructions (which may be in the form of standing instructions) from the Trustee to such Qualified Institution, that mature no later than the Business Day immediately preceding the next Payment Date. Once such funds are invested, the Trustee shall not change, or instruct the Qualified Institution to change, the investment of such funds other than in connection with the withdrawal or liquidation of such investments and the transfer of such funds as provided herein on or prior to the next succeeding Payment Date. Funds in the Distribution Account must be insured to the extent and the amount permitted by law by the FDIC. Subject to the restrictions herein, the Servicer or Trustee may purchase a Permitted

Investment from itself or an Affiliate with respect to investment of funds in the Transaction Accounts. Any investment earnings (net of losses and investment expenses) on funds held in the Collection Account shall be treated as Interest Collections and shall be deposited therein pursuant to this Section 7.03 and distributed on the next Payment Date pursuant to Section 7.06. All investment earnings (net of losses and investment expenses) on investments of funds in the Transaction Accounts shall be deposited in the Collection Account pursuant to Section 7.03 and distributed on the next Payment Date pursuant to Section 7.06. The Trust Depositor and the Issuer agree and acknowledge that the Trustee is to have “control” (within the meaning of the UCC) of collateral composed of “Investment Property” (within the meaning of the UCC) for all purposes of this Agreement.

(h) The Servicer may (and, for the purposes of clause (i) below, shall), at any time upon one (1) Business Day’s notice to the Trustee or, if different, the depository institution then holding the Collection Account, make withdrawals from the Collection Account for the following purposes:

(i) to remit to the Trustee on the Business Day immediately preceding any Payment Date, for deposit in the Distribution Account, Collections received during the immediately preceding Collection Period (other than any Transfer Deposit Amounts still available to invest in Substitute Loans pursuant to Section 11.01) and all amounts deposited into the Collection Account from the Reserve Account pursuant to Section 7.02;

(ii) [Reserved];

(iii) to withdraw any amount received from an Obligor that is recoverable and sought to be recovered as a voidable preference by a trustee in bankruptcy pursuant to the Bankruptcy Code in accordance with a final, nonappealable order of a court having competent jurisdiction;

(iv) [Reserved];

(v) to make investments in Permitted Investments;

(vi) to withdraw any funds deposited in the Collection Account that were not required or permitted to be deposited therein or were deposited therein in error;

(vii) at any time during the Reinvestment Period, to acquire Additional Loans as contemplated by Section 2.07;

(viii) to acquire Substitute Loans as contemplated by Section 2.07 to the extent funds have been deposited by the Seller for such purpose pursuant to Section 11.01;

(ix) to clear and terminate the Collection Account upon the termination of this Agreement.

Section 7.04. Reinvestment Account.

(a) The Trustee shall establish and maintain the Reinvestment Account in the name of the Issuer for the benefit of the Trustee and the Noteholders. The Reinvestment Account shall be held in one Eligible Deposit Account with a Qualified Institution in the form of an interest-bearing trust account wherein the moneys therein are invested in Permitted Investments. The Servicer will monitor the Reinvestment Account in accordance with its customary policies and procedures.

(b) Deposits to the Reinvestment Account shall be made in accordance with Section 7.06(b).

(c) On or prior to any Payment Date, the Servicer may elect to transfer funds from the Reinvestment Account to the Distribution Account to be treated as Principal Collections and applied on such Payment Date in accordance with Section 7.06(b).

(d) Upon the first Payment Date following the Reinvestment Period Termination Date, the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw all amounts on deposit in the Reinvestment Account and deposit such amounts to the Distribution Account for distribution in accordance with Section 7.06(b).

(e) On the earlier to occur of the Legal Final Payment Date and the Payment Date on which the Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes is reduced to zero, the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw all amounts on deposit in the Reinvestment Account and deposit such amounts to the Distribution Account for distribution in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

(f) Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default, the Servicer shall direct the Trustee to withdraw all amounts on deposit in the Reinvestment Account and deposit such amounts to the Distribution Account for distribution in accordance with Section 7.06(c).

Section 7.05. Securityholder Distributions.

(a) Each Securityholder as of the related Record Date shall be paid on the next succeeding Payment Date by wire transfer to the account directed by such Securityholder if such Securityholder provides written instructions to the Trustee or Owner Trustee, respectively, at least ten (10) days prior to such Payment Date, which instructions may be in the form of a standing order, or if no such instructions are provided, by check mailed to such Securityholder at the address for such Securityholder appearing on the Note Register or Certificate Register.

(b) The Trustee shall serve as the paying agent hereunder and shall make the payments to the Securityholders required hereunder. The Trustee hereby agrees that all amounts held by it for payment hereunder will be held in trust for the benefit of the Securityholders.

Section 7.06. Allocations and Distributions.

(a) Allocations of Interest Collections. On the Business Day immediately preceding each Payment Date, the Trustee, upon written instructions from the Servicer, will transfer (i) all Interest Collections on deposit in the Collection Account and (ii) any amounts required to be transferred from the Reserve Account to the Distribution Account. Such amounts

will remain uninvested while deposited in the Distribution Account. On each Payment Date (other than a Payment Date following an Event of Default and acceleration of the Notes), the Trustee, upon written instructions from the Servicer, will distribute Interest Collections on deposit in the Distribution Account to the following parties in the order of priority set forth below; *provided* that amounts, if any, transferred from the Reserve Account will be distributed solely with respect to items 1 through 4 below. With respect to the Notes then Outstanding, payments shall be made *pro rata* to the Holders of Notes based on their respective Percentage Interests.

1. first, to the Trustee, the Backup Servicer (including in its capacity as Successor Servicer), the Custodian, the Owner Trustee, the Split Loan Agent (if U.S. Bank), if any, the Paying Agent and the Lockbox Bank, fees, expenses and indemnities then due, in each case subject to the Administrative Expense Cap and Owner Trustee Cap and second, *pro rata*, based on amounts due and owing to such Persons under this clause 1, to the Owner Trustee, solely with respect to amounts in excess of the Owner Trustee Cap, the Trust Depositor, the Split Loan Agent, if any, the Paying Agent and the Lockbox Bank (in each case, if other than U.S. Bank or an affiliate thereof), any accrued and unpaid fees (other than the Servicing Fee), expenses and indemnities then due in each case subject to the Administrative Expense Cap; *provided* that, pursuant to this clause 1, the Trust Depositor shall only be entitled to the fees of the independent manager of the Trust Depositor and any indemnity amounts owing to the Backup Servicer as Successor Servicer shall not be subject to the Administrative Expense Cap and shall instead be paid in accordance with clause 2 below and *provided* further that (for the avoidance of doubt) on the Payment Date occurring in December of each calendar year (and on an Optional Redemption Date), any unused portion of the \$100,000 allocated to the Owner Trustee will be available to be applied to other accrued and unpaid fees, expenses and indemnities payable under this clause 1;

2. *pro rata* based on amounts owing to such Persons under this clause 2, (i) to the Servicer or any Successor Servicer (including for the avoidance of doubt the Backup Servicer in such capacity), any previously unreimbursed Scheduled Payment Advances, together with accrued interest thereon (calculated at a rate equal to 5.0%), Servicing Advances, together with accrued interest thereon (calculated at a rate equal to 5.0%), the Servicing Fee for the related calendar month payable pursuant to this Agreement for the related calendar month, any reimbursements for mistaken deposits, any accrued and unpaid fees (other than the Servicing Fee), expenses and indemnities then due to the initial Servicer (such expenses and indemnities in each case subject to a rolling twelve-month limit of \$50,000) and any indemnities then due to the Backup Servicer in its capacity as Successor Servicer (such indemnities subject to a rolling twelve-month limit of \$250,000) and other related amounts and certain other amounts due on the Loans that the Servicer is entitled to retain; (ii) to the Seller, amounts deposited into the Lockbox Account but not related to interest or principal due on the Loans or fees, reimbursements or indemnities payable to the Issuer in respect of the Loans; (iii) to the Backup Servicer, the Successor Servicer Engagement Fee; and (iv) costs and expenses, if any, incurred by the Trustee or by any Successor Servicer (including the Backup Servicer) in connection with the transfer of servicing to any Successor Servicer, subject to the Transition Expense Cap;

3. to the Noteholders, the Interest Amount for the related Interest Period, if any, *plus* the Interest Shortfall, if any, *plus* interest on any such Interest Shortfall at the Interest Rate for the related Interest Period(s) (to the extent permitted by Applicable Law);

4. unless Principal Collections (after giving effect to all prior interest payments and assuming no draws on the Reserve Account or redirection of Principal Collections to pay interest) are sufficient to make the payments in clause 2 of Section 7.06(b) and the Servicer notifies the Trustee by the related Record Date to make such payment solely from Principal Collections pursuant to Section 7.06(b), on a *pro rata* basis to the Noteholders, all amounts required by clause 2 of Section 7.06(b);

5. if the amount on deposit in the Reserve Account is less than the Reserve Account Required Balance, to the Reserve Account, the lesser of (i) 50% of any remaining Interest Collections and (ii) the amount required so that the amount on deposit in the Reserve Account equals the Reserve Account Required Balance;

6. to pay each of the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Backup Servicer, any Successor Servicer, the Custodian, the Split Loan Agent, if any, the Paying Agent and the Lockbox Bank, *pro rata* based on the amounts due and owing thereto, any fees, expenses and indemnities then due to such party that are in excess of the Administrative Expense Cap or Transition Expense Cap, as applicable; and

7. to pay all remaining Interest Collections to or at the direction of the Certificateholder.

To the extent that any fees of the Owner Trustee or the Trustee (in all capacities hereunder (including for avoidance of doubt as Backup Servicer or Successor Servicer)) are not paid on a Payment Date due to insufficiency of funds, such unpaid fees shall be paid on the next Payment Date on which funds are available to pay such fees in accordance with the priority of payments set forth above in this Section 7.06(a).

(b) Allocations of Principal Collections and Reserve Available Funds. On the Business Day immediately preceding each Payment Date, the Trustee, upon written instructions from the Servicer, will transfer (i) all Principal Collections on deposit in the Collection Account, (ii) all amounts, if any, required to be transferred pursuant to Section 7.02(g) to the Distribution Account, (iii) any amounts transferred from the Reinvestment Account at the direction of the Servicer pursuant to Section 7.04(c), and (iv) on the Business Day immediately preceding the first Payment Date following the Reinvestment Period Termination Date, all amounts, if any, on deposit the Reinvestment Account, to the Distribution Account. Such amounts will remain uninvested while deposited in the Distribution Account. On each Payment Date (other than a Payment Date following an Event of Default or acceleration of the Notes or following the institution of Proceedings for foreclosure of the Indenture and liquidation of the Collateral), the Trustee, upon written instructions from the Servicer, will distribute the Principal Collections, any Reserve Available Funds on deposit in the Distribution Account and any amounts transferred from the Reinvestment Account to the following parties in the order of priority set forth below. With respect to the Notes then Outstanding, payments shall be made *pro rata* to the Holders of Notes based on their respective Percentage Interests.

1. to pay any unpaid amounts referred to in clauses 1 through 3 of Section 7.06(a) (in the priority stated therein) after the application of Interest Collections;

2. (I) for so long as no Rapid Amortization Event has occurred, the Principal Distribution Amount (x) on or prior to the Reinvestment Period Termination Date, to the Reinvestment Account and (y) after the Reinvestment Period Termination Date, on a pro rata basis to the Noteholders, to pay outstanding principal on the Notes and (II) following the occurrence of any Rapid Amortization Event, or on the Legal Final Payment Date, on a *pro rata* basis to the Noteholders, until the Outstanding Note Balance is reduced to zero;

3. to pay any unpaid amounts referred to in clause 6 of Section 7.06(a), after the application of Interest Collections;

4. on or prior to the Reinvestment Period Termination Date, to the extent of amounts on deposit in (or to be deposited to) the Reinvestment Account, the amount determined by the Servicer, at its option, (i) upon prior notice thereof to the Trustee, the Rating Agency and the Noteholders, to be applied as a prepayment of principal on the Notes on a pro rata basis, in each case together with the Applicable Premium, and (ii) otherwise all remaining funds to be deposited in the Reinvestment Account; and

5. to pay all remaining Principal Collections to or at the direction of the Certificateholder.

6. To the extent that any fees of the Owner Trustee or the Trustee (in all capacities hereunder (including for avoidance of doubt as Backup Servicer or Successor Servicer)) are not paid on a Payment Date due to insufficiency of funds, such unpaid fees shall be paid on the next Payment Date on which funds are available to pay such fees in accordance with the priority of payments set forth above in this Section 7.06(b).

(c) Default Allocations. On each Payment Date (or such other date as selected by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture) (i) following the occurrence of an Event of Default, (ii) following an acceleration of the Notes pursuant to Section 5.02 of the Indenture that has not been rescinded and annulled in accordance with the terms of the Indenture, or (iii) following the institution of Proceedings for the foreclosure of the Indenture and the liquidation of the Collateral pursuant to Section 5.04(a)(ii) of the Indenture, the Trustee will transfer all Collections on deposit in the Collection Account as of the end of the applicable Collection Period, including Proceeds from the liquidation of the Collateral, to the Distribution Account. On each Payment Date (or such other date as selected by the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture), the Trustee will distribute such amounts together with Available Funds and all other funds available for distributions on the Notes, to the extent there are sufficient funds, to the following parties in the order of priority set forth below. With respect to the Notes then Outstanding, payments shall be made *pro rata* to the Holders of Notes based on their respective Percentage Interests.

1. to the Trustee, the Owner Trustee, the Servicer, the Backup Servicer (including in its capacity as Successor Servicer), the Custodian, the Split Loan Agent, if any, the Paying Agent and the Lockbox Bank amounts due and owing to such entities pursuant to the priorities in clauses 1 and 2 of Section 7.06(a), and without regard to the cap set forth in clauses 1 and 2 of Section 7.06(a);

-
2. to the Holders of the Notes, on a *pro rata* basis, for any unpaid amounts on such Notes for interest;
 3. to the Holders of the Notes, on a *pro rata* basis, for any unpaid amounts on such Notes for principal, until such Notes are paid in full; and
 4. to pay all remaining amounts to the Certificateholder.

ARTICLE 8.

SERVICER DEFAULT; SERVICER TRANSFER

Section 8.01. Servicer Default.

“Servicer Default” means the occurrence of any of the following:

(a) any failure by the Servicer to remit or cause to be remitted when due any payment, transfer or deposit required to be remitted by the Servicer to the Trustee under the terms of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents and such failure continues unremedied for a period of two (2) Business Days, it being understood that the Servicer shall not be responsible for the failure of either the Issuer or the Trustee to remit funds that were received by the Issuer or the Trustee from or on behalf of the Servicer in accordance with this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents; or

(b) failure by the Servicer duly to observe or perform any other covenants or agreements of the Servicer set forth in this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents, which failure materially and adversely affects the rights of the Issuer or the Noteholders and continues unremedied for a period of 60 days (if such failure or breach can be cured) after the first to occur of (i) the date on which written notice of such failure requiring the same to be remedied shall have been given to a Responsible Officer of the Servicer by the Trustee or to a Responsible Officer of the Servicer and the Trustee by any Noteholder or the Certificateholder or (ii) the date the Servicer shall assign any of its duties hereunder other than as expressly permitted hereby (which includes the ability of the Servicer to assign such duties to any Affiliate); or

(c) any representation or warranty of the Servicer in this Agreement or any other Transaction Document or in any certificate delivered under this Agreement or any other Transaction Document (other than any representation or warranty relating to a Loan that has been purchased by the Servicer) shall prove to have been incorrect when made, which has a material adverse effect on the Noteholders and which continues unremedied for 30 days after discovery thereof by a Responsible Officer of the Servicer or after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied, shall have been delivered to the Servicer by the Trustee; or

(d) a decree or order of a court or agency or supervisory authority having jurisdiction for the appointment of a conservator or receiver or liquidator in any Insolvency Proceedings, or for the winding-up or liquidation of its affairs, shall have been entered against the Servicer and such decree or order shall have remained in force, undischarged or unstayed for a period of 60 consecutive days; or

(e) the Servicer shall consent to the appointment of a conservator or receiver or liquidator in any Insolvency Proceedings of or relating to the Servicer or of or relating to all or substantially all of the Servicer's property; or

(f) the Servicer shall cease to be eligible to continue as Servicer under this Agreement pursuant to Section 5.12(a); or

(g) the Servicer shall file a petition to take advantage of any applicable Insolvency Laws, make an assignment for the benefit of its creditors or generally fail to pay its debts as they become due.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, a delay in or failure of performance referred to under Section 8.01(a) above for a period of five Business Days or referred to under Section 8.01(b) above for a period of sixty (60) days (in addition to the 60-day period provided therein) shall not constitute a Servicer Default until the expiration of such additional five (5) Business Days or sixty (60) days, respectively, if such delay or failure could not be prevented by the exercise of reasonable diligence by the Servicer and such delay or failure was caused by an act of God or other events beyond the Servicer's control.

Section 8.02. Servicer Transfer.

(a) If a Servicer Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee or the Issuer may, upon direction of a Supermajority of the Noteholders, terminate all of the rights and obligations of the Servicer hereunder by notice to the Servicer (a "Termination Notice"), whereupon the Backup Servicer will succeed to all of the Servicer's management, administrative, servicing, custodial and collection functions as Servicer hereunder within sixty (60) days of receiving a Termination Notice.

(b) If the Backup Servicer is unable to assume the role of the Servicer after a Termination Notice is delivered pursuant to Section 8.02(a), and the Trustee is unwilling or unable to act as the successor servicer as provided in Section 8.03 (the "Successor Servicer"), the Trustee (i) will provide the Trust Depositor with written notice of such circumstances (and the Trust Depositor shall promptly forward a copy of such notice to the Rating Agency) and (ii) may appoint a Successor Servicer with assets of at least \$50,000,000 and whose regular business includes the servicing of assets similar to the Loan Assets. Such proposed Successor Servicer shall become the Successor Servicer once it assumes the Servicer's responsibilities and obligations in accordance with Section 8.03. If such proposed Successor Servicer is unable to assume the responsibilities and obligations of the Servicer, the Trustee shall propose an alternative established servicing institution to serve as the Successor Servicer. Such other proposed Successor Servicer shall become the Successor Servicer once it assumes the Servicer's responsibilities and obligations in accordance with this Agreement. If no Successor Servicer has been appointed and approved following the above procedures within 120 days of the delivery of a Termination Notice or notice of resignation by the Servicer, then any of the Issuer, Trustee, removed or resigning Servicer or any Securityholder may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a Successor Servicer, which appointment will not require the consent of, nor be subject to the approval of the Issuer, the Trustee or any Securityholder.

(c) On the date that a Successor Servicer (including for the avoidance of doubt the Backup Servicer acting as such) shall have been appointed and accepted such appointment pursuant to Section 8.03 (such appointment being herein called a "Servicer Transfer"), all rights, benefits, fees, indemnities, authority and power of the Servicer under this Agreement, whether with respect to the Loans, the Loan Files or otherwise, shall pass to and be vested in such Successor Servicer pursuant to and under this Section 8.02; and, without limitation, the Successor Servicer is authorized and empowered to execute and deliver on behalf of the Servicer, as attorney-in-fact or otherwise, any and all documents and other instruments, and to do any and all acts or things necessary or appropriate to effect the purposes of such notice of termination. The Servicer agrees to cooperate with the Successor Servicer in effecting the termination of the responsibilities and rights of the Servicer hereunder, including, without limitation, the transfer to the Successor Servicer for administration by it of all cash amounts which shall at the time be held by the Servicer for deposit, or have been deposited by the Servicer, in the Collection Account and the Reserve Account, or thereafter received with respect to the Loans and Related Property. The Servicer shall transfer to the Successor Servicer (i) all records held by the Servicer relating to the Loans and Related Property in such electronic form as the Successor Servicer may reasonably request and (ii) any Loan Files in the Servicer's possession. In addition, the Servicer shall permit access to its premises (including all computer records and programs) to the Successor Servicer or its designee, and shall pay the reasonable transition expenses of the Successor Servicer. Upon a Servicer Transfer, the Successor Servicer shall also be entitled to receive the Servicing Fee thereafter payable for performing the obligations of the Servicer and any additional amounts payable to the Servicer hereunder. Any indemnities provided in this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents in favor of the Servicer, any Servicing Fee (together with accrued interest thereon), any other fees, costs and expenses and any Scheduled Payment Advances, Servicing Advances and Nonrecoverable Advances (in each case together with accrued interest due the Servicer thereon), in any case, that have accrued and/or are due and unpaid or unreimbursed to the Servicer shall survive the termination of the Servicer and its replacement with a Successor Servicer and the Servicer being replaced shall remain entitled thereto until paid hereunder out of the Collection Account or the Distribution Account in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

Section 8.03. Acceptance by Successor Servicer; Reconveyance; Successor Servicer to Act

(a) Subject to Section 8.04, no appointment of a Successor Servicer (other than the Backup Servicer) shall be effective until the Successor Servicer shall have executed and delivered to the Issuer and the Trustee a written acceptance of such appointment and of the duties of Servicer hereunder, subject to Section 8.03(d). The Servicer shall continue to perform all servicing functions under this Agreement until the date the Successor Servicer shall have so executed and delivered such written acceptance.

(b) [Reserved].

(c) As compensation, a Successor Servicer (including for the avoidance of doubt, the Backup Servicer acting as such) so appointed shall be entitled to receive the Servicing Fee, together with any other servicing compensation in the form of assumption fees, late payment charges or otherwise as provided in the Transaction Documents that thereafter are payable under this Agreement, including, without limitation, all reasonable costs (including reasonable attorneys' fees) incurred in connection with transferring the servicing obligations under this Agreement and amending this Agreement (if necessary) to reflect such transfer. None of the Trustee, the Backup Servicer, nor any Successor Servicer shall be held liable by reason of any failure to make, or any delay in making, any distribution hereunder or any portion thereof caused by (i) the failure of the Servicer to deliver, or any delay in delivering, cash, documents or records to it, or (ii) restrictions imposed by any regulatory authority having jurisdiction over the Servicer. To the extent that the Trustee or the Backup Servicer incurs any extraordinary expenses in connection with a servicing transfer, it shall be entitled to reimbursement therefor as an Administrative Expense pursuant to the Priority of Payments.

(d) On or after a Servicer Transfer, the Successor Servicer shall be the successor in all respects to the Servicer in its capacity as servicer under this Agreement and the transactions set forth or provided for herein with respect to servicing of the Collateral and shall be subject to all the responsibilities, duties and liabilities relating thereto placed on the Servicer by the terms and provisions hereof, and the terminated Servicer shall be relieved of such responsibilities, duties and liabilities arising after such Servicer Transfer; *provided* that (i) the Successor Servicer will not assume any obligations of the Servicer described in Section 8.02(c), (ii) the Successor Servicer shall not be liable for any acts or omissions of the Servicer occurring prior to such Servicer Transfer or for any breach by the Servicer of any of its representations and warranties contained herein or in any other Transaction Document, (iii) other than in respect of Servicing Advances relating to taxes, the Successor Servicer shall have no obligation to pay any taxes required to be paid by the Servicer (provided, that the Successor Servicer shall pay any income taxes for which it is liable), (iv) the Successor Servicer shall have no obligation to pay any of the fees and expenses of any other party to the transactions contemplated hereby, (v) the Successor Servicer shall have no liability or obligation with respect to any Servicer indemnification obligations of any prior Servicer, including the initial Servicer, and (vi) the Successor Servicer shall have no liability or obligation to perform any repurchase or advancing obligations of the Servicer. Notwithstanding anything else herein to the contrary, in no event shall the Trustee be liable for any Servicing Fee or for any differential in the amount of the servicing fee paid hereunder and the amount necessary to induce any Successor Servicer to act as Successor Servicer under this Agreement and the transactions set forth or provided for herein, including any Servicing Transfer Costs. The Trustee and such successor shall take such action, consistent with this Agreement, as shall be necessary to effectuate any such succession. The terminated Servicer shall remain entitled to payment and reimbursement of the amounts set forth in the last sentence of Section 8.02(b) notwithstanding its termination hereunder, to the same extent as if it had continued to service the Loans hereunder. The Backup Servicer, as Backup Servicer or Successor Servicer, shall not be required to expend or risk its own funds.

(e) Notwithstanding anything contained in this Agreement or the Indenture to the contrary, in the event that U.S. Bank becomes Successor Servicer pursuant to this Agreement, U.S. Bank shall not be responsible for the accounting, records (including computer records) and work of Hercules Capital, Inc. or any other predecessor Servicer relating to the Loans (collectively, the "Predecessor Servicer Work Product"). If any error, inaccuracy, omission or incorrect or non-standard practice or procedure (collectively, "Errors") exists in any Predecessor Servicer Work Product and such Errors make it materially more difficult to service or should cause or materially contribute to U.S. Bank making or continuing any Errors (collectively, "Continued Errors"), U.S. Bank shall have no liability for such Continued Errors; provided, however, that U.S. Bank agrees to use commercially reasonable efforts to prevent Continued Errors. In the event that U.S. Bank becomes aware of Errors or Continued Errors, U.S. Bank shall, with the prior consent of the Trustee, use commercially reasonable efforts to reconstruct and reconcile such data to correct such Errors and Continued Errors and to prevent future Continued Errors. U.S. Bank shall be entitled to recover its costs thereby expended in accordance with the Priority of Payments.

(f) The Successor Servicer is authorized to accept and rely on all accounting records (including computer records) and work product of the prior Servicer hereunder relating to the Collateral without any audit or other examination.

(g) With respect to any Loan that relates to a foreign Obligor that is not registered to do business in the United States or Canada (excluding Quebec), does not have contact information in the United States or Canada (excluding Quebec) or the collateral securing such Loan is located outside of the United States or Canada (excluding Quebec) (in each case, a "Foreign Loan"), the Backup Servicer acting as successor Servicer shall only be responsible for invoicing (unless such Foreign Loan relates to a foreign Obligor that is registered to do business in Quebec or secured by collateral located in Quebec, in which case the Backup Servicer shall not be responsible for invoicing) and acting as system of record with respect to such Loan and will not be responsible for exercising the Issuer's rights and remedies with respect to such Foreign Loan.

Section 8.04. Notification to Securityholders.

(a) Promptly following the occurrence of any Servicer Default, the Servicer shall give written notice thereof to the Trustee, the Backup Servicer, the Owner Trustee, the Trust Depositor and the Rating Agency at the addresses described in Section 13.04 hereof and the Trustee shall promptly forward such notice to the Noteholders and Certificateholder at their respective addresses appearing on the Note Register and the Certificate Register, respectively.

(b) Within ten (10) days following receipt of a Termination Notice or notice of appointment of a Successor Servicer pursuant to this Article VIII, the Trustee shall give written notice thereof to the Trust Depositor (and the Trust Depositor shall promptly forward a copy of such notice to the Rating Agency) at the addresses described in Section 13.04 hereof and to the Noteholders and Certificateholder at their respective addresses appearing on the Note Register and the Certificate Register, respectively.

Section 8.05. Effect of Transfer.

(a) After a Servicer Transfer, the terminated Servicer shall have no further obligations with respect to the management, administration, servicing, custody or collection of the Loans as Servicer hereunder and, subject to Section 8.03(d), the Successor Servicer appointed pursuant to Section 8.03 shall have all of such obligations, except that the terminated Servicer will transmit or cause to be transmitted directly to the Successor Servicer promptly on receipt and in the same form in which received, any amounts (properly endorsed where required for the Successor Servicer to collect them) received as Collections upon or otherwise in connection with the Collateral.

(b) A Servicer Transfer shall not affect the rights and duties of the parties hereunder (including but not limited to the obligations and indemnities of the Servicer) other than those relating to the management, administration, servicing, custody or collection of the Loans.

Section 8.06. Database File.

Upon reasonable request by the Trustee or the Successor Servicer, the Servicer will provide the Successor Servicer with a magnetic tape or Microsoft Excel or similar spreadsheet file containing the database file for each Loan on and as of the Business Day before the actual commencement of servicing functions by the Successor Servicer following the occurrence of a Servicer Default.

Section 8.07. Waiver of Defaults.

The Majority Noteholders may, on behalf of all the Securityholders, waive any default by the Servicer of its obligations hereunder and all consequences of such default, except a default in making any required deposits to the Collection Account or the Distribution Account. No such waiver or cure shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereto except to the extent expressly so waived.

ARTICLE 9.

REPORTS

Section 9.01. Monthly Reports.

(a) With respect to each Payment Date and the related Collection Period, the Servicer shall prepare a statement (a "Monthly Report") containing the information set forth in Exhibit H-2 hereto with respect to the preceding Collection Period and will deliver a copy of such Monthly Report to the Trustee and the Backup Servicer no later than the related Reference Date.

(b) In the first Monthly Servicer Report delivered after the Closing Date, the following additional information will be provided by the Servicer to the Trustee: (i) the fair value (expressed as a percentage of the fair value of all Notes and the Certificate and as a dollar amount) of the actual principal amount of the Certificate acquired and retained by the Trust Depositor as of the Closing Date (based on actual initial Loans, sale prices and finalized class size for the Notes); (ii) the fair value (expressed as a percentage of the fair value of all Notes and the Certificate and dollar amount) of the Certificate that the Trust Depositor is required to retain pursuant to the U.S. credit risk retention requirements set forth in Section 941 of the Dodd-Frank Act and the joint final implementation rules promulgated thereunder; (iii) to the extent that the

valuation methodology or any of the key inputs and assumptions on the Closing Date are materially different than those disclosed under the Offering Memorandum, a description of any such material differences; and (iv) confirmation of compliance, as of the Closing Date, with the EU Retention Undertaking Letter substantially in the form of Exhibit E attached hereto (the “EU Retention Undertaking Letter”).

(c) On or before each Payment Date, the Trustee will provide or make available at its website at <https://pivot.usbank.com> (or at such other address as the Trustee shall notify the Issuer, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Backup Servicer, the Owner Trustee, the Initial Purchaser, the Rating Agency and the Noteholders) the Monthly Report received by it on the related Reference Date to the Issuer, the Servicer, the Backup Servicer, the Initial Purchaser, the Rating Agency and the Securityholders in accordance with Section 3.29 of the Indenture.

Section 9.02. Quarterly Reports.

(a) The Servicer shall prepare a quarterly statement (a “Quarterly Report”) containing the information set forth in Exhibit H-1 hereto with respect to the three (3) most recently preceding Collection Periods.

(b) [Reserved].

(c) Within 45 days of the end of each Fiscal Quarter, beginning on the Reference Date occurring in January 2019, the Servicer will provide to the Trustee and the Backup Servicer a Quarterly Report relating to the calendar quarter immediately preceding the calendar quarter in which such Reference Date occurs. Not later than the Payment Date relating to such Reference Date, the Trustee will provide or make available at its website at <https://pivot.usbank.com> (or at such other address as the Trustee shall notify the Issuer, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Backup Servicer, the Owner Trustee, the Initial Purchaser, the Rating Agency and the Noteholders) such Quarterly Report to the Issuer, the Servicer, the Backup Servicer, the Initial Purchaser, the Rating Agency and the Noteholders in accordance with Section 3.29 of the Indenture.

Section 9.03. Preparation of Reports: Officer’s Certificate.

(a) The Servicer shall cooperate with the Trustee in connection with the delivery of the Monthly Reports and Quarterly Reports. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing and the obligation of the Servicer to deliver Monthly Reports and Quarterly Reports to the Trustee, the Servicer shall supply in a timely fashion any information as to any determinations required to be made by the Servicer hereunder or under the Indenture and such other information as is maintained by the Servicer that the Trustee may from time to time request with respect to the Collateral. Nothing herein shall obligate the Trustee to determine independently any characteristic of a Loan, including without limitation whether any item of Collateral is an Agented Loan, Co-Agented Loan, Third Party Agented Loan or Participated Loan, any such determination being based exclusively upon notification the Trustee receives from the Servicer, and except as otherwise specifically set forth in any of the Transaction Documents, nothing in this Article IX shall obligate the Trustee to review or examine any underlying instrument or contract evidencing, governing or guaranteeing or securing any Loan in order to verify, confirm, audit or otherwise determine any characteristic thereof.

(b) In performing its duties hereunder to provide the Monthly Reports and Quarterly Reports, the Trustee shall in no event have any liability for the actions or omissions of the Servicer or any other Person, and shall have no liability for any inaccuracy or error in any Monthly Report or Quarterly Report it distributes pursuant to Sections 9.01 and 9.02, except to the extent that such inaccuracies or errors are caused by the Trustee's own fraud, bad faith, willful misfeasance, gross negligence or reckless disregard of its duties hereunder. The Trustee shall not be liable for failing to perform or delay in performance of its specified duties hereunder that results from or is caused by a failure or delay on the part of the Servicer or another Person in furnishing necessary, timely and accurate information to the Trustee or the Servicer or a review by the Independent Accountants of a Monthly Report or a Quarterly Report.

Section 9.04. Other Data: Obligor Financial Information

(a) Not later than 4:00 p.m. (Eastern Time) on the Reference Date, the Servicer shall provide to the Trustee (in a format agreed to by the Trustee and the Servicer) and the Backup Servicer such information (the "Tape") the Servicer relied upon to prepare the Monthly Report and Quarterly Report, as applicable, for such month. Each Tape shall include, but not be limited to, the information set forth in Exhibit H-2 (in the case of Monthly Reports) and Exhibit H-1 (in the case of Quarterly Reports). The Backup Servicer shall use such tape or diskette (or other electronic transmission acceptable to the Trustee and the Backup Servicer) to (i) confirm that such tape, diskette or other electronic transmission is in readable form, and (ii) calculate and confirm (A) the aggregate amount distributable as principal on the related Payment Date to the Notes, (B) the aggregate amount distributable as interest on the related Payment Date to the Notes, (C) the outstanding principal amount of the Notes after giving effect to all distributions made pursuant to clause (A), above, and (D) the aggregate amount of principal and interest to be carried over on such Payment Date after giving effect to all distributions made pursuant to clauses (A) and (B), above, respectively. The Backup Servicer shall certify to the Trustee that it has verified the Monthly Report or the Quarterly Report in accordance with this Section and shall notify the Servicer and the Trustee of any discrepancies, in each case, on or before the fifth Business Day following the related Payment Date. In the event that the Backup Servicer reports any discrepancies, the Servicer and the Backup Servicer shall attempt to reconcile such discrepancies prior to the next succeeding Payment Date, but in the absence of reconciliation, the Monthly Report or the Quarterly Report shall control for the purpose of calculations and distributions with respect to the next succeeding Payment Date. In the event that the Backup Servicer and the Servicer are unable to reconcile discrepancies with respect to a Monthly Report or Quarterly Report by the next succeeding Payment Date, the Servicer shall cause the Independent Accountants, at the Servicer's expense, to perform agreed-upon procedures to the information within the Tape in connection with such Monthly Report or the Quarterly Report and, prior to the last day of the month after the month in which such Monthly Report or Quarterly Report was delivered, reconcile the discrepancies. The effect, if any, of such reconciliation shall be reflected in the Monthly Report for such next succeeding Payment Date following the last date of the Collection Period. In addition, upon the occurrence of a Servicer Default the Servicer shall deliver to the Backup Servicer or any successor Servicer its files within 15 days after demand therefor and a computer tape containing as of the close of business

on the date of demand all of the data maintained by the Servicer in computer format in connection with servicing the Loans. Other than the duties specifically set forth in this Agreement, the Backup Servicer shall have no obligations hereunder, including, without limitation, to supervise, verify, monitor or administer the performance of the Servicer. The Backup Servicer shall have no liability for any actions taken or omitted by the Servicer.

(b) In addition, the Servicer shall, upon the request of the Trustee or any Rating Agency, furnish the Trustee, the Backup Servicer, the Issuer or Rating Agency, as the case may be, such underlying data in the possession of the Servicer used to generate a Monthly Report or Quarterly Report as may be reasonably requested. The initial Servicer will also forward to the Trustee and the Rating Agency (i) within sixty (60) days after each fiscal quarter of the Servicer (except the fourth fiscal quarter), commencing with the quarter ending December 31, 2018, the unaudited quarterly financial statements of the Servicer and (ii) within 120 days after each fiscal year of the initial Servicer, commencing with the fiscal year ending December 31, 2018, the audited annual financial statements of the Servicer; *provided* that so long as the Servicer is required under the Securities Act to file its financial statements with the Securities and Exchange Commission, the foregoing requirement to provide such financial statements to the Trustee, the Issuer, the Backup Servicer, the Rating Agency and the Initial Purchaser shall not apply.

(c) [Reserved].

(d) [Reserved].

(e) The Servicer will forward to the Rating Agency promptly upon request any additional financial information in the Servicer's possession or reasonably obtainable by the Servicer as the Rating Agency shall reasonably request with respect to an Obligor as to which any Scheduled Payment is past due for at least ten (10) days.

Section 9.05. Annual Report of Accountants.

The initial Servicer shall cause a firm of nationally recognized independent certified public accountants (the "Independent Accountants"), who may also render other services to the Servicer or its Affiliates, to deliver to the Servicer and the Trustee, upon signature of an acknowledgment letter, on or before March 31st of each year, beginning on March 31, 2019, a report addressed to the Servicer and the Trustee indicating that the Independent Accountants have performed certain procedures as agreed by the Servicer and the Trustee. As a part of such review, the Independent Accountants will obtain the Monthly Report with respect to two (2) Collection Periods during the 12 months ended the immediately preceding December 31 and, for each such Monthly Report, the Independent Accountants will reconcile certain amounts in the Monthly Report to the Servicer's computer, accounting and other reports. The Independent Accountants will include in such report any unreconciled amounts in such records that are not in agreement with the amounts in the Quarterly Reports. In the event the Independent Accountants require the Trustee to agree to the procedures performed by the Independent Accountants the Servicer shall direct the Trustee in writing to so agree; it being understood and agreed that the Trustee will deliver such letter of agreement in conclusive reliance upon the direction of the Servicer, and the Trustee will not make any independent inquiry or investigation as to, and shall

have no obligation or liability in respect of, the sufficiency, validity or correctness of such procedures. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Trustee shall have no responsibility to make any inquiry or investigation as to, and shall have no obligation in respect of, the terms of any engagement of the Independent Accountants by the Servicer or the terms of any agreed upon procedures in respect of such engagement; *provided, however* that the Trustee shall be authorized, at the direction of the Servicer, to execute any acknowledgement or other agreement with the Independent Accountants required for the Trustee to receive any of the reports or instructions provided for herein, which acknowledgement or agreement may include, among other things, (i) acknowledgement that the Servicer has agreed that the procedures to be performed by the Independent Accountants are sufficient for the purposes of this Section 9.05, (ii) releases by the Trustee (on behalf of itself and the Holders) of claims against the Independent Accountants and acknowledgement of other limitations of liability in favor of the Independent Accountants and (iii) restrictions or prohibitions on the disclosure of information or documents provided to it by such firm of Independent Accountants (including to the Holders). Notwithstanding the foregoing, in no event shall the Trustee be required to execute any agreement in respect of the Independent Accountants that the Trustee reasonably determines adversely affects it. The Independent Accountants' report shall also indicate that the firm is independent of the Servicer within the meaning of the Code of Professional Ethics of the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants. If the Backup Servicer becomes the Successor Servicer it shall be entitled to reimbursement (as Administrative Expenses) for its expenses incurred in connection with this Section 9.05.

Section 9.06. Statements of Compliance from Servicer.

The Servicer will deliver to the Trustee, the Backup Servicer and KBRA within 120 days of the end of each fiscal year commencing with the year ending December 31, 2019, an Officer's Certificate stating that (a) the Servicer has fully complied in all material respects with certain provisions of the Agreement relating to servicing of the Loans and payments on the Notes, (b) a review of the activities of the Servicer during the prior calendar year and of its performance under this Agreement was made under the supervision of the officer signing such certificate and (c) to the best of such officer's knowledge, based on such review, the Servicer and Issuer have fully performed or caused to be performed in all material respects all their obligations under this Agreement for such year, or, if there has been a default in any of their respective obligations specifying each such default known to such officer and the nature and status thereof including the steps being taken by the Servicer to remedy such event.

Section 9.07. [Reserved].

Section 9.08. Notices of Event of Default, Servicer Default or Rapid Amortization Event

Promptly, but in any case no later than within two (2) Business Days of discovery by a Responsible Officer of the Servicer or Issuer (or receipt of notice thereof by the Servicer or the Issuer, as applicable), such Person shall furnish to the Trustee (with a copy to the Backup Servicer) (i) in the case of any proposed or pending litigation or investigation relating to it by any governmental authority or any legal proceeding which involve or may involve the possibility of materially and adversely affecting the Issuer, a written notice specifying the nature of such

litigation, investigation or proceeding and what action the Issuer is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto, (ii) written notice of the occurrence of any condition or event which constitutes an Event of Default, Rapid Amortization Event or Servicer Default, including a description of its nature and period of existence and what action the Servicer or Issuer is taking or proposes to take with respect thereto and (iii) written notice of any event or occurrence (including changes in applicable law) of which the Servicer or Issuer (as applicable) has knowledge that may reasonably affect, materially and adversely, the ability of the Servicer to service the Loans or to otherwise perform and carry out its duties, responsibilities and obligations under the Transaction Documents; provided, that in the case of any notice required pursuant to (ii) or (iii) above, the Servicer or the Issuer, as applicable, shall provide a copy of such notice to KBRA. The Trustee shall make available (including by posting to its website) to Holders any notice delivered to it pursuant to (i), (ii) or (iii) above, but shall not be under any obligation to review or evaluate any such notice, or to investigate or inquire further into any matter described therein.

Section 9.09. Trustee's Right to Examine Servicer Records, Audit Operations and Deliver Information to Noteholders

The Trustee shall have the right upon reasonable prior notice, during normal business hours, in a manner that does not unreasonably interfere with the Servicer's normal operations or customer or employee relations, no more often than once a year unless an Event of Default or Servicer Default shall have occurred and be continuing in which case as often as reasonably required, to examine and audit any and all of the books, records or other information of the Servicer, whether held by the Servicer or by another on behalf of the Servicer, which may be relevant to the performance or observance by the Servicer of the terms, covenants or conditions of this Agreement. No amounts payable in respect of the foregoing shall be paid from the Loan Assets except that after an Event of Default, fees and expenses of the Trustee not paid by the Servicer shall be reimbursed to the Trustee as an Administrative Expense.

The Trustee shall have the right, in accordance with the Indenture, to deliver information provided by the Servicer to any Noteholder requesting the same; *provided* that the Servicer may request that any such Noteholder not a party hereto enter into a confidentiality agreement reasonably acceptable to the Servicer prior to permitting such Noteholder to view such information.

ARTICLE 10.

TERMINATION

Section 10.01. Optional Redemption of Notes; Rights of Certificateholders Following Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture

(a) Optional Redemption.

(i) If, as of the last day of any Collection Period, the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance shall be less than or equal to 10% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance as of the Cutoff Date, the Notes may be redeemed in whole, but not in part, at the direction of the Trust Depositor on any succeeding Payment Date. To exercise such option, the Trust Depositor shall furnish notice of such election to the Rating Agency and the Noteholders. If the Notes are to be so redeemed, the Trust Depositor shall also furnish notice of such election to the Trustee at least 15 Business Days prior to the proposed Redemption Date. To effect an Optional Redemption, the Trust Depositor shall deposit in the Distribution Account an amount equal to the Redemption Price and shall comply with the Optional Redemption provisions set forth in Section 10.01 and Section 10.04 of the Indenture.

(ii) Notice of an Optional Redemption shall be provided by the Trust Depositor to the Trustee, the Owner Trustee and the Rating Agency in accordance with the Indenture.

(b) [Reserved].

(c) Following the satisfaction and discharge of the Indenture, the payment in full of the principal of and interest on the Notes, and payment of fees and expenses and other amounts owing to Trustee, the Certificateholders will succeed to the rights of the Noteholders hereunder.

Section 10.02. Termination.

(a) This Agreement shall terminate upon notice to the Trustee of the earlier of the following events: (i) the final payment on or the disposition or other liquidation by the Issuer of the last Loan (including, without limitation, in connection with a redemption by the Issuer of all outstanding Notes pursuant to Section 10.01) or the disposition of all other Collateral, including property acquired upon foreclosure or deed in lieu of foreclosure of any Loan and the remittance of all funds due thereunder with respect thereto, (ii) mutual written consent of the Servicer, the Backup Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer, the Trustee, the Seller and all Outstanding Securityholders or (iii) the payment in full of all amounts owing in respect of the Notes.

(b) Notice of any termination, specifying the Payment Date upon which the Issuer will terminate and that the Noteholders shall surrender their Notes to the Trustee for payment of the final distribution and cancellation shall be given promptly by the Servicer to the Trustee and by the Trustee to all Noteholders and the Rating Agency during the month of such final distribution before the Reference Date in such month, specifying (i) the Payment Date upon which final payment of the Notes (or Redemption Price) will be made upon presentation and surrender of Notes at the office of the Trustee therein designated, (ii) the amount of any such final payment and (iii) that the Record Date otherwise applicable to such Payment Date is not applicable, payments being made only upon presentation and surrender of the Notes at the office of the Trustee therein specified.

ARTICLE 11.

REMEDIES UPON MISREPRESENTATION;
REPURCHASE OPTION

Section 11.01. Repurchases of, or Substitution for, Loans for Breach of Representations and Warranties

Upon a discovery by a Responsible Officer of the Trust Depositor, a Responsible Officer of the Servicer or any subservicer, a Responsible Officer of the Backup Servicer or a Responsible Officer of the Trustee of (i) a breach of a representation or warranty as set forth in Section 3.01, Section 3.02, or Section 3.04 or as made or deemed made in any notice relating to Substitute Loans, as applicable, that materially and adversely affects the interests of the Securityholders (each such Loan with respect to which such breach exists, an “Ineligible Loan”), the party discovering such breach or failure shall give prompt written notice to the other parties to this Agreement; *provided* that neither the Trustee nor the Backup Servicer shall have a duty or obligation (i) to discover or make an attempt to discover, inquire about or investigate the breach of any of such representations or warranties or any duty to provide such notice unless a Responsible Officer of the Trustee or Backup Servicer, as applicable, receives written notice of breach or alleged breach (without regard to whether such breach or alleged breach is a material breach as set forth in Section 3.01, Section 3.02, or Section 3.04 or (ii) to determine if such breach materially and adversely affects the interests of the Securityholders. Within 30 days of the earlier of (x) its discovery or (y) its receipt of notice of any breach of a representation or warranty, the Trust Depositor shall, or shall require the Seller pursuant to the Sale and Contribution Agreement to, and the Seller shall, (a) promptly cure such breach in all material respects, (b) repurchase each such Ineligible Loan by depositing in the Lockbox Account, for further credit to the Collection Account, within such 30 day period, an amount equal to the Transfer Deposit Amount for such Ineligible Loan, or (c) remove such Loan from the Collateral, deposit the Transfer Deposit Amount with respect to such Loan into the Lockbox Account, for further credit to the Collection Account, and, not later than the date a repurchase of such affected Loan would be required hereunder, effect a substitution for such affected Loan with a Substitute Loan in accordance with the substitution requirements set forth in Sections 2.07 and 2.06.

Section 11.02. Reassignment of Repurchased or Substituted Loans

Upon receipt by the Trustee for deposit in the Collection Account of the amounts described in Section 11.01 (or upon the Substitute Loan Cutoff Date related to a Substitute Loan described in Section 11.01), and upon receipt of an Officer’s Certificate of the Servicer in the form attached hereto as Exhibit F, the Trustee and the Issuer shall assign to the Trust Depositor and the Trust Depositor shall assign to the Seller all of the Trustee’s and the Issuer’s (or Trust Depositor’s, as applicable) right, title and interest in the Loans being repurchased or substituted for the related Loan Assets without recourse, representation or warranty. Such reassigned Loan shall no longer thereafter be included in any calculations of Outstanding Loan Balances required to be made hereunder or otherwise be deemed a part of the Collateral.

ARTICLE 12.

INDEMNITIES

Section 12.01. Indemnification by Servicer.

The initial Servicer agrees to indemnify, defend and hold harmless the Trustee (as such and in its individual capacity), the Custodian (as such and in its individual capacity), the Owner Trustee (as such and in its individual capacity), the Backup Servicer (as such, in its individual capacity and in its capacity as Successor Servicer) and any Successor Servicer (as such and in its individual capacity) and each of their officers, directors, employees and agents for and from and against any and all claims, losses, penalties, fines, forfeitures, judgments (provided that any indemnification for damages is limited to actual damages, not consequential, special or punitive damages), reasonable documented and out-of-pocket legal fees and related costs and any other reasonable costs, fees and expenses that such Person may sustain (including the reasonable costs and expenses of enforcing the indemnity against the Servicer) as a result of the Servicer's fraud or the failure of the Servicer to perform its duties and service the Loans in compliance in all material respects with the terms of this Agreement, except to the extent arising from gross negligence, willful misconduct or fraud by the Person claiming indemnification. Any Person seeking indemnification hereunder shall promptly notify the Servicer if such Person receives a complaint, claim, compulsory process or other notice of any loss, claim, damage or liability giving rise to a claim of indemnification hereunder but failure to provide such notice shall not relieve the Servicer of its indemnification obligations hereunder unless the Servicer is deprived of material substantive or procedural rights or defenses as a result thereof. The Servicer shall assume (with the consent of the indemnified party, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld) the defense and any settlement of any such claim and pay all expenses in connection therewith, including reasonable counsel fees, and promptly pay, discharge and satisfy any judgment or decree which may be entered against the indemnified party in respect of such claim; *provided* that any settlement of a claim shall include an unconditional release of the indemnified Person from all liability respecting such claim and shall not include any statement as to, or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act on behalf of the indemnified party without the indemnified party's consent. If the consent of the indemnified party required in the immediately preceding sentence is unreasonably withheld, the Servicer shall be relieved of its indemnification obligations hereunder with respect to such Person. The parties agree that the provisions of this Section 12.01 shall not be interpreted to provide recourse to the Servicer against loss by reason of the bankruptcy, insolvency or lack of creditworthiness of an Obligor with respect to a Loan. The Servicer shall have no liability for making indemnification hereunder to the extent any such indemnification constitutes recourse for uncollectible or uncollected Loans.

Section 12.02. Indemnification by Trust Depositor.

The Trust Depositor agrees to indemnify, defend, and hold the Trustee (as such and in its individual capacity), the Custodian (as such and in its individual capacity), the Owner Trustee (as such and in its individual capacity), the Backup Servicer (as such, in its individual capacity and in its capacity as Successor Servicer), any Successor Servicer (as such and in its individual capacity) and each of their officers, directors, employees and agents and each Securityholder harmless from and against any and all claims, losses, penalties, fines, forfeitures, reasonable

legal fees and related costs, judgments (*provided* that any indemnification for damages is limited to actual damages, not consequential, special or punitive damages), and any other reasonable costs, fees and expenses that such Person may sustain (including the reasonable costs and expenses of enforcing the indemnity against the Trust Depositor) as a result of the Trust Depositor's fraud or the failure of the Trust Depositor to perform its duties in compliance in all material respects with the terms of this Agreement and in the best interests of the Issuer, except to the extent arising from the gross negligence, willful misconduct or fraud by the Person claiming indemnification. Any Person seeking indemnification hereunder shall promptly notify the Trust Depositor if such Person receives a complaint, claim, compulsory process or other notice of any loss, claim, damage or liability giving rise to a claim of indemnification hereunder but failure to provide such notice shall not relieve the Trust Depositor of its indemnification obligations hereunder unless the Trust Depositor is deprived of material substantive or procedural rights or defenses as a result thereof. The Trust Depositor shall assume (with the consent of the indemnified party, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld) the defense and any settlement of any such claim and pay all expenses in connection therewith, including reasonable counsel fees, and promptly pay, discharge and satisfy any judgment or decree which may be entered against the indemnified party in respect of such claim; *provided* that any settlement of a claim shall include an unconditional release of the indemnified Person from all liability respecting such claim and shall not include any statement as to, or an admission of fault, culpability or a failure to act on behalf of the indemnified party without the indemnified party's consent. If the consent of the indemnified party required in the immediately preceding sentence is unreasonably withheld, the Trust Depositor is relieved of its indemnification obligations hereunder with respect to such Person.

Section 12.03. Survival.

The indemnities provided in this Article 12 shall survive the discharge and termination of this Agreement or earlier resignation or removal of the indemnitee.

ARTICLE 13.

MISCELLANEOUS

Section 13.01. Amendment.

(a) This Agreement may be amended from time to time by the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, the Seller and the Servicer, with the consent of the Trustee and the Backup Servicer, by written agreement, with notice to the Owner Trustee and the Rating Agency but without the consent of any Securityholder, to (i) cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provisions herein that may be inconsistent with any other provisions in this Agreement or in the Offering Memorandum, (ii) comply with any changes in the Code, USA PATRIOT Act, or U.S. securities laws (including the regulations implementing such laws), (iii) evidence the succession of another Person to the Issuer, a Successor Servicer or a successor Trustee, and the assumption by any such successor of the applicable covenants therein, (iv) add to the covenants of any party hereto for the benefit of the Securityholders, (v) amend any provision to this Agreement to reflect any written change to the guidelines, methodology or standards established by any Rating Agency that are applicable to this Agreement, (vi) modify Exhibit G, (vii) to

amend, modify or otherwise accommodate changes to this Agreement relating to compliance with Rule 17g-5 under the Exchange Act or to permit compliance with the Dodd-Frank Act (including, without limitation, the Volcker Rule), as applicable to the Issuer, the Servicer or the Notes, or to comply with any rule or regulation enacted by regulatory agencies of the United States federal government after the Closing Date that are applicable to the Notes or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, or (viii) add any new provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement which shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement; *provided* that no such amendment shall materially and adversely affect the interests of any Noteholder. Notice of any proposed amendment must be sent to all Securityholders at least ten (10) Business Days prior to the execution of such amendment. Any amendment shall not be deemed to materially and adversely affect the interests of any Noteholder if the Person requesting such amendment obtains an Opinion of Counsel addressed to the Owner Trustee and the Trustee to that effect.

(b) Except as provided in Section 13.01(a) hereof, this Agreement may be amended from time to time by the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, the Seller and the Servicer, with the consent of the Trustee and the Majority Noteholders and with prior notice to the Owner Trustee and the Rating Agency, for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Agreement or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Securityholders; *provided* that (i) no such amendment shall, without the consent of each Noteholder that may be adversely affected, reduce the percentage of the principal balance of the Notes that is required to consent to this Agreement and (ii) no such amendment shall increase or reduce in any manner the amount of, or accelerate or delay the timing of, or change the allocation or priority of, collections of payments on or in respect of the Loans or distributions that are required to be made for the benefit of the Noteholders or change the interest rate applicable to the Notes, without the consent of all adversely affected Noteholders.

(c) Promptly after the execution of any such amendment or consent, written notification of the substance of such amendment or consent shall be furnished by the Trustee to the Noteholders and by the Issuer to the Certificateholders. It shall not be necessary for the consent of any Securityholders required pursuant to Section 13.01(b) to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment or consent, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof. The manner of obtaining such consents and of evidencing the authorization by the Securityholders of the execution thereof shall be subject to such reasonable requirements as the Trustee may prescribe for the Noteholders and as the Issuer may prescribe for the Certificateholders. Notwithstanding anything contained herein, any amendment which affects the Owner Trustee, the Custodian or the Backup Servicer shall require the Owner Trustee's, the Custodian's or the Backup Servicer's, as applicable, written consent. Any amendment shall be accompanied by an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel addressed to the Owner Trustee and the Trustee to the effect that such amendment is permitted hereunder and under the other Transaction Documents, has been duly authorized by all necessary action, and all conditions precedent to such amendment have been satisfied.

Section 13.02. [Reserved].

Section 13.03. Governing Law.

(a) THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH, THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT REFERENCE TO ITS CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS (OTHER THAN SECTIONS 5-1401 AND 5-1402 OF THE NEW YORK GENERAL OBLIGATIONS LAW), AND THE OBLIGATIONS, RIGHTS, AND REMEDIES OF THE PARTIES UNDER THE AGREEMENT SHALL BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SUCH LAWS.

(b) EACH PARTY HERETO HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT. EACH PARTY HERETO (I) CERTIFIES THAT NO REPRESENTATIVE, AGENT OR ATTORNEY OF ANY OTHER PARTY HAS REPRESENTED, EXPRESSLY OR OTHERWISE, THAT SUCH OTHER PARTY WOULD NOT, IN THE EVENT OF LITIGATION, SEEK TO ENFORCE THE FOREGOING WAIVER AND (II) ACKNOWLEDGES THAT IT AND THE OTHER PARTIES HERETO HAVE BEEN INDUCED TO ENTER INTO THIS AGREEMENT BY, AMONG OTHER THINGS, THE MUTUAL WAIVERS AND CERTIFICATIONS IN THIS SECTION 13.03(b).

Section 13.04. Notices.

All notices, demands, certificates, requests and communications hereunder (“notices”) shall be in writing and shall be effective (a) upon receipt when sent through the U.S. mails, registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, with such receipt to be effective the date of delivery indicated on the return receipt, or (b) one Business Day after delivery to an overnight courier, or (c) on the date personally delivered to a Responsible Officer of the party to which sent, or (d) on the date transmitted by legible telecopier or electronic mail transmission with a confirmation of receipt, in all cases addressed to the recipient as follows:

- (a) if to the Servicer or the Seller:

Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: Chief Financial Officer
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

with a copy to:

Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: General Counsel
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

(b) if to the Trust Depositor:
Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: Chief Financial Officer
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

with a copy to:

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: General Counsel
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

(c) if to the Trustee:
U.S. Bank National Association
Global Corporate Trust
One Federal Street 3rd Floor
Boston, MA 02110
Attention: Jack Lindsay
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Tel: (617) 603-6789
Fax: (855) 869-2187

(d) if to the Backup Servicer:
U.S. Bank National Association
60 Livingston Avenue
St. Paul, MN 55107
Attention: Deborah Jones Franco
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (651) 466-7365
Telephone: (651) 466-5032

-
- (e) if to the Custodian with respect to Loan Files

U.S. Bank National Association
Document Custody Services
1719 Otis Way
Florence, South Carolina 29501
Attention: Steven Garrett
E-mail: steven.garrett@usbank.com
Telephone: 843-676-8901
Facsimile: 843-673-0162
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

- (f) if to the Owner Trustee:

Wilmington Trust, National Association
1100 North Market Street
Wilmington, Delaware 19890
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration
Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140

with a copy to:
the Seller and the Servicer as provided in clause (a) above

- (g) if to the Issuer:

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
c/o Wilmington Trust, National Association
1100 North Market Street
Wilmington, Delaware 19890
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration
Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140

with a copy to:
the Seller and the Servicer as provided in clause (a) above

- (h) if to the Rating Agency:

Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc.
805 Third Avenue, 29th Floor
New York, New York 10022
Attn: ABS Surveillance

- (i) if to the Initial Purchaser:

Guggenheim Securities, LLC

330 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017
Attention: Chief Operating Officer / General Counsel
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (646) 786-4931

Each party hereto may, by notice given in accordance herewith to each of the other parties hereto, designate any further or different address to which subsequent notices shall be sent.

Section 13.05. Severability of Provisions.

If one or more of the covenants, agreements, provisions or terms of this Agreement shall be for any reason whatsoever prohibited or held invalid or unenforceable, then such covenants, agreements, provisions or terms shall be deemed severable from the remaining covenants, agreements, provisions or terms of this Agreement and shall in no way affect the validity or enforceability of the other provisions of this Agreement, the Notes or Certificates or the rights of the Securityholders, and any such prohibition, invalidity or unenforceability in any jurisdiction shall not invalidate or render unenforceable such covenants, agreements, provisions or terms in any other jurisdiction.

Section 13.06. Third Party Beneficiaries.

The Owner Trustee is an express third-party beneficiary of this Agreement and, as such, shall have full power and authority to enforce the provisions of this Agreement against the parties hereto. Except as otherwise specifically provided herein, the parties hereto hereby manifest their intent that no third party shall be deemed a third party beneficiary of this Agreement, and specifically that the Obligors are not third party beneficiaries of this Agreement.

Section 13.07. Counterparts.

This Agreement may be executed by facsimile signature and in several counterparts, each of which shall be an original and all of which shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 13.08. Headings.

The headings of the various Articles and Sections herein are for convenience of reference only and shall not define or limit any of the terms or provisions hereof.

Section 13.09. No Bankruptcy Petition; Disclaimer.

(a) Each of the Seller, the Trustee, the Custodian, the Backup Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer (acting through the Owner Trustee) and each Holder (by acceptance of the applicable Securities) covenants and agrees that, prior to the date that is one year and one day (or, if longer, the then applicable preference period and one day) after the payment in full of all amounts owing in respect of all outstanding Notes, it will not institute against the Trust Depositor or the Issuer, or join any other Person in instituting against the Trust

Depositor or the Issuer, any bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency or liquidation proceedings or other similar proceedings under the laws of the United States or any state of the United States; *provided* that nothing herein shall prohibit the Trustee from filing proofs of claim or otherwise participating in any such proceedings instituted by any other Person.

(b) The Issuer acknowledges and agrees that the Certificates represent ownership of a beneficial interest in the Issuer and Loan Assets only and the Securities do not represent an interest in any assets (other than the Loan Assets) of the Trust Depositor (including by virtue of any deficiency claim in respect of obligations not paid or otherwise satisfied from the Loan Assets, other Collateral and proceeds thereof).

(c) The provisions of this Section 13.09 shall be for the third party benefit of those entitled to rely thereon, including the Securityholders, and shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

Section 13.10. Jurisdiction.

Any legal action or proceeding with respect to this Agreement may be brought in the courts of the United States for the Southern District of New York, and by execution and delivery of this Agreement, each party hereto consents, for itself and in respect of its property, to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of those courts. Each such party irrevocably waives any objection, including any objection to the laying of venue or based on the grounds of *forum non conveniens*, which it may now or hereafter have to the bringing of any action or proceeding in such jurisdiction in respect of this Agreement or any document related hereto.

Section 13.11. Tax Characterization.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.01, Section 2.04 and Section 2.07 hereof, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer agree that, pursuant to Treasury Regulations Section 301.7701-3(b)(1) and for federal, state and local income tax purposes, in the event that the Certificates are owned by more than one beneficial owner for federal income tax purposes, the Issuer will be treated as a partnership the partners of which are the beneficial owners of the Certificates, and in the event that the Certificates are owned by a single beneficial owner for federal income tax purposes, the Issuer will be disregarded as an entity separate from such beneficial owner.

Section 13.12. [Reserved].

Section 13.13. Limitation of Liability of Owner Trustee.

It is expressly understood and agreed by the parties hereto that (i) this Agreement is executed and delivered by Wilmington Trust, National Association, not individually or personally but solely as Owner Trustee on behalf of the Issuer under the Trust Agreement, in the exercise of the powers and authority conferred and vested in it, (ii) each of the representations, undertakings and agreements herein made on the part of the Issuer is made and intended not as personal representations, undertakings and agreements by Wilmington Trust, National Association but is made and intended for the purpose of binding only the Issuer, (iii) nothing herein contained shall be construed as creating any liability on Wilmington Trust, National

Association individually or personally, to perform any covenant either expressed or implied contained herein, all such liability, if any, being expressly waived by the parties to this Agreement and by any person claiming by, through or under them and (iv) under no circumstances shall Wilmington Trust, National Association be personally liable for the payment of any indebtedness or expenses of the Issuer or be liable for the breach or failure of any obligation, representation, warranty or covenant made or undertaking by the Issuer under this Agreement or any related documents. For the purposes of this Agreement, in the performance of its duties or obligations hereunder, the Owner Trustee shall be subject to, and entitled to the benefits of, the terms and provisions of Articles VI, VII and VIII of the Trust Agreement.

Section 13.14. [Reserved].

Section 13.15. No Partnership.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed or construed to create a co-partnership or joint venture between the parties hereto, and the services of the Servicer shall be rendered as an independent contractor and not as agent or as a fiduciary for any party hereto or for the Securityholders.

Section 13.16. Successors and Assigns.

This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors and permitted assigns.

Section 13.17. Acts of Holders.

Except as otherwise specifically provided herein, whenever Holder action, consent or approval is required under this Agreement or any other Transaction Document, such action, consent or approval shall be deemed to have been taken or given on behalf of, and shall be binding upon, all Holders if the Majority Noteholders agree to take such action or give such consent or approval. In all cases except where otherwise required by law or regulation, any act by a Holder of a Note may be taken by the Beneficial Owner of such Note.

Section 13.18. Duration of Agreement.

This Agreement shall continue in existence and effect until terminated as herein provided.

Section 13.19. Limited Recourse.

Notwithstanding any other provisions of the Notes, this Agreement or any other Transaction Document, the obligations of the Issuer under the Notes, this Agreement and any other Transaction Document are limited recourse obligations of the Issuer payable solely from the Collateral in accordance with the Priority of Payments and, following realization of the Collateral and distribution in accordance with the Priority of Payments, any claims of the Noteholders and the other Secured Parties, and any other parties to any Transaction Document shall be extinguished. The obligations of the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Issuer and the Servicer under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents are solely the obligations of

the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Issuer and the Servicer, respectively. No recourse shall be had for the payment of any amount owing by the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Issuer or the Servicer or otherwise under this Agreement or under the other Transaction Documents or for the payment by the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Issuer or the Servicer of any fee in respect hereof or thereof or any other obligation or claim of or against the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Issuer or the Servicer arising out of or based upon this Agreement or on any other Transaction Document, against any Affiliate, shareholder, partner, manager, member, director, officer, employee, representative or agent of the Trust Depositor, the Seller, the Issuer or the Servicer or of any Affiliate of such Person. The provisions of this Section 13.19 shall survive termination of this Agreement.

Section 13.20. Confidentiality.

Each of the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer (if other than Hercules) and the Trustee shall maintain and shall cause each of its employees, officers, agents and Affiliates to maintain the confidentiality of material non-public information concerning Hercules and its Affiliates or about the Obligors obtained by it or them in connection with the structuring, negotiating, execution and performance of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, except that each such party and its employees, officers, agents and Affiliates may disclose such information to other parties to the Transaction Documents and to its external accountants, attorneys, any potential subservicers and the agents of such Persons provided such Persons expressly agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information, and as required by an applicable law or order of any judicial or administrative proceeding. This Section 13.20 shall constitute a confidentiality agreement for purposes of Regulation FD under the Exchange Act. Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, the Servicer shall not be required to disclose any confidential information it is restricted from disclosing by law or contract; *provided* that the Servicer will use its commercially reasonable efforts to enter into, or cause the Issuer to enter into, a confidentiality agreement permitting such disclosure satisfactory to the Servicer with any Person to whom such information is required to be delivered.

Section 13.21. Non-Confidentiality of Tax Treatment.

All parties hereto agree that each of them and each of their managers, officers, employees, representatives, and other agents may disclose to any and all persons, without limitation of any kind, the tax treatment and tax structure of the transaction and all materials of any kind (including opinions or other tax analyses) that are provided to any of them relating to such tax treatment and tax structure. "Tax treatment" and "tax structure" shall have the same meaning as such terms have for purposes of Treasury Regulation Section 1.6011-4.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed by their respective officers as of the day and year first above written.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1, as the Issuer

By: WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, not in its individual capacity, but solely as Owner Trustee on behalf of the Issuer

By: /s/ Rosaline K. Mancy

Name: Rosaline K. Mancy

Title: Administrative Vice President

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor

By: /s/ Melanie Grace

Name: Melanie Grace

Title: General Counsel

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., as the Seller and as the Servicer

By: /s/ Melanie Grace

Name: Melanie Grace

Title: General Counsel

[Signatures Continued on the Following Page]

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Sale and Servicing Agreement

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed by their respective officers as of the day and year first above written.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but as the Trustee

By: /s/ Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Name: Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Title: Senior Vice President

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but as Custodian

By: /s/ Kenneth Brandt
Name: Kenneth Brandt
Title: Assistant Vice President

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but as the Backup Servicer

By: /s/ Deborah J. Franco
Name: Deborah J. Franco
Title: Vice President

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but as the Paying Agent

By: /s/ Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Name: Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.
Title: Senior Vice President

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Sale and Servicing Agreement

FORM OF ASSIGNMENT

November 1, 2018

Pursuant to and in accordance with the Sale and Servicing Agreement (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), dated as of November 1, 2018, made by and among Hercules Capital Funding2018-1 LLC, as the trust depositor (the "Trust Depositor" or "Assignor"), Hercules Capital, Inc., as the seller and as the servicer, U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee, the backup servicer, the paying agent and the custodian and Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the issuer (the "Issuer" or "Assignee"), the undersigned does hereby sell, transfer, assign, set over and otherwise convey to the Issuer all right, title and interest of the Trust Depositor in and to the following: (i) the Initial Loans listed in the initial List of Loans and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds, Released Mortgaged Property Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the Cutoff Date; (ii) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Loans; (iii) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans; (iv) the Transaction Accounts, together with all cash and investments in each of the foregoing; (v) all collections and records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing; (vi) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and (vii) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, *provided, however*, that all right, title and interest, if any, of Hercules Capital Funding2018-1 LLC in and to each Excluded Amount and any proceeds of any Excluded Amount shall be excluded from the foregoing transfer by Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC.

This Assignment shall be governed by the laws of the State of New York applicable to agreements made and to be performed therein. Capitalized terms used herein have the meaning given such terms in the Agreement.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Assignment to be duly executed as of the date first written above.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC, as
Assignor

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Assignment

FORM OF CLOSING CERTIFICATE OF TRUST DEPOSITOR

November, 1 2018

The undersigned certifies that she/he is an authorized officer of Hercules Capital, Inc., the sole Member of Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "Trust Depositor"), and that, in the capacity as such officer and not individually, is duly authorized to execute and deliver this certificate on behalf of the Trust Depositor in connection with the Sale and Servicing Agreement (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), dated as of November 1, 2018, by and among Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the Issuer, the Trust Depositor, U.S. Bank National Association, as the Trustee, the Backup Servicer, the Custodian, the Paying Agent and Hercules Capital, Inc., as the Seller and as the Servicer (all capitalized terms used herein without definition have the respective meanings set forth in the Agreement), and further certifies in his capacity as such officer and not individually as follows as of the date hereof (it being understood that these certifications are being relied upon by, among others, the Initial Purchaser and its counsel in connection with the Initial Purchaser's undertakings in connection with the subject transactions):

1. Attached hereto as Annex I is a true, correct and complete copy of the Certificate of Formation of the Trust Depositor, together with all amendments thereto as in effect on the date hereof, which documents were in full force and effect on the date hereof, and at all times subsequent thereto, and no other amendments have been authorized by the members or managers of the Trust Depositor.

2. Attached hereto as Annex II is a Certificate of the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware, dated [____], 2018, stating that the Trust Depositor is duly formed under the laws of the State of Delaware and is in good standing.

3. Attached hereto as Annex III is a true, correct and complete copy of the Limited Liability Company Agreement of the Trust Depositor (providing for the authorization, execution, delivery and performance of (among other things) the Agreement and the other Transaction Documents), together with all amendments thereto in effect on the date hereof, which documents are in full force and effect on the date hereof.

4. Each person named on Annex IV attached hereto is a duly elected, qualified and incumbent officer of the Trust Depositor, and the signature set forth opposite his or her name on such Annex IV is that person's genuine signature.

5. Attached hereto as Annex V is a true, correct and complete copy of the written resolutions duly adopted by the board of managers of the Trust Depositor relating to the authorization, execution, delivery and performance of (among other things) the Agreement and the other Transaction Documents. Said resolutions have not been amended, modified, annulled or revoked, are in full force and effect on the date hereof and at all times subsequent thereto, and are the only resolutions relating to these matters which have been adopted by the sole member.

6. In connection with the sale of certain of the Notes, Hercules Capital, Inc. has prepared a preliminary offering memorandum dated October 18, 2018 (including any exhibits, amendments or supplements thereto and all information incorporated therein by reference, the "Preliminary Memorandum"), and a final offering memorandum dated November 1, 2018 (including any exhibits, amendments or supplements thereto and all information incorporated therein by reference, the "Final Memorandum", and each of the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum, a "Memorandum" or together the "Memoranda") including a description of the terms of the Notes, the terms of the offering, and the Trust. Hercules Capital, Inc. has also posted information relating to the performance of the Loans, one or more marketing books, and certain additional information and documents concerning the Notes, the Loans and Hercules Capital, Inc. to a password protected Internet site accessible by potential investors (such information the "Additional Offering Materials"). It is understood and agreed that 10:14 a.m. New York time on October 25, 2018 constitutes the time of the contract of sale of certain of the Notes for purposes of Rule 159 under the Securities Act (the "Time of Sale"). It is further understood and agreed that the Preliminary Offering Memorandum and the Additional Offering Materials as of the Time of Sale shall be the entirety of the information conveyed to investors as of the Time of Sale, and that "Time of Sale Information" shall refer exclusively to such information, in either case in such form that has not been superseded by any amendment or supplement thereto.

7. I have carefully examined the Final Memorandum and the Transaction Documents.

8. No event with respect to the Trust Depositor has occurred and is continuing that constitutes an Event of Default or an event that, with notice or the passage of time or both, would become an Event of Default as defined in the Transaction Documents. To my knowledge after reasonable investigation, there has been no material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or the earnings, business affairs or business prospects, of the Trust Depositor, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Time of Sale Information and except as set forth therein or since the Time of Sale.

9. All federal, state and local taxes of the Trust Depositor due and owing as of the date hereof have been paid or adequate provisions for the payment thereof have been made.

10. All representations and warranties of the Trust Depositor contained in the Transaction Documents or any other related documents, or in any document, certificate or financial or other statement delivered in connection therewith, are true and correct in all material respects as of the date hereof.

11. There is no action, investigation or proceeding pending or, to my knowledge, threatened against the Trust Depositor before any court, administrative agency or other tribunal (a) asserting the invalidity of the Transaction Documents; (b) seeking to prevent the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents; or (c) seeking any determination or ruling that is would reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the Trust Depositor's performance of its obligations under, or the validity or enforceability of, the Transaction Documents.

12. The Trust Depositor is not required to obtain the consent of any other party (other than those that it has already obtained) or any consent, license, approval or authorization from, or registration or declaration with, any Governmental Authority (other than (i) the filing of UCC financing statements and (ii) those that it has already obtained) in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of the Sale and Servicing Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

13. The Trust Depositor is not a party to any agreements or instruments evidencing or governing indebtedness for money borrowed or by which the Trust Depositor or its property is bound (other than the Transaction Documents).

14. The execution, delivery and performance of the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party by the Trust Depositor, and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, will not violate in any material respect any Applicable Law applicable to the Trust Depositor, or conflict with, result in a default under or constitute a breach of the Trust Depositor's organizational documents or material Contractual Obligations to which the Trust Depositor is a party or by which the Trust Depositor or any of the Trust Depositor's properties may be bound, or result in the creation or imposition of any Lien of any kind upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such material Contractual Obligations, other than as contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

15. In connection with the transfer of the Initial Loan Assets contemplated in the Transaction Documents, the Trust Depositor (a) has not made such transfer with the actual intent to hinder, delay or defraud any creditor of the Trust Depositor; (b) has not received less than a reasonably equivalent value in exchange for such transfer; (c) at the time of and after giving effect to the conveyance of Loan Assets as of the date hereof, is Solvent; and (d) does not intend to incur or believe it will incur debts beyond its ability to pay when matured.

16. Each of the agreements and conditions of the Trust Depositor to be performed on or before the Closing Date pursuant to the Transaction Documents have been performed in all material respects.

17. The Trust Depositor has not authorized for filing any UCC financing statements listing the Initial Loan Assets as collateral other than (a) financing statements relating to the transactions contemplated in the Agreement and (b) financing statements that will be terminated on or before the Closing Date.

18. Since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Time of Sale Information, there has been no material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or in the earnings, results of operations, business affairs or business prospects of the Trust Depositor, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, or in the ability of the Trust Depositor to perform its obligations under the Transaction Documents or in the characteristics of the Initial Loans.

19. Nothing has come to the attention of the Trust Depositor that would lead it to believe that the Final Memorandum at the date thereof contained or contains an untrue statement of material fact or omitted or omits to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements in each, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have affixed my signature hereto as of the date written above.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC, as trust
depositor

By: Hercules Capital, Inc., its sole member

By: _____

Name:

Title:

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Closing Certificate of the Trust Depositor

CERTIFICATE OF FORMATION

CERTIFICATE OF GOOD STANDING

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY AGREEMENT

INCUMBENCY OF SIGNING OFFICERS

<u>Name of Officer</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Signature</u>
1. [_____]	[_____]	_____
2. [_____]	[_____]	_____
3. [_____]	[_____]	_____

WRITTEN RESOLUTIONS

FORM OF CLOSING CERTIFICATE OF SERVICER/SELLER

November 1, 2018

THIS OFFICER'S CERTIFICATE is executed and delivered as of date first set forth above, pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), dated as of the date hereof, by and among Hercules Capital, Inc., as the Seller and as the Servicer ("Hercules" or the "Company"), Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor, U.S. Bank National Association, as the Trustee, the Custodian, the Paying Agent and the Backup Servicer, and Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the Issuer. All capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings ascribed to such terms in the Agreement.

I, [____], do hereby certify that I am the Chief Financial Officer of the Company and that, as such, I am authorized to execute this certificate on behalf of the Company and do further certify that:

1. Attached hereto as Annex I is a true, correct and complete copy of the Certificate of Incorporation of the Company, as amended, together with all amendments thereto, and as in effect on the date hereof, which documents were in full force and effect in such form on the date hereof, and at all times subsequent thereto, without modification or amendment in any respect.

2. Attached hereto as Annex II is a Certificate of the Secretary of State of the State of Maryland, dated [____], 2018, stating that Hercules is duly incorporated under the laws of the State of Maryland and is in good standing and a Certificate of the Secretary of State of the State of California, dated [____], 2018, stating that Hercules is in good standing as a foreign corporation in the State of California.

3. Attached hereto as Annex III is a true, correct and complete copy of the By-Laws of Hercules, together with all amendments thereto in effect on the date hereof, which documents are in full force and effect on the date hereof.

4. Attached hereto as Annex IV is a true, correct and complete copy of the written resolutions duly adopted by the board of directors of Hercules relating to the authorization, execution, delivery and performance of (among other things) the Agreement and the other Transaction Documents. Said resolutions have not been amended, modified, annulled or revoked, are in full force and effect on the date hereof and at all times subsequent thereto, and are the only resolutions relating to these matters which have been adopted by the sole member.

5. Each person named on Annex V attached hereto is a duly elected, qualified and incumbent officer of Hercules and the signature set forth opposite his or her name on such Annex V is that person's genuine signature.

6. In connection with the sale of certain of the Notes, the Company has prepared a preliminary offering memorandum dated October 18, 2018 (including any exhibits, amendments or supplements thereto and all information incorporated therein by reference, the "Preliminary Memorandum"), and a final offering memorandum dated October 26, 2018 (including any exhibits, amendments or supplements thereto and all information incorporated therein by reference, the "Final Memorandum"), and each of the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum, a "Memorandum" or together the "Memoranda") including a description of the terms of the Notes, the terms of the offering, and the Trust. The Company has also posted information relating to the performance of the Loans, one or more marketing books, and certain additional information and documents concerning the Notes, the Loans and the Company to a password protected Internet site accessible by potential investors (such information the "Additional Offering Materials"). It is understood and agreed that 10:14 a.m. New York time on October 25, 2018 constitutes the time of the contract of sale of certain of the Notes for purposes of Rule 159 under the Securities Act (the "Time of Sale"). It is further understood and agreed that the Preliminary Offering Memorandum and the Additional Offering Materials as of the Time of Sale shall be the entirety of the information conveyed to investors as of the Time of Sale, and that "Time of Sale Information" shall refer exclusively to such information, in either case in such form that has not been superseded by any amendment or supplement thereto.

7. I have carefully examined the Final Memorandum and the Transaction Documents.

8. No event with respect to Hercules has occurred and is continuing that constitutes an Event of Default or Servicer Default or an event that, with notice or the passage of time, would constitute an Event of Default or Servicer Default as defined in the Transaction Documents. To the best of my knowledge after reasonable investigation, there has been no material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or the earnings, business affairs or business prospects, of Hercules, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Time of Sale Information and except as set forth therein or since the Time of Sale.

9. All federal, state and local taxes of Hercules due and owing as of the date hereof have been paid or adequate provisions for the payment thereof have been made.

10. All representations and warranties of Hercules contained in the Transaction Documents or in any document, certificate or financial or other statement delivered in connection therewith are true and correct in all material respects as of the date hereof.

11. There is no action, investigation or proceeding pending or, to my knowledge, threatened against Hercules before any court, administrative agency or other tribunal (a) asserting the invalidity of any Transaction Document to which Hercules is a party; (b) seeking to prevent the issuance of the Notes or the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents; or (c) seeking any determination or ruling that would reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect Hercules's performance of its obligations under, or the validity or enforceability of, the Transaction Documents.

12. Hercules is not required to obtain the consent of any other party (other than those that it has already obtained) or any consent, license, approval or authorization from, or registration or declaration with, any Governmental Authority (other than (i) the filing of UCC financing statements and (ii) those that it has already obtained) in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of the Sale and Service Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

13. Hercules's (a) transfer and assignment of the Loan Assets to the Trust Depositor; (b) Hercules's entering into of the Transaction Documents; and (c) consummation of any of the transactions contemplated in the Transaction Documents, in each case will not violate or conflict with any agreement or instrument to which Hercules is a party or by which it or its property is otherwise bound.

14. In connection with the transfers of the Initial Loan Assets contemplated in the Transaction Documents, Hercules (a) has not made such transfer with actual intent to hinder, delay or defraud any creditor of Hercules; (b) has not received less than a reasonably equivalent value in exchange for such transfer; (c) at the time of and after giving effect to the conveyance of Loan Assets as of the date hereof, is Solvent; (d) is not engaged (or about to engage) in a business or transaction for which it has unreasonably small capital; and (e) does not intend to incur or believe it will incur debts beyond its ability to pay when matured.

15. Each of the agreements and conditions of Hercules to be performed or satisfied on or before the Closing Date under the Transaction Documents has been performed or satisfied in all material respects.

16. Hercules has not authorized for filing any UCC financing statements listing the Initial Loan Assets as collateral other than financing statements relating to the transactions contemplated in the Agreement.

17. Since the respective dates as of which information is given in the Time of Sale Information, there has been no material adverse change in the condition, financial or otherwise, or in the earnings, results of operations, business affairs or business prospects of Hercules, whether or not arising in the ordinary course of business, or in the ability of Hercules to perform its obligations under the Purchase Agreement or under the Transaction Documents or in the characteristics of the Initial Loans.

18. Nothing has come to the attention of Hercules that would lead it to believe that the Final Memorandum at the date thereof contained or contains an untrue statement of material fact or omitted or omits to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements in each, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, I have affixed my signature hereto as of the date written above.

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Closing Certificate of the Seller/Service

CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION

CERTIFICATES OF GOOD STANDING

BY-LAWS

WRITTEN RESOLUTIONS

INCUMBENCY OF SIGNING OFFICERS

<u>Name of Officer</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Signature</u>
1. [_____]	[_____]	_____
2. [_____]	[_____]	_____
3. [_____]	[_____]	_____

FORM OF LIQUIDATION REPORT

Obligor Name:
Account number:
Original Outstanding Loan Balance:

1.	Amounts received or receivable		
	Principal Prepayment		\$ _____
	Property Sale Proceeds		\$ _____
	Other (Itemize)		\$ _____
2.	Liquidation Expenses	\$ _____	
3.	Line 1 minus Line 2	\$ _____	
4.	Nonrecoverable Advances	\$ _____	
5.	Scheduled Payment Advances, Servicing Advances and interest thereon reimbursed	\$ _____	
6.	Insurance Proceeds	\$ _____	
7.	Outstanding Loan Balance of the Loan on date of liquidation	\$ _____	
8.	Realized (Loss) or Gain (Line 3 minus Line 4 minus Line 5 plus line 6 minus line 7)	\$ _____	

EU RETENTION UNDERTAKING LETTER

See attached

Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301

EU RISK RETENTION LETTER

November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
c/o Wilmington Trust, National Association
Rodney Square North, 1100 North Market Street
Wilmington, Delaware 19890
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
Global Corporate Trust
One Federal Street 3rd Floor
Boston, Massachusetts 02110
Attn: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (855) 869-2187

Guggenheim Securities, LLC,
as Initial Purchaser
330 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10017
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (646)-786-4931
Re: Retention of Net Economic Interest

Dear Ladies and Gentlemen,

This letter is being delivered in connection with the issue of notes (the "Notes") by Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as issuer (the "Issuer") pursuant to the terms of the Indenture (the "Indenture"), dated as of the date hereof, between the Issuer and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee (the "Trustee"). Reference is made to the Sale and Servicing Agreement (the "Sale and Servicing Agreement"), dated as of the date hereof, by and among Hercules Capital, Inc. (the "Company"), as the seller and as the servicer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the trust depositor (the "Trust Depositor"), U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee, custodian, backup servicer and paying agent, and the Issuer. All capitalized terms used but not defined herein have the respective meanings given to such terms in the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

The Issuer will acquire certain Loan Assets for its own account from the Trust Depositor (in such capacity, the Retention Holder"), pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement. The Retention Holder will acquire certain Loan Assets for its own account from the Company pursuant to a sale and contribution agreement, dated as of the date hereof (together with any amendment or modification permitted thereunder, the "Sale and Contribution Agreement"). The Company will originate such Loan Assets or acquire them in the secondary market for its own account. The internal books and records of the Company, the Retention Holder and the Issuer will reflect such transfers of Loan Assets. In addition, so long as the applicable conditions set forth in the Sale and Servicing Agreement are met, each of the Retention Holder and the Issuer may acquire Additional Loan Assets and Substitute Loan Assets.

The Company, as sole equity owner of the Retention Holder (or any commonly-controlled transferee of the Company's equity interest in the Retention Holder as permitted under clause 1(a) below, the "Retention Parent"), represents and warrants to the Issuer, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) and the Initial Purchaser that the Retention Parent is the sole owner, directly or indirectly, of the Retention Holder. The Retention Parent and, by their acceptance of the benefits of this letter, the Issuer, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) and the Initial Purchaser, as applicable, each hereby agrees as follows:

So long as any of the Notes remain outstanding, the Retention Parent will not transfer ownership of its equity interest in the Retention Holder other than to an entity that is then under 100% common control with the Company that acts as a holding company, integral to the overall operations of the consolidated group, that owns assets (excluding the equity of the Retention Holder) with a value at least equal to the amount of the Retention Interest then held by the Retention Holder and that enters into an agreement that it delivers to the Issuer, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) and the Initial Purchaser whereby it assumes all past, current or future obligations of "Retention Parent" hereunder. Upon delivery of such assumption agreement, the transferring entity shall cease for all purposes to be the "Retention Parent" for purposes of this letter and shall be, and hereby is, released from its obligations under this letter.

The Retention Holder and the Retention Parent agree for the benefit of the Issuer, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) and the Initial Purchaser, so long as any Notes remain Outstanding, that:

the Retention Holder will, and the Retention Parent will cause the Retention Holder to, retain a material net economic interest, which will be comprised of an interest in the first loss tranche within the meaning of paragraph (d) of Article 405(1) of the CRR, paragraph (d) of Article 51(1) of the AIFMD Level 2 Regulation and paragraph 2(d) of Article 254 of the Solvency II Level 2 Regulation in effect on the Closing Date, by way of holding, subject to the provisions hereof, at least the minimum amount of Interests currently required by the applicable Retention Requirement Law, being an amount equal to 5% (or such lower amount, including 0%, if such lower amount is required or allowed under the then applicable Retention Requirement Law as a result of amendment, repeal or otherwise and in no event an amount in excess of 5%) of the nominal value of the Loan Assets (the "Retention Interest"), and the requirement to hold the Retention Interest in accordance with this paragraph 2, the "Retention Requirement"); and

the Retention Interest will not be sold, the subject of any credit risk mitigation, any short positions or any other credit hedge relating to the Retention Interest (in each case, to the extent not permitted by the applicable Retention Requirement Law).

The Retention Holder agrees that:

for the purposes of the Retention Requirements, it is holding the Retention Interest as an “originator” as such term is defined in Article 4(1)(13) of the CRR as in effect on the Closing Date in accordance with the provisions of this letter agreement;

it will confirm in writing to the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders), upon written request therefor by the Issuer delivered as a result of a material change in (i) the performance of the Notes, (ii) the risk characteristics of the transaction or (iii) the Loan Assets, its continued compliance with the requirements set forth in paragraph 2 above;

it will, promptly upon a Responsible Officer of the Retention Holder becoming aware of the occurrence thereof, provide a written notice to the Issuer, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) and the Initial Purchaser of any failure by it to satisfy at any time the provisions of paragraph 2 above; and

it will use its commercially reasonable efforts, upon the request of an Affected Noteholder and subject to any applicable confidentiality or regulatory restrictions applicable to it or the Retention Parent, to make materially relevant information (including, but not limited to, the credit quality and performance of the Loan Assets and cash flows) available as may reasonably be required and requested by such Affected Noteholder so that it may ensure compliance with the provisions of the Retention Requirements applicable to it provided such information is in the possession or the Retention Holder or reasonably obtainable by the Retention Holder at the expense of the requesting Affected Noteholder and provided further that such Affected Noteholder agrees to keep confidential such information provided to it by the Retention Holder in accordance with the terms and conditions of a mutually agreeable confidentiality agreement to be entered into by such Affected Noteholder with the Retention Holder prior to its receipt of such information (provided that such Affected Noteholder may share such information with any applicable regulatory authority as may be necessary for it to ensure compliance with the provisions of the Retention Requirements applicable to it).

As used in this letter,

“Affected Noteholder” means each Noteholder subject to a Retention Requirement Law.

“AIFMD” means European Union Directive 2011/61/EU on Alternative Investment Fund Managers;

“AIFMD Level 2 Regulation” means Section 5 of the European Union Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 231/2013 supplementing Article 17 of the AIFMD;

“Articles 404-410” means Articles 404-410 of the CRR;

“CRR” means the EU Capital Requirements Regulation (Regulation (EU) 575/2013) as published on June 27, 2013;

“EBA” means the European Banking Authority and/or its predecessor, the Committee of European Banking Supervisors and any successor or replacement agency or authority.

“net economic interest”, shall have the meaning given thereto in the applicable Retention Requirement Laws;

“Retention Requirement Laws” means the Solvency II Level 2 Regulation, the AIFMD Level 2 Regulation and Articles 404-410, together with any applicable guidelines, technical standards and related documents published by the EBA or the European Commission;

“Solvency II” means Article 135(2) of European Union Directive 2009/138/EC on the taking-up and pursuit of the business of Insurance and Reinsurance; and

“Solvency II Level 2 Regulation” means Article 254 of European Union Commission Delegated Regulation (EU) 2015/35 supplementing Solvency II.

For the avoidance of doubt, the purchase by the Retention Parent or by the Retention Holder of assets for its own account may include commitments or other agreements to purchase assets for its own account, which may be settled with it or at its direction.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this letter, each of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser, by accepting the benefit of this letter, agrees that it may not, prior to the date which is one year and one day (or if longer, any applicable preference period then in effect plus one day) after the payment in full of all Notes of the Issuer, and all notes issued by or other debt obligations of the Retention Holder, institute against, or join any other Person in instituting against, the Retention Holder any bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency, winding-up, moratorium or liquidation proceedings, or other proceedings under U.S. federal or state bankruptcy or similar laws. Nothing in this paragraph 6 shall preclude, or be deemed to stop, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders):

from taking any action prior to the expiration of the aforementioned period in (i) any case or proceeding voluntarily filed or commenced by the Retention Holder, or (ii) any involuntary insolvency proceeding filed or commenced by a Person other than the Retention Holder; or

from commencing against the Retention Holder or any of its properties any legal action which is not a bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency, winding-up, moratorium or liquidation proceeding.

The provisions of this paragraph 6 shall survive the termination of this letter, the Indenture and the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this letter, each party hereto and each of the Trustee, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser, by accepting the benefit of this letter, agrees that:

The obligations of each party to this letter are at all times limited recourse obligations of such party payable solely from such party's assets available at such time, and, following realization of such assets and application of the proceeds thereof, all obligations of and any claims against such party hereunder or in connection herewith after such realization shall be extinguished and shall not thereafter revive.

No recourse shall be had against any officer, director, employee, shareholder, member, manager, partner, authorized person or incorporator of any party hereto, of its manager, of its affiliates, or of its successors or assigns for any amounts payable under this letter.

The foregoing provisions of this paragraph 8 shall not:

prevent recourse by the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) to such party's assets for amounts due, if any, by such party hereunder;

constitute a waiver, release or discharge of any obligation of such party under this letter until all such assets have been realized; or

limit the right of the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) to name either party hereto as a party defendant in any proceeding or in the exercise of any other remedy under this letter, so long as no judgment in the nature of a deficiency judgment or seeking personal liability shall be asked for or (if obtained) enforced against any Person referred to in paragraph 7(b).

The provisions of this paragraph 7 shall survive the termination of this letter, the Indenture and the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby.

This letter is binding on the parties hereto, their successors and permitted assigns, and is for the benefit of the Issuer, the Trustee (for the benefit of the Affected Noteholders) and the Initial Purchaser, their successors and permitted assigns as provided herein. No other Person shall be deemed a third party beneficiary of this letter.

This letter shall be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the internal laws of the State of New York.

[Remainder of page intentionally left blank]

Very Truly Yours,

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.,
as the Seller and Servicer

By: _____
Name:
Title:

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC,
as Retention Holder

By: _____
Name:
Title:

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

SERVICER OFFICER'S CERTIFICATE

[•], 201[]

Reference is made to the Sale and Servicing Agreement, dated as of November 1, 2018 (the "Servicing Agreement"), by and among Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, as the Issuer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor, Hercules Capital, Inc., as the Seller and the Servicer (in such capacity, the "Servicer") and U.S. Bank National Association as the Trustee (in such capacity, the "Trustee") and the Backup Servicer relating to the Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Asset Backed Notes. Terms defined by the Servicing Agreement, wherever used herein, unless otherwise defined herein, shall have the same meanings as are prescribed by the Servicing Agreement.

OPTION 1:

Pursuant to Section 5.02(e), the undersigned, in its capacity as Servicer, hereby requests the documents described on Schedule A hereto in connection with its servicing activities.

OPTION 2:

The undersigned, in its capacity as Servicer, hereby certifies that the Loan described on Schedule A hereto is required to be repurchased or substituted pursuant to and in accordance with Section 11.01 of the Servicing Agreement. Enclosed herewith is a completed Request for

Release of Documents in the form of Exhibit M to the Servicing Agreement with respect such Loan.

Executed as of the date set forth above.

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., as Servicer

By: _____
Name:
Title:

List of Loans

See below

**Accounting
System
Number /
Collateral ID**

**Outstanding
Balance at
Cutoff Date**

**Funding
Maturity Date**

Loan Type

Agent Status

Agent

Note Status

**UCC Filing in
Seller's Name**

FORM OF QUARTERLY REPORT

[On file with the Servicer.]

FORM OF MONTHLY REPORT

[On file with the Servicer.]

[RESERVED]

[RESERVED]

FORM OF ANNUAL CERTIFICATION REGARDING REQUIRED LOAN DOCUMENTS

[*], 20[]

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
Palo Alto, California 94301
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060

Hercules Capital, Inc., as Seller and Servicer
Palo Alto, California 94301
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060

Re: Sale and Servicing Agreement dated as of November 1, 2018 – Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In accordance with Section 2.11(e) of the above-captioned Sale and Servicing Agreement (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), the undersigned, as the Custodian, hereby certifies that during the calendar year ended December 31, 20[] (the "Certification Period"): (i) in accordance with the terms of the Agreement, the Custodian held the Required Documents for each of the Loans identified on Annex I hereto, (ii) during the Certification Period, the Custodian released from its custody the Required Loan Documents relating to the Loans identified on the release report, attached to the list of Loans attached as Annex I hereto, and (iii) the reason given for the release, as applicable, of all Required Loan Documents relating to the Loans described in clause (ii) above are described in Annex I.

The Custodian has made no independent examination of any such documents beyond the review specifically required in the Agreement.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as the
Custodian

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Annex I

LOANS FOR WHICH REQUIRED DOCUMENTS WERE HELD IN CUSTODY

(January 1, 20[] to December 31, 20[])

Loan Number

Obligor's Name

Address

Required Documents

FORM OF INITIAL CERTIFICATION

November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
Palo Alto, California 94301
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060

Guggenheim Securities, LLC,
as Initial Purchaser (the "Initial Purchaser")
330 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10017
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (704) 374 6495

Hercules Capital, Inc., as Seller and Servicer
Palo Alto, California 94301
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060

Re: Sale and Servicing Agreement dated as of November 1, 2018 – Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In accordance with Section 2.11(a) of the above-captioned Sale and Servicing Agreement (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), the undersigned, as the Custodian, hereby certifies that, except as noted on the attachment hereto, if any (the "Loan Exception Report"), it has received each of the Required Loan Documents required to be delivered to it pursuant to Section 2.08 of the Agreement with respect to each Loan listed in the List of Loans and the documents contained therein appear to be properly executed (if applicable) and related to such Loan and bear original signatures to the extent required under the definition of Required Loan Documents. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein have the meanings set forth in the Agreement.

The Custodian has made no independent examination of any such documents beyond the review specifically required in the Agreement.

The Custodian makes no representations as to: (i) the validity, legality, sufficiency, enforceability or genuineness of any such documents or any of the Loans identified on the List of Loans, or (ii) the collectibility, insurability, effectiveness or suitability of any such Loan.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as the
Custodian

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Initial Certification of the Custodian

LOAN EXCEPTION REPORT

[]

FORM OF FINAL CERTIFICATION

[], 2018

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
Palo Alto, California 94301
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060

Guggenheim Securities, LLC,
as Initial Purchaser (the "Initial Purchaser")
330 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10017
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (704) 374 6495

Hercules Capital, Inc., as Seller and Servicer
Palo Alto, California 94301
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060

Re: Sale and Servicing Agreement dated November 1, 2018 – Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1

Ladies and Gentlemen:

In accordance with Section 2.11 of the above-captioned Sale and Servicing Agreement (such agreement as amended, modified, waived, supplemented or restated from time to time, the "Agreement"), the undersigned, as the Custodian, hereby certifies that, except as noted on the attachment hereto, if any (the "Loan Exception Report") as to each Loan listed on the List of Loans (other than any Loan paid in full or listed on the attachment hereto), it has reviewed the documents identified on the related List of Loans and required to be delivered to it pursuant to Section 2.08 of the Agreement and has determined that all such documents are in its possession, and relate to such Loan. Capitalized terms used but not defined herein have the same meanings set forth in the Agreement.

The Custodian has made no independent examination or inquiry of such documents beyond the review specifically required in the Agreement.

The Custodian makes no representations as to: (i) the validity, legality, enforceability or genuineness of any such documents contained in each or any of the Loans identified on the List of Loans, (ii) the collectibility, insurability, effectiveness or suitability of any such Loan, or (iii) the compliance by such documents with statutory or regulatory guidelines.

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as the
Custodian

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Final Certification

LOAN EXCEPTION REPORT

[]

REQUEST FOR RELEASE OF DOCUMENTS

To: U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Trustee
One Federal Street, 3rd Floor
Boston, Massachusetts 02110
Attn: Jack Lindsay
Ref: Hercules 2018-1

U.S. Bank National Association,
as the Custodian
1719 Otis Way
Florence, South Carolina 29501
Attention: Steven Garrett
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1

Re: Sale and Servicing Agreement dated November 1, 2018 – Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1

In connection with the administration of the pool of Loans held by you, we request the release, and acknowledge receipt, of the (Loan File/[specify document]) for the Loan described below, for the reason indicated.

Obligor's Name, Address & Zip Code:

Loan Number:

Reason for Requesting Documents (check one)

- 1. Loan paid in full
(Servicer hereby certifies that all amounts received in connection therewith have been credited to the Principal and Interest Account.)
- 2. Loan liquidated
(Servicer hereby certifies that all proceeds of foreclosure, insurance or other liquidation have been finally received and credited to the Principal and Interest Account.)
- 3. Loan in foreclosure
- 4. Loan sold, repurchased or substituted pursuant to Article II or XI of the Sale and Servicing Agreement (Servicer hereby certifies that the repurchase price to the extent required has been credited to the Principal and Interest Account and/or remitted to the Trustee for deposit into the Note Distribution Account pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement.)

- ____5. Collateral being released pursuant to Sections 2.10 or 5.02 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.
- ____6. Loan Collateral or associated loan document being substituted, released, revised or subordinated.
- ____7. Other [Specify.]

If box 1, 2 or 4 above is checked, and if all or part of the Trustee's document file was previously released to us, please release to us our previous receipt on file with you, as well as any additional documents in your possession relating to the above specified Loan.

If box 3, 5 or 6 above is checked, upon our return of all of the above documents (or the appropriate substitutes therefor, if applicable) to you, please acknowledge your receipt by signing in the space indicated below, and returning this form.

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., as the Servicer

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____
Date: _____

Documents returned to Trustee:

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as the Trustee

By: _____
Name: _____
Title: _____
Date: _____

SALE AND CONTRIBUTION AGREEMENT

by and between

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.,
as the Seller

and

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor

Dated as of November 1, 2018

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Asset-Backed Notes

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
ARTICLE I DEFINITIONS	1
Section 1.01 Definitions	1
Section 1.02 Other Terms	4
Section 1.03 Computation of Time Periods	4
Section 1.04 Interpretation	4
Section 1.05 References	5
Section 1.06 Calculations	5
ARTICLE II TRANSFERS	5
Section 2.01 Transfer of Loan Assets	5
Section 2.02 Conditions to Transfer of Loan Assets to the Trust Depositor	7
Section 2.03 Acceptance by the Trust Depositor	8
Section 2.04 Conveyance of Substitute Loans	8
Section 2.05 Conveyance of Additional Loans	10
Section 2.06 Release of Excluded Amounts	11
Section 2.07 Delivery of Documents in the Loan File; Recording of Assignments of Mortgage	11
ARTICLE III REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES	12
Section 3.01 Representations and Warranties Regarding the Seller	12
Section 3.02 Representations and Warranties Regarding Each Loan and as to Certain Loans in the Aggregate	16
Section 3.03 [Reserved]	17
Section 3.04 Representations and Warranties Regarding the Required Loan Documents	17
Section 3.05 [Reserved]	17
Section 3.06 Representations and Warranties Regarding the Trust Depositor	17
ARTICLE IV PERFECTION OF TRANSFER AND PROTECTION OF SECURITY INTERESTS	19
Section 4.01 Custody of Loans	19
Section 4.02 Filing	19
Section 4.03 Changes in Name, Organizational Structure or Location	19
Section 4.04 Costs and Expenses	19
Section 4.05 Sale Treatment	20
Section 4.06 Separateness from Trust Depositor	20
ARTICLE V COVENANTS OF THE ORIGINATOR	20
Section 5.01 Corporate Existence	20
Section 5.02 [Reserved]	20
Section 5.03 Security Interests	20
Section 5.04 Compliance with Law	21

TABLE OF CONTENTS

(continued)

	Page	
Section 5.05	Liability of Seller	21
Section 5.06	Limitation on Liability of Seller and Others	21
Section 5.07	Reserved	21
Section 5.08	Merger or Consolidation of Seller	21
Section 5.09	Delivery of Collections	21
Section 5.10	Underlying Custodial Agreements	21
ARTICLE VI REMEDIES UPON MISREPRESENTATION		22
Section 6.01	Repurchases of, or Substitution for, Loans for Breach of Representations and Warranties	22
Section 6.02	Reassignment of Repurchased Substituted Loans or Acquired Additional Loans	22
ARTICLE VII INDEMNIFICATION BY THE ORIGINATOR		23
Section 7.01	Indemnification	23
Section 7.02	Liabilities to Obligors	23
Section 7.03	Operation of Indemnities	23
ARTICLE VIII MISCELLANEOUS		24
Section 8.01	Amendment	24
Section 8.02	Governing Law	25
Section 8.03	Notices	25
Section 8.04	Severability of Provisions	28
Section 8.05	Third Party Beneficiaries	28
Section 8.06	Counterparts	28
Section 8.07	Headings	28
Section 8.08	No Bankruptcy Petition; Disclaimer	28
Section 8.09	Jurisdiction	29
Section 8.10	Prohibited Transactions with Respect to the Issuer	29
Section 8.11	No Partnership	29
Section 8.12	Successors and Assigns	29
Section 8.13	Duration of Agreement	29
Section 8.14	Limited Recourse	30
Exhibit A	Form of Assignment	A-1
Schedule A	Initial Loans	S-A-1

SALE AND CONTRIBUTION AGREEMENT

THIS SALE AND CONTRIBUTION AGREEMENT, dated as of November 1, 2018 (as amended, modified, restated, waived, or supplemented from time to time, this "Agreement"), is between HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., a Maryland corporation (together with its successors and assigns, "Hercules," and in its capacity as originator, together with its successors and assigns, the "Seller") and HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (together with its successors and assigns, the "Trust Depositor").

WHEREAS, in the regular course of its business, the Seller originates and/or otherwise acquires Loans;

WHEREAS, the Trust Depositor desires to acquire the Initial Loans (as defined herein) from the Seller and may acquire from time to time thereafter certain Substitute Loans, or during the Reinvestment Period, certain Additional Loans;

WHEREAS, it is a condition to the Trust Depositor's acquisition of the Initial Loans and any Substitute Loans or any Additional Loans from the Seller that the Seller make certain representations, warranties and covenants regarding the Initial Loan Assets for the benefit of the Trust Depositor as well as Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, a Delaware statutory trust (the "Issuer");

WHEREAS, on the Closing Date, the Trust Depositor will purchase and accept assignment of the Initial Loan Assets and certain other assets from the Seller as provided herein; and

WHEREAS, on the Closing Date, the Trust Depositor will sell, convey and assign all its right, title and interest in the Initial Loan Assets, to the Issuer, pursuant to a Sale and Servicing Agreement, dated as of the date hereof (as amended, modified, restated, replaced, waived, substituted, supplemented or extended from time to time, the "Sale and Servicing Agreement"), among Hercules, as the seller and the servicer, the Trust Depositor, as the trust depositor, the Issuer, as the issuer, and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee, backup servicer, custodian and paying agent.

NOW, THEREFORE, based upon the above recitals, the mutual promises and agreements contained herein, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties hereto, intending to be legally bound, hereby agree as follows:

ARTICLE I

DEFINITIONS

Section 1.01 Definitions.

Capitalized terms used but not defined in this Agreement shall have the meanings attributed to such terms in the Sale and Servicing Agreement, unless the context otherwise requires. In addition, as used herein, the following defined terms, unless the context otherwise requires, shall have the following meanings:

“Additional Loan Assets” means any assets acquired by the Trust Depositor after the Closing date in connection with the conveyance of one or more Additional Loans pursuant to Section 2.05, which assets shall include the Seller’s right, title and interest in the following:

(a) the Additional Loans listed in the related Subsequent List of Loans and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the applicable Additional Loan Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the applicable Additional Loan Cutoff Date;

(b) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Loans;

(c) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans;

(d) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;

(e) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and

(f) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amounts with respect thereto.

“Indemnified Party” shall have the meaning provided in Section 7.01.

“Ineligible Loan” shall have the meaning provided in Section 6.01.

“Initial Loan Assets” means any assets acquired by the Trust Depositor from the Seller on the Closing Date pursuant to Section 2.01, which assets shall include the Seller’s right, title and interest in the following:

(a) the Initial Loans, and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the Cutoff Date;

(b) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Initial Loans;

(c) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Initial Loans;

(d) the Transaction Accounts, together with all cash and investments in each of the foregoing;

(e) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;

(f) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and

(g) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amounts with respect thereto.

“Initial Loans” means those Loans listed on Schedule A hereto, which Loans shall be conveyed to the Trust Depositor on the Closing Date.

“Loan” means an individual loan to an Obligor, or any portion thereof, made by the Seller.

“Loan Assets” means, collectively and as applicable, the Initial Loan Assets, the Substitute Loan Assets and the Additional Loan Assets.

“Substitute Loan Assets” means any assets acquired by the Trust Depositor in connection with a substitution of one or more Substitute Loans pursuant to Section 2.04, which assets shall include the Seller’s right, title and interest in the following:

(a) the Substitute Loans listed in the related Subsequent List of Loans and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the applicable Substitute Loan Cutoff Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the applicable Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(b) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Loans;

(c) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans;

(d) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;

(e) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and

(f) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amounts with respect thereto.

Section 1.02 Other Terms

All accounting terms used but not specifically defined herein shall be construed in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in the United States. The symbol “\$” shall mean the lawful currency of the United States of America. All terms used in Article 9 of the UCC in the State of New York, and not specifically defined herein, are used herein as defined in such Article 9.

Section 1.03 Computation of Time Periods.

Unless otherwise stated in this Agreement, in the computation of a period of time from a specified date to a later specified date, the word “from” means “from and including,” the words “to” and “until” each mean “to but excluding,” and the word “within” means “from and excluding a specified date and to and including a later specified date.”

Section 1.04 Interpretation.

In this Agreement, unless a contrary intention appears:

- (a) the singular number includes the plural number and *vice versa*;
- (b) reference to any Person includes such Person’s successors and assigns but, if applicable, only if such successors and assigns are permitted by the Transaction Documents;
- (c) reference to any gender includes each other gender;
- (d) reference to day or days without further qualification means calendar days;
- (e) unless otherwise stated, reference to any time means New York, New York time;
- (f) references to “writing” include printing, typing, lithography, electronic or other means of reproducing words in a visible form;
- (g) reference to any agreement (including any Transaction Document), document or instrument means such agreement, document or instrument as amended, modified, supplemented, replaced, restated, waived or extended and in effect from time to time in accordance with the terms thereof and, if applicable, the terms of the other Transaction Documents, and reference to any promissory note includes any promissory note that is an extension or renewal thereof or a substitute or replacement therefor; and
- (h) reference to any Applicable Law means such Applicable Law as amended, modified, codified, replaced or reenacted, in whole or in part, and in effect from time to time, including rules and regulations promulgated thereunder and reference to any Section or other provision of any Applicable Law means that provision of such Applicable Law from time to time in effect and constituting the substantive amendment, modification, codification, replacement or reenactment of such Section or other provision.

Section 1.05 References.

All section references (including references to the Preamble), unless otherwise indicated, shall be to Sections (and the Preamble) in this Agreement.

Section 1.06 Calculations.

Except as otherwise provided herein, all interest rate and basis point calculations hereunder will be made on the basis of a 360 day year and the actual days elapsed in the relevant period and will be carried out to at least three decimal places.

ARTICLE II

TRANSFERS

Section 2.01 Transfer of Loan Assets.

(a) The Seller shall sell, assign and convey Loan Assets to the Trust Depositor pursuant to the terms and provisions hereof.

(b) Subject to and upon the terms and conditions set forth herein, the Seller hereby sells, transfers, assigns, sets over and otherwise conveys to the Trust Depositor, for a purchase price equal to the fair market value of the Loan Assets, a portion of which shall be paid by wire transfer of immediately available funds and the remainder of which will be deemed to be a contribution to the capital of the Trust Depositor, all the right, title and interest of the Seller in and to the Initial Loan Assets.

To the extent the purchase price paid to the Seller for any Loan Assets is less than the fair market value of such Loan Assets, the difference between such fair market value and such purchase price shall be deemed to be a capital contribution made by the Seller to the Trust Depositor on the Closing Date in the case of the Initial Loans, as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loans and as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loans. For all purposes of this Agreement, any contributed Loan Assets shall be treated the same as Loan Assets sold for cash, including without limitation for purposes of Section 6.01.

(c) The Seller and the Trust Depositor each acknowledge with respect to itself that the representations and warranties of the Seller in Sections 3.01, 3.02 and 3.04 hereof and of the Trust Depositor in the Sale and Servicing Agreement and in Section 3.06 hereof will run to and be for the benefit of the Issuer and the Trustees, and the Issuer and the Trustees may enforce directly (without joinder of the Trust Depositor when enforcing against the Seller) the repurchase obligations of the Seller or the Trust Depositor, as applicable, with respect to breaches of such representations and warranties that materially and adversely affect the interest of any Noteholder as set forth in the Sale and Servicing Agreement or in this Agreement.

(d) The sale, transfer, assignment, set-over and conveyance of the Loan Assets by the Seller to the Trust Depositor pursuant to this Agreement does not constitute and is not intended to result in a creation or an assumption by the Trust Depositor of any obligation of the Seller in connection with the Loan Assets, or any agreement or instrument relating thereto, including, without limitation, (i) any obligation to any Obligor relating to any unfunded commitment from the Seller, (ii) any taxes, fees, or other charges imposed by any Governmental Authority and (iii) any insurance premiums that remain owing with respect to any Loan Asset at the time such Loan Asset is sold hereunder. Without limiting the foregoing, (x) the Trust Depositor does not assume any obligation to purchase any additional notes or loans under agreements governing the Loan Assets and (y) the sale, transfer, assignment, set-over and conveyance of the Loan Assets by the Seller to the Trust Depositor pursuant to this Agreement does not constitute and is not intended to result in a creation or an assumption by the Trust Depositor or the Issuer of any obligation of the Seller as lead agent, collateral agent or paying agent under any Agented Loan or Co-Agented Loan.

(e) The Seller and the Trust Depositor intend and agree that (i) the transfer of the Loan Assets by the Seller to the Trust Depositor hereunder and the transfer of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer under the Sale and Servicing Agreement are each intended to be an absolute sale, conveyance and transfer of ownership of the applicable Loan Assets, as the case may be, rather than the mere granting of a security interest to secure a borrowing and (ii) such Loan Assets shall not be part of the Seller's or the Trust Depositor's estate in the event of a filing of a bankruptcy petition or other action by or against such Person under any Insolvency Law. In the event, however, that notwithstanding such intent and agreement, such transfers are deemed to be a mere granting of a security interest to secure indebtedness, the Seller shall be deemed to have granted (and as of the Closing Date hereby grants) to the Trust Depositor and the Trust Depositor shall be deemed to have granted and assigned (and as of the Closing Date hereby grants and assigns) to the Issuer, as the case may be, a security interest in all right, title and interest of the Seller or of the Trust Depositor, respectively, in such Loan Assets, and this Agreement shall constitute a security agreement under Applicable Law, securing the repayment of the purchase price paid hereunder, the obligations and/or interests represented by the Securities, in the order and priorities, and subject to the other terms and conditions of, this Agreement, the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Indenture and the Trust Agreement, together with such other obligations or interests as may arise hereunder and thereunder in favor of the parties hereto and thereto.

(f) If any such transfer of the Loan Assets is deemed to be the mere granting of a security interest to secure a borrowing, the Trust Depositor may, to secure the Trust Depositor's own borrowing under the Sale and Servicing Agreement (to the extent that the transfer of the Loan Assets thereunder is deemed to be a mere granting of a security interest to secure a borrowing), repledge and reassign (i) all or a portion of the Loan Assets pledged to the Trust Depositor by the Seller and with respect to which the Trust Depositor has not released its security interest at the time of such pledge and assignment, and (ii) all proceeds thereof. Such repledge and reassignment may be made by the Trust Depositor with or without a repledge and reassignment by the Trust Depositor of its rights under any agreement with the Seller, and without further notice to or acknowledgment from the Seller. The Seller waives, to the extent permitted by Applicable Law, all claims, causes of action and remedies, whether legal or equitable (including any right of setoff), against the Trust Depositor or any assignee of the Trust Depositor relating to such action by the Trust Depositor in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents.

(g) The Seller and the Trust Depositor acknowledge and agree that, solely for administrative convenience, any assignment agreement required to be executed and delivered in connection with the transfer of an Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan in accordance with the terms of related Underlying Loan Agreements may reflect that the Seller or any Affiliate thereof is assigning such Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan directly to the Issuer. Nothing in such assignment agreements shall be deemed to impair the transfers of the Loan Assets by the Seller to the Trust Depositor in accordance with the terms of this Agreement and the subsequent transfer of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer in accordance with the terms of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 2.02 Conditions to Transfer of Loan Assets to the Trust Depositor.

On or before the Closing Date, the Seller shall deliver or cause to be delivered to the Trust Depositor, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee each of the documents, certificates and other items as follows:

- (a) a certificate of an officer of the Seller substantially in the form of Exhibit C to the Sale and Servicing Agreement;
- (b) copies of resolutions of Hercules, as Seller and Servicer, approving the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, the Transaction Documents to which it is a party and the transactions contemplated hereunder and thereunder, certified in each case by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of Hercules;
- (c) officially certified evidence dated within 30 days of the Closing Date of due formation and good standing of the Seller under the laws of the State of Delaware;
- (d) the initial List of Loans, certified by an officer of the Seller, together with an Assignment with respect to the Initial Loan Assets substantially in the form of Exhibit A, attached hereto (along with the delivery of any instruments and Loan Files as required under Section 2.07);
- (e) a letter from Pricewaterhouse Coopers LLP, a Delaware limited liability partnership or another nationally recognized accounting firm, addressed to the Seller and the Trust Depositor (with a copy to the Trustee and the Rating Agency), stating that such firm has reviewed a sample of the Initial Loans and performed specific procedures for such sample with respect to certain loan terms and that identifies those Initial Loans that do not conform;
- (f) a UCC-1 financing statement, naming the Seller as seller or debtor, naming the Trust Depositor as assignor, buyer or secured party and naming the Issuer as assignee of assignor, buyer or secured party and describing the Loan Assets being sold by it to the Trust Depositor as collateral, which financing statement shall be filed on the Closing Date with the office of the Department of Assessments and Taxation of the State of Maryland and in such other locations as the Trust Depositor shall have required;

(g) an Officer's Certificate listing the Servicer's Servicing Officers;

(h) a fully executed copy of each of the Transaction Documents;

(i) except with respect to (i) Agented Loans, Co-Agented Loans, Third Party Agented Loans and Participated Loans where the Seller (or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Seller) receives payments on behalf of or as agent for the other lenders thereunder or where payments thereunder are made directly to such other lenders on behalf of or as agent for the Seller (or a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Seller) and (ii) Loans described in Section 7.01(d) of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Servicer shall have notified and directed the Obligor with respect to each such Loan to make all payments on the Loans, whether by check, wire transfer, ACH or otherwise, directly to the Lockbox Account; and

(j) the Servicer shall have notified and directed each of Hercules's co-lenders under Co-Agented Loans and Third Party Agented Loans that receive payments on behalf of the Seller, to transfer such payments received from the Obligors with respect to such Loans to the Lockbox Account within one (1) Business Day of receipt of such payments by such co-lender.

Section 2.03 Acceptance by the Trust Depositor.

On the Closing Date, if the conditions set forth in Section 2.02 have been satisfied, the Seller shall deliver, on behalf of the Trust Depositor, to the Trustee the Initial Loan Assets and such delivery to and acceptance by the Trustee shall be deemed to be delivery to and acceptance by the Trust Depositor.

Section 2.04 Conveyance of Substitute Loans.

(a) With respect to any Substitute Loans to be conveyed to the Issuer by the Trust Depositor pursuant to Section 2.04 and Section 2.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Seller hereby sells, transfers, assigns, sets over and otherwise conveys to the Trust Depositor, without recourse other than as expressly provided herein (and the Trust Depositor shall purchase through cash payment and/or by exchange of one or more related Loans released by the Issuer to the Trust Depositor on the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date), all the right, title and interest of the Seller in and to such Substitute Loans and Related Property.

The purchase price may equal, exceed or be less than the fair market value of such Substitute Loan as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, plus in each case accrued interest thereon. To the extent the purchase price of any Substitute Loan is less than the fair market value thereof, the Seller will be deemed to have made a capital contribution with respect to such excess to the Trust Depositor. In the event that the Trust Depositor is no longer the sole Certificateholder, the Trust Depositor will obtain the approval of an independent pricing advisor prior to receiving any Substitute Loan from the Seller.

(b) [Reserved].

(c) The Seller shall transfer to the Trust Depositor hereunder the applicable Substitute Loans and Related Property only upon the satisfaction of each of the following conditions on or prior to the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date (in addition to the conditions set forth in Section 2.09 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement):

(i) the Seller shall have provided the Trust Depositor with timely notice of such substitution, which shall be delivered no later than 11:00 a.m. on the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(ii) there shall have occurred, with respect to each such Substitute Loan, a corresponding Substitution Event with respect to one or more Loans then in the Collateral;

(iii) the Seller and the Trust Depositor shall have delivered to the Issuer and the Trustee a Subsequent List of Loans listing the applicable Substitute Loans and an assignment agreement as required by the related Underlying Loan Agreement indicating that the Issuer is the holder of the related Substitute Loan;

(iv) the Seller shall have deposited or caused to be deposited in the Collection Account all Collections received by it with respect to the applicable Substitute Loans on and after the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(v) each of the representations and warranties made by the Seller pursuant to Sections 3.02 and 3.04 applicable to the Substitute Loans shall be true and correct as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date;

(vi) the Seller shall bear all incidental transaction costs incurred in connection with a substitution effected pursuant to this Agreement and shall, at its own expense, on or prior to the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, indicate in its Computer Records that ownership of each Substitute Loan identified on the Subsequent List of Loans has been sold by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to the Transfer and Servicing Agreements; and

(vii) if such Substitute Loan is a Co-Agented Loan or a Third-Party Agented Loan, the Servicer shall have notified and directed each of Hercules's co-lenders under such Substitute Loan that receive payments on behalf of the Seller, to transfer such payments received from the Obligors with respect to such Substitute Loan to the Lockbox Account within one (1) business day of receipt of such payments by such co-lender.

(d) The Servicer, the Issuer and the Trustee (at the request of the Servicer) shall execute and deliver such instruments, consents or other documents and perform all acts reasonably requested by the Servicer in order to effect the transfer and release of any of the Issuer's interests in the Loans that are being substituted.

(e) The Seller represents and warrants that each Substitute Loan is a Qualified Substitute Loan as of the date such Substitute Loan is transferred to the Trust Depositor hereunder.

Section 2.05 Conveyance of Additional Loans.

(a) With respect to any Additional Loans to be conveyed to the Issuer by the Trust Depositor pursuant to Section 2.07 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Seller hereby sells, transfers, assigns, sets over and otherwise conveys to the Trust Depositor, without recourse other than as expressly provided herein (and the Trust Depositor shall purchase through cash payment and/or by exchange of one or more related Loans released by the Issuer to the Trust Depositor on the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date), all the right, title and interest of the Seller in and to such Additional Loans and Related Property.

(b) During the Reinvestment Period, the Seller shall transfer to the Trust Depositor hereunder the applicable Additional Loans and Related Property only upon the satisfaction of each of the following conditions on or prior to the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date:

(i) such Additional Loan is a Qualified Additional Loan as of the date such Additional Loan is transferred to the Issuer;

(ii) the Seller shall have provided the Trust Depositor with timely notice of such acquisition, which shall be delivered no later than 11:00 a.m. on the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date;

(iii) the Seller and the Trust Depositor shall have delivered to the Issuer and the Trustee a Subsequent List of Loans listing the applicable Additional Loans and an assignment agreement as required by the related Underlying Loan Agreement indicating that the Issuer is the holder of the related Additional Loan;

(iv) the Seller shall have deposited or caused to be deposited in the Collection Account all Collections received by it with respect to the applicable Additional Loans on and after the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date;

(v) each of the representations and warranties made by the Seller pursuant to Sections 3.02 and 3.04 applicable to the Additional Loans shall be true and correct as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date;

(vi) the Seller shall bear all incidental transaction costs incurred in connection with and acquisition of Additional Loans effected pursuant to this Agreement and shall, at its own expense, on or prior to the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date, indicate in its Computer Records that ownership of each Additional Loan identified on the Subsequent List of Loans has been sold by the Seller to the Trust Depositor and by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer pursuant to the Transfer and Servicing Agreements; and

(vii) if such Additional Loan is a Co-Agented Loan or a Third-Party Agented Loan, the Servicer shall have notified and directed each of Hercules's co-lenders under such Additional Loan that receive payments on behalf of the Seller, to transfer such payments received from the Obligor with respect to such Substitute Loan to the Lockbox Account within one (1) business day of receipt of such payments by such co-lender.

(c) The Servicer, the Issuer and the Trustee (at the request of the Servicer) shall execute and deliver such instruments, consents or other documents and perform all acts reasonably requested by the Servicer in order to effect the transfer and release of any of the Issuer's interests in the Loans that are being conveyed.

(d) The Seller represents and warrants that each Additional Loan is a Qualified Additional Loan as of the date such Additional Loan is transferred to the Trust Depositor hereunder.

Section 2.06 Release of Excluded Amounts.

The parties acknowledge and agree that the Trust Depositor has no interest in the Excluded Amounts. Immediately upon the release to the Trust Depositor by the Issuer of any Excluded Amounts, the Trust Depositor hereby irrevocably agrees to release to the Seller such Excluded Amounts, which release shall be automatic and shall require no further act by the Trust Depositor; *provided* that the Trust Depositor shall execute and deliver such instruments of release and assignment or other documents, or otherwise confirm the foregoing release of such Excluded Amounts, as may be reasonably requested by the Seller in writing.

Section 2.07 Delivery of Documents in the Loan File; Recording of Assignments of Mortgage.

(a) Subject to the delivery requirements set forth in Section 2.07(b), the Seller shall deliver, on behalf of the Trust Depositor, possession of all the Loan Files to the Trustee (or the Custodian on its behalf) on behalf of and for the account of the Noteholders. The Seller shall also identify on the List of Loans (including any deemed amendment thereof associated with any Substitute Loans or Additional Loans), whether by attached schedule or marking or other effective identifying designation, all Loans that are evidenced by such instruments.

(b) With respect to each Loan in the Collateral, at least two (2) Business Days before the Closing Date in the case of the Initial Loans, two (2) Business Days before the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loans and two (2) Business Days before the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loans (or, in each case, such lesser time as shall be acceptable to the Trustee), the Seller or the Trust Depositor will deliver or cause to be delivered to the Trustee (or to the Custodian on its behalf), to the extent not previously delivered, each of the documents in the Loan File with respect to such Loan, *provided, however*, that, to the extent required to be delivered pursuant to the Sale and Servicing Agreement as part of the Required Loan Documents with respect to such Loan, the original recorded Mortgage and the originals of all intervening assignments, if any, of the Mortgage, in those instances where a copy thereof, certified as described in clause (b)(iii)(x) of the definition of Required Loan Document, was delivered to the Trustee as a Required Loan Document, will be delivered or caused to be delivered within ten (10) Business Days after receipt thereof, and in any event within one year after the Closing Date in the case of the Initial Loans, the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Substitute Loans and the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date in the case of any Additional Loans. Notwithstanding the proviso in the immediately preceding sentence, in those instances where the public recording office retains the original Mortgage or any intervening assignments of the Mortgage after it has been recorded, the Seller

or the Trust Depositor (as applicable) shall be deemed to have satisfied its obligations hereunder upon delivery to the Trustee of a copy of such Mortgage or intervening assignments of the Mortgage certified by the public recording office to be a true copy of the recorded original thereof.

ARTICLE III

REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES

The Seller makes, and upon each conveyance of Substitute Loans and each conveyance of Additional Loans, as applicable, is deemed to make, the representations and warranties in Section 3.01 through Section 3.04, on which the Trust Depositor will rely in conveying the Initial Loan Assets on the Closing Date (any Substitute Loan Assets on the relevant Substitute Loan Cutoff Date and any Additional Loan Asset on the relevant Additional Loan Cutoff Date) to the Issuer, and on which the Issuer and the Securityholders will rely. The Seller acknowledges that such representations and warranties are being made by the Seller for the benefit of the Issuer and the Securityholders.

Such representations and warranties are given as of the execution and delivery of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date (or Substitute Loan Cutoff Date or Additional Loan Cutoff Date, as applicable), but shall survive the sale, transfer and assignment of the Loan Assets to the Trust Depositor and the sale, transfer and assignment of the Loan Assets by the Trust Depositor to the Issuer. The repurchase obligation or substitution obligation of the Seller set forth in Section 6.01 constitutes the sole remedy available for a breach of a representation or warranty of the Seller set forth in Section 3.01 through Section 3.04 of this Agreement.

Section 3.01 Representations and Warranties Regarding the Seller.

The Seller represents and warrants that:

(a) Organization and Good Standing. The Seller is a corporation duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the State of Maryland and has the power to own its assets and to transact the business in which it is currently engaged. The Seller is duly qualified to do business and is in good standing in each jurisdiction in which the character of the business transacted by it or properties owned or leased by it requires such qualification and in which the failure so to qualify would reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets, or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Seller.

(b) Authorization; Valid Sale; Binding Obligations. The Seller has the power and authority to make, execute, deliver and perform this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and all of the transactions contemplated under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, and to create the Trust Depositor and cause the Trust Depositor to make, execute, deliver and perform its obligations under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Trust Depositor is a party and has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party. This Agreement shall effect a valid sale, transfer and assignment of or grant of a security interest in the Loan Assets

from the Seller to the Trust Depositor, enforceable against the Seller and creditors of and purchasers from the Seller. This Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Seller is a party constitute the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Seller enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except as enforcement of such terms may be limited by applicable Insolvency Laws and general principles of equity, whether considered in a suit at law or in equity.

(c) No Consent Required. The Seller is not required to obtain the consent of any other party (other than (i) the filing of UCC financing statements and (ii) those that it has already obtained) or any consent, license, approval or authorization from, or registration or declaration with, any Governmental Authority (other than those that it has already obtained) in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

(d) No Violations. The execution, delivery and performance by the Seller of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, will not violate in any material respect any Applicable Law applicable to the Seller, or conflict with, result in a default under or constitute a breach of the Seller's organizational documents or the material Contractual Obligations to which the Seller is a party or by which the Seller or any of the Seller's properties may be bound, or result in the creation or imposition of any Lien of any kind upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such material Contractual Obligations, other than as contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(e) Litigation. No litigation or administrative proceeding of or before any court, tribunal or governmental body is currently pending, or to the knowledge of the Seller threatened, against the Seller or any of its properties or with respect to this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party or the Securities (1) that, if adversely determined, would in the reasonable judgment of the Seller be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Seller or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which the Seller is a party or (2) seeking to adversely affect the federal income tax or other federal, state or local tax attributes of the Certificate or Notes.

(f) Solvency. The Seller, at the time of and after giving effect to each conveyance of Loan Assets hereunder, is Solvent on and as of the date thereof.

(g) Taxes. The Seller has filed or caused to be filed all tax returns which, to its knowledge, are required to be filed and has paid all taxes shown to be due and payable on such returns or on any assessments made against it or any of its property and all other taxes, fees or other charges imposed on it or any of its property by any Governmental Authority (other than any amount of tax due, the validity of which is currently being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings and with respect to which reserves in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles have been provided on the books of the Seller); no tax Lien has been filed and, to the Seller's knowledge, no claim is being asserted, with respect to any such tax, fee or other charge.

(h) Place of Business; No Changes. The Seller's location (within the meaning of Article 9 of the UCC) is the State of Maryland. The Seller has not changed its name, whether by amendment of its Certificate of Incorporation, by reorganization or otherwise, within the four months preceding the Closing Date. The Seller has not changed its location within the four months preceding the Closing Date.

(i) Not an Investment Company. The Seller is not and, after giving effect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, will not be required to be registered as an "investment company" under the 1940 Act.

(j) Sale Treatment. Other than for accounting and tax purposes, the Seller has treated the transfer of the Loan Assets to the Trust Depositor for all purposes as a sale and purchase on all of its relevant books and records and other applicable documents.

(k) Security Interest.

(i) This Agreement creates a valid and continuing security interest (as defined in the applicable UCC) in favor of the Trust Depositor in all right, title and interest of the Seller in the Loan Assets, which security interest is prior to all other Liens (except for Permitted Liens), and is enforceable as such against creditors of and purchasers from the Seller;

(ii) the Loan Assets, along with the related Loan Files, constitute "general intangibles," "instruments," "accounts," "investment property," or "chattel paper," within the meaning of the applicable UCC;

(iii) the Seller owns and has, and upon the sale and transfer thereof by the Seller to the Trust Depositor, the Trust Depositor will have good and marketable title to the Loan Assets free and clear of any Lien (other than Permitted Liens), claim or encumbrance of any Person;

(iv) the Seller has received all consents and approvals required by the terms of the Loan Assets to the sale of the Loan Assets hereunder to the Trust Depositor;

(v) the Seller has caused the filing of all appropriate financing statements in the proper filing office in the appropriate jurisdictions under Applicable Law in order to perfect the security interest in the Loan Assets granted to the Trust Depositor under this Agreement to the extent perfection can be achieved by filing a financing statement;

(vi) other than the security interest granted to the Trust Depositor pursuant to this Agreement, the Seller has not pledged, assigned, sold, granted a security interest in or otherwise conveyed any of the Loan Assets. The Seller has not authorized the filing of and is not aware of any financing statements naming the Seller as debtor that include a description of collateral covering the Loan Assets other than any financing statement (A) relating to the security interest granted to the Trust Depositor under this Agreement, or (B) that has been terminated or for which a release or partial release has been filed. The Seller is not aware of the filing of any judgment or tax Lien filings against the Seller;

(vii) all original executed copies of each Underlying Note (if any) that constitute or evidence the Loan Assets have been delivered to the Trustee;

(viii) the Seller has received a written acknowledgment from the Trustee that the Trustee or its bailee is holding any Underlying Notes that constitute or evidence any Loan Assets solely on behalf of and for the benefit of the Securityholders; and

(ix) none of the Underlying Notes that constitute or evidence any Loan Assets has any marks or notations indicating that they have been pledged, assigned or otherwise conveyed to any Person other than the Trust Depositor.

(l) Value Given. The cash payments and the corresponding increase in the Seller's equity interest in the Trust Depositor received by the Seller in respect of the purchase price of the Loan Assets sold hereunder constitute reasonably equivalent value in consideration for the transfer to the Trust Depositor of such Loan Assets under this Agreement, such transfer was not made for or on account of an antecedent debt owed by the Seller to the Trust Depositor, and such transfer was not and is not voidable or subject to avoidance under any Insolvency Law.

(m) No Defaults. The Seller is not in default with respect to any order or decree of any court or any order, regulation or demand of any federal, state, municipal or governmental agency, which default would reasonably be expected to have consequences that would materially and adversely affect the condition (financial or otherwise) or operations of the Seller or its respective properties or might have consequences that would materially and adversely affect its performance hereunder.

(n) Bulk Transfer Laws. The transfer, assignment and conveyance of the Loan Assets by the Seller pursuant to this Agreement are not subject to the bulk transfer laws or any similar statutory provisions in effect in any applicable jurisdiction.

(o) Origination and Collection Practices. The origination and collection practices used by the Seller and any of its Affiliates with respect to each Loan have been consistent with the Servicing Standard and have complied in all material respects with the Credit and Collection Policy.

(p) Lack of Intent to Hinder, Delay or Defraud. Neither the Seller nor any of its Affiliates sold, or will sell, any interest in any Loan Asset with any intent to hinder, delay or defraud any of their respective creditors.

(q) Nonconsolidation. The Seller conducts its affairs such that the Trust Depositor would not be substantively consolidated in the estate of the Seller and their respective separate existences would not be disregarded in the event of the Seller's bankruptcy.

(r) Accuracy of Information. All written factual information heretofore furnished by the Seller for purposes of or in connection with this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which the Seller is a party, or any transaction contemplated hereby or thereby is, and all such written factual information hereafter furnished by the Seller to any party to the Transaction Documents will be, true and accurate in all material respects, on the date such information is stated or certified; *provided* that the Seller shall not be responsible for any factual information furnished to it by any third party not affiliated with it, or the Trust Depositor or the Servicer, except to the extent that a Responsible Officer of the Seller has actual knowledge that such factual information is inaccurate in any material respect.

The representations and warranties set forth in Section 3.01(k) may not be waived by any Person and shall survive the termination of this Agreement. The Seller and the Trust Depositor shall provide the Rating Agency with prompt written notice upon obtaining knowledge of any breach of the representations and warranties set out in Section 3.01(k).

Section 3.02 Representations and Warranties Regarding Each Loan and as to Certain Loans in the Aggregate.

The Seller represents and warrants (x) with respect to Section 3.02(a), Section 3.02(b), Section 3.02(d) and Section 3.02(e), as to each Initial Loan as of the Closing Date, as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date with respect to each Substitute Loan and as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date with respect to each Additional Loan, and (y) with respect to Section 3.02(c), as to the Initial Loans in the aggregate as of the Closing Date, as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date with respect to Substitute Loans and as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date with respect to Additional Loans (after giving effect to the addition of such Substitute Loans and Additional Loans to the Collateral), that:

(a) List of Loans. The information set forth in the List of Loans attached to the Sale and Servicing Agreement as Exhibit G (as the same may be amended or deemed amended in respect of a conveyance of Substitute Loans on the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date or Additional Loans on the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date) is true, complete and correct.

(b) Eligible Loan. Each Initial Loan, each Substitute Loan and each Additional Loan satisfies the criteria for the definition of Eligible Loan set forth in the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(c) No Liens. Each Initial Loan, each Substitute Loan and each Additional Loan is free and clear of all Liens, other than Permitted Liens, and, to the Seller's knowledge, no offsets, defenses or counterclaims against the Seller have been asserted or threatened with respect to such Initial Loan, such Substitute Loan and such Additional Loan, respectively.

(d) Security Interest. Each Initial Loan, each Substitute Loan and each Additional Loan is secured by a first priority perfected security interest in certain property of the related Obligor identified in the loan documentation in favor of the Seller, as registered lienholder, or the Seller has taken all necessary action with respect to each Initial Loan, each Substitute Loan and each Additional Loan to secure a first priority perfected security interest in such property.

(e) Compliance with Law. Each Initial Loan, each Substitute Loan and each Additional Loan complies in all material respects, as of such date and as of the date on which it was originated, with applicable federal and state laws.

Section 3.03 [Reserved].

Section 3.04 Representations and Warranties Regarding the Required Loan Documents.

The Seller represents and warrants on the Closing Date with respect to the Initial Loans (or as of the related Substitute Loan Cutoff Date, with respect to Substitute Loans, or as of the related Additional Loan Cutoff Date, with respect to Additional Loans), that except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, the Required Loan Documents and each other item included in the Loan File for each Initial Loan (or Substitute Loan or Additional Loan, as applicable) are in the possession of the Trustee or the Custodian, on behalf of the Trustee.

Section 3.05 [Reserved].

Section 3.06 Representations and Warranties Regarding the Trust Depositor.

By its execution of this Agreement, the Trust Depositor represents and warrants to the Seller that:

(a) Organization and Good Standing. The Trust Depositor is a limited liability company duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of Delaware and has the power to own its assets and to transact the business in which it is currently engaged. The Trust Depositor is duly qualified to do business as and is in good standing in each jurisdiction in which the character of the business transacted by it or properties owned or leased by it requires such qualification and in which the failure so to qualify would have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets or condition (financial or other) of the Trust Depositor or the Issuer.

(b) Authorization; Valid Sale; Binding Obligations. The Trust Depositor has the power and authority to make, execute, deliver and perform this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and all of the transactions contemplated under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, and to create the Issuer and cause it to make, execute, deliver and perform its obligations under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Issuer is a party, and the Trust Depositor has taken all necessary limited liability company action to authorize the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and to cause the Issuer to be created. This Agreement shall effect a valid sale, transfer and assignment of or grant of a security interest in the Loan Assets from the Seller to the Trust Depositor. This Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which the Trust Depositor is a party constitute the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Trust Depositor enforceable in accordance with their respective terms, except as enforcement of such terms may be limited by applicable Insolvency Laws and general principles of equity, whether considered in a suit at law or in equity.

(c) No Consent Required. The Trust Depositor is not required to obtain the consent of any other party (other than those that it has already obtained) or any consent, license, approval or authorization from, or registration or declaration with, any Governmental Authority (other than those that it has already obtained) in connection with the execution, delivery, performance, validity or enforceability of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

(d) No Violations. The execution, delivery and performance by the Trust Depositor of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, will not violate in any material respect any Applicable Law applicable to the Trust Depositor, or conflict with, result in a default under or constitute a breach of the Trust Depositor's organizational documents or any material Contractual Obligations to which the Trust Depositor is a party or by which the Trust Depositor or any of the Trust Depositor's properties may be bound, or result in the creation or imposition of any Lien of any kind upon any of its properties pursuant to the terms of any such material Contractual Obligations, other than as contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(e) Litigation. No litigation or administrative proceeding of or before any court, tribunal or governmental body is currently pending, or to the knowledge of the Trust Depositor threatened, against the Trust Depositor or any of its properties or with respect to this Agreement, any other Transaction Documents to which it is a party or the Securities (i) that, if adversely determined, would in the reasonable judgment of the Trust Depositor be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, properties, assets or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Trust Depositor or the Issuer or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any other Transaction Documents to which the Trust Depositor is a party or (ii) seeking to adversely affect the federal income tax or other federal, state or local tax attributes of the Securities.

(f) Solvency. The Trust Depositor, at the time of, and after giving effect to each conveyance of Loan Assets hereunder and under the Sale and Servicing Agreement, is Solvent.

(g) Taxes. The Trust Depositor has filed or caused to be filed all tax returns which, to its knowledge, are required to be filed and has paid all taxes shown to be due and payable on such returns or on any assessments made against it or any of its property and all other taxes, fees or other charges imposed on it or any of its property by any Governmental Authority (other than any amount of tax due, the validity of which is currently being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings and with respect to which reserves in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles have been provided on the books of the Trust Depositor); no tax Lien has been filed and, to the Trust Depositor's knowledge, no claim is being asserted, with respect to any such tax, fee or other charge.

(h) Place of Business; No Changes. The Trust Depositor's location (within the meaning of Article 9 of the UCC) is the State of Delaware. The Trust Depositor has not changed its name, whether by amendment of its certificate of formation, by reorganization or otherwise, and has not changed its location, within the four months preceding the Closing Date.

(i) Not an Investment Company. The Trust Depositor is not and, after giving effect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, will not be required to be registered as an "investment company" within the meaning of the 1940 Act.

(j) Sale Treatment. Other than for accounting and tax purposes, the Trust Depositor has treated the transfer of Loan Assets from the Seller for all purposes as a sale and purchase on all of its relevant books and records and other applicable documents.

ARTICLE IV

PERFECTION OF TRANSFER AND PROTECTION OF SECURITY INTERESTS

Section 4.01 Custody of Loans.

The contents of each Loan File shall be held in the custody of the Custodian (on behalf of the Trustee) under the terms of the Sale and Servicing Agreement for the benefit of, and as agent for, the Securityholders.

Section 4.02 Filing.

On the Closing Date, the Seller shall cause the UCC financing statement(s) referred to in Section 2.02(f) hereof to be filed. Notwithstanding the obligations of the Seller set forth in the preceding sentence, the Trust Depositor hereby authorizes the Servicer to prepare and file, at the expense of the Seller, such UCC financing statements (including but not limited to renewal, continuation or in lieu statements) and amendments or supplements thereto or other instruments as the Servicer may from time to time deem necessary or appropriate in order to perfect and maintain the security interest granted hereunder in accordance with the UCC.

Section 4.03 Changes in Name, Organizational Structure or Location.

(a) During the term of this Agreement, the Seller shall not change its name, principal place of business, form of organization, existence, state of formation or location without first giving at least 30 days' prior written notice to the Trust Depositor and Servicer.

(b) If any change in the Seller's name, form of organization, existence, state of formation, location or other action would make any financing or continuation statement or notice of ownership interest or Lien relating to any Initial Loan Asset, Substitute Loan Asset, or Additional Loan Asset seriously misleading within the meaning of applicable provisions of the UCC or any title statute, the Seller, or the Servicer on its behalf, no later than five (5) Business Days after the effective date of such change, shall file such amendments as may be required (including, but not limited to, any filings and other acts necessary or advisable under the UCC of each relevant jurisdiction) to preserve and protect the Trust Depositor's, the Issuer's and the Trustee's interests in the Initial Loan Assets, any Substitute Loan Assets, any Additional Loan Asset and the proceeds thereof.

Section 4.04 Costs and Expenses.

The initial Servicer will be obligated to pay all reasonable costs and disbursements in connection with the perfection and the maintenance of perfection, as against all third parties, of the Trust Depositor's and Issuer's right, title and interest in and to the Initial Loan Assets, the Substitute Loan Assets and the Additional Loan Assets (including, without limitation, the

security interests in the Related Property related thereto and the security interests provided for in the Indenture); *provided* that to the extent permitted by the Underlying Loan Agreements, the Servicer may seek reimbursement for such costs and disbursements from the related Obligor.

Section 4.05 Sale Treatment.

Other than for accounting and tax purposes, the Seller shall treat the transfer of Loan Assets made hereunder for all purposes as a sale and purchase on all of its relevant books and records.

Section 4.06 Separateness from Trust Depositor.

The Seller agrees to take or refrain from taking or engaging in with respect to the Trust Depositor, each of the actions or activities specified in the “substantive consolidation” opinion of Dechert LLP (including any certificates of the Seller delivered in connection therewith) delivered on the Closing Date, upon which the conclusions therein are based.

ARTICLE V

COVENANTS OF THE ORIGINATOR

Section 5.01 Corporate Existence.

During the term of this Agreement, the Seller will keep in full force and effect its existence, rights and franchises as a corporation under the laws of the jurisdiction of its formation and will obtain and preserve its qualification to do business in each jurisdiction in which such qualification is or shall be necessary to protect the validity and enforceability of this Agreement, the other Transaction Documents and each other instrument or agreement necessary or appropriate for the proper administration of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby. In addition, all transactions and dealings between the Seller and the Trust Depositor will be conducted on an arm’s-length basis.

Section 5.02 [Reserved].

Section 5.03 Security Interests.

The Seller will not sell, pledge, assign or transfer to any Person other than the Trust Depositor, or grant, create, incur, assume or suffer to exist any Lien on any Loan in the Collateral or its interest in any Related Property, other than the Lien granted to the Trust Depositor, whether now existing or hereafter transferred to the Trust Depositor, or as otherwise expressly contemplated by this Agreement. The Seller will promptly notify the Trust Depositor upon obtaining knowledge of the existence of any Lien on any Loan in the Collateral or its interest in any Related Property; and the Seller shall defend the right, title and interest of the Trust Depositor in, to and under the Loans in the Collateral and the Trust Depositor’s interest in any Related Property, against all claims of third parties; *provided* that nothing in this Section 5.03 shall prevent or be deemed to prohibit the Seller from suffering to exist Permitted Liens upon any of the Loans in the Collateral or its interest in any Related Property.

Section 5.04 Compliance with Law.

The Seller hereby agrees to comply in all material respects with all Applicable Law applicable to the Seller except where the failure to do so would not reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the Securityholders.

Section 5.05 Liability of Seller.

The Seller shall be liable in accordance herewith only to the extent of the obligations specifically undertaken by the Seller under this Agreement.

Section 5.06 Limitation on Liability of Seller and Others.

The Seller and any director, officer, employee or agent of the Seller may rely in good faith on any document of any kind, prima facie properly executed and submitted by the appropriate Person respecting any matters arising hereunder. The Seller shall not be under any obligation to appear in, prosecute or defend any legal action that shall not be incidental to its obligations under this Agreement, and that in its opinion may involve it in any expense or liability.

Section 5.07 Reserved.

Section 5.08 Merger or Consolidation of Seller.

Any Person into which the Seller may be merged or consolidated, or any Person resulting from such merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Seller is a party, or any Person succeeding to substantially all of the business or substantially all of the lending business of the Seller shall be the successor to the Seller hereunder, without execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary; *provided* that if the Seller is the Servicer at the time of such merger, conversion, consolidation or sale, such transaction meets the requirements set forth in Section 5.13 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 5.09 Delivery of Collections.

The Seller agrees to deposit into the Collection Account promptly (but in no event later than two (2) Business Days after receipt) all Collections received by the Seller in respect of any Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan, for application in accordance with Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 5.10 Underlying Custodial Agreements.

The Seller agrees to fully cooperate with the Trust Depositor, the Issuer and the Trustee, and from and after the occurrence and during the continuance of an Event of Default or Servicer Default to take such actions as may be requested in the reasonable discretion of the Trustee, under any Underlying Loan Agreements. The Seller further agrees to fully cooperate with the Trust Depositor, the Issuer and the Trustee, and from and after the occurrence and during the continuance of an Event of Default or Servicer Default to take such actions as may be requested

in the sole and absolute discretion of the Trustee to cause to be defended, enforced, preserved and protected the rights and privileges of the Trust Depositor, the Issuer, the Trustee and the Secured Parties under or with respect to the Underlying Loan Agreements and any underlying loan documents or other collateral held by the underlying custodians.

ARTICLE VI

REMEDIES UPON MISREPRESENTATION

Section 6.01 Repurchases of, or Substitution for, Loans for Breach of Representations and Warranties.

Upon a discovery by a Responsible Officer of the Trust Depositor, a Responsible Officer of the Servicer, the Backup Servicer or any subservicer, a Responsible Officer of the Owner Trustee or a Responsible Officer of the Trustee of a breach of a representation or warranty as set forth in Section 3.01, Section 3.02 or Section 3.04 or as made or deemed made relating to any Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan, as applicable, that materially and adversely affects the interests of the Securityholders (each such Loan with respect to which such breach exists, an “Ineligible Loan”), the party discovering such breach or failure shall give prompt written notice to the other parties to this Agreement; *provided* that neither the Owner Trustee, the Backup Servicer, nor the Trustee shall have a duty or obligation (i) to inquire or to investigate the breach of any of such representations or warranties or (ii) to determine if such breach materially and adversely affects the interests of the Securityholders. Within 30 days of the earlier of (x) its discovery or (y) its receipt of notice of any breach of a representation or warranty, the Seller shall (a) promptly cure such breach in all material respects, (b) repurchase each such Ineligible Loan by depositing in the Lockbox Account, for further credit to the Collection Account, within such 30 day period, an amount equal to the Transfer Deposit Amount for such Ineligible Loan, or (c) remove such Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan from the Collateral, deposit the Transfer Deposit Amount with respect to such Loan into the Lockbox Account, for further credit to the Collection Account, and, not later than the date a repurchase of such affected Loan would be required hereunder, effect a substitution for such affected Loan with a Substitute Loan in accordance with the substitution requirements set forth in Section 2.04.

Section 6.02 Reassignment of Repurchased Substituted Loans or Acquired Additional Loans

Upon receipt by the Trustee for deposit in the Collection Account of the amounts described in Section 6.01 (or upon the Substitute Loan Cutoff Date related to a Substitute Loan described in Section 6.01 or the Additional Loan Cutoff Date related to an Additional Loan described in Section 6.01), and upon receipt of an Officer’s Certificate of the Servicer in the form attached as Exhibit F to the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trustee and the Issuer shall assign to the Trust Depositor and the Trust Depositor shall assign to the Seller all of the Trustee’s and the Issuer’s (or Trust Depositor’s, as applicable) right, title and interest in the Initial Loans, Substitute Loans or Additional Loans being repurchased or substituted for the related Loan Assets without recourse, representation or warranty. Such reassigned Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan shall no longer thereafter be included in any calculations of Outstanding Loan Balances or otherwise be deemed a part of the Collateral.

ARTICLE VII

INDEMNIFICATION BY THE ORIGINATOR

Section 7.01 Indemnification.

The Seller agrees to indemnify, defend and hold harmless the Trust Depositor, its officers, directors, employees and agents (any one of which is an “Indemnified Party”) from and against any and all claims, losses, penalties, fines, forfeitures, judgments *provided* that any indemnification for damages is limited to actual damages, not consequential, special or punitive damages), reasonable legal fees and related costs and any other reasonable costs, fees and expenses that such Person may sustain as a result of the Seller’s fraud or the failure of the Seller to perform its duties in compliance in all material respects with the terms of this Agreement, except to the extent arising from gross negligence, willful misconduct or fraud by the Person claiming indemnification. Any Person seeking indemnification hereunder shall promptly notify the Seller if such Person receives a complaint, claim, compulsory process or other notice of any loss, claim, damage or liability giving rise to a claim of indemnification hereunder but failure to provide such notice shall not relieve the Seller of its indemnification obligations hereunder unless the Seller is deprived of material substantive or procedural rights or defenses as a result thereof. The Seller shall assume (with the consent of the Indemnified Party, such consent not to be unreasonably withheld) the defense and any settlement of any such claim and pay all expenses in connection therewith, including reasonable counsel fees, and promptly pay, discharge and satisfy any judgment or decree which may be entered against the Indemnified Party in respect of such claim. If the consent of the Indemnified Party required in the immediately preceding sentence is unreasonably withheld, the Seller shall be relieved of its indemnification obligations hereunder with respect to such Person. The parties agree that the provisions of this Section 7.01 shall not be interpreted to provide recourse to the Seller against loss by reason of the bankruptcy, insolvency or lack of creditworthiness of an Obligor with respect to an Initial Loan, Substitute Loan or Additional Loan. The Seller shall have no liability for making indemnification hereunder to the extent any such indemnification constitutes recourse for uncollectible or uncollected Initial Loans, Substitute Loans or Additional Loans.

Section 7.02 Liabilities to Obligors.

No obligation or liability to any Obligor under any of the Initial Loans, Substitute Loans or Additional Loans is intended to be assumed by the Trust Depositor, the Trustees, the Issuer or the Securityholders under or as a result of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby.

Section 7.03 Operation of Indemnities.

If the Seller has made any indemnity payments to an Indemnified Party pursuant to this Article VII and such Indemnified Party thereafter collects any such amounts from others, such Indemnified Party will repay such amounts collected to the Seller.

ARTICLE VIII

MISCELLANEOUS

Section 8.01 Amendment.

(a) This Agreement may be amended from time to time by the parties hereto by written agreement, with the prior written consent of the Trustee but without the consent of any Securityholder, to (i) cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provisions herein that may be inconsistent with any other provisions in this Agreement or in the Offering Memorandum, (ii) comply with any changes in the Code, USA PATRIOT Act, or U.S. securities laws (including the regulations implementing such laws), (iii) add to the covenants of any party hereto for the benefit of the Securityholders, and (iv) add any new provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Agreement which shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Agreement; *provided* that no such amendment shall materially and adversely affect the interests of any Noteholder. Notice of any such proposed amendment must be sent to all Securityholders and the Rating Agency at least ten (10) Business Days prior to the execution of such amendment and (y) such amendment shall not be deemed to materially and adversely affect the interests of any Noteholder if the Person requesting such amendment obtains an Opinion of Counsel addressed to the Trustee to that effect.

(b) Except as provided in Section 8.01(a) hereof, this Agreement may be amended from time to time by the parties hereto by written agreement, with the prior written consent of the Trustee and with the consent of the Majority Noteholders and with notice to each of the Rating Agency and the Owner Trustee, for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Agreement or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Securityholders; *provided* that (i) if such amendment materially and adversely affects any Notes, such amendment shall also require the consent of the majority of the Outstanding Principal Balance of such Notes and (ii) no such amendment shall reduce in any manner the amount of, or delay the timing of, any amounts received on any Initial Loans, Substitute Loans or Additional Loans which are required to be distributed on any Note or the Certificate without the consent of the Holder of such Note or the Certificate or reduce the percentage of Securityholders that are required to consent to any such amendment without the consent of the Securityholders holding 100% of the Notes or the Certificate affected thereby.

(c) [Reserved].

(d) Promptly after the execution of any such amendment or consent, written notification of the substance of such amendment or consent shall be furnished by the Trustee to the Noteholders, by the Owner Trustee to the Certificateholders and by the Seller to the Rating Agency. It shall not be necessary for the consent of any Securityholders required pursuant to Section 8.01(b) to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment or consent, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof. The manner of obtaining such consents and of evidencing the authorization by the Securityholders of the execution thereof shall be subject to such reasonable requirements as the Trustee may prescribe for the Noteholders and as the Owner Trustee may prescribe for the Certificateholders.

(e) Prior to the execution of any amendment to this Agreement, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee shall be entitled to receive and conclusively rely upon an Opinion of Counsel (which Opinion of Counsel may rely upon an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer with respect to the effect of any such amendment on the economic interests of any Securityholders) stating that the execution of such amendment is authorized or permitted by this Agreement. Each of the Trustee and the Owner Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into or consent to any such amendment that affects such Person's own rights, duties, indemnities or immunities under this Agreement or otherwise.

Section 8.02 Governing Law.

(a) THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH, THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, WITHOUT REFERENCE TO ITS CONFLICT OF LAW PROVISIONS (OTHER THAN SECTION 5-1401 AND 5-1402 OF THE NEW YORK GENERAL OBLIGATIONS LAW), AND THE OBLIGATIONS, RIGHTS, AND REMEDIES OF THE PARTIES UNDER THE AGREEMENT SHALL BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SUCH LAWS.

(b) EACH PARTY HERETO HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT. EACH PARTY HERETO (I) CERTIFIES THAT NO REPRESENTATIVE, AGENT OR ATTORNEY OF ANY OTHER PARTY HAS REPRESENTED, EXPRESSLY OR OTHERWISE, THAT SUCH OTHER PARTY WOULD NOT, IN THE EVENT OF LITIGATION, SEEK TO ENFORCE THE FOREGOING WAIVER AND (II) ACKNOWLEDGES THAT IT AND THE OTHER PARTIES HERETO HAVE BEEN INDUCED TO ENTER INTO THIS AGREEMENT BY, AMONG OTHER THINGS, THE MUTUAL WAIVERS AND CERTIFICATIONS IN THIS SECTION 8.02(b).

Section 8.03 Notices.

All notices, demands, certificates, requests and communications hereunder ("notices") shall be in writing and shall be effective (a) upon receipt when sent through the U.S. mails, registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, with such receipt to be effective the date of delivery indicated on the return receipt, or (b) one Business Day after delivery to an overnight courier, or (c) on the date personally delivered to a Responsible Officer of the party to which sent, or (d) on the date transmitted by legible telecopier with a confirmation of receipt, in all cases addressed to the recipient as follows:

- (i) if to the Servicer or the Seller:
Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: Chief Financial Officer
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

with a copy to:

Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: General Counsel
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

(ii) if to the Trust Depositor:

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: Chief Financial Officer
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

with a copy to:

Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC
c/o Hercules Capital, Inc.
400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310
Palo Alto, California 94301
Attention: General Counsel
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Telephone: (650) 289-3060
Facsimile No.: (650) 473-9194

(iii) if to the Trustee:

U.S. Bank National Association
Global Corporate Trust
One Federal Street, Third Floor
Boston, Massachusetts 02110
Attention: Jack Lindsay
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (855) 869-2187

-
- (iv) if to the Backup Servicer:
U.S. Bank National Association
60 Livingston Avenue
EP-MN-WS3D
St. Paul, Minnesota 55107
Attention: Deborah Jones Franco
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1
Facsimile No.: (651) 495-8090
- (v) If to the Custodian with respect to Loan Files:
U.S. Bank National Association
Document Custody Services
1719 Otis Way
Florence, South Carolina 29501
Attention: Steven Garrett
Ref: Hercules Capital Funding Trust2018-1
- (vi) if to the Owner Trustee:
Wilmington Trust, National Association
1100 North Market Street
Wilmington, Delaware 19890
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration
Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140

with a copy to:
the Seller and the Servicer as provided in clause (i) above
- (vii) if to the Issuer:
Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
c/o Wilmington Trust, National Association
1100 North Market Street
Wilmington, Delaware 19890
Attention: Corporate Trust Administration
Facsimile No.: (302) 636-4140

with a copy to:
the Seller and the Servicer as provided in clause (i) above
- (viii) if to the Rating Agency:
Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc.
805 Third Avenue, 29th Floor
New York, New York 10022
Attn: ABS Surveillance

(ix) if to the Initial Purchaser:
Guggenheim Securities, LLC
330 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017
Attention: Chief Operating Officer / General Counsel
Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Facsimile No.: (646) 786-4931

Each party hereto may, by notice given in accordance herewith to each of the other parties hereto, designate any further or different address to which subsequent notices shall be sent.

Section 8.04 Severability of Provisions.

If one or more of the covenants, agreements, provisions or terms of this Agreement shall be for any reason whatsoever prohibited or held invalid or unenforceable, then such covenants, agreements, provisions or terms shall be deemed severable from the remaining covenants, agreements, provisions or terms of this Agreement and shall in no way affect the validity or enforceability of the other provisions of this Agreement, the Notes or Certificates or the rights of the Securityholders, and any such prohibition, invalidity or unenforceability in any jurisdiction shall not invalidate or render unenforceable such covenants, agreements, provisions or terms in any other jurisdiction.

Section 8.05 Third Party Beneficiaries.

Except as otherwise specifically provided herein, the parties hereto hereby manifest their intent that no third party (other than the Issuer, the Trustee and the Owner Trustee) shall be deemed a third party beneficiary of this Agreement, and specifically that the Obligors are not third party beneficiaries of this Agreement.

Section 8.06 Counterparts.

This Agreement may be executed by facsimile signature and in several counterparts, each of which shall be an original and all of which shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 8.07 Headings.

The headings of the various Articles and Sections herein are for convenience of reference only and shall not define or limit any of the terms or provisions hereof.

Section 8.08 No Bankruptcy Petition; Disclaimer.

(a) Each of the Seller and the Trust Depositor covenants and agrees that, prior to the date that is one year and one day (or, if longer, the preference period then in effect and one day) after the payment in full of all amounts owing in respect of all outstanding Notes rated by any Rating Agency, it will not institute against the Trust Depositor (in the case of the Seller), or the

Issuer, or join any other Person in instituting against the Trust Depositor or the Issuer, any bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency or liquidation proceedings or other similar proceedings under the laws of the United States or any state of the United States. This Section 8.08 will survive the termination of this Agreement.

(b) The provisions of this Section 8.08 shall be for the third party benefit of those entitled to rely thereon, including the Securityholders, and shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

Section 8.09 Jurisdiction.

Any legal action or proceeding with respect to this Agreement may be brought in the courts of the United States for the Southern District of New York, and by execution and delivery of this Agreement, each party hereto consents, for itself and in respect of its property, to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of those courts. Each such party irrevocably waives any objection, including any objection to the laying of venue or based on the grounds of *forum non conveniens*, which it may now or hereafter have to the bringing of any action or proceeding in such jurisdiction in respect of this Agreement or any document related hereto.

Section 8.10 Prohibited Transactions with Respect to the Issuer.

The Seller shall not:

(a) Provide credit to any Noteholder or Certificateholder for the purpose of enabling such Noteholder or Certificateholder to purchase Notes or Certificates, respectively;

(b) Purchase any Notes or Certificates in an agency or trustee capacity; or

(c) Except in its capacity as Servicer as provided in the Sale and Servicing Agreement, lend any money to the Issuer.

Section 8.11 No Partnership.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed or construed to create a co-partnership or joint venture between the parties hereto.

Section 8.12 Successors and Assigns.

This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors and permitted assigns.

Section 8.13 Duration of Agreement.

This Agreement shall continue in existence and effect until the termination of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 8.14 Limited Recourse.

The obligations of the Trust Depositor and the Seller under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents are solely the obligations of the Trust Depositor and the Seller, respectively. No recourse shall be had for the payment of any amount owing by the Trust Depositor or the Seller or otherwise under this Agreement, any other Transaction Document or for the payment by the Trust Depositor or the Seller of any fee in respect hereof or thereof or any other obligation or claim of or against the Trust Depositor or the Seller arising out of or based upon this Agreement or any other Transaction Document, against any Affiliate, shareholder, partner, manager, member, director, officer, employee, representative or agent of the Trust Depositor or the Seller or of any Affiliate of such Person. The provisions of this Section 8.14 shall survive the termination of this Agreement.

[Remainder of Page Intentionally Left Blank.]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Agreement to be duly executed by their respective officers as of the day and year first above written.

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.,
as the Seller

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC
as the Trust Depositor

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Sale and Contribution Agreement

Exhibit A
Form of Assignment

[], 20[]

In accordance with the Sale and Contribution Agreement (the "Agreement"), dated as of November 1, 2018, made by and between the undersigned, Hercules Capital, Inc., as the Seller, and Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as the Trust Depositor (the "Trust Depositor"), as assignee thereunder, the undersigned does hereby sell, transfer, convey and assign, set over and otherwise convey to the Issuer, on behalf of the Trust Depositor, all of the Seller's right, title and interest in and to the following:

(1) the Loans listed on Schedule A of the Agreement and all monies due, to become due or paid in respect thereof accruing on and after the Closing Date and all Insurance Proceeds, Liquidation Proceeds, Released Mortgaged Property Proceeds and other recoveries thereon, in each case as they arise after the Closing Date;

(2) all security interests and Liens and Related Property subject thereto from time to time purporting to secure payment by Obligors under such Loans;

(3) all guaranties, indemnities and warranties, and other agreements or arrangements of whatever character from time to time supporting or securing payment of such Loans;

(4) the Transaction Accounts, together with all cash and investments in each of the foregoing;

(5) all collections and Records (including Computer Records) with respect to the foregoing;

(i) all documents relating to the applicable Loan Files; and

(ii) all income, payments, proceeds and other benefits of any and all of the foregoing, including but not limited to, all accounts, cash and currency, chattel paper, electronic chattel paper, tangible chattel paper, copyrights, copyright licenses, equipment, fixtures, general intangibles, instruments, commercial tort claims, deposit accounts, inventory, investment property, letter of credit rights, software, supporting obligations, accessions, and other property consisting of, arising out of, or related to the foregoing, but excluding any Excluded Amount with respect thereto.

Capitalized terms used herein have the meaning given such terms in the Agreement.

This Assignment is made pursuant to and in reliance upon the representations and warranties on the part of the undersigned contained in Article III of the Agreement and no others.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned has caused this Assignment to be duly executed on the date written above.

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., as the Seller

By: _____
Name:
Title:

**HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC,
as the Trust Depositor**

By: _____
Name:
Title:

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Sale and Contribution Agreement – Assignment

Schedule A

Initial Loans

**Accounting System Number /
Collateral ID**

**Outstanding
Balance at
Cutoff Date**

**Funding
Maturity
Date**

**Loan
Type**

**Agent
Status**

Agent

Note Status

**UCC Filing in
Seller's Name**

S-A-1

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1 NOTES

U.S.\$200,000,000 OF 4.605% SERIES 2018-1 FIXED RATE SENIOR NOTES

NOTE PURCHASE AGREEMENT

October 25, 2018

Guggenheim Securities, LLC,
as Initial Purchaser (the "Initial Purchaser")
330 Madison Avenue
New York, New York 10017

Ladies and Gentlemen:

Section 1. Authorization of Notes.

Hercules Capital, Inc., a Maryland corporation (the "Originator"), as the sole member of Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "Trust Depositor"), which is the sole holder of the trust certificate of Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1, a Delaware statutory trust (the "Issuer"), has authorized the sale by the Issuer of the 4.605% Series 2018-1 Fixed Rate Notes (the "Notes") of the Issuer. The Notes will be issued by the Issuer in an aggregate principal amount of \$200,000,000. The Notes will be offered by the Issuer pursuant to the Memoranda (as defined below). The Issuer was formed pursuant to (i) a Trust Agreement, dated as of June 11, 2018, as amended and restated as of the Closing Date (as defined below) (the "Trust Agreement") between the Trust Depositor, Wilmington Trust, National Association, as the owner trustee (the "Owner Trustee"), and (ii) a Certificate of Trust filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 11, 2018. In addition to the Notes, the Issuer is issuing a trust certificate (the "Certificate"). The Certificate will represent a fractional undivided beneficial interest in the Issuer. The Certificate will be issued pursuant to the Trust Agreement. The Notes will be issued pursuant to an Indenture, to be dated as of the Closing Date (the "Indenture"), between the Issuer and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee (the "Trustee"). The Notes will be secured by the assets of the Issuer. The primary assets of the Issuer will be a pool of senior secured loans made to life sciences companies and technology companies (including participations therein) and secured by security interests in certain assets of those companies, originated by the Originator or its affiliates (collectively, the "Loans"). The Trust Depositor will acquire Loans from the Originator pursuant to a Sale and Contribution Agreement, to be dated as of the Closing Date (the "Sale and Contribution Agreement") between the Originator and the Trust Depositor. Pursuant to a Sale and Servicing Agreement, to be dated as of the Closing Date (the "Sale and Servicing Agreement"), among the Issuer, Hercules Capital, Inc., as the seller and as the servicer (the "Servicer"), the Trust Depositor, and the Trustee, the Trust Depositor will sell, transfer and convey to the Issuer, without recourse, all of its right, title and interest in the Loans in consideration for the Issuer's payment of a portion of the proceeds of the Notes and the issuance of the Certificate to the Trust Depositor. Pursuant to the Indenture, as security for the indebtedness represented by the Notes,

the Issuer will pledge and grant to the Trustee a security interest in the Loans, and its rights under the Sale and Contribution Agreement and the Sale and Servicing Agreement. This Note Purchase Agreement (the "Agreement"), the Trust Agreement, the Sale and Contribution Agreement, the Sale and Servicing Agreement, and the Indenture are referred to collectively herein as the "Transaction Documents." For purposes of the Credit Risk Retention Rules (as defined below), the Originator is also the sponsor of the securitization transaction being undertaken by the Issuer pursuant to the Transaction Documents.

Capitalized terms used herein but not otherwise defined shall have the meanings set forth in the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

The Notes are to be offered without being registered under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), to "qualified institutional buyers" in compliance with the exemption from registration provided by Rule 144A under the Securities Act ("QIBs") and in offshore transactions to non-U.S. persons in reliance on Regulation S under the Securities Act ("Regulation S").

In connection with the sale of the Notes, the Originator has prepared a preliminary offering memorandum dated October 18, 2018 (including any exhibits, amendments or supplements thereto and all information incorporated therein by reference, the "Preliminary Memorandum"), and a final offering memorandum dated on or about October 26, 2018 (including any exhibits, amendments or supplements thereto and all information incorporated therein by reference, the "Final Memorandum"), and each of the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum, a "Memorandum" or together the "Memoranda") including a description of the terms of the Notes, the terms of the offering, and the Issuer. The Originator has also posted information relating to the performance of the Loans, one or more marketing books, and certain additional information and documents concerning the Notes, the Loans and the Originator to a password protected Internet site accessible by potential investors (such information the "Additional Offering Materials"). It is understood and agreed that 10:14 a.m. New York time on October 25, 2018 constitutes the time of the contract of sale of the Notes for purposes of Rule 159 under the Securities Act (the "Time of Sale"). It is further understood and agreed that the Preliminary Offering Memorandum and the Additional Offering Materials as of the Time of Sale shall be the entirety of the information conveyed to investors as of the Time of Sale, and that "Time of Sale Information" shall refer exclusively to such information, in either case in such form that has not been superseded by any amendment or supplement thereto.

It is understood and agreed that nothing in this Agreement shall prevent the Initial Purchaser from entering into any agency agreements, underwriting agreements or other similar agreements governing the offer and sale of securities with any issuer or issuers of securities, and nothing contained herein shall be construed in any way as precluding or restricting the Initial Purchaser's right to sell or offer for sale any securities issued by any person, including securities similar to, or competing with, the Notes.

Each of the Issuer, the Originator, the Servicer and the Trust Depositor, as applicable, hereby agrees with you, the Initial Purchaser, as follows:

Section 2. Purchase and Sale of Notes

(a) Subject to the terms and conditions and in reliance upon the representations and warranties set forth herein, the Issuer agrees to sell to the Initial Purchaser, and the Initial Purchaser agrees to use commercially reasonable efforts to place, the aggregate principal amount of Notes set forth on Schedule I hereto with investors on a private placement basis in accordance with the terms hereof. The Notes will be purchased at a price equal to \$ 197,996,640.00. It is understood and agreed that the Initial Purchaser is not acquiring and has no obligation to acquire the Certificate and the Certificate will be acquired by the Trust Depositor on the Closing Date pursuant to the Trust Agreement. It is further understood and agreed that the Initial Purchaser may retain the Notes, purchase the Notes for its own account, or sell the Notes to its affiliates or to any other investor in accordance with the applicable provisions hereof and of the Indenture. The Notes sold hereby shall be issued and sold free from all liens, charges and encumbrances, equities and other third party rights of any nature whatsoever, together with all rights of any nature whatsoever attaching or accruing to them now or after the date of this Agreement. The Initial Purchaser shall have the right to reject, in whole or in part, any offer received by it to purchase Notes and any such rejection by the Initial Purchaser shall not be deemed a breach of the agreements contained herein.

(b) In addition, whether or not the transactions contemplated hereby shall be consummated, the Originator agrees to pay (or cause to be paid by the Issuer) certain costs and expenses incidental to the performance by the Originator of its obligations hereunder and under the documents to be executed and delivered in connection with the offering, issuance, sale, exchange and delivery of the Notes (the "Documents"), including, without duplication, (i) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and disbursements of counsel to the Originator; (ii) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and expenses of any trustees or custodian due to such trustees' or custodian's initial expenses incurred in connection with the issuance of the Notes and their or its counsel, as applicable; (iii) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and expenses of any bank establishing and maintaining accounts on behalf of the holders of the Notes in accordance with the Sale and Servicing Agreement; (iv) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and expenses of the accountants for the Originator, including the fees for the "comfort letters" or "agreed-upon procedures letters" required by the Initial Purchaser, and in connection with the valuation of the Retention Interest (as defined below) in satisfaction of the Credit Risk Retention Rules, any rating agency or any purchaser in connection with the offering, sale, issuance and delivery of the Notes; (v) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with the preparation and distribution of each Memorandum, the Additional Offering Materials, the third party due diligence reports described in Section 4(a)(xli) hereof, the marketing roadshow and all expenses incurred in connection with the preparation and distribution of the Transaction Documents; (vi) the fees charged by any securities rating agency for rating the Notes; (vii) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees for any securities identification service for any CUSIP or similar identification number required by the purchasers or requested by the Initial Purchaser; (viii) all reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and disbursements of counsel to the Initial Purchaser; (ix) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket expenses in connection with the qualification of the

Notes for offering and sale under state securities laws, including the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and disbursements of counsel and, if necessary in the reasonable judgment of the Initial Purchaser, the cost of the preparation and reproduction of any "blue sky" or legal investment memoranda; (x) any federal, state or local taxes, registration or filing fees (including Uniform Commercial Code financing statements) or other similar payments to any federal, state or local governmental authority in connection with the offering, sale, issuance and delivery of the Notes; and (xi) the reasonable and documented out-of-pocket fees and expenses of any special counsel or other experts required to be retained by the Initial Purchaser to provide advice, opinions or assistance in connection with the offering, issuance, sale and delivery of the Notes. For the avoidance of doubt, the Initial Purchaser shall not be responsible for any such expenses. Notwithstanding the foregoing, none of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer shall be liable to the Initial Purchaser for loss of anticipated profits from the transactions covered by this Agreement.

Section 3. Delivery.

Delivery of the Notes shall be made in the form of one or more global certificates delivered to The Depository Trust Company or its designated agent at 12:00 p.m. New York, New York time, on November 1, 2018 or such other place, time or date as may be mutually agreed upon by the Initial Purchaser and the Originator (the "Closing Date"). Subject to the foregoing, the Notes will be registered in such names and such denominations as the Initial Purchaser shall specify in writing to the Originator, the Issuer, and the Trustee. The Certificate shall be delivered to the Trust Depositor on the Closing Date in fully registered, certificated form in the permitted denominations and the required proportions as set forth in the Final Memorandum.

Section 4. Representations and Warranties of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer

(a) Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, with respect to itself, hereby represents and warrants to the Initial Purchaser, as of the date hereof (other than with respect to clauses (xvi) and (xix) below) and as of the Closing Date, that:

(i) The Final Memorandum and any additional information and documents concerning the Notes, including but not limited to the Additional Offering Materials, did not, as of their respective date or dates on which such statements contained therein were made, and the Final Memorandum and the Additional Offering Materials and any amendment or supplement thereto, will not, each as of their respective date or dates on which such statements contained therein were made and as of the Closing Date, include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements in each, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; *provided* that no representation or warranty is made regarding the Initial Purchaser Information (as defined in Section 8(e) below).

(ii) The Time of Sale Information, as of the Time of Sale, did not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; *provided* that no representation or warranty is made regarding the Initial Purchaser Information.

(iii) Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer has been duly organized and is validly existing as a Maryland corporation, a Delaware limited liability company or a Delaware statutory trust, as applicable, in good standing under the laws of its jurisdiction of organization. The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer each has all corporate, trust or limited liability company, as applicable, power and authority necessary to own or hold its properties and conduct its business in which it is engaged as described in each Memorandum and has all licenses necessary (and has not received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any such licenses) to carry on its business as it is now being conducted and is licensed and qualified in each jurisdiction in which the conduct of its business (including, without limitation, the origination, acquisition and servicing, as applicable, of Loans and Related Property and performing its obligations hereunder and under the other Transaction Documents) requires such licensing or qualification and in which the failure so to qualify would have a material adverse effect on (i) the business, operations, properties, assets, liabilities, or shareholders' equity, earnings, financial condition or results of operations of the Originator and its subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, or (ii) the ability of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer to perform their respective obligations hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents.

(iv) This Agreement has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer and, assuming due authorization, execution and delivery thereof by the other parties hereto, constitutes a valid and legally binding obligation of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer enforceable against the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer in accordance with its terms, subject, as to enforcement only, to the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally or the application of equitable principles in any proceeding, whether at law or in equity.

(v) On the Closing Date, each of the Transaction Documents to which the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer is a party will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, as applicable, and, assuming due authorization, execution and delivery thereof by the other parties thereto, will constitute valid and binding agreements of the Originator, enforceable against the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, as applicable, in accordance with their respective terms, subject, as to enforcement only, to the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally or the application of equitable principles in any proceeding, whether at law or in equity.

(vi) On the Closing Date, the Notes will have been duly authorized, and when executed and authenticated in accordance with the Indenture and delivered to and paid for by the Initial Purchaser in accordance with this Agreement, the Notes will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Issuer, enforceable against the Issuer in accordance with their terms, subject, as to enforcement only, to the effect of bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally or the application of equitable principles in any proceeding, whether at law or in equity, and will be entitled to the benefits of the Indenture.

(vii) Other than as set forth in or contemplated by each Memorandum, there are no legal or governmental proceedings pending to which the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer is a party or of which any property or assets of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer are the subject of which could reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on (i) the business, operations, properties, assets, liabilities, shareholders' equity, earnings, financial condition or results of operations of the Originator and its subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, or (ii) the ability of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer to perform their respective obligations hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents; and to the knowledge of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, no such proceedings are threatened or contemplated by governmental authorities or threatened by others.

(viii) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and the consummation by each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer of the transactions contemplated herein and therein and in all documents relating to the Notes will not result in any breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any agreement or instrument to which the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer is a party or to which any of its properties or assets are subject, except for such of the foregoing as to which relevant waivers, consents or amendments have been obtained and are in full force and effect or which would not reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the business, operations, properties, assets, liabilities, shareholders' equity, earnings, financial condition or results of operations of the Originator and its subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, on the ability of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer to perform their respective obligations hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents, nor will any such action result in a violation of the amended trust agreement or limited liability company agreement, as applicable, of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer or any applicable law.

(ix) (i) None of the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or the pool of Loans is, or after giving effect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents will be, (a)

required to be registered as an “investment company” under the 1940 Act or (b) required to register under the Commodity Exchange Act of 1922, as amended, as a “commodity pool” and (ii) neither the Trust Depositor nor the Issuer is “controlled” by an investment company within the meaning of the 1940 Act. The Issuer will rely on an exemption from the definition of “investment company” under the 1940 Act contained in Rule 3a-7 thereunder, although there may be additional exclusions or exemptions available to the Issuer. The Issuer is being structured so as not to constitute a “covered fund” for purposes of the regulations adopted to implement Section 619 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act (such statutory provision together with such implementing regulations, the “Volcker Rule”).

(x) Assuming the Initial Purchaser’s representations herein are true and accurate, it is not necessary in connection with the offer, sale or exchange and delivery of the Notes in the manner contemplated by this Agreement and each Memorandum to register the Notes under the Securities Act or to qualify the Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

(xi) The Notes satisfy the requirements set forth in Rule 144A(d)(3) under the Securities Act. As of the Closing Date, the Notes will not be (i) of the same class as securities listed on a national securities exchange in the United States that is registered under Section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), or (ii) quoted in any “automated inter-dealer quotation system” (as such term is used in the Exchange Act) in the United States.

(xii) At the time of execution and delivery of the Sale and Contribution Agreement, the Originator owned the Loans to be conveyed by it on the Closing Date free and clear of all liens, encumbrances, adverse claims or security interests (“Liens”) other than Liens permitted by the Transaction Documents and the Originator had the power and authority to transfer such loans to the Trust Depositor. At the time of execution and delivery of the Sale and Servicing Agreement, the Trust Depositor owned the Loans to be conveyed by it on the Closing Date free and clear of all Liens other than Liens permitted by the Transaction Documents and the Trust Depositor had the power and authority to transfer such Loans to the Issuer.

(xiii) Upon the execution and delivery of the Transaction Documents, delivery to the Issuer of the Loans and delivery to, or upon the order of, the Trust Depositor of the net proceeds of the Notes and the Certificate, the Issuer will own the Loans conveyed to it on the Closing Date and the Trust Depositor will acquire title to the Certificate, in each case free of Liens except such Liens as may be permitted in the Transaction Documents. Upon the execution and delivery of the Transaction Documents, payment by the Initial Purchaser for the Notes and delivery to the Initial Purchaser of the Notes, the Initial Purchaser will acquire title to the Notes, free and clear of Liens except such Liens as may be granted or created by the Initial Purchaser and those permitted in the Transaction Documents.

(xiv) No consent, authorization or order of, or filing or registration with, any court or governmental agency is required for the issuance and sale of the Notes by the Issuer to the Initial Purchaser or the execution, delivery and performance by the Issuer of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, except such consents, approvals, authorizations, registrations or qualifications as have been obtained or as may be required under state securities or blue sky laws in connection with the sale or exchange and delivery of the Notes in the manner contemplated herein.

(xv) The Loans in all material respects have the characteristics described in the Time of Sale Information and the Final Memorandum.

(xvi) Each of the representations and warranties of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer set forth in each of the other Transaction Documents is true and correct in all material respects.

(xvii) With respect to any Notes subject to the provisions of Regulation S of the Securities Act, none of the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor nor the Issuer has offered or sold such Notes during the Distribution Compliance Period to a person (other than the Initial Purchaser) who is within the United States or its possessions or to a United States person. For this purpose, the term "Distribution Compliance Period" is defined as such term is defined in Regulation S and the terms "United States or its possessions" and "United States person" are defined as such terms are defined for purposes of Treas. Reg. § 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D).

(xviii) Since the date of the latest audited financial statements of the Originator, there has been no change nor any development or event involving a prospective change which has had or could reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on (i) the business, operations, properties, assets, liabilities, shareholders' equity, earnings, financial condition or results of operations of the Originator and its subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, or (ii) the ability of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer to perform their respective obligations hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents.

(xix) The Notes, the Certificate and the Transaction Documents conform in all material respects to the descriptions thereof in the Final Memorandum.

(xx) Any taxes, fees, and other governmental charges in connection with the offering of the Notes, the execution and delivery of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents, the execution, delivery and transfer of the Certificate and the execution, delivery, and sale or exchange of the Notes have been or will be paid by or on behalf of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer at or before the Closing Date.

(xxi) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer or any Person acting on its behalf has taken, and none of them will take, any action that might cause this Agreement or the issuance, sale or exchange of the Notes to violate Regulation T, Regulation U or Regulation X of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(xxii) No proceeds received by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer in respect of the Notes will be used by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, or the Issuer to acquire any security in any transaction which is subject to Section 13 or 14 of the Exchange Act.

(xxiii) (i) Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer and their respective ERISA Affiliates is in compliance in all material respects with ERISA unless any failure to so comply could not reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on (A) the business, operations, properties, assets, liabilities, shareholders' equity, earnings, financial condition or results of operations of the Originator and its subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, or (B) the ability of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer to perform their respective obligations hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents and (ii) no lien under Section 303(k) of ERISA or Section 430(k) of the Code exists on any of the Collateral. As used in this paragraph, the term "ERISA Affiliate" means, with respect to any Person, a corporation, trade or business that is, along with such Person, a member of a controlled group (as described in Section 414 of the Code or Section 4001 of ERISA).

(xxiv) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer nor any of their respective properties or assets has any immunity from the jurisdiction of any court or from any legal process (whether through service or notice, attachment prior to judgment, attachment in aid of execution, execution or otherwise) under the laws of its jurisdiction of organization.

(xxv) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer, has paid or agreed to pay to any person any compensation for soliciting another to purchase or exchange any of the Notes (except as contemplated by this Agreement and the engagement letter (the "Engagement Letter") dated September 1, 2016, between the Originator and the Initial Purchaser, as amended).

(xxvi) No event has occurred which, had the Notes already been issued, might (whether or not with the giving of notice and/or the passage of time and/or the fulfillment of any other requirement) constitute an event of default or such other similar term howsoever used or defined in any Transaction Document.

(xxvii) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer has taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to cause or to result in, or that has constituted or which might reasonably be expected to constitute, the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any Note or to facilitate the sale or resale of the Notes.

(xxviii) (A) The purchase and sale of the Notes pursuant to this Agreement, including the determination of the offering price of the Notes and any related discounts and commissions, is an arm's-length commercial transaction between the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, on the one hand, and the Initial Purchaser, on the other hand, and each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer is capable of evaluating and understanding and understands and accepts the terms, risks and conditions of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement; (B) in connection with each transaction contemplated hereby, none of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, or the Issuer is relying on the Initial Purchaser as the financial advisor, agent (except to the extent provided in this Agreement) or fiduciary of the Originator or any of its affiliates, stockholders, creditors or employees or any other party; (C) the Initial Purchaser has no obligation to any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer with respect to the offering contemplated hereby except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement; (D) each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer acknowledge that the Initial Purchaser and its affiliates may be engaged in a broad range of transactions that involve interests that differ from those of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, and the Initial Purchaser has no obligation to disclose any of such interests by virtue of any advisory or fiduciary relationship; and (E) each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer and has consulted its own legal, accounting, regulatory and tax advisors to the extent it deemed appropriate and is not relying on the Initial Purchaser for any legal, accounting, regulatory or tax advice with respect to the offering contemplated hereby.

(xxix) On and immediately after the Closing Date, each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer (after giving effect to the issuance of the Notes and to the other transactions related thereto as described in the Time of Sale Information and the Final Memorandum) will be Solvent. As used in this paragraph, the term "Solvent" means, with respect to a particular date and any Person, that on such date (A) the present fair market value (or present fair saleable value) of the assets of such Person is not less than the total amount required to pay the probable liabilities of such Person on its total existing debts and liabilities (including contingent liabilities) as they become absolute and matured, (B) such Person is able to realize upon its assets and pay its debts and other liabilities, contingent obligations and commitments as they mature and become due in the normal course of business, (C) assuming the sale or exchange of the Notes as contemplated by this Agreement, the Time of Sale Information and the Final Memorandum, such Person is not incurring debts or liabilities beyond its ability to pay as such debts and liabilities mature and (D) such Person is not engaged in any business or transaction, and is not about to engage in any business or transaction, for which its property would constitute unreasonably small capital after giving due consideration to the prevailing practice in the industry in which such Person is engaged. In computing the amount of such contingent liabilities at any time, it is intended that such liabilities will be computed at the amount that, in the light of all the facts and circumstances existing at such time, represents the amount that can reasonably be expected to become an actual or matured liability.

(xxx) The Originator has provided a written representation (the "17g5 Representation") to Kroll Bond Rating Agency, Inc. (the "Hired NRSRO"), which satisfies the requirements of paragraph Rule 17g-5(a)(3)(iii) of the Exchange Act ("Rule 17g5") and a copy of which has been delivered to the Initial Purchaser. The Originator has complied with the representations, certifications and covenants made to the Hired NRSRO in connection with the 17g5 Representation.

(xxxi) The Originator has not taken, nor will it take, directly or indirectly, any action prohibited by Regulation M under the Exchange Act in connection with the offering of the Notes.

(xxxii) No forward looking statement (within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act and Section 21E of the Exchange Act) contained in the Preliminary Memorandum or the Final Memorandum has been made or reaffirmed without a reasonable basis or has been disclosed other than in good faith.

(xxxiii) Each of the Originator, the Servicer and the Trust Depositor represents and warrants that there are no contracts, agreements or understandings between the Issuer and any person granting such person the right to require the Issuer to file a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to any Notes owned or to be owned by such person or to include any Notes in any securities registered pursuant to any registration statement filed by the Issuer under the Securities Act.

(xxxiv) No action has been taken by any governmental agency or body and no statute, rule or regulation or order has been enacted, adopted or issued by any governmental agency or body which prevents the issuance of the Notes or suspends the sale or exchange of the Notes in any jurisdiction; no injunction, restraining order or order of any nature by a Federal or state court of competent jurisdiction has been issued with respect to the Originator that would prevent or suspend the issuance, sale or exchange of the Notes, or the use of any of the Preliminary Memorandum, the Final Memorandum or the Additional Offering Materials in any jurisdiction; no action, suit or proceeding is pending against or, to the best of the knowledge of the Originator, threatened against or affecting the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer before any court or arbitrator or any governmental body, agency or official, domestic or foreign, that could reasonably be expected to interfere with or adversely affect the issuance or exchange of the Notes or in any manner draw into question the validity of the Notes, any related agreement or this Agreement or any action taken or to be taken pursuant hereto or thereto.

(xxxv) The Originator has complied, and is the appropriate entity to comply, with all requirements imposed on the "sponsor of a securitization transaction" in accordance with the final rules contained in Regulation RR, 17 C.F.R. §246.1, et seq. (as such may

be amended from time to time, and subject to such clarification and interpretation as have been provided by the Department of Treasury, the Federal Reserve System, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Federal Housing Finance Agency, the Securities and Exchange Commission and the Department of Housing and Urban Development in the adopting release (79 F.R. 77601 et seq.) or by the staff of any such agency from time to time, the “Credit Risk Retention Rules”), in each case directly or (to the extent permitted by the Credit Risk Retention Rules) through a “majority-owned affiliate” (as defined in the Credit Risk Retention Rules, a “Majority-Owned Affiliate”). On the Closing Date, the Originator or a Majority-Owned Affiliate of the Originator will retain an “eligible horizontal residual interest” (as defined in the Credit Risk Retention Rules) equal to at least 5% of the fair value (determined using a fair value measurement framework under United States generally accepted accounting principles) of all the “ABS interests” (as defined in the Credit Risk Retention Rules) in the Issuer issued as part of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents (such interest, the “Retained Interest”). The Originator has determined such fair value of the Retained Interest based on its own valuation methodology, inputs and assumptions and is solely responsible therefor. The Preliminary Memorandum contains and the Final Memorandum will contain, as applicable, all of the required disclosures under 17 C.F.R. §246.4(c)(1).

(xxxvi) None of the Originator nor any of its affiliates has entered into or contemplates entering into, directly or indirectly, any hedging, financing or transfer of the Retention Interest in contravention of the Credit Risk Retention Rules or the Transaction Documents.

(xxxvii) Third Party Due Diligence Reports.

(1) The Issuer has not obtained (and, through and including the Closing Date, will not obtain) any third party due diligence report contemplated by Rule 15Ga-2 under the Exchange Act (“Due Diligence Report”) in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Memoranda other than the agreed-upon procedures report (the “Accountants’ Due Diligence Report”), in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser, obtained from the accounting firm engaged to provide procedures involving a comparison of information in loan files for the Loans to information on a data tape relating to the Loans (the “Accountants”), a copy of which has been furnished to the Initial Purchaser, at the request of the Issuer; and, except for the Accountants with respect to the Accountants’ Due Diligence Report, the Issuer has not employed (and, through and including the Closing Date, will not employ) any third party to engage in any activity that constitutes “due diligence services” within the meaning of Rule 17g-10 under the Exchange Act (“Due Diligence Services”) in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the Memoranda. The Accountants have consented to the use of the Accountants’ Due Diligence Report in the preparation of a Form 15G (as defined below) furnished on EDGAR as required by Rule 15Ga-2 under the Exchange Act (“Rule 15Ga-2”);

(2) Any certification on Form ABS Due Diligence-15E (a “Form 15E”) received by the Issuer from the Accountants in connection with the Due Diligence Services provided by the Accounting Firm was promptly posted, after receipt, as required by Rule 17g-5 under the Exchange Act on the Rule 17g-5 website established by or on behalf of the Issuer, and the Issuer has not received any other Form 15E from any party;

(3) The Issuer (A) prepared one or more reports on Form ABS-15G (each, a “Form 15G”) containing the findings and conclusions of the Accountants’ Due Diligence Report and meeting all other requirements of that Form 15G, Rule 15Ga-2, any other rules and regulations of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission and the Exchange Act; and (B) furnished each such Form 15G to the United States Securities and Exchange Commission on EDGAR at least five (5) Business Days before the first sale in the offering contemplated by the Memoranda as required by Rule 15Ga-2; and

(4) No portion of any Form 15G contains any names, addresses, other personal identifiers or zip codes with respect to any individuals, or any other personally identifiable or other information that would be associated with an individual, including without limitation any “nonpublic personal information” within the meaning of Title V of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Financial Services Modernization Act of 1999.

Section 5. Sale of the Notes to the Initial Purchaser:

The sale of the Notes to the Initial Purchaser will be made without registration of the Notes under the Securities Act, in reliance upon the exemption therefrom provided by Section 4(2) of the Securities Act.

(a) The Originator, the Initial Purchaser, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer hereby agree that the Notes will be offered and sold only in transactions exempt from registration under the Securities Act. The Originator, the Initial Purchaser, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and Issuer will each reasonably believe at the Time of Sale and the initial resale of the Notes by the Initial Purchaser (i) that either (A) each purchaser of the Notes is an institutional investor that is a QIB who is a Qualified Purchaser purchasing for its own account (or for the accounts of QIBs who are Qualified Purchasers to whom notice has been given that the sale is being made in reliance on Rule 144A) in transactions meeting the requirements of Rule 144A, or (B) each purchaser that is a non-U.S. person is acquiring the Notes in an offshore transaction meeting the requirements of Regulation S and is a Qualified Purchaser, and (ii) that the offering of the Notes will be made in a manner that will enable the offer and sale of the Notes to be exempt from registration under state securities or Blue Sky laws; and each such party understands that no action has been taken to permit a public offering in any jurisdiction where

action would be required for such purpose. The Originator, the Initial Purchaser, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer each further agrees not to engage (and represents that it has not engaged) in any activity that would constitute a public offering of the Notes within the meaning of Section 4(2) of the Securities Act.

(b) The Initial Purchaser hereby represents and warrants to and agrees with the Originator, that (i) it will offer the Notes only (A) to persons who it reasonably believes are QIBs who are Qualified Purchasers in transactions meeting the requirements of Rule 144A, or (B) to non-United States persons it reasonably believes are Qualified Purchasers in offshore transactions in accordance with Regulation S. The Initial Purchaser further agrees that it will deliver to each purchaser of the Notes, at or prior to the Time of Sale, a copy of the Time of Sale Information, as then amended or supplemented; (ii) it has complied and will comply with all applicable provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, as amended (the “FSMA”) with respect to anything done by it in relation to the Notes in, from or otherwise involving the United Kingdom; and (iii) it has only communicated or caused to be communicated and it will only communicate or cause to be communicated any invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity (within the meaning of Section 21 of the FSMA) received by it in connection with the issue or sale of any of the Notes in circumstances in which Section 21(1) of the FSMA does not apply to the Issuer.

(c) The Initial Purchaser hereby represents and agrees that all offers and sales of the Notes by it to non-United States persons, prior to the expiration of the Distribution Compliance Period, will be made only in accordance with the provisions of Rule 903 or Rule 904 of Regulation S (except to the extent of any beneficial owners thereof who acquired an interest therein pursuant to another exemption from registration under the Securities Act and who will take delivery of a beneficial ownership interest in a Global Note, as contemplated in the Indenture) and only upon receipt of certification of beneficial ownership of the securities by a non-United States person in the form provided in the Indenture. For this purpose, the term “Distribution Compliance Period” is defined as such term is defined in Regulation S and the term “United States person” is defined as such term is defined for purposes of Treas. Reg. §1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D).

(d) The Initial Purchaser represents and agrees that (a) it has not delivered, and will not deliver, any Rating Information to the Hired NRSRO without the prior consent of a designated representative of the Originator and (b) it has not participated, and will not participate, in any oral communication regarding Rating Information with the Hired NRSRO unless a designated representative from the Originator consents to or participates in such communication; *provided, however*, that if an Initial Purchaser receives an oral communication from the Hired NRSRO, such Initial Purchaser is authorized to inform the Hired NRSRO that it will respond to the oral communication with a designated representative from the Originator. For purposes of this paragraph, “Rating Information” means any information that could reasonably be determined to be relevant to: (i) determining an initial credit rating for the Notes (as contemplated by Rule 17g-5(a)(3)(iii)(C)) or (ii) undertaking credit rating surveillance for the Notes (as contemplated by Rule 17g-5(a)(3)(iii)(D)).

(e) The Initial Purchaser hereby represents that it is duly authorized and possesses the requisite limited liability company power to enter into this Agreement.

Section 6. Certain Agreements of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer

The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, each with respect to itself, covenants and agrees with the Initial Purchaser as follows:

(a) If, at any time prior to the completion of distribution of the Notes (as determined by the Initial Purchaser), any event involving the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer shall occur as a result of which the Final Memorandum (as then amended or supplemented) would include an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, the Originator will promptly notify the Initial Purchaser and prepare and furnish to the Initial Purchaser an amendment or supplement to the Final Memorandum that will correct such statement or omission. None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer will at any time amend or supplement the Final Memorandum (i) prior to having furnished the Initial Purchaser with a copy of the proposed form of the amendment or supplement and giving the Initial Purchaser a reasonable opportunity to review the same or (ii) in a manner to which the Initial Purchaser or its counsel shall object. The Initial Purchaser's consent to or its delivery to prospective investors of such amendment or supplement shall not constitute a waiver of any of the conditions set forth in Section 7 hereof. In the event that the Initial Purchaser shall incur any costs in connection with the reformation of a contract of sale with any investor that received the Time of Sale Information that contained an untrue statement of a material fact or failed to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer jointly and severally agree to reimburse the Initial Purchaser for such costs, provided that the untrue statement or omission in the Time of Sale Information did not relate solely to Initial Purchaser Information.

(b) During the period referred to in Section 6(a), the Originator will furnish to the Initial Purchaser, without charge, copies of the Final Memorandum (including all exhibits and documents incorporated by reference therein), the Transaction Documents and all amendments or supplements to such documents, in each case, as soon as reasonably available and in such quantities as the Initial Purchaser may from time to time reasonably request.

(c) During the period referred to in Section 6(a), the Originator shall promptly prepare, upon the reasonable request of the Initial Purchaser, any amendments of or supplements to the Final Memorandum that in the opinion of the Initial Purchaser may be reasonably necessary to enable the Initial Purchaser to continue to sell the Notes, subject to the approval of the Initial Purchaser's counsel.

(d) At all times during the period referenced in Section 6(a), (i) the Originator will make available to each offeree the Additional Offering Materials subject to such offeree's

acceptance of the confidentiality requirements with respect thereto and such information concerning any other relevant matters as it or any of its affiliates possess or can acquire without unreasonable effort or expense, as determined in good faith by it or such affiliate, as applicable, (ii) the Originator will provide each offeree the opportunity to ask questions of, and receive answers from, it concerning the terms and conditions of the offering and to obtain any additional information, to the extent it or any of its affiliates possess such information or can acquire it without unreasonable effort or expense (as determined in good faith by it or such affiliate, as applicable), necessary to verify the accuracy of the information furnished to the offeree, (iii) none of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer will publish or disseminate any material in connection with the offering of the Notes except as contemplated herein or as consented to by the Initial Purchaser or in connection with the Originator's disclosure obligations under the Exchange Act, provided that no such disclosure under the Exchange Act would result in a requirement that the offering of the Notes be registered under §5 of the Securities Act, (iv) the Originator will take such action as the Initial Purchaser may reasonably request to obtain an exemption from registration requirements or to qualify the Notes for offering and sale under the state securities laws of such jurisdictions in the United States of America, its territories and possessions, as the Initial Purchaser may request, (v) the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer will advise the Initial Purchaser promptly of the receipt by any of them of any communication from the SEC or any state securities authority concerning the offering, sale or exchange of the Notes, (vi) the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer will advise the Initial Purchaser promptly of the commencement of any lawsuit or proceeding to which the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer is a party relating to the offering, sale or exchange of the Notes, and (vii) the Originator will advise the Initial Purchaser of the suspension of the qualification of the Notes for offering, sale or exchange in any jurisdiction, or the initiation or threat of any procedure for any such purpose.

(e) The Originator will furnish, upon the written request of any Noteholder or of any owner of a beneficial interest in a Note, such information as is specified in paragraph (d)(4) of Rule 144A under the Securities Act (i) to such Noteholder or beneficial owner, (ii) to a prospective purchaser of a Note or interest therein who is a QIB and a Qualified Purchaser designated by such Noteholder or beneficial owner, or (iii) to the Trustee for delivery to such Noteholder, beneficial owner or prospective purchaser, in order to permit compliance by such Noteholder or beneficial owner with Rule 144A in connection with the resale of such Note or beneficial interest therein by such holder or beneficial owner in reliance on Rule 144A unless, at the time of such request, the Issuer is subject to the reporting requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act or is exempt from such reporting requirements pursuant to and in compliance with Rule 12g3-2(b).

(f) Except as otherwise provided in the Indenture, each Note will contain a legend to the effect set forth in the Final Memorandum.

(g) The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer agree that no future offer and sale of Notes of the Issuer will be made if, as a result of the doctrine of "integration" referred to in Rule 502 under the Securities Act, such offer and sale would require the registration under the Securities Act of the offering contemplated by the Time of Sale Information and the Final Memorandum.

(h) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer will take or permit, or cause any of their affiliates to take, any action whatsoever which would have the effect of requiring the registration under the Securities Act of the offering or sale of the Notes contemplated by the Time of Sale Information and the Final Memorandum. The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer will cause the filing of such statements and reports as may be required under the Securities Act or the Exchange Act.

(i) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer, or any Person acting on their behalf shall engage in any form of general solicitation or general advertising with respect to the Notes or in any directed selling efforts (as that term is defined in Regulation S) with respect to the Notes, and the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer and each Person acting on their behalf shall comply with the applicable offering restrictions requirements of Regulation S.

(j) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer nor the Issuer shall solicit any offer to buy from or offer to sell or sell to any Person any Notes, except through the Initial Purchaser or with the consent of the Initial Purchaser and/or as otherwise specified in the Indenture at any time prior to the Closing Date; on or prior to the Closing Date, none of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer nor the Issuer shall publish or disseminate any material other than the Additional Offering Materials consented to by the Initial Purchaser, the Time of Sale Information and the Final Memorandum in connection with the offer or sale of the Notes as contemplated by this Agreement, unless the Initial Purchaser shall have consented to the use thereof; if the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer makes any press release including “tombstone” announcements, in connection with the Transaction Documents, it shall permit the Initial Purchaser to review and approve such release in advance.

(k) None of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer shall take, directly or indirectly, any action designed to or which has constituted or which might reasonably be expected to cause or result, under the Exchange Act or otherwise, in stabilization or manipulation of the price of any Note to facilitate the sale, resale or exchange of the Notes.

(l) The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer shall each cooperate with the Initial Purchaser and use its best efforts to permit the Notes to be eligible for clearance and settlement through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company (“DTC”).

(m) The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer shall each apply the net proceeds from the sale of the Notes as set forth in the Final Memorandum under the heading “Use of Proceeds”.

(n) So long as any of the Notes are outstanding, the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer will furnish to the Initial Purchaser, by first-class mail, facsimile, email or such other method of delivery agreed to in writing by the Initial Purchaser, as soon as

practicable: (i) all documents required to be distributed to the Holders of Notes; (ii) annual statements of compliance, annual independent certified public accountants' reports (so long as the Initial Purchaser has executed an acknowledgment letter in favor of such accountants) and annual opinions of counsel furnished to the Trustee or the Owner Trustee pursuant to the Transaction Documents, following the date as such statements, reports and opinions are furnished to the Trustee or the Owner Trustee, as the case may be and (iii) from time to time, such other information concerning the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer, the Notes or the Certificate as the Initial Purchaser may reasonably request.

(o) The Originator and the Servicer will extend to all prospective investors the opportunity to ask questions of, and receive answers from, the Originator and the Servicer concerning the Notes and the terms and conditions of the offering thereof and to obtain such information as such prospective investors may consider necessary in making an informed investment decision or to verify the accuracy of the information set forth in the Memoranda, to the extent the Originator or the Servicer possesses the same or can acquire it without unreasonable effort or expense, provided that the Originator and the Servicer shall be under no obligation to divulge information that is proprietary or confidential.

(p) The Issuer, the Originator and the Trust Depositor shall not, for a period of one-hundred eighty (180) days from the date of the Final Memorandum, among other things, directly or indirectly, offer for sale, sell, or otherwise dispose of any securities of the Issuer substantially similar to the Notes or securities convertible into or exchangeable for such similar securities of the Issuer, in each case without the prior written consent of the Initial Purchaser.

(q) The Originator will comply, and will cause each of its affiliates, including any Majority-Owned Affiliate that owns an interest in the Retained Interest, to comply, with all applicable requirements under the Credit Risk Retention Rules for so long as those requirements are applicable, including holding the Retained Interest for the duration required in the Credit Risk Retention Rules without any hedging, transfer or financing of the Retained Interest that would contravene the Credit Risk Retention Rules or the Transaction Documents. The Originator is and will be solely responsible for compliance with the disclosure requirements of the Credit Risk Retention Rules, including the contents of all such disclosures and ensuring that any required post-closing disclosures are timely provided to investors by an appropriate method that does not require any involvement of the Initial Purchaser or the Co-Managers. Any hedging, transfer or financing of the Retained Interest that would contravene the Credit Risk Retention Rules or the Transaction Documents shall be void *ab initio* and of no effect.

Section 7. Conditions of the Initial Purchaser Obligations

The obligation of the Initial Purchaser to purchase the Notes on the Closing Date will be subject to the accuracy, in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations and warranties that already are qualified or modified by materiality in the text thereof), of the representations and warranties of each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, as applicable, herein and the other Transaction Documents, to the performance, in all material respects (except that such materiality qualifier

shall not be applicable to the performance of any obligations that already are qualified or modified by materiality in the text thereof), by each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, as applicable, of its obligations hereunder and the other Transaction Documents and to the following additional conditions precedent:

(a) The Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer shall have obtained all governmental authorizations (if any) required in connection with the issuance and sale or exchange of the Notes and the performance of its obligations hereunder and under the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party.

(b) The Notes shall have been duly authorized, executed, authenticated, delivered and issued, the Transaction Documents shall have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the respective parties thereto and shall be in full force and effect, and the Required Loan Documents in respect of the Loans shall have been delivered to the Trustee pursuant to and as required by the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

(c) The Initial Purchaser shall have received a certificate, dated as of the Closing Date, on behalf of the Originator to the effect that the party executing such certificate has carefully examined this Agreement, the Final Memorandum and the Transaction Documents and that, to the best of such party's knowledge (i) since the date information is given in the Final Memorandum, there has not been any material adverse change in (A) the business, operations, properties, assets, liabilities, shareholders' equity, earnings, financial condition or results of operations of the Originator and its subsidiaries, considered as one enterprise, (B) the ability of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer to perform their respective obligations hereunder or under the other Transaction Documents, or (C) except as contemplated by the Final Memorandum, the characteristics of the Loans, (ii) the representations and warranties of each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer as set forth herein and in the other Transaction Documents are true and correct in all material respects as of the Closing Date (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations and warranties that already are qualified or modified by materiality in the text thereof), as though such representations and warranties had been made on and as of such date, (iii) each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer has complied in all material respects with all agreements and satisfied all conditions on its part to be performed or satisfied, under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents, at or prior to the Closing Date, (except that such materiality qualifier shall not be applicable to any representations and warranties that already are qualified or modified by materiality in the text thereof) and (iv) nothing has come to the attention of such officer that would lead such officer to believe that (A) the Time of Sale Information, as of the Time of Sale, contained any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, and (B) the Final Memorandum, as of its date and as of the Closing Date, or any Additional Offering Material, as of its respective date, contained or contains an untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or omits to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(d) The shall have been rated no less than “A(sf)” by the Hired NRSRO, such rating shall not have been rescinded, and no public announcement shall have been made by Hired NRSRO that such rating of the Notes has been placed under review.

(e) Ernst & Young LLP shall have furnished to the Initial Purchaser “agreed upon procedures” letters, dated the date of delivery thereof, in form and substance satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser, with respect to certain financial and statistical information contained in the static pool reports, the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum.

(f) The Initial Purchaser shall have received an opinion, dated the Closing Date, of Nixon Peabody LLP counsel to the Trustee, in form and substance satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

(g) The Initial Purchaser shall have received legal opinions of Dechert LLP, counsel to the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, (i) with respect to certain corporate, enforceability, noncontravention of material agreements (including organizational documents and material debt documents), federal tax, perfection and priority of security interest, securities law, investment company matters, and other customary matters, in form and substance satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser, (ii) with respect to certain “true sale” issues in form and substance satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser and (iii) with respect to certain “non-consolidation” issues, in each case, in form and substance satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser. Dechert LLP shall also provide a customary “negative assurances” letter, dated as of the Closing Date, addressed to the Initial Purchaser and in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to its counsel, containing customary exceptions and limitations, to the effect that such counsel has no reason to believe that the Preliminary Memorandum, at the Time of Sale, or the Final Memorandum, as of its date and on the Closing Date, included or includes any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted or omits to state any material fact necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading (in each case, other than the financial statements and other information of a statistical, accounting or financial nature included in the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum).

(h) The Initial Purchaser shall have received opinions of Richards, Layton & Finger, PA, counsel to the Owner Trustee and special Delaware counsel to the Trust Depositor and the Issuer, with respect to (i) certain corporate and enforceability matters regarding the Owner Trustee, (ii) certain Delaware limited liability company matters, (iii) certain Delaware statutory trust matters, (iv) certain corporate, perfection and priority issues and (v) whether Delaware law, and not federal law, would govern the determination of what persons or entities have the authority to file a voluntary bankruptcy petition on behalf of the Trust Depositor, in each case, in form and substance satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

(i) The Initial Purchaser shall have received from the Trustee a certificate signed by one or more duly authorized officers of the Trustee, dated the Closing Date, in customary form.

(j) The Initial Purchaser shall have received from the Owner Trustee, a certificate signed by one or more duly authorized officers of the Owner Trustee, dated the Closing Date, in customary form.

(k) The Originator shall have furnished to the Initial Purchaser and its counsel such further information, certificates and documents as the Initial Purchaser and its counsel may reasonably have requested, and all proceedings in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, the other Transaction Documents and all documents incidental hereto shall be in all material respects reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Initial Purchaser and its counsel.

(l) The Initial Purchaser shall have received from Winston & Strawn LLP, its counsel, a “negative assurance” letter, dated as of the Closing Date, in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser; and the Originator shall have furnished to such counsel such documents as they reasonably request for the purpose of enabling them to pass on all matters contained therein.

(m) The Issuer shall have (or shall cause to be) delivered to DTC (or an approved custodian therefor) the Notes, in each case in global form and as described in Section 3(b) above, duly executed by the Issuer and authenticated by the Trustee. The Issuer shall have issued the Certificate.

(n) The Issuer shall have executed and delivered to the DTC a standard “letter of representations” sufficient to cause DTC to qualify the Notes issued in global form for inclusion in DTC’s book-entry registration and transfer system.

(o) Each of the Collection Account, the Principal Reinvestment Account, the Reserve Account and the Distribution Account shall have been established in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents.

(p) All other documents incidental hereto, to the other Transaction Documents shall be reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Initial Purchaser and its counsel.

If any of the conditions specified in this Section 7 shall not have been fulfilled in all material respects when and as provided in this Agreement, or if any of the opinions and certificates mentioned above shall not be in all material respects reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Initial Purchaser, this Agreement and all of the Initial Purchaser’s obligations hereunder may be canceled by the Initial Purchaser at or prior to delivery of and payment for the Notes. Notice of such cancellation shall be given to the Originator in writing, or by telephone or facsimile confirmed in writing.

Section 8. Indemnification and Contribution.

(a) Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, shall, jointly and severally, indemnify and hold harmless the Initial Purchaser and its affiliates,

directors, officers, employees, agents and each Person, if any, who controls the Initial Purchaser within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act (each, an “Indemnified Party”), against any and all losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses whatsoever as incurred (including but not limited to attorneys’ fees and any and all expenses whatsoever incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever, and any and all amounts paid in settlement of any claim or litigation), joint or several, to which they or any of them may become subject under the Securities Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise, insofar as such losses, liabilities, claims, damages or expenses (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon (i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained (A) in the Preliminary Memorandum, the Time of Sale Information, the Final Memorandum or any Additional Offering Materials or in any amendment or supplement thereto, or (B) in any “blue sky” application or other document prepared or executed by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer (or based upon any written information furnished by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer) specifically for the purpose of qualifying any or all of the Notes under the securities laws of any state or other jurisdiction (any such application, document or information being hereinafter called a “Blue Sky Application”), (ii) the omission or alleged omission to state in the Preliminary Memorandum, Time of Sale Information, the Final Memorandum or Additional Offering Materials, or in any amendment or supplement thereto, or in any Blue Sky Application, any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, (iii) any act or failure to act or any alleged act or failure to act by the Initial Purchaser in connection with, or relating in any manner to, matters covered by clause (i) or (ii) above, excluding, however, any such act or failure to act or any such alleged act or failure to act by the Initial Purchaser that is the result of willful misconduct or gross negligence on the part of the Initial Purchaser, or (iv) the violation of any securities laws (including without limitation the anti-fraud provision thereof) of any foreign jurisdiction in which the Notes are offered; provided, however, that the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer will not be liable in any such case to the extent but only to the extent that it is determined in a final and unappealable judgment by a court of competent jurisdiction that any such loss, liability, claim, damage or expense arises out of or is based upon any such untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission made therein in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer by or on behalf of the Initial Purchaser expressly for use in such Preliminary Memorandum, Time of Sale Information, the Final Memorandum, Blue Sky Application or any Additional Offering Materials (as the case may be); provided, further, that the foregoing indemnity shall not inure to the benefit of any Indemnified Party from whom the person asserting any such loss, claim, damage, liability or expense purchased the Notes which are the subject thereof on the Closing Date if the Indemnified Party sold Notes to or placed Notes with the person alleging such loss, claim, damage or liability without sending or giving a copy of the Time of Sale Information at or prior to the confirmation of the sale of the Notes, if the Originator shall have previously furnished copies thereof to such Indemnified Party and the loss, claim, damage or liability of such person results from an untrue statement or omission of a material fact contained in the Preliminary Memorandum which was corrected in the Time of Sale Information. The parties agree that such information provided by or on behalf

of the Initial Purchaser consists solely of the Initial Purchaser Information (with respect to the Initial Purchaser and its affiliates, officers, employees, agents and each Person, if any, that controls the Initial Purchaser).

Each of the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer hereby agrees, jointly and severally, to indemnify and hold harmless the Indemnified Parties, against any and all losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses whatsoever as incurred (including but not limited to attorneys' fees and any and all expenses whatsoever incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever, and any and all amounts paid in settlement of any claim or litigation), joint or several, to which they or any of them may become subject, insofar as such loss, claim, damage, liability or action arises out of, or is based upon, (i) any website maintained in compliance with Rule 17g-5 under the Exchange Act by or on behalf of any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer in connection with the marketing of the offering of the Notes and the posting of information thereon pursuant to Rule 17g-5, (ii) the contents of any Form 15G furnished by the Issuer to the Securities Exchange Commission, or (iii) the entering into and performance of this Agreement and any other Transaction Document by any of the Indemnified Parties, except, in the case of this clause (iii), to the extent any such loss, liability, claim, damage or expense results from the gross negligence, willful misconduct or bad faith of such Indemnified Party, as determined in a final and unappealable judgment by a court of competent jurisdiction.

Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer agrees that it shall, jointly and severally, reimburse each Indemnified Party promptly upon demand for any documented, out-of-pocket legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by that Indemnified Party in connection with investigating or defending or preparing to defend against any losses, liabilities, claims, damages for which indemnity is being provided pursuant to this Section 8(a) as such expenses are incurred.

The foregoing indemnity agreement will be in addition to any liability which the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer may otherwise have, including but not limited to other liability under this Agreement.

(b) The Initial Purchaser shall indemnify and hold harmless the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, their respective officers, directors and employees, and each other person, if any, who controls any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer, as applicable, within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act, against any losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses whatsoever as incurred (including but not limited to attorneys' fees and any and all expenses whatsoever incurred in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever, and any and all amounts paid in settlement of any claim or litigation), joint or several, to which they or any of them may become subject under the Securities Act, the Exchange Act or otherwise, insofar as such losses, liabilities, claims, damages or expenses (or actions in respect thereof) arise out of or are based upon (i) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained (A) in the Preliminary Memorandum,

Time of Sale Information, the Final Memorandum, Additional Offering Materials or in any amendment or supplement thereto, or (B) in any Blue Sky Application, or (ii) the omission or alleged omission to state in any Preliminary Memorandum, Time of Sale Information, Additional Offering Materials or the Final Memorandum, or in any amendment or supplement thereto, or in any Blue Sky Application any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, but in each case only to the extent that the untrue statement or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission was made in reliance upon and in conformity with written information furnished to the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer by or on behalf of the Initial Purchaser expressly for use in such Preliminary Memorandum, Time of Sale Information, Final Memorandum, Additional Offering Materials, amendment or supplement thereto, or Blue Sky Application (which information is limited to the Initial Purchaser Information); provided, however, that in no case shall the Initial Purchaser be liable or responsible for any amount in excess of the discount applicable to the Notes to be purchased by the Initial Purchaser under this Agreement.

The foregoing indemnity agreement will be in addition to any liability which the Initial Purchaser may otherwise have, including but not limited to other liability under this Agreement.

(c) Promptly after receipt by an indemnified party under subsection (a) or (b) above of notice of any claims or the commencement of any action, such indemnified party shall, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against the indemnifying party under such subsection, notify each party against whom indemnification is to be sought in writing of the claim or the commencement thereof (but the failure so to notify an indemnifying party shall not relieve the indemnifying party from any liability which it may have under this Section 8 to the extent that it is not materially prejudiced due to the forfeiture of substantive rights or defenses as a result thereof or otherwise has notice of any such action, and in any event shall not relieve it from any liability that such indemnifying party may have otherwise than on account of the indemnity agreement hereunder). In case any such claim or action is brought against any indemnified party, and it notifies an indemnifying party of the commencement thereof, the indemnifying party will be entitled to participate, at its own expense in the defense of such action, and it may elect by written notice delivered to the indemnified party promptly after receiving the aforesaid notice from such indemnified party, to assume the defense thereof with counsel satisfactory to such indemnified party; provided however, that counsel to the indemnifying party shall not (except with the written consent of the indemnified party) also be counsel to the indemnified party. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the indemnified party or parties shall have the right to employ its or their own counsel in any such case, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such indemnified party or parties unless (i) the employment of such counsel shall have been authorized in writing by one of the indemnifying parties in connection with the defense of such action, (ii) the indemnifying parties shall not have employed counsel reasonably satisfactory to such indemnified party to have charge of the defense of such action within a reasonable time after notice of commencement of the action, (iii) the indemnifying party does not diligently defend the action after assumption of the defense, (iv) such indemnified party or

parties shall have reasonably concluded that there may be defenses available to it or them which are different from or additional to those available to one or all of the indemnifying parties or (v) the named parties in any such proceeding (including any impleaded parties) include an Indemnified Party, on the one hand, and any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer, on the other hand, and representation of both sets of parties by the same counsel would present a conflict due to actual or potential differing interests between them, in any of which events (i) through (v) such fees and expenses shall be borne by the indemnifying parties (and the indemnifying parties shall not have the right to direct the defense of such action on behalf of the indemnified party or parties). No indemnifying party shall, without the prior written consent of the indemnified parties, effect any settlement or compromise of, or consent to the entry of judgment with respect to, any pending or threatened claim, investigation, action or proceeding in respect of which indemnity or contribution may be or could have been sought by an indemnified party under this Section 8 (whether or not the indemnified party is an actual or potential party thereto), unless such settlement, compromise or judgment (i) includes an unconditional release of the indemnified party from all liability arising out of such claim, investigation, action or proceeding and (ii) does not include a statement as to an admission of fault, culpability or any failure to act, by or on behalf of the indemnified party.

(d) In order to provide for contribution in circumstances in which the indemnification provided for in Section 8(a) through (c) is for any reason held to be unavailable from any indemnifying party or is insufficient to hold harmless a party indemnified thereunder, the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser shall contribute to the aggregate losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses of the nature contemplated by such indemnification provision (including any investigation, legal and other expenses incurred in connection with, and any amount paid in settlement of, any action, suit or proceeding or any claims asserted, but after deducting in the case of losses, claims, damages, liabilities and expenses suffered by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, any contribution received by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer from persons, other than the Initial Purchaser, who may also be liable for contribution, including their directors, officers, employees and persons who control the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act) as incurred to which the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer, the Initial Purchaser may be subject, in such proportions as is appropriate to reflect the relative benefits received by the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, on the one hand, and the Initial Purchaser, on the other hand, from the offering and sale of the Notes under this Agreement or, if such allocation is not permitted by applicable law, in such proportions as are appropriate to reflect not only the relative benefits referred to above but also the relative fault of the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer, on the one hand, and the Initial Purchaser, on the other hand, in connection with the statements or omissions which resulted in such losses, claims, damages, liabilities or expenses, as well as any other relevant equitable considerations. For purposes of this Section 8(d), the relative benefits received by the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor, and the Issuer, on the one hand, and the Initial Purchaser, on the other hand, shall be deemed to be in the same proportion as the total proceeds from the offering and sale of the Notes under this Agreement (net of discounts, commissions and

fees but before deducting expenses) received by the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer or their affiliates under this Agreement, on the one hand, and the discounts, commissions or fees received by the Initial Purchaser under this Agreement, on the other hand, bear to the aggregate offering price to investors of the Notes purchased under this Agreement, as set forth on the cover of the Final Memorandum. The relative fault of each of the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer, on the one hand, and of the Initial Purchaser, on the other hand, shall be determined by reference to, among other things, whether the untrue or alleged untrue statement of a material fact or the omission or alleged omission to state a material fact relates to information supplied by the Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor and the Issuer or their affiliates or the Initial Purchaser and the parties' relative intent, knowledge, access to information and opportunity to correct or prevent such statement or omission. The Originator, the Servicer, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser each agrees that it would not be just and equitable if contribution pursuant to this Section 8(d) were determined by pro rata allocation or by any other method of allocation that does not take account of the equitable considerations referred to above in this Section 8(d). The aggregate amount of losses, liabilities, claims, damages and expenses incurred by an indemnified party and referred to above in this Section 8(d) shall be deemed to include any documented, out-of-pocket legal or other expenses reasonably incurred by such indemnified party in investigating, preparing or defending against any litigation, or any investigation or proceeding by any judicial, regulatory or other legal or governmental agency or body, commenced or threatened, or any claim whatsoever based upon any such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission. Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 8(d), (i) the Initial Purchaser shall not be required to contribute any amount in excess of the amount by which the discounts and commissions applicable to the Notes resold by it under this Agreement exceeds the amount of any damages which the Initial Purchaser has otherwise been required to pay by reason of such untrue or alleged untrue statement or omission or alleged omission, and (ii) no person guilty of fraudulent misrepresentation (within the meaning of Section 11(f) of the Securities Act) shall be entitled to contribution from any person who was not guilty of such fraudulent misrepresentation. For purposes of this Section 8(d), (A) each of the Indemnified Parties other than the Initial Purchaser shall have the same rights to contribution as the Initial Purchaser, and (B) each director, officer or employee of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer and each person, if any, who controls the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act or Section 20 of the Exchange Act shall have the same rights to contribution as the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer, subject in each case of (A) and (B) to clauses (i) and (ii) of the immediately preceding sentence. Any party entitled to contribution will, promptly after receipt of notice of commencement of any action, suit or proceeding against such party in respect of which a claim for contribution may be made against another party or parties, notify each party or parties from whom contribution may be sought, but the omission to so notify such party or parties shall not relieve the party or parties from whom contribution may be sought from any obligation it or they may have under this Section 8(d) or otherwise. The obligations of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer to contribute pursuant to this Section 8(d) shall be joint and several.

(e) The Initial Purchaser confirms and the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer acknowledge and agree that the term Initial Purchaser Information shall mean (i) the statements with respect to the offering of the Notes by the Initial Purchaser set forth in the second paragraph of the section entitled "Plan of Distribution" in the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum, (ii) the information set forth in the risk factor entitled "The Issuer will be subject to various conflicts of interest involving the Initial Purchaser and its affiliates" in the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum and (iii) the name of the Initial Purchaser set forth on the front and back cover page of the Preliminary Memorandum and the Final Memorandum.

Section 9. Termination.

The Initial Purchaser shall have the right to terminate this Agreement at any time prior to the Closing Date, if, at or after the Time of Sale, any of the following shall occur, which remains outstanding or the effects of which remain outstanding: (i) any domestic or international event or act or occurrence has materially disrupted, or in the reasonable opinion of the Initial Purchaser will in the immediate future materially disrupt, the market for the Originator's securities or securities in general; or (ii) trading on the NYSE or NASDAQ shall have been suspended or been made subject to material limitations, or minimum prices for trading shall have been fixed, on the NYSE or NASDAQ or by order of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or any other governmental authority having jurisdiction; or (iii) a banking moratorium has been declared by any New York State or federal authority or any material disruption in commercial banking or securities settlement or clearance services shall have occurred; or (iv) (A) there shall have occurred any significant outbreak or escalation of hostilities or significant acts of terrorism involving the United States or there is a declaration of a national emergency or war by the United States or (B) there shall have been any other significant calamity or crisis or any significant change in political, financial or economic conditions if the effect of any such event in (A) or (B), in the reasonable judgment of the Initial Purchaser, is sufficiently material and adverse so as to make it impracticable or inadvisable to proceed with the offering, sale and delivery of the Notes, on the terms and in the manner contemplated by the Memoranda; or (v) the Initial Purchaser shall decline to purchase the Notes for any reason permitted under this Agreement. Any notice of termination pursuant to this Section 9 shall be in writing.

Section 10. Severability Clause.

Any part, provision, representation, or warranty of this Agreement which is prohibited or is held to be void or unenforceable in any jurisdiction shall, as to such jurisdiction, be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or unenforceability without invalidating the remaining provisions hereof.

Section 11. Notices.

All demands, notices and communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given if personally delivered at or mailed by overnight mail, certified mail or registered mail, postage prepaid and effective only upon receipt and (a) if sent to the

Initial Purchaser, will be delivered to Guggenheim Securities, LLC, 330 Madison Avenue, New York, New York 10017, Attention: Robert Horowitz (Banking) / John Robinson (General Counsel), Re: Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1; or (b) if sent to the Originator, the Trust Depositor or the Issuer will be delivered to such party c/o Hercules Capital, Inc., 400 Hamilton Avenue, Suite 310, Palo Alto, California 94301, Attention: David Lund, or in each case at any other address previously furnished in writing to the other parties hereto by such Person.

Section 12. Representations and Indemnities to Survive.

The respective agreements, representations, warranties, indemnities and other statements of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer and their respective officers and of the Initial Purchaser set forth in or made pursuant to this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect (in the case of the Originator, regardless of any investigation or any statements as to the results thereof made by or on behalf of the Initial Purchaser, the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or indemnified party or any officer, director, employee or controlling person of the Initial Purchaser, the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or indemnified party), regardless of the completion of the arrangements for the purchase and issuance of the Notes or any investigation made by or on behalf of the Initial Purchaser, the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Issuer or indemnified party. The provisions of Sections (2)(b), 8, 14, and 17 of this Agreement shall survive the termination or cancellation of this Agreement. For the avoidance of doubt, the Engagement Letter shall remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms, notwithstanding the entry into and effectiveness of this Agreement.

Section 13. Successors.

This Agreement will inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the parties hereto and their respective successors by merger, consolidation or acquisition of their assets substantially as an entity and each indemnified party referred to in Section 8 of this Agreement and, except as specifically set forth herein, no other person will have any right or obligation hereunder.

Section 14. Applicable Law.

(a) THIS AGREEMENT WILL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK (INCLUDING SECTIONS 5-1401 AND 5-1402 OF THE GENERAL OBLIGATIONS LAW OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK, BUT OTHERWISE WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAW PRINCIPLES).

(b) EACH PARTY HERETO HEREBY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY REQUIREMENTS OF LAW, ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO A TRIAL BY JURY IN RESPECT OF ANY LITIGATION DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY ARISING OUT OF, UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT. EACH PARTY HERETO (I) CERTIFIES THAT NO REPRESENTATIVE, AGENT OR ATTORNEY OF ANY OTHER PARTY HAS REPRESENTED, EXPRESSLY OR OTHERWISE, THAT SUCH OTHER PARTY WOULD NOT, IN THE EVENT OF LITIGATION, SEEK TO ENFORCE

THE FOREGOING WAIVER AND (II) ACKNOWLEDGES THAT IT AND THE OTHER PARTIES HERETO HAVE BEEN INDUCED TO ENTER INTO THIS AGREEMENT BY, AMONG OTHER THINGS, THE MUTUAL WAIVERS AND CERTIFICATIONS IN THIS SECTION 14(b).

(c) ANY LEGAL ACTION OR PROCEEDING WITH RESPECT TO THIS AGREEMENT MAY BE BROUGHT IN THE COURTS OF THE UNITED STATES FOR THE SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW YORK, AND BY EXECUTION AND DELIVERY OF THIS AGREEMENT, EACH PARTY HERETO CONSENTS, FOR ITSELF AND IN RESPECT OF ITS PROPERTY, TO THE NON-EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THOSE COURTS. EACH SUCH PARTY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY OBJECTION, INCLUDING ANY OBJECTION TO THE LAYING OF VENUE OR BASED ON THE GROUNDS OF FORUM NON CONVENIENS, WHICH IT MAY NOW OR HEREAFTER HAVE TO THE BRINGING OF ANY ACTION OR PROCEEDING IN SUCH JURISDICTION IN RESPECT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR ANY DOCUMENT RELATED HERETO.

Section 15. Counterparts, Etc.

This Agreement supersedes all prior or contemporaneous agreements and understandings relating to the subject matter hereof. Neither this Agreement nor any term hereof may be amended, modified, changed, waived, discharged or terminated except by a writing signed by the party against whom enforcement of such change, waiver, discharge or termination is sought. This Agreement may be signed in any number of counterparts each of which shall be deemed an original, which taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

Section 16. No Petition; Limited Recourse.

(a) The Initial Purchaser hereby covenants and agrees that, prior to the date that is one year and one day (or such longer preference period as shall then be in effect) after the payment in full of the Notes rated by Hired NRSRO, it will not institute against the Issuer or the Trust Depositor or join any other Person in instituting against the Issuer or the Trust Depositor any bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, insolvency or liquidation proceedings or other similar proceedings under the laws of the United States or any state of the United States.

(b) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the obligations of the Issuer hereunder are limited recourse obligations of the Issuer payable solely from the Collateral securing the Notes and all other assets of the Issuer and following the exhaustion of such Collateral and such other assets, any claims of the Initial Purchaser hereunder against the Issuer shall be extinguished. All payments by the Issuer to the Initial Purchaser hereunder shall be made subject to and in accordance with the Priority of Payments set forth in Section 7.06 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement.

Section 17. USA Patriot Act Notice. The Initial Purchaser hereby notifies the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer that pursuant to the requirements of

the USA Patriot Act (Title III of Pub. L. 107-56 (signed into law October 26, 2001)) (the "Patriot Act"), it is required to obtain, verify and record information that identifies the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, such information includes the name and address of each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer and other information that will allow the Initial Purchaser to identify each other party in accordance with the Patriot Act.

Section 18. Arm's-Length Transaction; Other Transactions

(a) Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer acknowledges and agrees that (i) the purchase and sale of the Notes pursuant to this Agreement, including the determination of the offering price of the Notes and any related discounts, commissions and fees, is an arm's-length commercial transaction between the Issuer, on the one hand, and the Initial Purchaser, on the other hand, (ii) in connection with the offering contemplated hereby and the process leading to such transaction, each of the Initial Purchaser is and has been acting solely as a principal and is not an agent or fiduciary of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer or any of their respective equity holders, creditors, employees or any other party, (iii) the Initial Purchaser has not assumed nor will it assume an advisory or fiduciary responsibility in favor of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer, with respect to the offering contemplated hereby or the process leading thereto (irrespective of whether the Initial Purchaser has advised or is currently advising any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or Issuer on other matters) and the Initial Purchaser has no obligation to any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer with respect to the offering contemplated hereby, except the obligations expressly set forth in this Agreement, and (iv) the Initial Purchaser has not provided any legal, accounting, regulatory or tax advice with respect to the offering contemplated hereby and each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer has consulted its own legal, accounting, regulatory and tax advisors to the extent it deemed appropriate.

(b) Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer acknowledges and agrees that the Initial Purchaser and its affiliates may presently have and may in the future have investment and commercial banking, trust and other relationships with parties other than the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer, which parties may have interests with respect to the purchase and sale or exchange of the Notes. Although the Initial Purchaser in the course of such other relationships may acquire information about the purchase and sale or exchange of the Notes, potential purchasers of the Notes or such other parties, the Initial Purchaser shall not have any obligation to disclose such information to any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer. Furthermore, each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer acknowledges that the Initial Purchaser may have fiduciary or other relationships whereby the Initial Purchaser may exercise voting power over securities of various persons, which securities may from time to time include securities of any of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer or their respective affiliates or of potential purchasers. Each of the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer and the Issuer acknowledges that the Initial Purchaser may exercise such powers and otherwise perform any functions in connection with such fiduciary or other relationships without regard to its relationship to the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer or the Issuer hereunder.

[REST OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK]

If the foregoing is in accordance with your understanding of our agreement, please sign and return to the undersigned a counterpart hereof, whereupon this letter and your acceptance shall represent a binding agreement among the Originator, the Trust Depositor, the Servicer, the Issuer, and the Initial Purchaser.

Very truly yours,

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., as Originator and as Servicer

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING 2018-1 LLC, as Trust Depositor

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1, as Issuer

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

S-1

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Note Purchase Agreement

The foregoing Agreement is hereby confirmed and accepted
as of the date first above written.

GUGGENHEIM SECURITIES, LLC
as the Initial Purchaser

By: /s/ Cory Wishengrad
Name: Cory Wishengrad
Title: Senior Managing Director

S-2

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Note Purchase Agreement

Principal Amount

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Fixed Rate Senior Notes: \$200,000,000

TIME OF SALE INFORMATION

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1 Fixed Rate Senior Notes

****Priced**** 144A/Reg S

Note Type	SIZE	RATING	COUPON	PRICE
Rule 144A	\$199,500,000	A(sf)	4.605%	99.99832%
Reg S	\$500,000	A(sf)	4.605%	99.99832%

ADMINISTRATION AGREEMENT

between

**HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1,
as Issuer,**

**HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.,
as Administrator**

WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,

as Owner Trustee

and

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,

as Trustee

Dated as of November 1, 2018

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
1. Duties of the Administrator	1
2. Records	3
3. Compensation; Payment of Fees and Expenses	3
4. Independence of the Administrator	3
5. No Joint Venture	3
6. Other Activities of the Administrator	4
7. Representations and Warranties of the Administrator	4
8. Administrator Termination Events; Termination of the Administrator	5
9. Action upon Termination or Removal	6
10. Liens	6
11. Notices	6
12. Amendments	6
13. Governing Law; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Jury Trial	7
14. Headings	8
15. Counterparts	8
16. Severability of Provisions	8
17. Not Applicable to Hercules in Other Capacities; Merger of Administrator	8
18. Benefits of the Administration Agreement	9
19. Assignment	9
20. Nonpetition Covenant	9
21. Limitation of Liability	9

THIS ADMINISTRATION AGREEMENT (as amended, supplemented or otherwise modified and in effect from time to time, this "Agreement") dated as of November 1, 2018, is between HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1, a Delaware statutory trust (the "Issuer"), HERCULES CAPITAL, INC., a Maryland corporation, as administrator ("Hercules" or the "Administrator"), U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association, as trustee (the "Trustee") and WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association, not in its individual capacity but solely as owner trustee (the "Owner Trustee"). Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned such terms in the Sale and Servicing Agreement dated as of November 1, 2018 (the "Sale and Servicing Agreement") by and among the Issuer, Hercules, as seller and as servicer, Hercules Capital Funding 2018-1 LLC, as trust depositor (the "Trust Depositor") and U.S. Bank National Association, as the trustee, backup servicer, custodian and paying agent.

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, Trust Depositor and the Owner Trustee have entered into the Amended and Restated Trust Agreement dated as of November 1, 2018 (the "Trust Agreement").

WHEREAS, the Issuer has issued the Notes pursuant to the Indenture and has entered into certain agreements in connection therewith, including, (i) the Sale and Servicing Agreement and (ii) the Indenture (the Trust Agreement, the Sale and Servicing Agreement and the Indenture are referred to herein collectively as the "Issuer Documents");

WHEREAS, to secure payment of the Notes, the Issuer has pledged the Collateral to the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture;

WHEREAS, pursuant to the Issuer Documents, the Issuer and the Owner Trustee are required to perform certain duties;

WHEREAS, the Issuer and the Owner Trustee desire to have the Administrator perform certain of the duties of the Issuer and the Owner Trustee (in its capacity as owner trustee under the Trust Agreement), and to provide such additional services consistent with this Agreement and the Issuer Documents as the Issuer may from time to time request;

WHEREAS, the Administrator has the capacity to provide the services required hereby and is willing to perform such services for the Issuer and the Owner Trustee on the terms set forth herein;

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual terms and covenants contained herein, and other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and adequacy of which are hereby acknowledged, the parties agree as follows:

1. Duties of the Administrator.

(a) Duties with Respect to the Issuer Documents. The Administrator shall perform all of its duties specifically enumerated herein as Administrator under this Agreement and the Issuer Documents and the duties and obligations of the Issuer and the

Owner Trustee (in its capacity as owner trustee under the Trust Agreement) under the Issuer Documents and no additional duties shall be read to be included herein; *provided, however*, except as otherwise provided in the Issuer Documents, that the Administrator shall have no obligation to make any payment required to be made by the Issuer under any Issuer Document. In addition, the Administrator shall consult with the Issuer and the Owner Trustee regarding its duties and obligations under the Issuer Documents. The Administrator shall monitor the performance of the Issuer and the Owner Trustee and shall advise the Issuer and the Owner Trustee when action is necessary to comply with the Issuer's and the Owner Trustee's duties and obligations under the Issuer Documents. The Administrator shall perform such calculations, and shall prepare for execution by the Issuer or shall cause the preparation by other appropriate persons of all such documents, reports, filings, instruments, certificates, notices and opinions as it shall be the duty of the Issuer and the Owner Trustee (in its capacity as owner trustee) to prepare, file or deliver pursuant to the Issuer Documents. In furtherance of the foregoing, the Administrator shall take all appropriate action that is the duty of the Issuer and the Owner Trustee (in its capacity as owner trustee) to take pursuant to the Issuer Documents, and shall prepare, execute, file and deliver on behalf of the Issuer (but not, for the avoidance of doubt, the Owner Trustee in its individual capacity) all such documents, reports, filings, instruments, certificates, notices and opinions as it shall be the duty of the Issuer to prepare, file or deliver pursuant to the Issuer Documents or otherwise by law.

(b) Notices to Rating Agencies. The Administrator shall give notice to the Rating Agency of (i) any merger or consolidation of the Owner Trustee pursuant to Section 10.04 of the Trust Agreement; (ii) any merger or consolidation of the Trustee pursuant to Section 6.09 of the Indenture; (iii) any resignation or removal of the Trustee pursuant to Section 6.08 of the Indenture; (iv) any Event of Default of which it has been provided notice pursuant to Section 5.01 of the Indenture; (v) the termination of, and/or appointment of a successor to, the Servicer pursuant to Section 8.02 of the Sale and Servicing Agreement; and (vi) any supplemental indenture pursuant to Sections 9.01 or 9.02 of the Indenture; which notice shall be given, in the case of each of (i) through (vi), promptly upon the Administrator being notified thereof by the Owner Trustee, the Trustee or the Servicer, as applicable.

(c) No Action by Administrator. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Administrator shall not be obligated to, and shall not, take any action that the Issuer directs the Administrator not to take or which would result in a violation or breach of the Issuer's covenants, agreements or obligations under any of the Issuer Documents.

(d) Non-Ministerial Matters; Exceptions to Administrator Duties.

(i) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, with respect to matters that in the reasonable judgment of the Administrator are non-ministerial, the Administrator shall not take any action unless, within a reasonable time before the taking of such action, the Administrator shall have notified the Issuer of the proposed action and the Issuer shall not have withheld consent or provided an alternative direction. For the purpose of the preceding sentence, "non-ministerial matters" shall include, without limitation:

(A) the initiation of any claim or lawsuit by the Issuer and the compromise of any action, claim or lawsuit brought by or against the Issuer;

(B) the appointment of successor Note Registrars (as defined in the Indenture), successor paying agents, successor Trustees, a successor Administrator or Successor Servicers, or the consent to the assignment by the Note Registrar, any paying agent or Trustee of its obligations under the Indenture; and

(C) the removal of the Trustee.

(ii) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, the Administrator shall not be obligated to, and shall not, (w) make any payments to the Noteholders under the Transaction Documents, (x) except as provided in the Transaction Documents, sell the Trust Estate, (y) provide any consent or approval specifically required to be given by the Issuer or the Owner Trustee under the Transaction Documents or (z) take any other action that the Issuer directs the Administrator not to take on its behalf.

2. Records. The Administrator shall maintain appropriate books of account and records relating to services performed hereunder, which books of account and records shall be accessible for inspection by the Issuer, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee at any time during normal business hours.

3. Compensation: Payment of Fees and Expenses. As compensation for the performance of the Administrator's obligations under this Agreement, the Administrator shall be entitled to receive an annual fee, which shall be solely an obligation of the Servicer; provided, however, notwithstanding the foregoing such compensation shall in no event exceed the Servicing Fee for the related annual period. The Administrator shall pay all expenses incurred by it in connection with its activities hereunder.

4. Independence of the Administrator. For all purposes of this Agreement, the Administrator shall be an independent contractor and shall not be subject to the supervision of the Issuer with respect to the manner in which it accomplishes the performance of its obligations hereunder. Unless expressly authorized by the Issuer, the Administrator shall have no authority to act for or to represent the Issuer in any way (other than as permitted hereunder) and shall not otherwise be deemed an agent of the Issuer.

5. No Joint Venture. Nothing contained in this Agreement (i) shall constitute the Administrator and the Issuer as members of any partnership, joint venture, association, syndicate, unincorporated business or other separate entity, (ii) shall be construed to impose any liability as such on any of them or (iii) shall be deemed to confer on any of them any express, implied or apparent authority to incur any obligation or liability on behalf of the others.

6. Other Activities of the Administrator. Nothing herein shall prevent the Administrator or its Affiliates from engaging in other businesses or, in their sole discretion, from acting in a similar capacity as an Administrator for any other Person even though such Person may engage in business activities similar to those of the Issuer, the Owner Trustee or the Trustee.

7. Representations and Warranties of the Administrator. The Administrator represents and warrants to the Issuer, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee as follows:

(a) Existence and Power. The Administrator is a corporation validly existing and in good standing under the laws of its state of incorporation and has, in all material respects, full power and authority to own its assets and operate its business as presently owned or operated, and to execute, deliver and to perform its obligations under the Transaction Documents to which it is a party. The Administrator has obtained all necessary licenses and approvals in each jurisdiction where the failure to do so would reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the ability of the Administrator to perform its obligations under the Transaction Documents or affect the enforceability or collectibility of the Loans or any other part of the Collateral.

(b) Authorization and No Contravention. The execution, delivery and performance by the Administrator of the Transaction Documents to which it is a party have been duly authorized by all necessary action on the part of the Administrator and do not contravene or constitute a default under (i) any applicable law, rule or regulation, (ii) its organizational documents or (iii) any material agreement or instrument to which the Administrator is a party by which its properties are bound (other than violations of such laws, rules, regulations or agreements which do not affect the legality, validity or enforceability of any of such agreements and which, individually or in the aggregate, would not reasonably be expected to materially and adversely affect the transactions contemplated by, or the Administrator's ability to perform its obligations under, the Transaction Documents).

(c) No Consent Required. No approval or authorization by, or filing with, any Governmental Authority is required in connection with the execution, delivery and performance by the Administrator of any Transaction Document other than (i) UCC filings, (ii) approvals and authorizations that have previously been obtained and filings that have previously been made and (iii) approvals, authorizations or filings which, if not obtained or made, would not reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the enforceability or collectibility of the Loans or any other part of the Collateral or would not materially and adversely affect the ability of the Administrator to perform its obligations under the Transaction Documents.

(d) Binding Effect. Each Transaction Document to which the Administrator is a party constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Administrator enforceable against the Administrator in accordance with its terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, receivership, conservatorship or other similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors' rights generally and, if applicable, the rights of creditors of corporations from time to time in effect or by general principles of equity.

8. Administrator Termination Events: Termination of the Administrator:

(a) Subject to clause (d) below, the Administrator may resign its duties hereunder by providing the Issuer with at least thirty (30) days' prior written notice.

(b) Subject to clauses (c) and (d) below, the Issuer may remove the Administrator without cause by providing the Administrator with at least thirty (30) days' prior written notice.

(c) The occurrence of any one of the following events (each, an "Administrator Termination Event") shall also entitle the Issuer, subject to Section 19 hereof, to terminate and replace the Administrator:

(i) any failure by the Administrator to deliver or cause to be delivered any required payment to the Trustee for distribution to the Noteholders, which failure continues unremedied for two (2) Business Days after discovery thereof by a Responsible Officer of the Administrator or receipt by the Administrator of written notice thereof from the Trustee or Noteholders evidencing at least 25% of the Aggregate Outstanding Principal Balance of the Notes;

(ii) any failure by the Administrator to duly observe or perform in any respect any other of its covenants or agreements in this Agreement, which failure materially and adversely affects the rights of the Issuer or the Noteholders, and which continues unremedied for 60 days after discovery thereof by a Responsible Officer of the Administrator or receipt by the Administrator of written notice thereof from the Trustee or Majority Noteholders; or

(iii) the Administrator suffers an Insolvency Event;

provided, however, that (A) if any delay or failure of performance referred to under clause (c)(i) above shall have been caused by force majeure or other similar occurrence, the two (2) Business Day grace period referred to in such clause (c)(i) shall be extended for an additional 60 calendar days and (b) if any delay or failure of performance referred to under clause (c)(ii) above shall have been caused by force majeure or other similar occurrence, the 60-day grace period referred to in such clause (c)(ii) shall be extended for an additional 60 calendar days.

(d) If the Administrator resigns or if an Administrator Termination Event shall have occurred, the Issuer may, subject to Section 19 hereof, by notice given to the Administrator and the Owner Trustee, terminate all or a portion of the rights and powers of the Administrator under this Agreement, including the rights of the Administrator to receive the annual fee for services hereunder for all periods following such termination; provided, however that such termination shall not become effective until such time as the Issuer, subject to Section 19 hereof, shall have appointed a successor Administrator in the manner set forth below. Upon any such termination, all rights, powers, duties and responsibilities of the Administrator under this Agreement shall vest in and be assumed by any successor Administrator appointed by the Issuer, subject to Section 19 hereof, pursuant to a management agreement between the Issuer and such successor

Administrator, containing substantially the same provisions as this Agreement (including with respect to the compensation of such successor Administrator), and the successor Administrator is hereby irrevocably authorized and empowered to execute and deliver, on behalf of the Administrator, as attorney-in-fact or otherwise, all documents and other instruments, and to do or accomplish all other acts or things necessary or appropriate to effect such vesting and assumption. Further, in such event, the Administrator shall use its commercially reasonable efforts to effect the orderly and efficient transfer of the administration of the Issuer to the new Administrator.

(e) The Issuer, subject to Section 19 hereof, may waive in writing any Administrator Termination Event by the Administrator in the performance of its obligations hereunder and its consequences. Upon any such waiver of a past Administrator Termination Event, such Administrator Termination Event shall cease to exist, and any Administrator Termination Event arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been remedied for every purpose of this Agreement. No such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Administrator Termination Event or impair any right consequent thereon.

9. Action upon Termination or Removal. Promptly upon the effective date of termination of this Agreement pursuant to Section 8, or the removal of the Administrator pursuant to Section 8, the Administrator shall be entitled to be paid by the Servicer all fees accruing to it to the date of such termination or removal.

10. Liens. The Administrator will not directly or indirectly create, allow or suffer to exist any Lien on the Collateral other than Permitted Liens.

11. Notices. All demands, notices and communications hereunder shall be in writing and shall be delivered or mailed by registered or certified first class United States mail, postage prepaid, hand delivery, prepaid courier service, email or by facsimile, and addressed at such address as shall be designated by any of the specified addressees in a written notice to the other parties hereto. Delivery shall occur only upon receipt or reported tender of such communication by an officer of the recipient entitled to receive such notices located at the address of such recipient for notices hereunder.

12. Amendments.

(a) Any term or provision of this Agreement may be amended by the Administrator without the consent of the Trustee, any Noteholder, the Issuer, the Owner Trustee or any other Person subject to the delivery of an Officer's Certificate of the Servicer to the Trustee by the Administrator to the effect that such amendment will not materially and adversely affect the interests of the Noteholders; provided, that no amendment shall be effective which affects the rights, protections or duties of the Trustee or the Owner Trustee without the prior written consent of such Person.

(b) This Agreement may also be amended from time to time by the Issuer, the Administrator and the Trustee, with the consent of the Majority Noteholders and with notice to the Owner Trustee, for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in

any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Agreement or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Noteholders. It will not be necessary for the consent of Noteholders to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment or consent, but it will be sufficient if such consent approves the substance thereof. The manner of obtaining such consents (and any other consents of Noteholders provided for in this Agreement) and of evidencing the authorization of the execution thereof by Noteholders will be subject to such reasonable requirements as the Trustee may prescribe, including the establishment of record dates.

(c) Any term or provision of this Agreement may also be amended from time to time by the Administrator to correct a material misstatement or omission of the terms of this Agreement in the Offering Memorandum without the consent of the Trustee, any Noteholder, the Issuer, the Owner Trustee or any other Person, provided, however, the Administrator shall provide written notification of the substance of such amendment to the Issuer, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee and promptly after the execution of any such amendment, the Administrator shall furnish a copy of such amendment to the Issuer, Owner Trustee and the Trustee.

(d) Prior to the execution of any amendment pursuant to this Section 12, the Administrator shall provide written notification of the substance of such amendment to any Rating Agency and the Owner Trustee; and promptly after the execution of any such amendment, the Administrator shall furnish a copy of such amendment to the Rating Agency, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee.

(e) Prior to the execution of any amendment to this Agreement, the Owner Trustee and the Trustee shall be entitled to receive and conclusively rely upon an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such amendment is authorized or permitted by this Agreement and that all conditions precedent to the execution and delivery of such amendment have been satisfied. The Owner Trustee and the Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such amendment which adversely affects the Owner Trustee's or the Trustee's, as applicable, own rights, duties or immunities under this Agreement.

13. Governing Law; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Jury Trial

(a) **THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE INTERNAL, SUBSTANTIVE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK WITHOUT REFERENCE TO THE RULES THEREOF RELATING TO CONFLICTS OF LAWS (OTHER THAN SECTIONS 5-1401 AND 5-1402 OF THE NEW YORK GENERAL OBLIGATIONS LAW), AND THE OBLIGATIONS, RIGHTS AND REMEDIES OF THE PARTIES HEREUNDER SHALL BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SUCH LAWS.**

(b) Each of the parties hereto hereby irrevocably and unconditionally:

(i) submits for itself and its property in any legal action or proceeding relating to this Agreement or any documents executed and delivered in connection herewith, or for recognition and enforcement of any judgment in respect thereof, to the nonexclusive general jurisdiction of the courts of the State of New York, the courts of the United States of America for the Southern District of New York and appellate courts from any thereof;

(ii) consents that any such action or proceeding may be brought in such courts and waives any objection that it may now or hereafter have to the venue of such action or proceeding in any such court or that such action or proceeding was brought in an inconvenient court and agrees not to plead or claim the same;

(iii) agrees that service of process in any such action or proceeding may be effected by mailing a copy thereof by registered or certified mail (or any substantially similar form of mail), postage prepaid, to such Person at its address determined in accordance with Section 11 of this Agreement;

(iv) agrees that nothing herein shall affect the right to effect service of process in any other manner permitted by law or shall limit the right to sue in any other jurisdiction; and

(v) to the extent permitted by applicable law, each party hereto irrevocably waives all right of trial by jury in any action, proceeding or counterclaim based on, or arising out of, under or in connection with this Agreement, any other Transaction Document, or any matter arising hereunder or thereunder.

14. Headings. The section headings hereof have been inserted for convenience of reference only and shall not be construed to affect the meaning, construction or effect of this Agreement.

15. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all of such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

16. Severability of Provisions. If any one or more of the covenants, agreements, provisions or terms of this Agreement shall be for any reason whatsoever held invalid, then such covenants, agreements, provisions or terms shall be deemed severable from the remaining covenants, agreements, provisions or terms of this Agreement and shall in no way affect the validity or enforceability of the other provisions of this Agreement.

17. Not Applicable to Hercules in Other Capacities: Merger of Administrator.

(a) Nothing in this Agreement shall affect any obligation Hercules may have in any other capacity.

(b) Any entity (i) into which the Administrator may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, to which it may sell or transfer its business and assets as a whole or substantially as a whole or any entity resulting from any merger, sale, transfer, conversion or consolidation to which the Administrator shall be a party, or any entity succeeding to the business of the Administrator or (ii) of which more than 50% of the voting stock or voting power and 50% or more of the economic equity is owned directly or indirectly by Hercules and which executes an agreement of assumption to perform every obligation of the Administrator under this Agreement, shall be the successor to the Administrator under this Agreement, in each case, without the execution or filing of any paper of any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding.

18. Benefits of the Administration Agreement. Nothing in this Agreement, expressed or implied, shall give to any Person other than the parties hereto and their successors hereunder, any separate trustee or co-trustee appointed under Section 6.10 of the Indenture and the Noteholders, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Agreement.

19. Assignment; Rights of Trustee. Each party hereto hereby acknowledges and consents to the mortgage, pledge, assignment and grant of a security interest by the Issuer to the Trustee pursuant to the Indenture for the benefit of the Noteholders of all of the Issuer's rights under this Agreement. In addition, the Administrator hereby acknowledges and agrees that for so long as any Notes are outstanding, the Trustee will have the right to exercise all waivers and consents, rights, remedies, powers, privileges and claims of the Issuer under this Agreement.

20. Nonpetition Covenant. Each party hereto agrees that, prior to the date which is one (1) year and one (1) day after payment in full of all obligations of the Issuer in respect of all securities issued by the Issuer (i) such party shall not authorize the Issuer to commence a voluntary winding-up or other voluntary case or other proceeding seeking liquidation, reorganization or other relief with respect to such bankruptcy remote party or its debts under any bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law now or hereafter in effect in any jurisdiction or seeking the appointment of an administrator, a trustee, receiver, liquidator, custodian or other similar official with respect to such bankruptcy remote party or any substantial part of its property or to consent to any such relief or to the appointment of or taking possession by any such official in an involuntary case or other proceeding commenced against such bankruptcy remote party, or to make a general assignment for the benefit of, its creditors generally, any party hereto or any other creditor of such bankruptcy remote party, and (ii) such party shall not commence, join with any other Person in commencing or institute with any other Person, any proceeding against the Issuer under any bankruptcy, reorganization, liquidation or insolvency law or statute now or hereafter in effect in any jurisdiction.

21. Limitation of Liability. It is expressly understood and agreed by the parties hereto that (i) this Agreement is executed and delivered by Wilmington Trust, National Association, not individually or personally but solely as Owner Trustee on behalf of the Issuer under the Trust Agreement, in the exercise of the powers and authority conferred and vested in it, (ii) each of the representations, undertakings and agreements herein made on the part of the Issuer is made and intended not as personal representations, undertakings and agreements by Wilmington Trust, National Association but is made and intended for the purpose of binding only the Issuer, (iii)

nothing herein contained shall be construed as creating any liability on Wilmington Trust, National Association individually or personally, to perform any covenant either expressed or implied contained herein, all such liability, if any, being expressly waived by the parties to this Agreement and by any person claiming by, through or under them and (iv) under no circumstances shall Wilmington Trust, National Association be personally liable for the payment of any indebtedness or expenses of the Issuer or be liable for the breach or failure of any obligation, representation, warranty or covenant made or undertaking by the Issuer under this Agreement or any related documents. For the purposes of this Agreement, in the performance of its duties or obligations hereunder, the Owner Trustee shall be subject to, and entitled to the benefits of, the terms and provisions of Articles VI, VII and VIII of the Trust Agreement.

[SIGNATURES ON NEXT PAGE]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties have caused this Agreement to be duly executed and delivered as of the day and year first above written.

HERCULES CAPITAL FUNDING TRUST 2018-1

By: Wilmington Trust, National Association, not in its individual capacity but solely as Owner Trustee

By: /s/ Roseline K. Maney
Name: Roseline K. Maney
Title: Administrative Vice President

S-1

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Administration Agreement

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.,
as Administrator

By: /s/ Melanie Grace
Name: Melanie Grace
Title: General Counsel

S-2

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Administration Agreement

WILMINGTON TRUST, NATIONAL ASSOCIATION,
not in its individual capacity but solely as Owner Trustee

By: /s/ Rosaline K. Maney

Name: Rosaline K. Maney

Title: Administrative Vice President

S-3

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Administration Agreement

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, as Trustee

By: /s/ Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.

Name: Ralph J. Creasia, Jr.

Title: Senior Vice President

S-4

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Administration Agreement

Joinder of Servicer:

Hercules Capital, Inc., as Servicer, joins in this Agreement solely for purposes of Section 3.

HERCULES CAPITAL, INC.,
as Servicer

By: _____
Name:
Title:

S-5

Hercules Capital Funding Trust 2018-1
Administration Agreement